



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

STANDARD SCHOOL BOOKS,

3. c. 36



Consisting of Familiar Conversations on every subject which can be useful to the Continental Traveller, or the French Student in general; exhibiting the true pronunciation of the French language, the silent letters being printed in italic. Sixteenth Edition; revised and adapted to the present state of France. By ALFRED HAVET, Fr
&c

**A KEY TO ROUILLON'S INSTITUTES OF THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE,**

Crown 8vo. *cloth*, 3s.

**ROUILLON'S EXERCISES ON FRENCH
CONVERSATION;**

(for advanced pupils), or, a Selection of English Sentences to be translated into French, and in which the difference of the idioms, genius, and phraseology of the French and English Languages, may be distinguished. Seventh Edition, 18mo. *half-bound*, 3/6.

A Key to the above, 18mo. *cloth*, 2/6.

**THURGAR'S GRAMMAR AND SYSTEM OF
LEARNING THE GERMAN LANGUAGE,**

Crown 8vo. *cloth*, 4/6.

"Efficient and adequate: we should prefer Mr. Thurgar's Grammar to some that are in high favour and extensive use."
—ECONOMIST.

"A system peculiarly adapted to the requirements of the English student."—NORFOLK CHRONICLE.

"An excellent beginner's book. We approve of this plan of freeing the first steps of the learner from those rules which at first only embarrass and confuse him."—CRITIC.



GRAMMATICAL INSTITUTES.

GRAMMATICAL INSTITUTES
OF
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE;
OR THE
Teacher's French Assistant:

CONTAINING A SERIES OF
THEORETIC, PRACTICAL, AND PROGRESSIVE LESSONS.
IN WHICH EVERY DIFFICULTY IS EXPLAINED, EITHER IN NOTES AT THE END
OF EACH EXERCISE, OR BY REFERENCES TO PRECEDING RULES.

BY DE ROUILLON.



TWELFTH EDITION,

REVISED

BY ALFRED HAVET,
PROFESSOR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE IN THE GLASGOW ATHENÆUM,
THE GLASGOW COLLEGIATE SCHOOL, ETC.

London:
WILLIAM ALLAN, 13, PATERNOSTER ROW;
LONGMAN AND CO.; SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.; WHITTAKER
AND CO.; HAMILTON, ADAMS, AND CO.
COLCHESTER: EDWARD BENHAM.

1859.

3. c. 36

[ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL.]



PRINTED BY EDWARD BENHAM, COLCHESTER.

P R E F A C E .

AMONG the many excellent Grammars already published, there is not one purposely written for the assistance of parents, governesses, or tutors, engaged in teaching the French language. It is with the hope of supplying this deficiency, or at least of alleviating the labour attending this kind of tuition, that the following work is offered to the public.

“Experience has long convinced me,” says Salmon, “that the master of a language, or indeed of any science, should at first be sparing of precepts, and confine himself to a short, easy method, lest he should discourage the pupil whose improvement he has at heart.”

The observation of this eminent master has been attended to in the present work. The rules are simple, the examples concise, but sufficient; and the exercises, having notes and references to preceding rules, will generally enable the pupils to correct their own mistakes.

At the end of each Exercise a few French sentences, illustrative of the preceding rules, are given for translation. A method of parsing follows each part of speech, and each lesson is concluded with appropriate questions, which, requiring a direct answer, will be the means of ascertaining whether the rules are well understood.

As it is of the utmost importance to proceed progressively, no expression has been introduced in the exercises or reading lessons relative to rules yet unexplained.

The sentences in the exercises have been selected with a view of furnishing the pupil with the elements of conversation; therefore, the Author carefully avoided all phraseology that might be deemed either too lofty and poetical, or low and ignoble.

Models for the conjugation of regular and reflected verbs are given in their affirmative, negative, and interrogative forms, &c.

In order to afford the learner the means of ascertaining instantly, whether the verb he has occasion to employ is regular or irregular, perfect or defective, obsolete or in use, the irregular verbs are alphabetically arranged; and it is hoped that this method will answer the intention, and save the pupil considerable time and trouble.

For the convenience of the master and the pupil, this work has been printed in three distinct types, thus offering

different degrees of instruction, from a simple abridgment to a complete grammar. The teacher will regulate this according to the age and proficiency of the pupil.

The notes throughout the work, and particularly those at the end of the exercises, will be found to contain all the essential rules of Syntax; and if proper attention is given to them, as well as to the rules in the text, the pupil will understand the mechanism of the language, and will be able to account for every turn which may be given to any common sentence.

Some of the best grammarians, especially *Salmon, Du-verger, Guisy, Ouiseau, Lévizac, Le Brethon, Gros, Boniface, Domergue, Noël and Chapsal, &c.*, have been diligently consulted; and this opportunity is taken of acknowledging that they have contributed largely to what is best in this book. As some errors may possibly have escaped the notice of the most careful revision of the press, the indulgence of the public is requested in favour of the motives of this publication.

DE ROUILLON.

ADVERTISEMENT TO THE EIGHTH EDITION (1845).

THE very flattering reception with which this Grammar has been honoured (which the sale of more than twenty thousand copies fully proves) induced the Author to revise it carefully, especially the copious analytical Index, a necessary appendage to all didactic works. It is hoped the additions and alterations now made, will render this Eighth Edition more generally useful, and consequently more worthy the public approbation and patronage.

DE ROUILLON.

ADVERTISEMENT TO THE TWELFTH EDITION.

THIS Twelfth Edition of the "GRAMMATICAL INSTITUTES OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE" has been carefully revised: the spelling is now according to the modern standard; those rules or examples that were at all obscure have been made more explicit; notes have been added whenever necessary; many obsolete irregular verbs have been suppressed; and in the exercises, which are now numbered, correct French equivalents have been given for English expressions. The general plan of the work remains the same, so that the improvements of this new impression will not interfere with the working of classes in which there may be pupils having the former edition.

ALFRED HAVET.

GLASGOW ATHENÆUM, JULY, 1859.

GRAMMATICAL INSTITUTES
OF THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE.

FIRST PART.

INTRODUCTION.

1. French Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the French language with propriety.

2. The French alphabet consists of twenty-five letters: a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

3. The French language has no *w*; this letter, as well as *k*, is only found in words derived or borrowed from other languages: *whist*, *kamelouk*, &c.

4. Letters are either vowels or consonants.

5. *A, e, i, o, u, y*, are vowels. The rest are consonants.

6. A vowel is a letter that forms a perfect sound when uttered alone.

[The French language has several other simple sounds or vowels represented by accents, as *é, è*; or by a combination of vowels, or vowels and consonants, as *eu, ou, an, on, in, un*.]

7. A consonant cannot be perfectly pronounced till joined to a vowel.

8. A syllable consists of one or more letters forming one sound; as, *a, I, the*, in English; *a, de, me*, in French.

9. *A monosyllable is a word of one syllable; † a dissyllable, of two syllables; ‡ a trisyllable, of three syllables; § a polysyllable, of more than three syllables.

* *le*; † *cheval*; ‡ *éléphant*; § *rhinocéros*, &c.

EXAMINATION—1. What is French Grammar? 2. How many letters are there in the French alphabet? 3. Has the French language any *w*? 4. How are letters divided? 5. What are the vowels? 6. What is a vowel? 7. What is a consonant? 8. Of what does a syllable consist? 9. How are words distinguished with respect to their number of syllables?

PARTS OF SPEECH.

10. Grammarians distinguish nine kinds of words, commonly called *Parts of Speech*; these are, the Substantive or Noun, the Article, the Adjective, the Pronoun, the Verb, the Preposition, the Adverb, the Conjunction, and the Interjection.

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

11. A *Substantive* or *Noun* is a word which serves to name persons, places, or things; as, *man*, *London*, *virtue*.

[12. A word to which we may ascribe a quality or a defect is a substantive. A substantive may in general be distinguished by its taking an article before it, or by its making sense of itself; as, *the sun*, *le soleil*; *an apple*, *une pomme*; *temperance*, *la tempérance*; *charity*, *la charité*.]

13. Substantives are either *common*, *proper*, or *collective*.

14. The *Substantive common* is that which belongs to all individuals or things of the same kind; as, *a man*, *un homme*; *a horse*, *un cheval*; *a tree*, *un arbre*. It is either *generic* or *specific*.

[The substantive *animal* belongs to a class of beings more numerous than the substantive *horse*, which, in its turn, has a signification more extended than the word *Bucephalus*. *Animal* expresses a genus, it is generic; *horse*, a species, it is specific; and *Bucephalus*, an individual. The two first are called common substantives, and the last a proper substantive, when it names one individual of a class, a person, or a place.

This property of the substantive, by which it comprehends a class, a species, or one individual of a class, is called *extension*.]

15. The Substantive common is either *physical* or *metaphysical*: physical when it means substances; as, *a table*, *une table*; *a house*, *une maison*; *an animal*, *un animal*; metaphysical, when it names things which can exist in the

understanding only; as, *vice*, le vice; *virtue*, la vertu; *thought*, la pensée.

16. The *Substantive proper* is that which belongs to one person or thing only; as, *Joseph*, Joseph; *London*, Londres; *the Danube*, le Danube; *England*, l'Angleterre.

[It sometimes expresses a single object, the only one of its kind; as, *God*, Dieu; *the earth*, la terre; *the universe*, l'univers; *Paradise*, le paradis, &c.]

17. *Collective Substantives* are those which, though in the singular number, present to the mind the idea of several persons or things as united and forming one mass, assemblage, or collection.

18. Collectives are divided into *general* and *partitive*. The former express a whole collection; as *army*, armée; *people*, peuple; *forest*, forêt: the latter express only a partial collection; as, *a quantity*, une quantité; *the multitude*, la multitude; *the most part*, la plupart.

[This distinction, generally followed, is of no utility except in the syntax.]

19. The principal properties of Substantives are, *extension*, *gender*, *number*, and *case*. These properties are usually called *Accidents*.

EXAMINATION.—10. Enumerate the nine parts of speech. 11. What is a substantive? 12. How is a substantive known? 13. How many kinds are there? 14. What is a common substantive? 15. How are common substantives divided? 16. What is a proper substantive? 17. What is a collective noun? 18. How are collective nouns divided? 19. How many accidents have nouns?

OF GENDERS.

20. Gender is the distinction of sex, or the difference between male and female.

21. The French language has but two genders, the masculine and the feminine. The masculine belongs to *men* and animals of the male kind; the feminine, to *women* and animals of the female kind.

[22. This distinction has, through imitation, been extended to all those substantives of inanimate objects, which in English belong to the neuter gender. For instance, *une table*, a table, is feminine; but *un tableau*, a picture, is masculine. In this case the gender is called *conventional*, and may be ascertained by the termination.]

OF NUMBERS.

23. By *number* is understood that property which nouns have of denoting either *one* or *several* things.

24. There are two numbers; the singular, which expresses but one; as, *a horse*, un cheval; and the plural, which expresses more than one; as, *horses*, des chevaux.

25. In French, as well as in English, the plural of nouns is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular.

EXAMINATION.—20. What do you understand by gender? 21. How many genders are there in French? 22. How is the gender of inanimate objects known? 23. What is number? 24. How many numbers are there? 25. How is the plural generally formed in both languages?

OF CASES.*

26. The different relations which substantives bear to one another, and to the other parts of speech, are called *Cases*.

27. There are six cases, called, *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative*.

28. These cases are formed both in French and English by prefixing to the substantive some particular words called *Articles and Prepositions*.

29. The *Nominative* expresses simply the name of a thing, *the house*, la maison; or the subject of a verb, that is, the person or thing that does the action expressed by the verb; as, *the lady writes*, la dame écrit; *the boys play*, les enfants jouent; *the fire burns*, le feu brûle.

30. The nominative usually precedes the verb.

[31. The nominative of a verb is known by putting the question *who* (qui) or *what* (qu'est-ce qui) before the verb; as, in reference to the preceding phrases, *who writes?* qui écrit? *who plays?* qui joue? *what burns?* qu'est-ce qui brûle? *The lady*, la dame; *the boys*, les enfants; *the fire*, le feu; which are the right answers, show the nominatives.]

32. The *Genitive* names the cause or possessor of another noun; as, the founder of *Rome*, le fondateur de Rome; the leaves of *the trees*, les feuilles des arbres; the house of

* Most French Grammarians do not admit of cases; but they have been purposely retained here for the facility of the English student.

my father, la maison de mon père.—This case also ends in *s*, preceded by an apostrophe; as, *my father's house*.

33. The *Dative* case shows to whom or to what the thing spoken of is directed; as, send these strawberries to your sister, *envoyez ces fraises à votre sœur*.

34. The *Accusative* names the person or thing that receives the action of the verb; as, the master teaches his pupils, *le maître instruit ses élèves*; the fire burns the wood, *le feu brûle le bois*.

35. The accusative follows the verb or a preposition.

[36. The accusative is known by putting the question *whom*, *qui*, or *what*, *quoi*, after the verb; as, *the master teaches whom?* *le maître enseigne qui?* *the fire burns what?* *le feu brûle quoi?* The right answers—*his pupils*, *ses élèves*; *the wood*, *le bois*; are the accusatives to the verbs *to teach* and *to burn*, *instruire* and *brûler*.]

37. The *Vocative* is used whenever a person or thing is addressed by name; as, *O my dear child!* I shall never see thee again! *O mon cher enfant!* *je ne te reverrai plus!* *James!* come and play; Jacques, *viens jouer*. *O my country!* to what a state art thou reduced! *O ma patrie!* *où en es-tu réduite!*

38. The *Ablative* names the person or thing from which something is taken away or received. I have received a letter from my father, *J'ai reçu une lettre de mon père*; the water comes from the spring, *l'eau vient de la source*.

EXAMINATION.—26. What is meant in grammar by cases? 27. Name the different cases. 28. How are the cases formed both in French and English? 29. What is the nominative case? 30. Where is the nominative placed? 31. How is the nominative known? 32. How is the genitive distinguished? 33. How is the dative? 34. What is the accusative case? 35. Where is the accusative placed? 36. How do you know a word to be in the accusative case? 37. What is the vocative? 38. What is the ablative?

OF ARTICLES.

39. The Article is a word prefixed to substantives to denote the sense in which they are taken.

40. There are three articles, the *definite*, the *indefinite*, and the *partitive*.

OF THE ARTICLE DEFINITE.

41. The article definite indicates that the substantive it precedes is used in a determinate sense.

42. The word *the* is the article definite in English.

43. It is translated into French by *le, la, l', les*, according to the gender, number, and first letter of the substantive to which it is joined.

Rules for the Nominative and Accusative Cases.

44. (a) *Le* is used before a noun masculine, beginning with a consonant; as,

The father, *le père.*

45. (b) *La* is used before a noun feminine, beginning with a consonant; as,

The mother. *la mère.*


46. (c) *L'** is prefixed to a noun of either gender, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; as,

The soul, *l' âme.*
The man, *l' homme.*

47. (d) *Les* is used before a noun plural, whether masculine or feminine, and before vowels as well as consonants; as,

The fathers, *les pères.*
The mothers, *les mères.*
The souls, *les âmes.*
The men, *les hommes.*

EXERCISE I.

 The pupil must not neglect to ascertain the number and gender of the substantive, and to observe carefully whether its first letter is a vowel or a consonant.

The grove—The life—The shade—The key—The hand.

(a) *bosquet* m. (b) *vie* f. (c) *ombre* f. (b) *clé* f. (b) *main* f.

* *Le* or *la* becomes *l'* before a vowel or *h* mute. The suppression of a vowel is called an *élision*; it takes place to avoid the disagreeable sound which the meeting of two vowels would produce, being pronounced separately; yet we say without *élision*, *le once*, *le onzième*, *le oui* et *le non*.

The star—The stars—The house— Virtue—The sun—
 (c) *étoile* f. (d) (b) *maison* f. art. (b) *vertu* f. (a) *soleil* m.

Hope—The moon.
 art. (c) *espérance* f. (b) *lune* f.

The finger, the fingers—† Pleasure—The vapour, the vapours—
 † Knowledge—The sea—The universe—† Glory—The scholar, the scholars.

References to the preceding Exercises.

(a) } See this Rule.
 (b) }
 (c) }

(d), See 47 and 25.

† The French must have the article.

Read and translate. (Lisez et traduisez.)

Le père et le fils. Le frère et la sœur. La mère et la fille. L'homme et la femme. La tante et les nièces. Les saisons (f.). Le printemps, l'été (m.), l'automne (m.) et l'hiver (m.).

METHOD OF PARSING. (MÉTHODE D'ANALYSE.)

As it is of the utmost importance to the learner not to mistake one part of speech for another, the pupil is to parse a few sentences of the above reading lesson, after the following method.

ARTICLE. Questions.—Is it definite, indefinite,* or partitive*? What gender? What number? Is it simple, contracted,* or with an elision?

SUBSTANTIVE. Questions.—Is it common, proper, or collective? What gender? What number? What is its initial letter?

EXAMINATION.—39. What is an article? 40. Enumerate the articles. 41. Why is the article definite thus called? 42. What is the article definite in English? 43. How is the English definite article translated into French? 44. When is *le* used? 45. When is *la*? 46. When is *l'* used? 46.* What is an elision? 47. When is *les* used?

Rules for the Genitive and Ablative Cases.

48. The prepositions *of* or *from* (*de*) are the signs of the genitive and ablative cases in English. (32, 38.) *Of* or *from the* is translated into French by *du, de la, de l'*,

* The terms will be explained in the following rules.

des, according to the gender, number, and first letter of the following noun.

49. (a) *Du*† precedes a noun masculine singular, beginning with a consonant.

Of or from the father, *du père.*

50. (b) *De la* precedes a noun feminine singular, beginning with a consonant.

Of or from the mother, *de la mère.*

51. (c) *De l'* is used before a noun singular of either gender, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

Of or from the soul, *de l'âme.*
Of or from the man, *de l'homme.*

52. (d) *Des*† is used before all nouns plural: as,

Of or from the fathers, *des pères.*
Of or from the mothers, *des mères.*
Of or from the souls, *des âmes.*
Of or from the men, *des hommes.*

EXERCISE II.

Of the heart—Of the day—The rose—From the rose—The
(a) *cœur* m. (a) *jour* m. *rose* f. (b)
conduct of the prince—The billows of the sea—The valour
conduite f. (a) *prince* m. *vague* f. (b) *mer* f. *valour* f.
of the soldiers—The smile of the child—The cause of
(d) *soldat* m. *sourire* m. (c) *enfant* m. *cause* f. (b)
virtue—The certainty of death.
art. *vertu* f. *certitude* f. (b) art. *mort* f.

The magnificence of the palace—The eloquence of the orator—
The politeness of the courtiers—The top of the mountains—From
the foot of the tower.

References.

(a) }
(b) } See this Rule.
(c) }

(d) See this Rule and 25, p. 4.

† *Du* is a contraction of *de le*, and *des* of *de les*, not used. The reducing of two syllables into one, is called *contraction*.

Read, translate and parse. (Lisez, traduisez et analysez.)

Le bonheur du peuple. L'honneur de la nation. La formation de l'univers. La violence des vents. La fraîcheur du matin.

EXAMINATION.—48. What prepositions are the signs of the genitive and ablative cases in English, and how are they translated into French? 49. When is *du* used? 49.† What do you mean by contraction? 50. When is *de la* used? 51. When must you employ *de l'*? 52. When *des*? What words are represented by *des*?

Rules for the Dative Case.

53. The preposition to (*d*) is the sign of the Dative. (33.) *To the* is translated into French by *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender, number, and first letter of the noun to which it is joined.

54. (*a*) *Au** is used before a noun masculine singular, beginning with a consonant.

To the father, *au père.*

55. (*b*) *À la* is joined to a noun feminine singular, beginning with a consonant.

To the mother, *à la mère.*

56. (*c*) *À l'* is used before a noun singular, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

To the soul, *à l'âme.*
To the man, *à l'homme.*

57. (*d*) *Aux** precedes all nouns plural.

To the fathers, *aux pères.*
To the mothers, *aux mères.*
To the souls, *aux âmes.*
To the men, *aux hommes.*

EXERCISE III.

The world—To the world—To the house—To the honour
monde m. (*a*) (*b*) *maison f.* (*c*) *honneur m.*
of the consulship—To the power of the tyrant—To the doors
consulat m. (*b*) *puissance f.* *tyran m.* (*d*) *porte f.*

* *Au* is for *à le*; *aux* is for *à les*, not used. See note †, page 8.

of the temple—To misfortunes—To the harmony of the lyre—
temple m. (d) art. malheur m. (c) harmonie f. lyre f.

To the servant.

(a) domestique m.

To the remembrance—To the means—To the hope of salvation—
 To the sister—The return from the city—To the boy—To honesty
 —The rays of the sun—From the citizens to the magistrates.

References.

(a) } See this Rule.
(b) }
(c) }

(d) See this Rule and 25, p. 4.

Read, translate and parse.

La vivacité de la jeunesse. A l'affection du père. Aux
 flots de la mer. Aux idées du peuple.

EXAMINATION.—53. What preposition is the sign of the dative? How is it translated into French? 54. When is *au* used? 54.* What contraction is it? 55. When is *à la* used? 56. Before what sort of nouns is *à l'* used? 57. When is *aux* made use of? What words does *aux* represent?

OF THE ARTICLE INDEFINITE.

58. The article indefinite, *a* or *an*, serves to point out one single person or thing; as, *a girl, a book*; it is called indefinite, because it does not determine what particular person or thing is meant. This article is rendered into French by *un* or *une* (which also means "one").

59. *(a)* *Un* is used before a noun masculine, and is thus declined—

Nom. & Acc.	a prince,	<i>un prince.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from a prince,	† <i>d'un prince.</i>
Dative.	to a prince,	<i>à un prince.</i>

60. *(b)* *Une* is joined to a substantive feminine thus:

Nom. & Acc.	a princess,	<i>une princesse.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from a princess,	<i>d'une princesse.</i>
Dative.	to a princess,	<i>à une princesse.</i>

† *De* loses the *e* before a vowel or *h* mute.

EXERCISE IV.

A man——A book——The daughter of a tradesman——A
 (a) *homme* m. (a) *livre* m. *filie* f. (a) *marchand* m. (b)
 house——A horse——The sails of a vessel——From a town——To
maison f. (a) *cheval* m. *voile* f. (a) *navire* m. (b) *ville* f.
 a flower——An event——The invention of an artist.
 (b) *fleur* f. (a) *événement* m. *invention* f. (a) *artiste* m.

The violence of a storm——The arrival of a fleet——The boldness
 of an expedition——The tenderness of a mother——The rapidity of a
 torrent.

References.

(a) } See this Rule.
 (b) }

Read, translate and parse.

Un parapluie. La témérité d'un officier. La beauté
 d'un paysage. La hauteur d'une montagne.

EXAMINATION.—58. What is the article indefinite, and why is it so called?
 59. How do you express the article indefinite, *a* or *an*, before a noun mascu-
 line? 59.† What do you observe about *de*, when it comes before a vowel or *h*
 mute? 60. Before a noun feminine, how is *a* or *an* translated into French?

OF THE ARTICLE PARTITIVE.

61. The article partitive precedes such nouns as denote
 part of a totality, but without specifying precisely *how*
much or *how many*.

62. The partitive article *some*,* is expressed in French
 by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, according to the gender, number,
 and first letter of the substantive to which it is joined.

63. (a) Before a noun masculine beginning with a con-
 sonant, it is thus declined—

Singular.

Nom. & Acc.	some paper,	<i>du papier.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from † paper,	<i>de papier.</i>
Dative.	to some paper,	<i>à du papier.</i>

* *Any* in interrogative or negative sentences.

† The word *some* is often left out in English; it must be expressed in French.

Plural.

Nom. & Acc.	papers,	<i>des papiers.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of <i>or</i> from papers,	<i>de papiers.</i>
Dative.	to papers,	<i>à des papiers.</i>

64 (b) Before a noun feminine beginning with a consonant—

Singular.

Nom. & Acc.	some meat,	<i>de la viande.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of <i>or</i> from some meat,	<i>de viande.</i>
Dative.	to † meat,	<i>à de la viande.</i>

Plural.

Nom. & Acc.	meats,	<i>des viandes.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of <i>or</i> from meats,	<i>de viandes.</i>
Dative.	to meats,	<i>à des viandes.</i>

65 (c) Before a noun of either gender, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute—

Singular.

Nom. & Acc.	some orange,	<i>de l'orange.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of <i>or</i> from some orange,	<i>d'orange.</i>
Dative.	to some orange,	<i>à de l'orange.</i>

Plural.

Nom. & Acc.	some oranges,	<i>des oranges.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of <i>or</i> from oranges,	<i>d'oranges.</i>
Dative.	to some oranges,	<i>à des oranges.</i>

EXERCISE V.

Some wine—Some honey—Some beer—† Money—Some
 (a) *vin* m. (a) *miel* m. (b) *bière* f. (c) *argent* m. (d)
 apples—† Poison—Some flowers—† Milk—Of † cloth—
pomme f. (a) *poison* m. (d) *fleur* f. (a) *lait* m. (a) *drap* m.
 To some cinnamon.
 (b) *cannelle* f.

Some ink—Some oysters—Cheese—Some strawberries—Eggs—
 Sugar—Tea and coffee—Salt, pepper, and vinegar.

References.

(a) }
 (b) } See this R
 (c) }

(d) The plural of this article is always *des*,
 but remember what has been said (25).

† See note †, page 11.

Read, translate and parse.

De la salade. Du cidre. Des assiettes. Un couteau et une fourchette. De l'infanterie et de la cavalerie. De l'or. Du cuivre.

EXAMINATION.—61. What nouns does the partitive article precede? 62. How do you express *some* or *any** in French? 63. When is *du* used, and what is its plural? 63.† Is not the word *some* or *any* often understood in English? 64. How is that article expressed before a noun feminine, beginning with a consonant? 65. When is *de l'* used?

OF PROPER NAMES.

66. A proper name, or substantive proper, is the name of any particular person or place.

67. (a) These nouns do not take any articles; they form their genitive and ablative cases with *de*, and their dative with *à*, thus:

Paris,	<i>Paris.</i>	Emily,	<i>Émilie.</i>
of or from Paris,	<i>de Paris.</i>	of or from Emily,	<i>d'Émilie.</i>
to Paris,	<i>à Paris.</i>	to Emily,	<i>à Émilie.</i>

EXERCISE VI.

The fan of Caroline—The distance from London to
éventail m. (a) Caroline distance f. (a) Londres (a)
 Bristol—The lyre of Apollo—† Sophia's book—The armies
Bristol lyre f. (a) Apollon (a) Sophie livre m. armées f.
 of Rome and ‡ Carthage—† Lucy's candour.
(a) Rome Carthage (a) Lucie candeur f.

The neighbourhood of Naples—† Nelson's glory—The beauty of Helen (*Hélène*)—The island of Calypso—The works of Voltaire and Marmontel.

References.

(a) See this Rule.
 † Say, *The Book of Sophia*, &c.—
 See 32.

‡ The word *of*, which is omitted in English must be expressed in French.

Read, translate and parse.

Le courage d'Achille. La valeur de Diomède. La ville de Troie. La route de Rome à Venise. Les tragédies de Racine et de Corneille. La bataille d'Inkermann.

EXAMINATION.—66. What is a substantive proper? 67. How are the cases of proper names formed?

How to Frenchify many English substantives.

68. 1.^o Most substantives are alike in both languages (except the occasional accents) when terminated in—

<i>able, ible,</i>	as,	<i>table, bible.</i>
<i>ace, ice,</i>	as,	<i>face, caprice.</i>
<i>acle,</i>	as,	<i>obstacle.</i>
<i>ade,</i>	as,	<i>brigade.</i>
<i>ance, ence,</i>	as,	<i>ignorance, diligence.</i>
<i>al,</i>	as,	<i>animal.</i>
<i>ant, ent,</i>	as,	<i>elephant, element.</i>
<i>ge, gue,</i>	as,	<i>age, fatigue.</i>
<i>ie,</i>	as,	<i>reptile, bile.</i>
<i>ine,</i>	as,	<i>doctrine.</i>
<i>ion,</i>	as,	<i>nation.</i>
<i>ude,</i>	as,	<i>fortitude.</i>

2.^o Most English substantives become French by changing their terminations, as follows :

<i>acy,</i>	} into	<i>atie,</i>	as,	<i>aristocracy, aristocratie.</i>
<i>ary,</i>		<i>aire,</i>	as,	<i>calvary, calvaire.</i>
<i>ancy,</i>		<i>anee,</i>	as,	<i>constancy, constance.</i>
<i>ency,</i>		<i>ence,</i>	as,	<i>clemency, clémence.</i>
<i>ic,</i>		<i>ique,</i>	as,	<i>music, musique.</i>
<i>ist,</i>		<i>iste,</i>	as,	<i>artist, artiste.</i>
<i>or, our,</i>		<i>eur,</i>	as,	<i>error, erreur, favour, faveur.</i>
<i>ory,</i>		<i>oire,</i>	as,	<i>glory, gloire.</i>
<i>ty, after a vowel,</i>		<i>id,</i>	as,	<i>beauty, beauté, fidelity, fidélité.</i>
<i>y, other than the preceding,</i>		<i>ie,</i>	as,	<i>fury, furie, modesty, modestie.</i>

3.^o Proper names of persons or nations ending in *ion*, change that termination into *ien* ; as,

Sebastian,	<i>Sébastien.</i>
Athenian,	<i>Athénien.</i>

4.^o Proper names ending in *o*, generally change that termination into *on* : *

Cicero,	<i>Cicéron.</i>
Plato,	<i>Platon.</i>

5.^o Proper names of men ending in English in *a*, *is*, or *al*, are the same in French.

Agrippa, Sésostris, Juvénal.

* Except *Calypso, Clio, Echo, Erato, Sappho.*

6.^o Proper names ending in *ander* change that termination into *andre*. *

Alexander, *Alexandre*.

7.^o The generality of proper names ending in *us* or *ius*, are the same in French as in English, when they are of two syllables only; as, *Brutus*, *Cyrus*; but when they are composed of three or more syllables, they usually change that termination into *e* mute.

Tacitus, *Tacite*; Octavius, *Octave*.

8.^o Proper names ending in *es* or *as*, generally become French by changing *es* or *as* into *e* mute.

Demosthenes, *Démosthène*; Æneas, *Énée*;
Socrates, *Socrate*; Pythagoras, *Pythagore*.

9.^o Proper names of women and goddesses ending in *a*, become French by changing that *a* into *e* mute.

Sophia, *Sophie*; Diana, *Diane*.

IN FUTURE EXERCISES

This mark — will denote that the word under which it is placed, is the same in both languages; and this mark will denote that the French word differs from the English in its termination.

EXERCISE VII. ON THE PRECEDING RULES (41—48).

The time of reflection—The decision of a wager—The front
temps m. art. réflexion f. décision f. pari m. façade f.
 of the house—The death of the queen—The peace of the kingdom—
maison f. mort f. reine f. paix f. royaume m.
 The foliage of a tree—The privileges of the nobility—The
feuillage m. arbre m. privilège m. noblesse f.
 sagacity of an animal—The depth of a well—The corner
... f. — m. profondeur f. puits m. coin m.
 of a street—The approbation of the multitude—The fatigue of a
rus f. — f. — f. — f.
 journey—The severity of a reprimand—The length of a
voyage m. f. réprimande f. longueur f.

story—A support of the throne—The bravery of the troops—
histoire f. soutien m. trône m. bravoure f. troupe f.
 The beginning of a discourse—The shame of a defeat—
commencement m. discours m. honte f. défaite f.
 The beauty of a fable—The horror of vice—The utility of
.... f. f. f. art. — m. f.
 science—The atrocity of a crime—The organist of a church—
art. — f. f. — m. m. église f.
 The democracy of the Athenians—The memory of a child—The
.... f. f. enfant m.
 humanity of a stranger—The inconstancy of the weather—The
.... f. étranger m. f. temps m.
 flowers of a meadow—The city of Westminster—Westminster
*fleur f. prairie f. f. — **
 bridge—Socrates' wisdom—Achilles' valour—The character of
pont m. † sagesse f. † ... f. caractère m.
 Æsop's fables—The nicety of languages—The feathers
Esop † — f. délicatesse f. art. langue f. plume f.
 of a bird—The victory of Inkermann.
oiseau m. f. —

References.

* English compound words must be transposed, the last coming first: the *bridge of Westminster, &c.*

† See reference †, page 13.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS.

69. (a) The plural of substantives (and adjectives) is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular.*

A man,	<i>un homme.</i>
Men,	<i>des hommes.</i>

70. (b) Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, do not vary in the plural.

The son, the sons,	<i>le fils, les fils.</i>
The voice, the voices,	<i>la voix, les voix.</i>
A nose, noses,	<i>un nez, des nez.</i>

EXERCISE VIII.

The revolution of a planet—The revolutions of the planets—The
— f. planète f. (a) (a)

* Words ending in *ant* or *ent* now retain the *t*; as, *enfant*, a child, *enfants*, children. But *gent* makes *gens*.—*Tout*, all, becomes *tous*.


root of a plant—The roots of trees—An arm—The
racine f. plante f. (a) (a) art. arbre m. bras m.
 arms of a child—A nut—Some nuts—An event—The events
(b) noix f. (b) événement m. (a)
 of a campaign—A glove—Gloves.
campagne f. gant m. (a)

The marshes of a country—The punishment of the cross—The
 crosses of the knights—The virtue of a Roman (*Romain*)—The
 virtues of the Romans—The teeth of serpents.

References.

(a) } See this Rule.
 (b) }

Read, translate and parse.

 In parsing, do not omit to name the singular of every noun, and by what rule it is made plural.

La beauté d'un prélude. Les beautés d'un poème. Les
 forêts d'un pays. Le palais d'un roi. Les palais des rois.

EXAMINATION.—69. How is the plural of adjectives and substantives generally formed? 69.* What is now the general way of forming the plural of nouns ending in *ant* or *ent*? 70. How is the plural formed in nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*?

71. (a) Nouns ending in *au*, *eu*, *œu*, take *x* instead of *s* for their plural.

A curtain,	curtains,	un rideau,	des rideaux.
A game,	games,	un jeu,	des jeux.
A vow,	vows,	un vœu,	des vœux.

[*Bleu*, blue, is the only word in *eu* which takes an *s* for its plural.]

72. (b) Nouns in *ou* are now regular, and take *s* for their plural.

A nail,	nails,	un clou,	des clous.
---------	--------	----------	------------

73. (c) Except the following, which take *x*.

A cabbage,	cabbages,	un chou,	des choux.
A pebble,	pebbles,	un caillou,	des cailloux.
A jewel,	jewels,	un bijou,	des bijoux.
The knee,	the knees,	le genou,	les genoux.
An owl,	owls,	un hibou,	des hiboux.
A toy,	toys,	un joujou,	des joujoux.

EXERCISE IX.

A hat——The hats—A castle——The castles—The knives——
chapeau m. (a) *château* m. (a) (a) *couteau* m.
 A raven——The croaking of ravens—The ships of
corbeau m. *croassement* m. art. (a) (a) *vaisseau* m.
 a fleet——The sports of infancy——Nails——Jewels.
flotte f. (a) *jeu* m. art. *enfance* f. (b) (c) *bijou* m.

The safety of bolts—The god of War—The gods of Homer
 (*Homère*)—The holes of a sieve—The halter of a mare—The
 halters of mares.

References.

(a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }

Read, translate and parse.

Le fils du commandant de la ville. L'erreur d'un moment. Des bâtiments. Les filous de Paris et de Londres. Des compliments de condoléance. Les bijoux de la couronne.

EXAMINATION.—71. What nouns take *x* for their plural? 72. How are nouns in *ou* now made plural? 73. Mention the exceptions to nouns in *ou*.

74. (a) Nouns ending in *al*, form their plural by changing *al* into *aux*.

A horse, horses, *un cheval*, *des chevaux*.

75. (b) The following take *s* for their plural:

A ball, balls, *un bal*, *des bals*.
 The carnival, the carnivals, *le carnaval*, *les carnivals*.

Also *aval*, *chacal*, *nopal*, *régat*, &c.

[Proper names, used as common substantives, take *s*—two or three Juvenals, *deux ou trois Juvénals*.]

76. (c) Nouns ending in *aïl*, take *s* (69).

A fan, fans, *un éventail*, *des éventails*.

77. (d) Except the following, which change *aîl* into *aux* :
bail, corail, émail, soupirail, and travail.*

78. (e) The following irregular nouns cannot be brought under any rule.

Grandfather,	ancestors,	<i>aïeul</i> ,	<i>aïeux</i> .
Cattle,		<i>bétail</i> ,	<i>bestiaux</i> .
Heaven,	heavens,	<i>ciel</i> ,	<i>cieux</i> .
Eye,	eyes,	<i>œil</i> ,	<i>yeux</i> .

[*Aîl* makes *aux*.—*Ciel* and *œil* follow the general rule when used in a figurative sense; as, *des ciels de lit*, bed testers; *les ciels d'un tableau*, the sky of a picture; *des œils de bœuf*, oval windows.—Yet we say figuratively: Geography and chronology are the eyes of history, *La géographie et la chronologie sont les yeux de l'histoire*.—*Aïeul* is regular in this sentence: *Ses deux aïeuls ont rempli les premières charges*, Both his grandfathers (paternal and maternal) have filled the highest stations.—ACAD.]

79. A few nouns have no plural; as, *sonnail*, *colère*, *jeunesse*, *faim*, &c.—Others have no singular in use; as, *ancêtres*, *funérailles*, *mœurs*, &c. Latin words have no plural; as, *un post-scriptum*, *des post-scriptum*; *un fac-simile*, *des fac-simile*; but those words which have been admitted in the language as French substantives, now generally take the mark of the plural. Ex. *un opéra*, *des opéras*; *un duo*, *des duos*. Prepositions, conjunctions, adverbs, &c. used substantively, have no plural terminations, though used with the article *les*.

EXERCISE X.

An hospital—The hospitals of the army—The talents of the
hôpital m. (b) *armées f.* *talent m.*
 general—The generals of the allies—The skin of an animal—
général m. (a) *allié m.* *peau f.* *animal m.*
 The skins of animals—The fans of the ladies—The birds
 (a) (c) *éventail m.* *dame f.* *oiseau m.*
 of heaven—The kingdom of heaven—A seraglio—The seraglios of
ciel m. *royaume m.* (e) *sérail m.* (c)
 the Turks—The compliments of the season—The evils of
Turc m. *compliment m.* *saison f.* (a) *mal m.*
 war—The † king's grandfather—The forefathers of a family
art. guerre f. *aïeul* (e) *famille f.*
 —The lease of a house—The leases of houses.
bail (d)

* But we say, *les travaux d'un ministre*; the account, the projects, which a minister presents to his sovereign. Likewise in speaking of *traves*, used by farriers, to confine unruly horses whilst shoeing.

The helms of the ships—The season of the balls—The tribunals of a kingdom—An admiral—The admirals—The indifference of a relation (*parent*)—The relations of an orphan—The eyes of a fish.

References.

(a) }
(b) } See this Rule.
(c) }

(d) }
(e) } See this Rule.
† See this reference, page 13.

Read, translate and parse.

Un maréchal de France. Les maréchaux de France.
Les papiers de la correspondance d'un ministre. Les habitants de la campagne. La curiosité d'un voyageur.

EXAMINATION.—74. How do you form the plural of nouns ending in *ail*? 75. Mention the exceptions. 76. How are nouns in *ail* made plural? 77. What are the exceptions? 78. What nouns form their plural irregularly? 79. What nouns have no singular or no plural?

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

As several parts of speech are here introduced which have not yet been explained, no exercise has been given, and these rules should be passed over for the present.

[80. When a noun is compounded of a substantive and an adjective, both take the mark of the plural. A nobleman, *un gentilhomme, des gentilhommes*.

In nouns composed of a preposition or verb and a substantive,* the noun alone takes the sign of the plural. A forerunner, *un avant-coureur, des avant-coueurs*.

When a noun is compounded of two substantives united by a preposition, the first alone takes the mark of the plural; † as, A steward, *un maître-d'hôtel, des maîtres-d'hôtel*.

Nouns compounded of the pronoun *mon* or *ma*, change it into *mes*. Sir, *Monsieur, Messieurs*. Madam, *Madame, Mesdames*. *Mademoiselle, Mesdemoiselles*.

Words composed of a verb and an adverb, or preposition, remain undeclined. A master-key, *un passe-partout, des passe-partout*.]

EXAMINATION.—80. How is the plural formed in nouns compounded of an adjective and a substantive? When a noun is compounded of a preposition and a substantive, how is its plural formed? When two substantives joined by a preposition form a compound word, are both nouns to take the mark of the plural? What do you observe concerning the pronouns *mon* and *ma*, when they serve to form compound words? What compound words do not take the mark of the plural?

* According to this rule, we write without an *s*, *des garde-fous, rails*; but we ought to write, *les gardes françaises*, because the word *gardes* is then considered as a substantive.

† *Coq-à-l'âne* and *tête-à-tête* do not take the mark of the plural.

OF ADJECTIVES.

81. An adjective expresses a peculiar quality ascribed to a substantive, and agrees with it in gender and number.

[Adjectives, in English, are alike in the singular and plural, in the masculine and feminine; as, a *learned* man, a *learned* woman, *learned* men, *learned* women. In French, they have two distinct genders and numbers, so that *SAVANT*, *learned*, will have four different terminations; as, un homme *savant*, une femme *savante*; des hommes *savants*, des femmes *savantes*.—This difference of termination in an adjective is called *concord*, or, *agreeing in gender and number*.]

How to Frenchify many English adjectives.

82. Most adjectives of the following terminations are alike in both languages.

<i>able, ible, oble, uble,</i>	capable, sensible, noble, soluble.
<i>al,</i>	fatal, général.
<i>ant, ent,</i>	constant, diligent.
<i>ile,</i>	docile.

83. Many English adjectives are made French by a slight change in their termination.

<i>ar, ary, are</i> changed into <i>aire</i> ,	{ military, <i>militaire</i> .
	{ titular, <i>titulaire</i> .
<i>ic, ical,</i>	<i>ique, comique.</i>
<i>ine,</i>	<i>in, divine, divin.</i>
<i>ive,</i>	<i>if, expressive, expressif.</i>
<i>ory,</i>	<i>oire, transitory, transitoire.</i>
<i>or,</i>	<i>eur, interior, intérieur.</i>
<i>ous,</i>	<i>eux, dangerous, dangereux.</i>

OF THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

84. (a) GENERAL RULE. An adjective* is made feminine by adding an *e* mute to its masculine termination.

A polite man,	<i>un homme poli.</i>
A polite woman,	<i>une femme polie.</i>

* Observe that we say *adjective*, and not *adjective* and *substantive*. Substantives never vary but to form their plural—beginners often fall into the error of adding an *e* mute to all the substantives feminine they may have occasion to employ.

85. (b) Adjectives ending in *e* mute are both masculine and feminine.

An amiable man, *un homme aimable.*
An amiable woman, *une femme aimable.*

86. (c) Adjectives ending in *f* change that letter into *ve* for the feminine.

A lively sentiment, *un sentiment vif.*
A lively imagination, *une imagination vive.*

[87. (d) The plural of adjectives is formed like that of substantives (p. 16).

Polite men, *des hommes polis.*
Amiable women, *des femmes aimables.]*

88. (e) The French adjectives are generally placed after the substantives; except

<i>beau,</i>	handsome	<i>méchant,</i>	wicked
<i>bon,</i>	good	<i>petit,</i>	little, small
<i>brave,</i>	brave	<i>saint,</i>	holy
<i>grand,</i>	great, large	<i>sot,</i>	foolish
<i>gros,</i>	big	<i>vieux,</i>	old
<i>jeune,</i>	young	<i>premier,</i>	first, and all other ad-
<i>joli,</i>	pretty		jectives of number.
<i>mauvais,</i>	bad		

EXERCISE XI.

A credulous man—A credulous woman—A modest beauty—An
crédule (b) (b) *modeste* f.

amiable simplicity—A pretty picture—A pretty girl—Two
(b) *aimable* f. (e) *tableau* m. (f) *filles* f. *deux*
pretty pictures—Two pretty girls—A little poem—A small town—
(e) *poème* m. (f) *ville* f.

Small gardens—The lively sprightliness of youth—A great
(e) *jardin* m. (a) *piquant vivacité* f. art. *jeunesse* f. (e)

kingdom—A brave officer—A small horse—Three small horses
royaume m. (e) *officier* m. (e) *cheval* m. *trois*

—A large town—A bold action—An imprudent family—An
(f) *grand ville* f. (a) *hardi* — f. (a) — *famille* f.

attentive scholar—An attentive ear—The attentive scholars—
.... *écolier* m. (c) — *oreille* f.

The attentive ladies.
(c) *dame*.

The eloquent speech of a magistrate—The noble * disinterestedness of a friend—The lovely qualities of a young lady—A steep mountain—A great design—The persuasive eloquence of Nestor.

References.

- (a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }
 (d) }
 (e) }

(f) 84 and 88.

* This adjective must precede its substantive.

Read, translate and parse.

Une histoire intéressante et instructive. Un génie solide et brillant. La cruauté féroce des tyrans de Syracuse. Les avantages d'une éducation soignée.

METHOD OF PARSING AN ADJECTIVE.

Questions. What gender? What number? What does it agree with in the sentence? If it be masculine, name its feminine and repeat the rule. If it be feminine, name its masculine.

EXAMINATION.—81. What is the use of adjectives? [What is the difference between a French and English adjective?] 84. What is the general rule to form the feminine in French adjectives, that is, how do you express the adjective *poil*, when it is joined to a noun feminine? 85. What is the feminine of adjectives ending in *e* mute? 86. How do you form the feminine of adjectives ending in *f*? 87. How is the plural of adjectives formed? 88. What is the usual place of an adjective in the sentence? Name the adjectives which generally precede the nouns they qualify.

Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives continued.

89. (a) Adjectives ending in *el* or *eil*, double the *l* and take an *e* for their feminine:

Natural,	<i>naturel</i> ,	<i>naturelle</i> .
Florid,	<i>vermeil</i> ,	<i>vermeille</i> .

90. (b) Certain adjectives ending in *as*, *ais*, *és*, *os*, double the final *s* and take an *e* mute for their feminine:

Fat,	<i>gras</i> ,	<i>grasse</i> .
Thick,	<i>épais</i> ,	<i>épaisse</i> .
Express,	<i>exprès</i> ,	<i>expresse</i> .
Big,	<i>gros</i> ,	<i>grosse</i> .

91. (c) Except the following, which take an *e* mute :

Close,	<i>clos,</i>	<i>closse.</i>
Bare,	<i>ras,</i>	<i>rase.</i>

Frais, fresh, is another exception, and makes *frâche*.

92. (d) Adjectives ending in *et* and *ot*, form their feminine by doubling their final consonant before *e* mute.

Clean,	<i>net,</i>	<i>nette.</i>
Foolish,	<i>sot,</i>	<i>sotte.</i>

93. (e) The following are excepted :

Complete,	<i>complet,</i>	<i>complète.</i>
Devout,	<i>dévol,</i>	<i>dévôte.</i>
Discreet,	<i>discret.</i>	<i>discrète.</i>
Uneasy,	<i>inquiet,</i>	<i>inquiète.</i>
Ready,	<i>prêt,</i>	<i>prête.</i>
Secret,	<i>secret,</i>	<i>secrète.</i>

[To which may be added, *concret*, *replet*, *cagot*, *idiot*, and the compounds, *indiscret*, *incomplet*.]

EXERCISE XII.

A natural sentiment—The natural law—A florid complexion—
sentiment m. (a) *loi f.* *teint m.*

The natural rights—The natural faculties—A mutual affection—
droit m. (a) *faculté f.* (a) *mutuel* — *f.*

A cruel animal—Cruel animals—A revengeful disposition—A thick
— *m.* *vindicatif caractère m.* (b)

smoke—A bad heart—A bad year—The bad voices—Amiable
fumée f. (c) *cœur m.* (c) *années f.* (c) *voix f.* *aimable*

children—† Great actions—A devout man—A dumb woman.
enfant f. *action f.* (d) *muet.*

Thick forests—A secret impulse—A secret intrigue—The complete works of an author—A cool night—The cool winds.

References.

(a) }
(b) } See this Rule.
(c) }
(d) }
(e) }

† When a substantive taken in a partitive sense is preceded by an adjective, the preposition *de* is used instead of *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*. Ex. large apples, *de grosses pommes*, and not *des grosses pommes*.

Read, translate and parse.

Une école excellente. L'estime générale des habitants d'une ville. Les bords fleuris d'un fleuve. Les écrits estimables des philosophes de l'antiquité.

EXAMINATION.—89. What is the feminine of adjectives ending in *el, ell*? 90. How do you form the feminine of adjectives ending in *as, ais, ès, and os*? 91. Mention the exceptions. 92. How are adjectives ending in *et* and *ot* made feminine? 93. What are the exceptions? † When a noun in a partitive sense is preceded by an adjective, is any article used before that adjective?

Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives continued.

94. (a) Adjectives ending in *ien* and *on* form their feminine by adding *ne* to that termination.

Christian,	<i>chrétien,</i>	<i>chrétienne.</i>
Good,	<i>bon,</i>	<i>bonne.</i>

95. (b) Adjectives in *eux*, and many in *eur*, change their termination into *euse* for their feminine.

Happy,	<i>heureux,</i>	<i>heureuse.</i>
Flattering,	<i>flatteur,</i>	<i>flatteuse.</i>

[96. (c) *Antérieur, citérier, extérieur, inférieur, intérieur, majeur, meilleur, mineur, postérieur, prior, supérieur, ultérieur*, follow the general rule (84), i. e. take *e* mute: *antérieure, citérière, &c.*]

97. (d) Adjectives ending in *c* form their feminine as follows :

White,	<i>blanc, m.</i>	<i>blanche, fem.</i>
Sincere,	<i>franc,</i>	<i>franche.</i>
Dry,	<i>sec,</i>	<i>sèche.</i>
Decaying,	<i>caduc,</i>	<i>caduque.</i>
Public,	<i>public,</i>	<i>publique.</i>
Greek,	<i>grec,</i>	<i>grecque.</i>
Turk,	<i>turc,</i>	<i>turque.</i>

EXERCISE XIII.

An ancient custom—An Italian opera—The Italian music—
(a) *ancien* * *coutume* f. *italien* *opéra* m. (a) *musique* f.

A pagan ceremony—The pagan superstitions—A good work —
(a) *païen* *cérémonie* f. (e) *superstition* f. (g) *ouvrage* m.

A good thought—A deceitful woman—A delightful valley—
(h) *pensée* f. (b) *trompeur* (b) *délicieux* *vallée* f.

A happy condition—A superior power—A white feather.
(b) *condition* f. (c) *puissance* f. (d) *plume* f.

A white handkerchief—The public tranquillity—Delusive promises—A great garden—A great house—A bitter apple—A figurative expression—A specious pretence—A pernicious maxim.

References.

(a) }
(b) } See this Rule.
(c) }
(d) }

(e) See 94 and 69.

(g) See 88.

(h) See 94 and 88.

* This adjective before its substantive.

Read, translate and parse.

Un chemin sec. Des branches sèches. Le bien public.
L'oreille délicate d'un musicien. La bienfaisance active
d'un protecteur.

EXAMINATION.—94. What is the feminine of adjectives in *ien* and *on*? 95. How are adjectives in *eux* and *eur* made feminine? 96. What adjectives in *eur* follow the general rule? 97. What is the feminine of adjectives ending in *c*?

Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives continued.

98. (a) Five adjectives have two masculines in use, and form their feminine as follows:

Handsome,	<i>beau</i> or <i>bel</i> , * m.	<i>belle</i> , f.
Foolish,	<i>fou</i> or <i>fol</i> ,	<i>folle</i> .
Soft,	<i>mou</i> or <i>mol</i> ,	<i>molle</i> .
New,	<i>nouveau</i> or <i>nouvel</i> ,	<i>nouvelle</i> .
Old,	<i>vieux</i> or <i>vieil</i> ,	<i>vieille</i> .

* *Bel*, *fol*, *mol*, *nouvel*, and *vieil*, are used before substantives masculine beginning with a vowel or *h* silent; as, *un bel homme*, a handsome man; *un nouvel acteur*, a new actor; *un fol espoir*, a foolish hope. But, in common conversation, we say indifferently, *un vieil* or *un vieux officier*, an old officer; *un vieux ami* or *un vieil ami*; though *vieux* should be preferred. The plural masculine of *bel*, *fol*, *mol*, *nouvel*, and *vieil*, is *beaux*, *fous*, *mous*, *nouveaux*, and *vieux*.

99. (b) The following adjectives cannot be brought under any rule, on account of their irregularities:

Sweet,	<i>doux</i> , m.	<i>douce</i> , fem.
Bewitching,	<i>enchanteur</i> ,	<i>enchanteresse</i> .
False,	<i>faux</i> ,	<i>fausse</i> .
Favorite,	<i>favori</i> ,	<i>favorite</i> .
Nice, pretty, &c.	<i>gentil</i> ,	<i>gentille</i> .
Jealous,	<i>jaloux</i> ,	<i>jalouse</i> .
Long,	<i>long</i> ,	<i>longue</i> .
Protecting,	<i>protecteur</i> ,	<i>protectrice</i> .
Treacherous,	<i>traître</i> ,	<i>traîtresse</i> .
Avenging,	<i>vengeur</i> ,	<i>vengeresse</i> .

[To which may be added, *bénin*, *jumeau*, *malin*, *mat*, *nul*, *roux*, *tiers*, which make for their feminine, *bénigne*, *jumelle*, *maligne*, *matte*, *nulle*, *rousse*, and *tierce*. *Chatain*, *fat*, *dispos*, have no feminine.]

[Many nouns in *leur* become feminine by changing that termination into *trice*—*Bienfaiteur*, *bienfaitrice*; *acteur*, *actrice*, &c. But *empereur* makes *impératrice*; *pêcheur*, *pêcheresse*; *chasseur* makes *chasseuse* in prose, and *chasseresse* in poetry; *gouverneur* and *serviteur* make *gouvernante*, *servante*.—*Auteur* and *poète* are of both genders.]

EXERCISE XIV.

A fine poem—A fine statue—Fine pictures—Handsome ladies
beau poème m. (a) *statue* f. (d) *tableau* m. (d) *dame*

—A new fan—A new discovery—An old hat—
(c) † *nouveau éventail* m. (a) *découverte* f. *vieux chapeau* m.

An old coat—A sweet temper—A bewitching smile—A
(c) *habit* m. *caractère* m. *sourire* m.

bewitching voice.

(b) *voix* f.

The protecting hand of Providence—An avenging Deity—A
favorite dog—A favorite walk—A false assertion—A false † friend.

References.

(a) } See this Rule.

(c) See note *, page 26.

(b) } This adjective before its substantive.

(d) See reference †, page 24.

Read, translate and parse.

Un mari jaloux. Une longue expérience. Une femme jalouse. Les vieux titres d'une famille noble. Un long voyage. Le style enchanteur de Fénelon.

EXAMINATION.—98. Mention those adjectives which have two masculine terminations. 99. What are the adjectives which form their feminine too irregularly to be classed? [What do you observe concerning nouns in *leur*?]

EXERCISE XV. ON ADJECTIVES. (82—99.)

An immortal memory—A dangerous passage—A dangerous road—
immortel f. m. *route* f.

A dark room—A narrow street—A good model—A cruel
obscur chambre f. *étroit* *rue* f. *modèle* m. || —

and revengeful animal—Cruel and revengeful animals—The public
vindictif — m. ||

authority—A bewitching book—A kind disposition—A
autorité f. *enchanteur* *livre* m. *bénin** *humour* f.

favorite walk—The pernicious properties of a plant—A
promenade f. *qualité* f. *plante* f.

delightful prospect—The heir apparent to the crown—
délicieux *vue* f. *héritier* m. *présomptif* de *couronne* f.

An old acquaintance—A long, tedious journey—Great and
* *ancien* *connaissance* f. || *long* *ennuyeux* *voyage* m.

extensive projects.
vaste *projet* m.

A liberal prince—A plain, simple, and natural style.—The
— m. || *uni* — *naturel* — m.

inventive power of Shakspeare—The sublime conceptions of
créateur *esprit* m. — *pensée* f.

Milton—The pathetic simplicity of Sterne—The general officers
.... *officier* m.

of an army—Gentle, amiable, and docile children—A sensible
armée f. || *doux* *aimable* — *enfant* m. *sensé*

young man—Pastoral poetry—A final answer—A friendly
¶ art. — † *poésie* f. — *réponse* f. *amical*

conversation—The wise Socrates—Nasal sounds—A fatal
— f. *sage* † ‡ — † *son* m. —

event—A useful book—An old house—Filial affection
événement m. *utile* *livre* m. *vieux* *maison* f. art. — — f.

—Engaging manners.
engageant *manière* f.

* *Bénin* is generally used ironically and applied to weak, good-natured people.—A. H.

References.

‡ When several adjectives qualify a substantive, they are placed after it, and the conjunction *et* (and) is put before the last, whether it is expressed in English or not: an amiable, virtuous man; *un homme aimable et vertueux*.

¶ When one of the adjectives belongs to those which generally precede, and the other to those which must be placed after the substantive, they retain their natural order—a thoughtless young man: *un jeune homme étourdi*.

* This adjective must precede its substantive.

‡ The following adjectives in *al* have no plural in use for the masculine; *do-real, flial, lustral, martial, pastoral, vénéral*, and a few more seldom used. The following take *s*: *fatal, final, labial, matinal, médial, nasal, naval, théâtral, initial, pascal*; but custom is divided for the plural of *austral, colossal, doctoral, ducal, frugal*, which may either take *s*, or change *al* into *aux*.

†† The article is used before the adjective which precedes a proper name.

☞ The comparison of adjectives would naturally follow; but as this cannot be done without employing verbs and adverbs, with which the learner is not yet acquainted, it does not enter into our plan to treat of them in this place.

100. ADJECTIVES OF NUMBERS.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

One, <i>un</i> , m. <i>une</i> , f. (p. 10, No. 58.)	Twenty-five, <i>vingt-cinq</i>
Two, <i>deux</i>	Twenty-six, <i>vingt-six</i>
Three, <i>trois</i>	Twenty-seven, <i>vingt-sept</i>
Four, <i>quatre</i>	Twenty-eight, <i>vingt-huit</i>
Five, <i>cing</i>	Twenty-nine, <i>vingt-neuf</i>
Six, <i>six</i>	Thirty, <i>trente</i>
Seven, <i>sept</i>	Thirty-one, <i>trente et un</i>
Eight, <i>huit</i>	Thirty-two, &c. <i>trente-deux, &c.</i>
Nine, <i>neuf</i>	Forty, <i>quarante</i>
Ten, <i>dix</i>	Forty-one, <i>quarante et un</i>
Eleven, <i>onze</i>	Forty-two, &c. <i>quarante-deux, &c.</i>
Twelve, <i>douze</i>	Fifty, <i>cinquante</i>
Thirteen, <i>treize</i>	Fifty-one, <i>cinquante et un</i>
Fourteen, <i>quatorze</i>	Fifty-two, &c. <i>cinquante-deux, &c.</i>
Fifteen, <i>quinze</i>	Sixty, <i>soixante</i>
Sixteen, <i>seize</i>	Sixty-one, <i>soixante et un</i>
Seventeen, <i>dix-sept</i>	Sixty-two, &c. <i>soixante-deux, &c.</i>
Eighteen, <i>dix-huit</i>	Seventy, <i>soixante-dix</i>
Nineteen, <i>dix-neuf</i>	Seventy-one, <i>soixante et onze</i>
Twenty, <i>vingt</i>	Seventy-two, <i>soixante-douze</i>
Twenty-one, <i>vingt et un</i>	Seventy-three, <i>soixante-treize</i>
Twenty-two, <i>vingt-deux</i>	Seventy-four, <i>soixante-quatorze</i>
Twenty-three, <i>vingt-trois</i>	Seventy-five, <i>soixante-quinze</i>
Twenty-four, <i>vingt-quatre</i>	Seventy-six, <i>soixante-seize</i>

Seventy-seven, <i>soixante-dix-sept</i>	Ninety-seven, <i>quatre-vingt-dix-sept</i>
Seventy-eight, <i>soixante-dix-huit</i>	Ninety-eight, <i>quatre-vingt-dix-huit</i>
Seventy-nine, <i>soixante-dix-neuf</i>	Ninety-nine, <i>quatre-vingt-dix-neuf</i>
Eighty, <i>quatre-vingts</i>	A hundred, <i>cent</i>
Eighty-one, <i>quatre-vingt-un</i>	A hundred and one, <i>cent-un</i>
Eighty-two, <i>quatre-vingt-deux</i>	A hundred and two, <i>cent-deux</i>
Eighty-three, <i>quatre-vingt-trois</i>	A hundred and three, <i>cent-trois</i> , &c.
Eighty-four, <i>quatre-vingt-quatre</i>	Two hundred, <i>deux cents</i>
Eighty-five, <i>quatre-vingt-cinq</i>	Three hundred, <i>trois cents</i>
Eighty-six, <i>quatre-vingt-six</i>	Four hundred, <i>quatre cents</i>
Eighty-seven, <i>quatre-vingt-sept</i>	Five hundred, <i>cinq cents</i>
Eighty-eight, <i>quatre-vingt-huit</i>	Six hundred, <i>six cents</i>
Eighty-nine, <i>quatre-vingt-neuf</i>	Seven hundred, <i>sept cents</i>
Ninety, <i>quatre-vingt-dix</i>	Eight hundred, <i>huit cents</i>
Ninety-one, <i>quatre-vingt-onze</i>	Nine hundred, <i>neuf cents</i>
Ninety-two, <i>quatre-vingt-douze</i>	One thousand, <i>mille</i>
Ninety-three, <i>quatre-vingt-treize</i>	One million, <i>million</i>
Ninety-four, <i>quatre-vingt-quatorze</i>	
Ninety-five, <i>quatre-vingt-quinze</i>	
Ninety-six, <i>quatre-vingt-seize</i>	

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

First, <i>premier</i> , m. <i>première</i> , f.	Fourteenth, <i>quatorzième</i>
Second, { <i>deuxième</i> <i>second</i> , m. <i>seconde</i> , f.	Fifteenth, <i>quinzième</i>
Third, <i>troisième</i>	Sixteenth, <i>seizième</i>
Fourth, <i>quatrième</i>	Seventeenth, <i>dix-septième</i>
Fifth, <i>cinquième</i>	Eighteenth, <i>dix-huitième</i>
Sixth, <i>sixième</i>	Nineteenth, <i>dix-neuvième</i>
Seventh, <i>septième</i>	Twentieth, <i>vingtième</i>
Eighth, <i>huitième</i>	Twenty-first, <i>vingt et unième</i>
Ninth, <i>neuvième</i>	Twenty-second, <i>vingt-deuxième</i> , &c.
Tenth, <i>dixième</i>	Thirtieth, <i>trentième</i>
Eleventh, <i>onzième</i>	Thirty-first, <i>trente et unième</i>
Twelfth, <i>douzième</i>	Thirty-second, <i>trente-deuxième</i> , &c.
Thirteenth, <i>treizième</i>	

OF PRONOUNS.

101. A pronoun is a word which generally supplies the place of a noun.

There are six kinds of pronouns: *possessive*, *demonstrative*, *personal*, *relative*, *interrogative*, and *indeterminate*.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

102. Possessive pronouns are so called because they denote property or possession.

103. There are two sorts of possessive pronouns ; those that are *always*, and those that are *never*, joined to a noun : the former are called *possessive conjunctive*, the latter, *possessive relative* pronouns.

OF POSSESSIVE CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.*

104. The possessive conjunctive pronouns are always joined to a noun, which they precede, and with which they agree in gender and number.

105. They are : *my, thy, his, her, or its, our, your, their*, and are translated into French as follows :

My	<i>mon</i> , m.	<i>ma</i> , f.	<i>mes</i> , m. & f. pl.
Thy	<i>ton</i> ,	<i>ta</i> ,	<i>tes</i> .
His, her, its,	<i>son</i> ,	<i>sa</i> ,	<i>ses</i> .
Our,	<i>notre</i> ,	<i>notre</i> ,	<i>nos</i> .
Your,	<i>votre</i> ,	<i>votre</i> ,	<i>vos</i> .
Their,	<i>leur</i> ,	<i>leur</i> ,	<i>leurs</i> .

106. (a) *Mon, ton, son*, precede substantives masculine singular.

My father,	<i>mon père.</i>
Thy brother,	<i>ton frère.</i>
† His, her, or its courage,	<i>son courage.</i>

107. (b) *Ma, ta, sa*, are placed before nouns feminine singular, beginning with a consonant.

My mother,	<i>ma mère.</i>
Thy sister,	<i>ta sœur.</i>
His, her, or its beauty,	<i>sa beauté.</i>

* As the possessive conjunctive pronouns determine the signification of the substantive by adding to it an idea of possession, they have been classed by some grammarians amongst real adjectives.

† The possessive conjunctive pronouns do not agree in gender with the possessor, as in English, but with the person or thing possessed : Your uncle has seen his daughter ; *Votre oncle a vu sa fille*. Your aunt has lost her son ; *Votre tante a perdu son fils*.

108. (c) But instead of *ma, ta, sa*, we use *mon, ton, son*, when the noun feminine which follows begins with a vowel, or *h* mute.

My soul,	<i>mon âme,</i>	not <i>ma âme.</i>
Thy history,	<i>ton histoire,</i>	— <i>ta histoire.</i>
His or her avarice,	<i>son avarice,</i>	— <i>sa avarice.</i>

109. (d) *Notre, votre, leur*, are put before nouns singular of either gender.

Our friend,	<i>notre ami.</i>
Your house,	<i>votre maison.</i>
Their garden,	<i>leur jardin.</i>

110. (e) *Mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, leurs*, precede nouns masculine or feminine plural.

My brothers,	<i>mes frères.</i>
Thy sisters,	<i>tes sœurs.</i>
His, her, or its qualities,	<i>ses qualités.</i>
Our masters,	<i>nos maîtres.</i>
Your flowers,	<i>vos fleurs.</i>
Their friends,	<i>leurs amis.</i>

Declension of the possessive conjunctive pronouns.

My ——— *mon livre, ma plume, mes amis.*
 Of or from my *de mon livre, de ma plume, de mes amis.*
 To my ——— *à mon livre, à ma plume, à mes amis.*

EXERCISE XVI.

My fan——My carriage——My white hat——My hand——My
 (a) *éventail m. (b) voiture f. (a) blanc chapeau m. (b) main f. (c)*
 illusion——My industry——My servants——Thy modesty——Thy
 ——— f. (c) f. (e) *domestique m. (b) f. (b)*
 sincerity——The regularity of thy features——His young friend——The
 f. f. (e) *trait m. (a) † ami m.*
 delicacy of his behaviour——Her insufferable pride——Her
délicatesse f. (b) conduite f. (a) insupportable orgueil m. (b)
 gratitude——Its colour——Our opinion——Our family——Our friends
reconnaissance f. (b) couleur f. (d) ——— f. (d) famille f. (e)
 —Your dexterity——Your servants——Your connexions——Their virtue
 (d) *adresse f. (e) (e) liaison f. (d) vertuf.*

—Their house—Their inviolable fidelity—The honour of their
 (d) *maison* f. (d) — f. *honneur* m. (d)
 family—The tenderness of their mother—Their amiable qualities.
tendresse f. (d) *mère* f. (e) * *aimable* *qualité* f.

My obedience to his orders—My application to study—Thy obliging answer—His qualifications—His humility—The immense riches of her uncle—The novelty of their pamphlet—The purity of her soul—Its vivacity—The gracefulness of their sister—The unanimity of their resolutions.

References.

(a) }
 (b) }
 (c) } See this Rule.
 (d) }
 (e) }

† See 88.

* This adjective may precede or follow its substantive.

METHOD OF PARSING A PRONOUN.

Questions. Is it possessive, demonstrative, personal, relative, interrogative, or indeterminate? What gender? What number? With what does it agree in the sentence?

Read, translate and parse.

La douceur de ses paroles. La violence de sa conduite.
 Mon approbation. L'indigence de son ami. Ton violon
 et sa harpe. Notre persévérance et nos efforts.

EXAMINATION.—101. What is a pronoun? How many kinds of pronouns are there? 102. Why are possessive pronouns so called? 103. How are they divided? 104. What is the place of the possessive conjunctive pronouns? 105. What are the possessive pronouns in English, and how are they translated? 106. How do you express *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, or *its*, for the masculine singular? 106†. Does the conjunctive possessive pronoun agree with the possessor in French as in English? 107. When are *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, used? 108. Are *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, always used before a noun singular feminine? 109. How do you express the pronouns *our*, *your*, and *their*? 110. Of what gender are *mes*, *tes*, *ses*, *nos*, *vos*, *leurs*?

OF POSSESSIVE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

111. Possessive relative pronouns are never joined to substantives, but relate to some noun spoken of before or understood, with which they agree in gender and number.

112. The possessive relative pronouns are :

	masc.	fem.	masc. pl.	fem. pl.
Mine,	<i>le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes.</i>
Thine,	<i>le tien,</i>	<i>la tienne,</i>	<i>les tiens,</i>	<i>les tiennes.</i>
His, hers, its,	<i>le sien,</i>	<i>la sienne,</i>	<i>les siens,</i>	<i>les siennes.</i>
Ours,	<i>le nôtre,</i>	<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>	<i>les nôtres.</i>
Yours,	<i>le vôtre,</i>	<i>la vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>	<i>les vôtres.</i>
Theirs,	<i>le leur,</i>	<i>la leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>	<i>les leurs.</i>

113. (a) *Le mien, le tien, le sien, le nôtre, le vôtre, and le leur*, relate to a substantive masculine singular.

Your hat and mine,	<i>votre chapeau et le mien.</i>
My book and his or hers,	<i>mon livre et le sien.</i>
His penknife and yours,	<i>son canif et le vôtre.</i>

114. (b) *La mienne, la tienne, la sienne, la nôtre, la vôtre, la leur*, relate to a noun feminine singular.

Your house and mine,	<i>votre maison et la mienne.</i>
My watch and his or hers,	<i>ma montre et la sienne.</i>
Your affection and theirs,	<i>votre affection et la leur.</i>

115. (c) The relatives, *les miens, les tiens, les siens, les nôtres, les vôtres, les leurs*, refer to a noun masculine plural.

Your relations and mine,	<i>vos parents et les miens.</i>
Thy talents and hers,	<i>tes talents et les siens.</i>
My horses and yours,	<i>mes chevaux et les vôtres.</i>

116. (d) *Les miennes, les tiennes, les siennes, les nôtres, les vôtres, les leurs*, refer to a substantive feminine plural.

His sisters and thine,	<i>ses sœurs et les tiennes.</i>
My flowers and hers,	<i>mes fleurs et les siennes.</i>
Their oranges and ours,	<i>leurs oranges et les nôtres.</i>

These pronouns are declined with the article definite, thus :

	masc.	fem.	masc. pl.	fem. pl.
Mine,	<i>le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes.</i>
Of mine,	<i>du mien,</i>	<i>de la mienne,</i>	<i>des miens,</i>	<i>des miennes.</i>
To mine,	<i>au mien,</i>	<i>à la mienne,</i>	<i>aux miens,</i>	<i>aux miennes.</i>

EXERCISE XVII.

My happiness and yours—My courage and his—My father and
bonheur m. (a) — m. (a)
 thine—His complaisance and hers—Your friendship and his—The
 (a) — f. (b) *amitié* f. (b)
 civil behaviour of your brother and || his—Thy maps and my
honnête procédé m. † *carte* f.
 own—Your horse and mine—His watch and yours—Your
 (d) † *cheval* m. (a) *montre* f. (b)
 books and theirs—Your laws and ours—His wit and hers—
livre m. (c) *loi* f. (d) *esprit* m. (a)
 Your songs and his—His country house and theirs—The
chanson f. (d) *maison de campagne* f. (b)
 sprightliness of your daughters and || theirs—Her stubbornness
vivacité f. *fille* f. (d) *opiniâtreté* f.
 and yours.
 (b)

Your fickleness and hers—Our memory and theirs—His great
 politeness and yours—His benefactor and hers—Their misfortunes
 and ours—My duty and yours—Her nosegay and thine—The
 distinguished merit of his friends and mine—Your ambition and
 his—The sweetness of your temper and hers.

References.

- (a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }
 (d) }
 † The preposition *of*, which is understood in English, must be expressed in French.
 † *Du sien*, if you speak of one only;
 but, *des siens*, if you speak of several.
 † *My own, thy own, his own, &c.* are rendered in the same manner as *mine, thine, &c.* when they supply the place of these pronouns.

Read, translate and parse.

Son humeur et la sienne. Le courage de nos guerriers
 et des leurs. L'orgueil insupportable de votre frère et du
 mien. Vos troupeaux et les miens. Notre mémoire et la
 leur.

EXAMINATION.—111. With what words do the possessive relative pronouns agree?
 112. Name the possessive relative pronouns. 113. How do you express the possessive relative *mine, thine, his or hers, ours, yours, and theirs*, used instead of a noun masculine singular? 114. And with reference to a noun feminine singular? 115. How do you express the same pronouns when they have for their antecedent a noun masculine plural? 116. And when their antecedent is feminine plural?

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

117. The demonstrative pronouns are so called, because they point out the objects of which we are speaking.

118. These pronouns are divided into conjunctive and disjunctive.

119. The conjunctive demonstrative pronouns are always joined to a noun which they precede; they are, *this* and *that* for the singular; *these* and *those* for the plural.*

120. (a) *This* and *that* are expressed by *ce*, before a noun masculine singular beginning with a consonant.

This or that general,	<i>ce général.</i>
This or that gentleman,	<i>ce monsieur.</i>

121. (b) *This* or *that* is expressed by *cet*, when the noun joined is of the masculine gender, but beginning with a vowel or *h* silent.

This or that angel,	<i>cet ange.</i>
This or that man,	<i>cet homme.</i>

122. (c) When the noun is feminine singular, *this* and *that* are expressed by *cette*, before vowels as well as before consonants.

This woman,	<i>cette femme.</i>
That friendship,	<i>cette amitié.</i>

123. (d) *These* and *those* are always translated by *ces*, before all sorts of nouns; as,

These men,	<i>ces hommes.</i>
Those trees,	<i>ces arbres.</i>
These flowers,	<i>ces fleurs.</i>

[The French make use of the adverbs *ci* and *là*, to denote the person or thing more particularly. This man, *cel homme-ci*; that woman, *cette femme-là*. Or, to avoid an ambiguity: *là* denoting a distant object, and *ci* one that is present, or near the place where the person is who speaks.]

* These pronouns are also considered as real adjectives.

Declension of the demonstrative conjunctive pronouns.

Singular.

<i>Ce général,</i>	<i>cet ange,</i>	<i>cette femme.</i>
<i>De ce général,</i>	<i>de cet ange,</i>	<i>de cette femme.</i>
<i>A ce général,</i>	<i>à cet ange,</i>	<i>à cette femme.</i>

Plural.

<i>Ces généraux,</i>	<i>ces anges,</i>	<i>ces femmes.</i>
<i>De ces généraux,</i>	<i>de ces anges,</i>	<i>de ces femmes.</i>
<i>A ces généraux,</i>	<i>à ces anges,</i>	<i>à ces femmes.</i>

EXERCISE XVIII.

The colouring of that picture—This danger—The tears of
coloris m. (a) tableau m. (a) — m. pleurs m. pl.
 this child—The flowers of that nosegay—The shade of that
(b) enfant m. (a) bouquet m. ombre f. (a)
 grove—Of that light—To these officers—The eloquence of that
bosquet m. (c) lumière f. (d) officier m. éloquence f. (b)
 orator—This horse—That honour—These fertile provinces—
*.... m. (a) cheval m. (b) honneur m. (d) * — f.*
 That fine kingdom—The nymphs of these meadows—The elegant
(a) beau royaume m. nymphe (d) prairie f. élégant
 form of that carriage—The goodness of that lady.
forme f. (c) voiture f. bonté f. (c) dame.

The great ambition of that minister—The abundance of that fine country—The misery of that family—The lofty language of that historian—The description of that city—The affability of that gentleman—The down of these peaches—The unhappy victims of that revolution—The rapidity of this torrent—This rash behaviour.

References.

- (a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

See this Rule.

* This adjective may precede its substantive.

Read, translate and parse.

Le tourment de cette longue absence. Le modération de ses désirs. L'utilité de ce thermomètre. Le ressort de cette machine.

EXAMINATION.—117. Why are the demonstrative pronouns so called? 118. How are they divided? 119. What are the demonstrative conjunctive pronouns? 120. How are *this* and *that* translated into French? 121. When is *this* or *that*

translated by *cel*? 122. How do you express *this* and *that* before a noun feminine? 123. How are *these* and *those* translated? [When are the adverbs *ci* and *là* added to the demonstrative pronouns?]

EXERCISE XIX. ON THE POSSESSIVE CONJUNCTIVE, RELATIVE, AND DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. (104—123.)

My room—Their military hospitals—Her alliance—Your time
chambre f. — *f.* *temps m.*
 and mine—This mill and that farm—That skilful surgeon—
moulin m. *ferme f.* * *habile chirurgien*
 His jealous disposition—The great efforts of your friend and hers—
caractère m. — *m.* *m.*
 The cheapness of your house and mine—The loose morality
bon marché m. *licentieux morale f.*
 of those plays—His consent and yours—Its perfect
pièce f. *consentement m.* *parfait*
 maturity—The neighbouring fields—Six fine black horses—An
 *f.* *voisin* *campagne f.* † *noir*
 incurable disease—The singular adventures of that traveller—The
 — *maladie f.* *singulier aventure f.* *voyageur m.*
 flattering words of the goddess Calypso—A restless temper—
flatteur parole f. *déesse* — *inquiet humeur f.*
 The thick shade of that oak—The flowers of your garden and
épais ombre f. *chêne m.* *fleur f.* *jardin m.*
 theirs—Her affected modesty—The mild administration of their
affecté f. *doux* — *f.*
 government and ours—Their numerous congregation—Our holy
gouvernement m. *nombreux* — *f.*
 religion—Our noble grandfather—His brave companions and ours
 — *f.* * — *atoul m.* — *compagnon m.*
 —My pupils and yours—The shameful flight of their troops
élève m. & f. *honteux fuite f.* *troupe f.*
 and ours—The absurdity of your conjectures and hers—The
 ... *f.* — *f.*
 fervency of our prayers—The price of these gloves and theirs—
ferveur f. *prière f.* *prix m.* *gant m.*
 The beauty of that landscape—The insolent threat of his son
 *f.* *paysage m.* — *menace f.*
 and yours—The costly furniture of that palace—The
précieux ameublement m. *palais m.*
 robust constitution of his children.
robuste tempérament m.

References.

* This adjective to precede its substantive.

† Adjectives of number precede their substantives or other adjectives.—See note ¶, page 29.

As the personal, relative, interrogative, and indeterminate pronouns are so much connected with verbs, that it is impossible to give exercises on the former without introducing the latter, I shall treat of verbs first.

OF VERBS.

124. The verb is a word which chiefly expresses an affirmation.

[When we say, *God is just*, we affirm that the quality *just* belongs to God; and in the sentence, *God is not unjust*, we likewise assert that the quality *unjust* does not belong to God. In both phrases, the word *is*, which expresses that affirmation, is a verb.]

125. There are six sorts of verbs: the *transitive*, *passive*, *intransitive*, *reflected*, *reciprocal*, and *impersonal*. A verb is

TRANSITIVE. *

When the nomina- } acting upon an object. *He reads a letter.*
tive † or subject is }

PASSIVE. †

When the 'nomina- { bearing the effect of } *Eliza was hurt by*
tive or subject is { another's action. } *her sister.*

INTRANSITIVE OR NEUTER, §

When the nomina-
tive is .

{	acting, but not doing	}	<i>She dances.</i>
	anything to another.		
	merely existing.			I am, I exist.

When the verb { expresses the state of } *Peter sits.*
 { its nominative. }

* A verb is known to be *transitive* when we may add to it the word *somebody* or *something*—*he reads something*.

† The nominative of a verb is always a noun, a pronoun, or the infinitive of another verb.

‡ *Passive*, from the Latin *passivus*, derived from *patior*, I suffer, means one that bears the effect of another's action.

§ *Neuter* is the Latin for *neither* and means that these verbs are neither transitive nor passive.

REFLECTIVE, *

When the 'phrase { the action of a subject } *I hurt myself.*
shows { upon itself.

RECIPROCAL, †

When two or more { act upon each other. { *We love one ano-*
nominatives { ther.

IMPERSONAL, ‡

When the pronoun { what is, or what hap- } *It rains, it becomes.*
indeterminate it { pens. shows

126. Verbs are also divided into *regular* and *irregular*, *perfect* and *defective*.

127. Regular verbs are those the tenses of which are formed in a uniform manner, according to certain rules.

128. Irregular verbs are those which deviate from the rules by which regular verbs are conjugated.

129. Perfect verbs have all their moods and tenses.

130. Defective verbs are those which want some of their moods or tenses.

131. The French have also two *auxiliary verbs*, so called because they serve to conjugate all the other verbs.

OF THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

132. To conjugate a verb is to write or repeat its different terminations, through every *mood*, *tense*, *number*, and *person*.

* *Reflective* verbs have sometimes an transitive signification, as in the above example. Sometimes they are used in a passive sense, as, *je m'ennuie*, that is, *je suis ennuyé*. They are also neuter, when they express neither action nor passion, but a situation or mode of existing; as, *elle s'endort*, *elle se meurt*, that is, she is in a situation next to sleep or death.—These verbs are also called *pronominal*, because they generally take two pronouns.

† *Reciprocal* verbs have no singular.—The reflected and reciprocal verbs, though not noticed by English grammarians, make an essential part of French grammar, since they are conjugated differently from other verbs.

‡ *Impersonal*, so called, because their effects are attributed to no person. The others are *personal*.

133. There are four conjugations or classes of verbs in French; they are distinguished by the termination of the present of the infinitive.

134. The first conjugation ends in *er*, as, *aimer*. The second ends in *ir*, as, *punir*. The third in *oir*, as, *devoir*. The fourth in *re*, as, *rendre*.

135. There are four different ways of conjugating the same verbs—

<i>Affirmatively</i> , when we declare that a	
person acts, or is,	as, <i>I do; I am.</i>
<i>Negatively</i> , when we deny it,	— <i>I do not; I am not.</i>
<i>Interrogatively</i> , when a question is asked,	— <i>Do I? Am I?</i>
<i>Interrogatively and negatively</i> ,	— <i>Do I not? Am I not?</i>

OF MOODS.

136. Moods are the different manners of using the verb. There are five moods: the *infinitive*, the *indicative*, the *conditional*, the *imperative*, and the *subjunctive*.

137. The infinitive affirms in an unlimited manner, without any distinction of number or person; as, *to speak*, *to have received*, *being loved*.

138. The indicative affirms in a positive and absolute manner. *You are here; I shall travel.*

139. The conditional affirms a thing as dependent on a condition. *You would go out if you could.*

140. The imperative commands, prays, forbids, enjoins, advises, exhorts, permits; as, *Stop! Let us write.*

141. The subjunctive mood is so called from its dependency and subordination to something which precedes. *I wish he may come.*—It is likewise the mood of doubt and indecision. *I question whether he could do it.*

OF TENSES. (DES TEMPS, i. e. times.)

142. Tenses indicate whether an action is doing, has been done, or will be done. Hence three tenses, the *present*, the *perfect*, or *past*, and the *future*; but these have been subdivided, to mark their differences with accuracy.

143. The tenses of verbs are divided into simple and compound.

144. Simple tenses are those which do not require any part of the verb *to have*, *avoir*, or *to be*, *être*.

145. Compound tenses are those which are formed with a tense of the verb *avoir* or *être*.

146. The infinitive has six tenses :

The present, (*which is the root of the verb*)
 the perfect, (*compound*)
 the gerund,
 the gerund past, (*compound*)
 the participle,
 the future.

147. The indicative mood has eight tenses :

The present,
 the imperfect,
 the perfect definite,
 the perfect indefinite, (*compound*)
 the perfect anterior, (*compound*)
 the pluperfect, (*compound*)
 the future absolute,
 the future anterior, (*compound*.)

[The French use several other tenses which form idiomatical expressions. These tenses will be noticed in the conjugations.]

148. The conditional has two tenses :

The present,
 the past, (*compound*.)

149. The imperative has but one tense, which is at once *present* and *future*: present, with respect to the action of commanding; and future, with respect to the thing enjoined.

150. The subjunctive mood has four tenses :

The present or future,
 the imperfect,
 the perfect, (*compound*)
 the pluperfect, (*compound*.)

OF NUMBERS.

151. The number is the form which the verb assumes to denote its agreement with its nominative.

152. Each tense has two numbers, the singular and the plural; (*singular*) I love, (*plural*) we love.

OF PERSONS.

153. Each number has three persons.

First Person.

154. When a person speaks of himself only, he does it in the first person singular, provided he uses a pronoun to stand in the place of his name; as, *I am*, *je suis*.

155. But if he speaks of another, or of others, besides himself, he does it in the first person plural, and then a pronoun stands both for himself and the rest; as, *we are*, *nous sommes*.

Second Person.

156. When the speaker addresses himself to one person, he may do it in the singular, but he will generally do it in the second person plural through politeness, and because we are seldom allowed to use *thou* and *thee*: *thou dost*, *tu fais*; *you do right*, *sir*, *vous faites bien*, *monsieur*.

157. If he speaks to several persons, he always uses the second person plural: *you all do*, *vous faites tous*; *you run*, *vous courez*.

[When, in speaking to one person, we wish, through politeness, to give the pronoun and the verb a plural form, the adjectives relating to that pronoun are to remain in the singular; as, *you are the only one*, *vous êtes le seul*. Nouns in the vocative are of the second person, whether a pronoun is used with the same or not.]

Third Person.

158. When we speak of one person or thing, we do it in the third person singular, whether we use a pronoun to stand instead of the noun, or mention the very name of the person or thing: *he does*, *il fait*; *she writes*, *elle écrit*; *my father pretends*, *mon père prétend*.

159. If we speak of several persons or things, we do it in the third person plural: *they do*, ils font; *your friends are rich*, vos amis sont riches.

[When, in addressing ourselves to a person, politeness or respect induces us to use a dignifying expression, instead of a personal pronoun, the verb, as well as what relates to that expression, is to be in the third person. Have you been so kind, my Lord, as to think of what you promised me? *Monseigneur a-t-il eu la bonté de penser à ce qu'il m'a promis?*]

EXAMINATION.—124. What is a verb? 125. How many kinds of verbs are there? Define the transitive verb; the passive; the neuter; the reflective; the reciprocal; the impersonal. 126. How are verbs divided with respect to their formation? 127. What is meant by a regular verb? 128. What is an irregular verb? 129. What is a perfect verb? 130. What is a defective verb? 131. Why are the auxiliary verbs so called? 132. What is meant by conjugating a verb? 133. How many conjugations are there in French, and how are they distinguished? 134. How do they end in the infinitive? 135. How many ways are there of conjugating the same verb? 136. What do you understand by moods, and how many are there? 137—141. What is the meaning of the infinitive, indicative, conditional, imperative, and subjunctive mood? 142. What do the tenses express? 143. How are the tenses divided? 144. What do you mean by a simple tense? 145. What is a compound tense? 146. How many tenses are there in the infinitive mood? 147. How many tenses has the indicative? 148. How many tenses are there in the conditional? 149. And the imperative? 150. Which are the tenses of the subjunctive? 151. What is meant by number in verbs? 152. How many numbers are there in verbs? 153. How many persons are there in each number? 154. When is the first person singular used? 155. When is the first person plural used? 156. When we address one person only, what person of the verb must we employ? 157. If we address several persons, what must we observe? 158. When is the third person used in the singular? 159. When is the plural used?

☞ As the verbs *avoir* and *être* serve to form the compound tenses of all other verbs, we shall begin with their conjugation.

PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

In repeating the verbs, the tenses should be named, and the English said before the French, not after, as is too commonly the case. As beginners only translate their thoughts when they begin to speak another language, the advantage of this method is obvious. Masters will appreciate this apparently trifling observation.

The final consonants of the auxiliary verbs must be sounded and joined to the following participle—in this case the final *s* takes the sound of *z*.

Modern grammarians observe that, to avoid ambiguity, the letter *l*, in *il* or *ils*, should be sounded, though frequently omitted or softened in rapid conversation.—The *s* of *ils* or *elles* takes the sound of *z* before a vowel.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB AVOIR.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>To have,</i>	Avoir.
PERFECT.	<i>To have had,</i>	avoir eu.
GERUND.	<i>Having,</i>	ayant, (<i>pron. è-ian.</i>)
GERUND PAST.	<i>Having had,</i>	ayant eu.
PARTICIPLE.	<i>Had,</i>	eu.
FUTURE.	<i>About to have,</i>	devant avoir.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.*

(*To-day, now ; aujourd'hui, maintenant.*)

Singular.

I have
Thou hast
he has
one has
my brother has
she has
my sister has

j'ai
tu as
il a
on a
mon frère a
elle a
ma sœur a

Plural.

We have
you have
they have—masc.
my brothers have
they have—fem.
my sisters have

nous avons
vous avez
ils ont
mes frères ont
elles ont
mes sœurs ont

IMPERFECT.†

(*Then, at that time ; alors.*)

I had
thou hadst
he had
we had
you had
they had

j'avais
tu avais
il avait
nous avions
vous aviez
ils avaient

* The *present* denotes a thing that is doing actually or habitually ; as, I write ; I am here ; when it is fine weather, I take a walk ; *j'écris, je suis ici, &c.*

† The *imperfect* denotes that an action was not finished at a certain time ; as, I was writing when my sister played, *j'écrivais tandis que ma sœur jouait* ; or, that an action was often repeated, at a time which is past ; as, when I was at Paris I often went to the opera, *quand j'étais à Paris j'allais souvent à l'opéra.*

PERFECT DEFINITE.*

(That year, cette année-là.)

<i>I had</i>	<i>j'eus</i>
<i>thou hadst</i>	<i>tu eus</i>
<i>he had</i>	<i>il eut</i>
<i>we had</i>	<i>nous eûmes</i>
<i>you had</i>	<i>vous eûtes</i>
<i>they had</i>	<i>ils eurent</i>

PERFECT INDEFINITE.†

(This morning, this week; ce matin, cette semaine.)

<i>I have had</i>	<i>j'ai eu</i>
<i>thou hast had</i>	<i>tu as eu</i>
<i>he has had</i>	<i>il a eu</i>
<i>we have had</i>	<i>nous avons eu</i>
<i>you have had</i>	<i>vous avez eu</i>
<i>they have had</i>	<i>ils ont eu</i>

PERFECT ANTERIOR.‡

(As soon as; dès que, aussitôt que.)

<i>I had had</i>	<i>j'eus eu</i>
<i>thou hadst had</i>	<i>tu eus eu</i>
<i>he had had</i>	<i>il eut eu</i>
<i>we had had</i>	<i>nous eûmes eu</i>
<i>you had had</i>	<i>vous eûtes eu</i>
<i>they had had</i>	<i>ils eurent eu</i>

PLUPERFECT.§

(When or whenever, quand.)

<i>I had had</i>	<i>j'avais eu</i>
<i>thou hadst had</i>	<i>tu avais eu</i>
<i>he had had</i>	<i>il avait eu</i>

* The *perfect definite* denotes a time entirely past and of which nothing is left; as, I wrote yesterday to Rome, *j'écrivis hier à Rome*; I took a journey to Bath last month, *je fis un voyage à Bath le mois dernier*. To authorize the use of this tense, there must be an interval of at least one day. *N. B.* This tense is particularly adapted to historical relations.

† The *perfect indefinite* is used either for a past indeterminate, or for a past of which something still remains; as, I have travelled through Italy, *j'ai voyagé en Italie*; I breakfasted this morning in London, *j'ai déjeuné ce matin à Londres*. Therefore, when the thing spoken of is represented as happening in the *day, week, month, year, or age* wherein we are, this tense must be used.

‡ The *perfect anterior* is used in the same sense as the perfect definite: it denotes a thing past, in a time of which no part remains to elapse; but it besides expresses most commonly, a thing past immediately before another, and is almost always construed with the conjunctions *quand, lorsque, dès que, aussitôt que, &c.* When I had finished my letter she desired me to read it to her, *quand j'eus fini ma lettre elle me pria de la lui lire*.

§ The *pluperfect* imports that at a certain specified time past, the thing spoken of was also past: I had written my letter when he came in, *j'avais écrit ma lettre quand il entra*.

[It may appear to an Englishman, that the sense expressed by the pluperfect and the perfect anterior, is nearly similar; yet there is this essential difference, that the

*we had had
you had had
they had had*

*nous avions eu
vous aviez eu
ils avaient eu*

[IDIOMATICAL PAST TENSES.]

Past tense just elapsed.

*I have just had
thou hast just had
he has just had
we have just had
you have just had
they have just had*

*je viens d'avoir
tu viens d'avoir
il vient d'avoir
nous venons d'avoir
vous venez d'avoir
ils viennent d'avoir*

Past definite anterior.

*I had just had
thou hadst just had
he had just had
we had just had
you had just had
they had just had*

*je venais d'avoir
tu venais d'avoir
il venait d'avoir
nous venions d'avoir
vous veniez d'avoir
ils venaient d'avoir*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.*

(*To-morrow, demain.*)

*I shall or will have
thou shalt or wilt have
he shall or will have
we shall or will have
you shall or will have
they shall or will have*

*j'aurai
tu auras
il aura
nous aurons
vous aurez
ils auront*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.†

(*To-morrow at twelve, demain à midi.*)

*I shall or will have had
thou shalt or wilt have had
he shall or will have had
we shall or will have had
you shall or will have had
they shall or will have had*

*j'aurai eu
tu auras eu
il aura eu
nous aurons eu
vous aurez eu
ils auront eu*

action expressed by the perfect anterior is subordinate to the following sentence, which is the principal object of our attention; thus, in—*dès que j'eus reconnu mon erreur je lui fis des excuses*, as soon as I was sensible of my error, I made him an apology—my intention is to say that *je lui fis des excuses*, but only after I was sensible of my error.—It is quite the contrary with the pluperfect; in the sentence, *j'avais écrit ma lettre quand il entra*, my principal object is expressed by the pluperfect *j'avais écrit*, and the following words *quand il entra* are only subordinate, for they do not expressly mention at what time he came in.]

* The future denotes a thing which is to be, at a time not yet come; we shall have peace, *nous aurons la paix*.

† The future anterior shows that a thing will be done before another: I shall have finished my letter when you come, *j'aurai fini ma lettre quand vous viendrez*.

[IDIOMATICAL FUTURE TENSES.]

Future indefinite positive.

<i>I am to have</i>	<i>je dois avoir</i>
<i>thou art to have</i>	<i>tu dois avoir</i>
<i>he is to have</i>	<i>il doit avoir</i>
<i>we are to have</i>	<i>nous devons avoir</i>
<i>you are to have</i>	<i>vous devez avoir</i>
<i>they are to have</i>	<i>ils doivent avoir</i>

Future instant.

<i>I am going to have</i>	<i>je vais avoir</i>
<i>thou art going to have</i>	<i>tu vas avoir</i>
<i>he is going to have</i>	<i>il va avoir</i>
<i>we are going to have</i>	<i>nous allons avoir</i>
<i>you are going to have</i>	<i>vous allez avoir</i>
<i>they are going to have</i>	<i>ils vont avoir</i>

Future imperfect.

<i>I was going to have</i>	<i>j'allais avoir</i>
<i>thou wast going to have</i>	<i>tu allais avoir</i>
<i>he was going to have</i>	<i>il allait avoir</i>
<i>we were going to have</i>	<i>nous allions avoir</i>
<i>you were going to have</i>	<i>vous alliez avoir</i>
<i>they were going to have</i>	<i>ils allaient avoir</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.*

(If that could be, si cela pouvait être.)

<i>I should or would have</i>	<i>j'aurais</i>
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst have</i>	<i>tu aurais</i>
<i>he should or would have</i>	<i>il aurait</i>
<i>we should or would have</i>	<i>nous aurions</i>
<i>you should or would have</i>	<i>vous auriez</i>
<i>they should or would have</i>	<i>ils auraient</i>

CONDITIONAL PAST.†

(If that could have been, si cela avait été possible.)

<i>I should or would have had</i>	<i>j'aurais eu</i>
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst have had</i>	<i>tu aurais eu</i>
<i>he should or would have had</i>	<i>il aurait eu</i>
<i>we should or would have had</i>	<i>nous aurions eu</i>
<i>you should or would have had</i>	<i>vous auriez eu</i>
<i>they should or would have had</i>	<i>ils auraient eu</i>

We likewise say: j'eusse eu, tu eusses eu, il eût eu,—nous eussions eu, vous eussiez eu, ils eussent eu.

* The conditional present denotes that a thing would happen upon a certain condition; as, I should go with you if I had time, *j'irais avec vous si j'avais le temps*. The conditional is also used in sentences of wishing; as, I wish he would come on Sunday, *je souhaiterais qu'il vint dimanche*.

† The conditional past suggests the idea of a thing which might, could, would, or should have happened, in an uncertain time, if another thing had taken place: the Minister would have given him that place, had he asked for it, *le Ministre lui aurait donné cette place s'il l'avait demandée*.

[IDIOMATICAL TENSES.]

Future conditional.

<i>I should or ought to have</i>	<i>je devrais avoir</i>
<i>thou oughtest to have</i>	<i>tu devrais avoir</i>
<i>he ought to have</i>	<i>il devrait avoir</i>
<i>we ought to have</i>	<i>nous devrions avoir</i>
<i>you ought to have</i>	<i>vous devriez avoir</i>
<i>they ought to have</i>	<i>ils devraient avoir</i>

Conditional anterior.

<i>I should or ought to have had</i>	<i>j'aurais dû avoir</i>
<i>thou oughtest to have had</i>	<i>tu aurais dû avoir</i>
<i>he ought to have had</i>	<i>il aurait dû avoir</i>
<i>we ought to have had</i>	<i>nous aurions dû avoir</i>
<i>you ought to have had</i>	<i>vous auriez dû avoir</i>
<i>they ought to have had</i>	<i>ils auraient dû avoir</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

(No first person singular.)

<i>Have (thou)</i>	<i>aie—(è)</i>
<i>let him have—let her have</i>	<i>qu'il ait—qu'elle ait—(è)</i>
<i>let the boy have</i>	<i>que le garçon ait</i>
<i>let us have</i>	<i>ayons—(è-ion)</i>
<i>have (ye)</i>	<i>ayez—(è-iez)</i>
<i>let them have</i>	<i>qu'ils aient—qu'elles aient (è)</i>
<i>let the children have</i>	<i>que les enfants aient</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT AND FUTURE.

<i>That I may have</i>	<i>que j'aie</i>
<i>that thou mayst have</i>	<i>que tu aies</i>
<i>that he may have</i>	<i>qu'il ait</i>
<i>that we may have</i>	<i>que nous ayons</i>
<i>that you may have</i>	<i>que vous ayez</i>
<i>that they may have</i>	<i>qu'ils aient</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>That I might have</i>	<i>que j'eusse</i>
<i>that thou mightst have</i>	<i>que tu eusses</i>
<i>that he might have</i>	<i>qu'il eût</i>
<i>that we might have</i>	<i>que nous eussions</i>
<i>that you might have</i>	<i>que vous eussiez</i>
<i>that they might have</i>	<i>qu'ils eussent</i>

PERFECT.

<i>That I may have had</i>	<i>que j'aie eu</i>
<i>that thou mayst have had</i>	<i>que tu aies eu</i>
<i>that he may have had</i>	<i>qu'il ait eu</i>
<i>that we may have had</i>	<i>que nous ayons eu</i>
<i>that you may have had</i>	<i>que vous ayez eu</i>
<i>that they may have had</i>	<i>qu'ils aient eu</i>

PLUPERFECT.

*That I might have had
that thou mightst have had
that he might have had
that we might have had
that you might have had
that they might have had*

*que j'eusse eu
que tu eusses eu
qu'il eût eu
que nous eussions eu
que vous eussiez eu
qu'ils eussent eu*

Observations on the following Exercises.

160. The verb must always be of the same person and number as its nominative.

161. Two or more nominatives singular require the verb to be in the plural.

162. When the nominative is a substantive, the verb must be in the third person singular or plural, according to the number of that substantive, and the pronoun is then omitted.

[Observe that the auxiliary verb *Avoir* serves to conjugate, 1o. Its own tenses. 2o. The compound tenses of all transitive verbs. 3o. Most impersonal verbs. 4o. Many intransitive verbs.]

EXERCISE XX.

INDICATIVE MOOD. PRESENT. I have a favourable opportunity
favorable occasion f.

—Thou hast an implacable enemy—He has a good sword—We
ennemi m. (b) épée f.

have books—You have friends—They have oranges.
(c) (c) (c) — f.

IMPERF. I had credit—Thou hast ambition—He had riches—
(c) — m. (c) — f. (c) richesse f.

She had modesty—We had paper—You had a flower—They
(c).... f. (c) papier m. fleur f.

had apples—They had youth and beauty.
(c) pomme f. Elles jeunesse f. (c).... f.

PERFECT DEFINITE. I had good pears—Thou hadst wealth—
(d) poire f. (c) bien m.

He had politeness—Lucy had a pretty nosegay—We had lemons—
(c) politesse f. Lucie (b) bouquet m. (c) citron m.

You had a fan—They had a splendid carriage—These ladies
éventail m. magnifique voiture f. dame

had an interview.
entrevue f.

PERFECT INDEFINITE. I have had pens—Miss Julia has had
(c) *plume* f. *

violets—We have had cherries—You have had almonds—My
(c) *violette* f. (c) *cerise* f. (c) *amande* f.
young cousins Henry and William have had gooseberries.
(b) *Henri* † (a) (c) *groseille* f.

PERFECT ANTERIOR. I had had strawberries—He had had the
(c) *fraise* f.

command of a ship—We had had money—You had had
commandement m. *vaisseau* m. (c) *argent* m.
a harp—Sophia and Elizabeth had had green parasols.
harpe f. *Elisabeth* (c) *vert ombrelle* f.

PLUPERFECT. I had had peaches—She had had an amiable
(c) *pêche* f. †

companion—My brother had had a helmet—You had had a little
compagne f. *casque* m. (b)

bird—They had had suspicion of the truth.
oiseau m. (c) *soupçon* m. *vérité* f.

FUTURE ABSOL. I shall have a worthy friend—Thou wilt have
‡ *digne*

a favourable answer—He will have a faithful dog—She will have
fidèle *chien* m.

coloured maps—We shall have news from the continent—
(c) *colorié* *carte* f. (c) *nouvelle* f. pl. — m.

You will have a considerable fortune—They will have convincing
— f. *convaincant*

proofs of my sincere affection.
(c) *preuves* f. *sincère* — f.

FUTURE ANT. I shall have had a note from my mother—He will
billet m.

have had the new pamphlet—She will have had horrid pains—
‡ *nouveau* *brochure* f. (c) *horrible* *douleur* f.

We shall have had a satisfactory explanation—You will have had
satisfaisant *explication* f.

unavailing cares—They will have had ridiculous pretensions.
inutile (c) *soin* m. *ridicule* (c) *prétention* f.

CONDIT. MOOD. PRES. I should have a powerful protector—
puissant

The prince would have a brilliant retinue—We should have the
— *brillant* *suite* f.

guardianship of that young lady—You would have a great fortune
tutelle f. (b) (b) — f.

—They would have pleasures and pains.
 (c) *plaisir* m. || (c) *peine* f.

CONDITIONAL PAST. I should have had a formidable rival—
redoutable — m.

Thou wouldst have had a magnificent country-seat—She would
magnifique *château* m.

have had a sound judgment—She would have had a great
sain *jugement* m. (b)

misfortune—We should have had an erroneous opinion—You
malheur m. *erroné* — f.

would have had lace—They would have had dignities.
 (c) *dentelle* f. (c) *dignité* f.

IMPERATIVE MOOD. Have (thou) complaisance, attention, and
 (c) — f. — f.

politeness—Let him have courage—Let the boy have patience—
 || *politesse* f. (c) — m. (c) — f.

Let us have irreproachable manners—Have humanity—Let
irréprochable (c) *mœurs* f. pl. (c) . . . f.

them have respectable acquaintances—Let the ladies have the
 — (c) *connaissance* f.

choice of those books.
choix m.

References.

(a) See 161.

(b) See 98.

(c) See 61.

(d) See † page 24.

* Mentioning an English young lady, particularly in a French letter, *miss* is used; but addressing her, write or say, *mademoiselle*.

† An English Christian name should not be translated, unless the French

corresponding one does not differ much, such as *Edouard*; but *Guillaume* should not be used for *William*, *Jacques* for *James* &c.

‡ This adjective may precede its substantive.

§ This adjective must precede its noun.

|| The article must be repeated before every substantive.

METHOD OF PARSING A VERB.

Questions. Name its infinitive. Its person. Its number. Its tense. Its mood. What kind of verb is it? Is it transitive, intransitive, passive, reflected, reciprocal, or impersonal? What is its nominative? What case does it govern?

Read, translate and parse.

J'ai des prunes. Il avait une voiture élégante et com-
 mode. Nous aurons de la prudence. Charlotte et George
 auraient eu des présents. J'ai eu des amis fidèles.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *ÊTRE*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>To be,</i>	<i>Être.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>To have been,</i>	<i>avoir été.</i>
GERUND.	<i>Being,</i>	<i>étant.</i>
GERUND PAST.	<i>Having been,</i>	<i>ayant été.</i>
PARTICIPLE.	<i>Been,</i>	<i>été.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>About to be,</i>	<i>devant être.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

<i>I am</i>	<i>je suis</i>
<i>thou art</i>	<i>tu es</i>
<i>he is</i>	<i>il est</i>
<i>one is</i>	<i>on est</i>
<i>my brother is</i>	<i>mon frère est</i>
<i>she is</i>	<i>elle est</i>
<i>my sister is</i>	<i>ma sœur est</i>

Plural.

<i>We are</i>	<i>nous sommes</i>
<i>you are</i>	<i>vous êtes</i>
<i>they are—mas.</i>	<i>ils sont</i>
<i>my brothers are</i>	<i>mes frères sont</i>
<i>they are—fem.</i>	<i>elles sont</i>
<i>my sisters are</i>	<i>mes sœurs sont</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>I was</i>	<i>j'étais</i>
<i>thou wast</i>	<i>tu étais</i>
<i>he was</i>	<i>il était</i>
<i>we were</i>	<i>nous étions</i>
<i>you were</i>	<i>vous étiez</i>
<i>they were</i>	<i>ils étaient</i>

PERFECT DEFINITE.

<i>I was</i>	<i>je fus</i>
<i>thou wast</i>	<i>tu fus</i>
<i>he was</i>	<i>il fut</i>
<i>we were</i>	<i>nous fûmes</i>
<i>you were</i>	<i>vous fûtes</i>
<i>they were</i>	<i>ils furent</i>

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

(Compound of the present.)

<i>I have been</i>	<i>j'ai été</i>
<i>thou hast been</i>	<i>tu as été</i>
<i>he has been</i>	<i>il a été</i>
<i>we have been</i>	<i>nous avons été</i>
<i>you have been</i>	<i>vous avez été</i>
<i>they have been</i>	<i>ils ont été</i>

PERFECT ANTERIOR.

(Compound of the perfect definite.)

<i>I had been</i>	<i>j'eus été</i>
<i>thou hadst been</i>	<i>tu eus été</i>
<i>he had been</i>	<i>il eut été</i>
<i>we had been</i>	<i>nous eûmes été</i>
<i>you had been</i>	<i>vous eûtes été</i>
<i>they had been</i>	<i>ils eurent été</i>

PLUPERFECT.

(Compound of the imperfect.)

<i>I had been</i>	<i>j'avais été</i>
<i>thou hadst been</i>	<i>tu avais été</i>
<i>he had been</i>	<i>il avait été</i>
<i>we had been</i>	<i>nous avions été</i>
<i>you had been</i>	<i>vous aviez été</i>
<i>they had been</i>	<i>ils avaient été</i>

[IDIOMATICAL PAST TENSES.]

Past tense just elapsed.

<i>I have just been</i>	<i>je viens d'être</i>
<i>thou hast just been</i>	<i>tu viens d'être</i>
<i>he has just been</i>	<i>il vient d'être</i>
<i>we have just been</i>	<i>nous venons d'être</i>
<i>you have just been</i>	<i>vous venez d'être</i>
<i>they have just been</i>	<i>ils viennent d'être</i>

Past definite anterior.

<i>I had just been</i>	<i>je venais d'être</i>
<i>thou hadst just been</i>	<i>tu venais d'être</i>
<i>he had just been</i>	<i>il venait d'être</i>
<i>we had just been</i>	<i>nous venions d'être</i>
<i>you had just been</i>	<i>vous veniez d'être</i>
<i>they had just been</i>	<i>ils venaient d'être</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>I shall or will be</i>	<i>je serai</i>
<i>thou shalt or wilt be</i>	<i>tu seras</i>
<i>he shall or will be</i>	<i>il sera</i>
<i>we shall or will be</i>	<i>nous serons</i>
<i>you shall or will be</i>	<i>vous serez</i>
<i>they shall or will be</i>	<i>ils seront</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(Compound of the future absolute.)

<i>I shall or will have been</i>	<i>j' aurai été</i>
<i>thou shalt or wilt have been</i>	<i>tu auras été</i>
<i>he shall or will have been</i>	<i>il aura été</i>
<i>we shall or will have been</i>	<i>nous aurons été</i>
<i>you shall or will have been</i>	<i>vous aurez été</i>
<i>they shall or will have been</i>	<i>ils auront été</i>

[IDIOMATICAL FUTURE TENSES.]

Future indefinite positive.

<i>I am to be</i>	<i>je dois être</i>
<i>thou art to be</i>	<i>tu dois être</i>
<i>he is to be</i>	<i>il doit être</i>
<i>we are to be</i>	<i>nous devons être</i>
<i>you are to be</i>	<i>vous devez être</i>
<i>they are to be</i>	<i>ils doivent être</i>

Future instant.

<i>I am going to be</i>	<i>je vais être</i>
<i>thou art going to be</i>	<i>tu vas être</i>
<i>he is going to be</i>	<i>il va être</i>
<i>we are going to be</i>	<i>nous allons être</i>
<i>you are going to be</i>	<i>vous allez être</i>
<i>they are going to be</i>	<i>ils vont être</i>

Future imperfect.

<i>I was going to be</i>	<i>j'allais être</i>
<i>thou wast going to be</i>	<i>tu allais être</i>
<i>he was going to be</i>	<i>il allait être</i>
<i>we were going to be</i>	<i>nous allions être</i>
<i>you were going to be</i>	<i>vous alliez être</i>
<i>they were going to be</i>	<i>ils allaient être</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I should or would be</i>	<i>je serais</i>
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst be</i>	<i>tu serais</i>
<i>he should or would be</i>	<i>il serait</i>
<i>we should or would be</i>	<i>nous serions</i>
<i>you should or would be</i>	<i>vous seriez</i>
<i>they should or would be</i>	<i>ils seraient</i>

CONDITIONAL PAST.

(Compound of the conditional.)

<i>I should or would have been</i>	<i>j'aurais été</i>
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst have been</i>	<i>tu aurais été</i>
<i>he should or would have been</i>	<i>il aurait été</i>
<i>we should or would have been</i>	<i>nous aurions été</i>
<i>you should or would have been</i>	<i>vous auriez été</i>
<i>they should or would have been</i>	<i>ils auraient été</i>

Or: *j'eusse été, tu eusses été, il eût été,—nous eussions été, vous eussiez été, ils eussent été.*

[IDIOMATICAL TENSES.]

Future conditional.

<i>I ought to be</i>	<i>je devrais être</i>
<i>thou oughtest to be</i>	<i>tu devrais être</i>
<i>he ought to be</i>	<i>il devrait être</i>
<i>we ought to be</i>	<i>nous devrions être</i>
<i>you ought to be</i>	<i>vous devriez être</i>
<i>they ought to be</i>	<i>ils devraient être</i>

Conditional anterior.

<i>I ought to have been</i>	<i>j'aurais dû être</i>
<i>thou oughtest to have been</i>	<i>tu aurais dû être</i>
<i>he ought to have been</i>	<i>il aurait dû être</i>
<i>we ought to have been</i>	<i>nous aurions dû être</i>
<i>you ought to have been</i>	<i>vous auriez dû être</i>
<i>they ought to have been</i>	<i>ils auraient dû être</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

(No first person singular.)

<i>Be (thou)</i>	<i>sois</i>
<i>let him be—let her be</i>	<i>qu'il soit—qu'elle soit</i>
<i>let us be</i>	<i>soyons</i>
<i>be (ye)</i>	<i>soyez</i>
<i>let them be</i>	<i>qu'ils soient—qu'elles soient</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT AND FUTURE.

<i>That I may be</i>	<i>que je sois</i>
<i>that thou mayst be</i>	<i>que tu sois</i>
<i>that he may be</i>	<i>qu'il soit</i>
<i>that we may be</i>	<i>que nous soyons</i>
<i>that you may be</i>	<i>que vous soyez</i>
<i>that they may be</i>	<i>qu'ils soient</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>That I might be</i>	<i>que je fusse</i>
<i>that thou mightst be</i>	<i>que tu fusses</i>
<i>that he might be</i>	<i>qu'il fût</i>
<i>that we might be</i>	<i>que nous fussions</i>
<i>that you might be</i>	<i>que vous fussiez</i>
<i>that they might be</i>	<i>qu'ils fussent</i>

PERFECT.

<i>That I may have been</i>	<i>que j'aie été</i>
<i>that thou mayst have been</i>	<i>que tu aies été</i>
<i>that he may have been</i>	<i>qu'il ait été</i>
<i>that we may have been</i>	<i>que nous ayons été</i>
<i>that you may have been</i>	<i>que vous ayez été</i>
<i>that they may have been</i>	<i>qu'ils aient été</i>

PLUPERFECT.

*That I might have been
that thou mightst have been
that he might have been
that we might have been
thou you might have been
that they might have been*

*que j'eusse été
que tu eusses été
qu'il eût été
que nous eussions été
que vous eussiez été
qu'ils eussent été*

163. An adjective joined to the verb *être*, must be of the same gender and number as the nominative to the verb (81): ex.

Nominative masc.

Je suis content
tu es content
il est content
mon frère est content
nous sommes contents
vous êtes contents
ils sont contents
mes frères sont contents

Nominative fem.

je suis contente (p. 21, No. 84.)
tu es contente
elle est contente
ma sœur est contente
nous sommes contentes
vous êtes contentes
elles sont contentes
mes sœurs sont contentes

[When, through politeness, we use *vous* instead of *tu*, the adjective must remain in the singular—*vous êtes content, vous êtes contente*. (See 157, p. 53.)

[*Observation*. The verb *Etre* serves 1o. for the conjugation of all passive verbs. 2o. Of reflected and reciprocal verbs. 3o. Of about fifty intransitive verbs.

EXERCISE XXI. (See page 21.)

INDICATIVE MOOD. PRESENT. I am sincere—He is lively—She
sincère *vif*

is lively—We are sincere—You are amiable—They are busy.
(a) (a) (b) *aimable* (a) *occupé*.

IMPERFECT. I was timid—Thou wast quiet—He was constant
timide *tranquille* —

—She was constant—We were angry—You were useful—The
(a) *utile*

workmen were ready—These ladies were anxious.
ouvrier *prêt* (a) *inquiet*.

PERFECT DEF. I was tired—Thou wast proud—He was frugal—
f. *fier* —

She was frugal—We were tired—You were proud—They were
f.

prodigal—Your sisters were pretty.
(a) *prodigues* (a)

IMPERATIVE MOOD. Be civil—Let him be liberal—Let her be
sing. ——— *libéral*

compassionate—Let us be methodical and clear—Be obliging
compassissant (a).... (a)*clair* *complaisant*

and affable—Let them be discreet and modest—Let them be
——— *discret* *modeste* *f.*

sprightly and amiable.

(a) *vif* *aimable*.

References.

(a) See 163.

(c) See 114.

(b) See 157.

(d) See 161.

OF REGULAR VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION IN *ER*.*

Aimer.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	<i>To love,</i>	<i>aim er.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>To have loved,</i>	<i>avoir aim é.</i>
GERUND.	<i>Loving,</i>	<i>aim ant.</i>
GERUND PAST.	<i>Having loved,</i>	<i>ayant aim é.</i>
PARTICIPLE.	<i>Loved,</i>	<i>aim é.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>About to love,</i>	<i>devant aim er.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

(*I* — ; *I do* — ; *I am* —ing.†)

<i>I love</i>	<i>j'aim e</i>
<i>thou lovest</i>	<i>tu aim es</i>
<i>he loves</i>	<i>il aim e</i>
<i>we love</i>	<i>nous aim ons †</i>
<i>you love</i>	<i>vous aim ez</i>
<i>they love</i>	<i>ils aim ent</i>

Formation of the Tenses.

* In regular verbs, five terminations serve to form the others, and on that account are called primitive; these are, *the present of the infinitive*, the *gerund*, the *participle*, the *present of the indicative*, and the *perfect definite*.

† There is but one way of rendering these expressions, *I love*, *I do love*, *I am loving*, that is, *j'aime*, and never *je fais aimer*, *je suis aimant*. The same observation holds good for any tense, when the verb *to be* is the real nominative. *N.B.* The line — stands for any English verb.

‡ The first person plural present indicative is formed from the gerund, by changing *ant* into *ons*, for the first person plural; *ez*, for the second; and *ent* (silent) for the third.

IMPERFECT.*

(I —ed; I did —; I was —ing; I used to.)

<i>I did love</i>	<i>j'aim ais</i>
<i>thou didst love</i>	<i>tu aim ais</i>
<i>he did love</i>	<i>il aim ait</i>
<i>we did love</i>	<i>nous aim ions</i>
<i>you did love</i>	<i>vous aim iez</i>
<i>they did love</i>	<i>ils aim aient</i>

PERFECT DEFINITE.

(I —ed; I did —.)

<i>I loved</i>	<i>j'aim ai</i>
<i>thou lovedst</i>	<i>tu aim as</i>
<i>he loved</i>	<i>il aim a</i>
<i>we loved</i>	<i>nous aim âmes</i>
<i>you loved</i>	<i>vous aim âtes</i>
<i>they loved</i>	<i>ils aim èrent</i>

PERFECT INDEFINITE.†

(I have —ed.)

<i>I have loved</i>	<i>j'ai aim é</i>
<i>thou hast loved</i>	<i>tu as aim é</i>
<i>he has loved</i>	<i>il a aim é</i>
<i>we have loved</i>	<i>nous avons aim é</i>
<i>you have loved</i>	<i>vous avez aim é</i>
<i>they have loved</i>	<i>ils ont aim é ‡</i>

PERFECT ANTERIOR.

(I had —ed.)

<i>I had loved</i>	<i>j'eus aim é</i>
<i>thou hadst loved</i>	<i>tu eus aim é</i>
<i>he had loved</i>	<i>il eut aim é</i>
<i>we had loved</i>	<i>nous eûmes aim é</i>
<i>you had loved</i>	<i>vous eûtes aim é</i>
<i>they had loved</i>	<i>ils eurent aim é</i>

PLUPERFECT.

(I had —ed.)

<i>I had loved</i>	<i>j'avais aim é</i>
<i>thou hadst loved</i>	<i>tu avais aim é</i>
<i>he had loved</i>	<i>il avait aim é</i>
<i>we had loved</i>	<i>nous avions aim é</i>
<i>you had loved</i>	<i>vous aviez aim é</i>
<i>they had loved</i>	<i>ils avaient aim é</i>

* The imperfect indicative is formed from the gerund, by changing the termination *ant* into *ais, ais, ait; ions, iez, aient*.—*Avoir*, to have, and *savoir*, to know, are the only exceptions; they make *j'avais* and *je savais*.

† The compound tenses are formed by adding the participle of the verb to be conjugated to the auxiliary *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be.

‡ There is another past tense—*J'ai eu aimé* &c. It is seldom used.

[IDIOMATICAL PAST TENSES.]

Past tense just elapsed.

<i>I have just loved</i>	<i>je viens d'aimer</i>
<i>thou hast just loved</i>	<i>tu viens d'aimer</i>
<i>he has just loved</i>	<i>il vient d'aimer</i>
<i>we have just loved</i>	<i>nous venons d'aimer</i>
<i>you have just loved</i>	<i>vous venez d'aimer</i>
<i>they have just loved</i>	<i>ils viennent d'aimer</i>

Perfect definite anterior.

<i>I had just loved</i>	<i>je venais d'aimer</i>
<i>thou hadst just loved</i>	<i>tu venais d'aimer</i>
<i>he had just loved</i>	<i>il venait d'aimer</i>
<i>we had just loved</i>	<i>nous venions d'aimer</i>
<i>you had just loved</i>	<i>vous veniez d'aimer</i>
<i>they had just loved</i>	<i>ils venaient d'aimer</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.*

(I shall or will —.)

<i>I shall or will love</i>	<i>j'aim erai</i>
<i>thou shalt or wilt love</i>	<i>tu aim eras</i>
<i>he shall or will love</i>	<i>il aim era</i>
<i>we shall or will love</i>	<i>nous aim erons</i>
<i>you shall or will love</i>	<i>vous aim erez</i>
<i>they shall or will love</i>	<i>ils aim eront</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

(I shall or will have —ed.)

<i>I shall or will have loved</i>	<i>j'aurai aim é</i>
<i>thou shalt or wilt have loved</i>	<i>tu auras aim é</i>
<i>he shall or will have loved</i>	<i>il aura aim é</i>
<i>we shall or will have loved</i>	<i>nous aurons aim é</i>
<i>you shall or will have loved</i>	<i>vous aurez aim é</i>
<i>they shall or will have loved</i>	<i>ils auront aim é</i>

[IDIOMATICAL FUTURE TENSES.]

Future indefinite positive.

<i>I am to love</i>	<i>je dois aimer</i>
<i>thou art to love</i>	<i>tu dois aimer</i>
<i>he is to love</i>	<i>il doit aimer</i>
<i>we are to love</i>	<i>nous devons aimer</i>
<i>you are to love</i>	<i>vous devez aimer</i>
<i>they are to love</i>	<i>ils doivent aimer</i>

Future instant.

<i>I am going to love</i>	<i>je vais aimer</i>
<i>thou art going to love</i>	<i>tu vas aimer</i>
<i>he is going to love</i>	<i>il va aimer</i>
<i>we are going to love</i>	<i>nous allons aimer</i>
<i>you are going to love</i>	<i>vous allez aimer</i>
<i>they are going to love</i>	<i>ils vont aimer</i>

* The future is formed from the present of the infinitive, by changing the final *r* into *rai*.

Future imperfect.

<i>I was going to love</i>	<i>j'allais aimer</i>
<i>thou wast going to love</i>	<i>tu allais aimer</i>
<i>he was going to love</i>	<i>il allait aimer</i>
<i>we were going to love</i>	<i>nous allions aimer</i>
<i>you were going to love</i>	<i>vous alliez aimer</i>
<i>they were going to love</i>	<i>ils allaient aimer</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.*

(I should or would —.)

<i>I should or would love</i>	<i>j'aimerais</i>
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst love</i>	<i>tu aimerais</i>
<i>he should or would love</i>	<i>il aimerait</i>
<i>we should or would love</i>	<i>nous aimerions</i>
<i>you should or would love</i>	<i>vous aimeriez</i>
<i>they should or would love</i>	<i>ils aimeraient</i>

CONDITIONAL PAST.

(I should or would have —ed.)

<i>I should or would have loved</i>	<i>j'aurais aimé</i>
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst have loved</i>	<i>tu aurais aimé</i>
<i>he should or would have loved</i>	<i>il aurait aimé</i>
<i>we should or would have loved</i>	<i>nous aurions aimé</i>
<i>you should or would have loved</i>	<i>vous auriez aimé</i>
<i>they should or would have loved</i>	<i>ils auraient aimé</i>

Or: j'eusse aimé, tu eusses aimé, il eût aimé, — nous eussions aimé, vous eussiez aimé, ils eussent aimé.

[IDIOMATICAL TENSES.]

Future conditional.

<i>I ought to love</i>	<i>je devrais aimer</i>
<i>thou oughtest to love</i>	<i>tu devrais aimer</i>
<i>he ought to love</i>	<i>il devrait aimer</i>
<i>we ought to love</i>	<i>nous devrions aimer</i>
<i>you ought to love</i>	<i>vous devriez aimer</i>
<i>they ought to love</i>	<i>ils devraient aimer</i>

Conditional anterior.

<i>I ought to have loved</i>	<i>j'aurais dû aimer</i>
<i>thou oughtest to have loved</i>	<i>tu aurais dû aimer</i>
<i>he ought to have loved</i>	<i>il aurait dû aimer</i>
<i>we ought to have loved</i>	<i>nous aurions dû aimer</i>
<i>you ought to have loved</i>	<i>vous auriez dû aimer</i>
<i>they ought to have loved</i>	<i>ils auraient dû aimer</i>

* The conditional present is formed from the future, by changing the termination. *rai* into *rais*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

(No first person singular.)

<i>Love thou</i>	<i>aim e *</i>
<i>let him love</i>	<i>qu'il aim e †</i>
<i>let us love</i>	<i>aim ons ‡</i>
<i>love you or ye</i>	<i>aim ez ‡</i>
<i>let them love</i>	<i>qu'ils aim ent ‡</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT AND FUTURE.

(That I may —.)

<i>That I may love</i>	<i>que j'aim e §</i>
<i>that thou mayst love</i>	<i>que tu aim es</i>
<i>that he may love</i>	<i>qu'il aim e</i>
<i>that we may love</i>	<i>que nous aim ions</i>
<i>that you may love</i>	<i>que vous aim iez</i>
<i>that they may love</i>	<i>qu'ils aim ent</i>

IMPERFECT. ||

(That I might —.)

<i>That I might love</i>	<i>que j'aim asse</i>
<i>that thou mightst love</i>	<i>que tu aim asses</i>
<i>that he might love</i>	<i>qu'il aim �t</i>
<i>that we might love</i>	<i>que nous aim assions</i>
<i>that you might love</i>	<i>que vous aim assiez</i>
<i>that they might love</i>	<i>qu'ils aim assent</i>

PERFECT.

(That I may have —ed.)

<i>That I may have loved</i>	<i>que j'aie aim �</i>
<i>that thou mayst have loved</i>	<i>que tu aies aim �</i>
<i>that he may have loved</i>	<i>qu'il ait aim �</i>
<i>that we may have loved</i>	<i>que nous ayons aim �</i>
<i>that you may have loved</i>	<i>que vous ayez aim �</i>
<i>that they may have loved</i>	<i>qu'ils aient aim �</i>

* The second person singular of the imperative is like the first person singular present indicative, omitting the pronoun *je*. Ex: *je parle*, I speak; *parle*, speak thou.

† The third person singular imperative is formed from the third person plural of the present indicative, by cutting off *nt*; as, *ils donnent*, they give; *qu'il donne*, let him give.

‡ The first, second, and third person plural of the imperative are the same as the first, second, and third person plural of the present indicative. N.B. Observe that the second person singular, and the first and second person plural, have no nominative expressed.

§ The first person singular present of the subjunctive is like the third person singular of the imperative, always ending in *e*; the second ends in *es*; and the third in *e*; the first and second plural, as in the imperfect of the indicative; and the third person plural like the third person plural of the imperative.

|| The imperfect subjunctive is formed from the second person singular of the perfect indicative, by adding *se*: *tu aimas*; *que j'aimasse*.


PLUPERFECT.

(That I might have —ed.)

*That I might have loved
that thou mightst have loved
that he might have loved
that we might have loved
that you might have loved
that they might have loved*

*que j'eusse aimé
que tu eusses aimé
qu'il eût aimé
que nous eussions aimé
que vous eussiez aimé
qu'ils eussent aimé*

IMPORTANT OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

 The following observations being well understood, will much facilitate the conjugation of all the French verbs.

[A regular verb has its *radical* and *variable* letters. The *radical* letters are those which precede the ending of a verb. The ending of a verb is composed of *variable* letters, which, in regular conjugations, are common to all verbs of that termination.

In this grammar, the *variable* letters are printed in *Italics*, in the model given:—for instance, *Aimer* has *er* for its *variable*, *aim* for its *radical* letters.

When a verb is to be conjugated after a model given, the *radical* of that verb must be first written, and then the *variable* letters are added, according to the tense and person wanted.—Suppose I want the first person plural of the imperfect of *refuser*; I first observe that *refuser*, being of the first conjugation, has *er* for its *variable* letters in the infinitive: therefore, after cutting off these last letters, I have *refus* for its *radical*. I then find, in the model given, that the ending of the first person plural of the imperfect is *ions*; I add to it *refus*, which gives *refusions*, the word required.]

The pupil will here conjugate the following verbs according to the model given.

*Accompagner, to accompany
Acquitter, to acquit
Allumer, to light
Analyser, to analyse
Approuver, to approve
Autoriser, to authorise
Balbutier, to stammer
Chauffer, to warm
Contempler, to contemplate*

*Daigner, to condescend
Dépenser, to expend
Embarrasser, to confuse
Enseigner, to teach
Fréquenter, to frequent
Inventer, to invent
Nommer, to name
Souhaiter, to wish
Traiter, to treat*

After having conjugated these verbs, six may be included in one conjugation, thus: J'accompagne, tu acquittes, il allume, nous analysons, vous approuvez, ils autorisent.

EXERCISE XXII. (See pages 59—64.)

 The French verbs given in this and following exercises, are in the present of the infinitive.

INDICATIVE MOOD. PRESENT. I blame his conduct—Thou
blâmer *conduite* f.

admirest the beauties of that great work—He [is asking for] his
admirer *beauté* f. (a) *ouvrage* m. *demande* ††

umbrella—Your sister [is looking for] flowers—The general
parapluie m. (b) *chercher* (c) *fleur* —m.

observes the disposition of the enemy—We approve the projects
observer — f. *ennemi* m. *approuver* *projet* m.

of your friend—You disturb the felicity of that family—Our
troubler f. *famille* f.

neighbours blame his conduct and yours—They [are looking at]
voisin m. *regarder*

that picture.
tableau m.

IMPERFECT. I did dread his presence and firmness—I was
appréhender — f. * *fermeté* f. (b)

helping my little cousin Adelaide—Thou didst decline the offer—
assister *Adélaïde* *refuser* *offre* f.

Hortensia was accusing her friend—He was watering the young
Hortense (b) *accuser* (b) *arroser* (a)

plants—We did love our duties—We were studying our lesson—You
plante f. *devoir* m. (b) *étudier* *leçon* f.

did comfort the afflicted—The ancient Romans respected [old age]
consoler *affligé* m.pl. † *Romains* *respecter* *vieillesse* f.

PERF. DEF. I neglected his friendship—He deserved his esteem
négliger † *amitié* f. *mériter* *estime* f.

and ours—The actress sang—We settled the affair—You considered
actrice f. *chanter* *arranger* † *affaire* f. *considérer*

the cause of that event—They rejected his proposals.
 —f. *événement* m. *rejeter* *proposition* f.

PERF. INDEF. I have protected their youth—Thou hast
protéger *jeunesse* f.

borrowed money—The prince has rewarded the exemplary
emprunter (c) — *récompenser*

conduct of that officer—We have examined the productions of
conduite f. *officier* *examiner* — f.

that celebrated author—You have improved her mind—Our
célèbre *auteur* m. *cultiver* *esprit* m.

defeats have damped our courage.
défaite f. *glacer* — m.

PERF. ANT. I had exhausted my resources—We had watered
épuiser *ressource* f.

the flowers—You had studied the principles of that language—
fleur f. *étudier* *principe* m. *langue* f.

They had dispersed the mob.
disperser *populace* f.

PLUPERFECT. I had drained an unwholesome marsh—Thou
dessécher *malsain* *marais* m.

hadst proposed an erroneous opinion—He had considered the
proposer *erroné* — f. *considérer*

justice of your demand—We had offended our protectors—You
 — f. *demande f.* *offenser*

had forgiven her rude behaviour—These young noblemen
pardonner *grossière conduite f.* (a) *seigneur m.*

had manifested their displeasure.
montrer *mécontentement m.*

FUT. ABSOL. I shall fortify the entrance of our camp—Thou
fortifier *entrée f.* — m.

wilt publish the particulars of that affair—Our government will
publier *détail m.* *affaire f.* *gouvernement m.*

protect the inhabitants of these islands—We shall prepare an
protéger *habitant m.* *île f.* *préparer*

elegant entertainment—You will celebrate his victory—They
magnifique festin m. *célébrer* f.

will astonish their hearers.
étonner *auditeur m.*

FUTURE ANT. I shall have finished this book—Thou wilt have
achever

appeased his anger—The lawyer will have consulted the laws—
apaiser *colère f.* *avocat m.* *consulter* *loi f.*

We shall have meditated our answer—You will have brought the
méditer *réponse f.* *apporter*

letters—They will have comforted that afflicted family.
lettre f. *consoler* *affligé famille f.*

CONDIT. MOOD. PRES. I should avoid the danger—Thou wouldst
éviter — m.

cross the river—He would discover that atrocious plot—We
traverser *rivière f.* *dévoiler* *atroce complot m.*

should pay the debts of that man—The nymphs would dance.
payer *dette f.* *nymphes f.* *danser.*

CONDITIONAL PAST. I should have liked hunting and
aimer art. || *chasse f.*

fishing—He would have unravelled the clue of that intrigue
 art. || *pêche f.* *démêler* *fil m.* — f.

—We should have imitated his example and theirs—You would
imiter *exemple m.*

have respected the laws of your country—They would have
respecter *loi f.* *pays m.*

perfected the qualities of their son.
perfectionner *qualité f.* *fils m.*

IMPERATIVE. Consult the lights of reason—Let him love
consulter *lumière f.* *raison f.*

justice, peace, and virtue—Let the child breakfast
 art. || — f. art. || *paix f.* art. || *vertu f.* *déjeuner*

—Let us advance—Let us cultivate the flowers of our garden—
avancer ** *cultiver* *fleur f.* *jardin m.*

Seal the letter—Let them [give up] that ridiculous project—
cacheter *abandonner* *ridicule* *projet m.*

Let the ladies accept the proposals of the princess.
accepter *proposition f.* *princesse f.*

INFIN. MOOD. To have imitated—Having observed the rules
imiter *observer* *règle f.*
 of discretion—Consulting—Having consulted—To bring—Having
 art. ‖ — *f.*

brought letters—Avoiding—Avoided—Announcing—Announced.
 (c) *éviter* *annoncer* **

IDIOMAT. TENSES. I have just arranged my books—We have
arranger

just refused his (108) invitation—They have just brought the letter
refuser — *f.* *apporter*

I had just bought a horse—You had just paid your debts—They
acheter *cheval m.* *dette f.*

had just settled the affair—I am to speak to the minister—He is
arranger *parler* *ministre m.*

to dine with the captain—You are to dance at the ball—They are
dîner avec *capitaine* *danser à* *bal m.*

to play a duet—I am going to give a book to that young lady—
jouer *duo m.*

I was going to sing—We were going to examine your bill—
chanter *examiner* *mémoire m.*

I ought to approve your resolution—We ought to dismiss that bad
approuver *résolution f.* *renvoyer*

servant—They ought to cultivate their lands—I ought to have
domestique m. *cultiver* *terre f.*

refused—We ought to have sung.

References.

(a) See 88.

(b) When the verb *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, is followed by an English gerund, both words must be translated by the tense to which they correspond in French. See note † page 59.

(c) Substantive used in a partitive sense (note 63, p. 11).

* The pronoun must be repeated.

† This adjective to precede its substantive.


‡ Verbs in *ger* take an *e* after their radical letters, whenever *g* is to be followed by *a* or *o*—so instead of *je négligeai*, we write *je négligeai*. See the con-

juration of the verb *juger* among the irregular verbs.

‖ Substantive used in a definite sense. Reference †, page 7.

** Verbs ending in *cer*, change *c* into *ç* before the vowels *a*, *o*, in order to give the *c* the sound it had in the radical part of the verb, and to avoid the harsh pronunciation of *ca* and *co*. See *avancer*, among the irregular verbs (p. 140).

†† In this and future exercises, the English between two brackets, thus [], is to be expressed in French by the only word underneath.

 The different tenses of the subjunctive will be exemplified after we have explained the conjunctions with which they are necessarily connected.

How to Frenchify many English verbs.

Most English verbs ending in *fy*, *ate*, *ish*, *ise*, *use*, and *ute*, become French by altering their termination thus :

<i>fy</i> into <i>ier</i>	<i>pacify</i> ,	<i>pacifier</i> .
<i>ate</i> — <i>er</i>	<i>abrogate</i> ,	<i>abroger</i> .
<i>ish</i> — <i>ir</i>	<i>abolish</i> ,	<i>abolir</i> .
<i>ise</i> } by adding <i>r</i>	<i>realise</i> ,	<i>réaliser</i> .
<i>use</i> }	<i>abuse</i> ,	<i>abuser</i> .
<i>ute</i> }	<i>refute</i> ,	<i>réfuter</i> .

SECOND CONJUGATION IN *IR*.

Punir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>To punish,</i>	<i>pun ir.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>To have punished,</i>	<i>avoir pun i.</i>
GERUND.	<i>Punishing,</i>	<i>pun issant.</i>
GERUND PAST.	<i>Having punished,</i>	<i>ayant pun i.</i>
PARTICIPLE.	<i>Punished,</i>	<i>pun i.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>About to punish,</i>	<i>devant pun ir.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I punish</i>	<i>je pun is</i>
<i>thou punishest</i>	<i>tu pun is</i>
<i>he punishes</i>	<i>il pun it</i>
<i>we punish</i>	<i>nous pun issons</i>
<i>you punish</i>	<i>vous pun issez</i>
<i>they punish</i>	<i>ils pun issent</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>I did punish</i>	<i>je pun issais</i>
<i>thou didst punish</i>	<i>tu pun issais</i>
<i>he did punish</i>	<i>il pun issait</i>
<i>we did punish</i>	<i>nous pun issions</i>
<i>you did punish</i>	<i>vous pun issiez</i>
<i>they did punish</i>	<i>ils pun issaient</i>

PERFECT DEFINITE.

<i>I punished</i>	<i>je pun is</i>
<i>thou punishedst</i>	<i>tu pun is</i>
<i>he punished</i>	<i>il pun it</i>
<i>we punished</i>	<i>nous pun imes</i>
<i>you punished</i>	<i>vous pun ites</i>
<i>they punished</i>	<i>ils pun irent</i>

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

<i>I have punished</i>	<i>j'ai pun i</i>
<i>thou hast punished</i>	<i>tu as pun i</i>
<i>he has punished</i>	<i>il a pun i</i>
<i>we have punished</i>	<i>nous avons pun i</i>
<i>you have punished</i>	<i>vous avez pun i</i>
<i>they have punished</i>	<i>ils ont pun i</i>

PERFECT ANTERIOR.

<i>I had punished</i>	<i>j'eus pun i</i>
<i>thou hadst punished</i>	<i>tu eus pun i</i>
<i>he had punished</i>	<i>il eut pun i</i>
<i>we had punished</i>	<i>nous eûmes pun i</i>
<i>you had punished</i>	<i>vous eûtes pun i</i>
<i>they had punished</i>	<i>ils eurent pun i</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had punished</i>	<i>j'avais pun i</i>
<i>thou hadst punished</i>	<i>tu avais pun i</i>
<i>he had punished</i>	<i>il avait pun i</i>
<i>we had punished</i>	<i>nous avions pun i</i>
<i>you had punished</i>	<i>vous aviez pun i</i>
<i>they had punished</i>	<i>ils avaient pun i</i>

[IDIOMATICAL PAST TENSES.]

<i>Past tense just elapsed.</i>	<i>I have just punished,</i>	<i>je viens de punir.</i>
<i>Past definite anterior.</i>	<i>I had just punished,</i>	<i>je venais de punir.</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>I shall or will punish</i>	<i>je pun irai</i>
<i>thou shalt or wilt punish</i>	<i>tu pun iras</i>
<i>he shall or will punish</i>	<i>il pun ira</i>
<i>we shall or will punish</i>	<i>nous pun irons</i>
<i>you shall or will punish</i>	<i>vous pun irez</i>
<i>they shall or will punish</i>	<i>ils pun iront</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>I shall have punished</i>	<i>j'aurai pun i</i>
<i>thou wilt have punished</i>	<i>tu auras pun i</i>
<i>he will have punished</i>	<i>il aura pun i</i>
<i>we shall have punished</i>	<i>nous aurons pun i</i>
<i>you will have punished</i>	<i>vous aurez pun i</i>
<i>they will have punished</i>	<i>ils auront pun i</i>

[IDIOMATICAL FUTURE TENSES.]

<i>Fut. indef. positive.</i>	<i>I am to punish,</i>	<i>je dois punir.</i>
<i>Fut. instant.</i>	<i>I am going to punish,</i>	<i>je vais punir.</i>
<i>Fut. imperfect.</i>	<i>I was going to punish,</i>	<i>j'allais punir.</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I should or would punish</i>	<i>je pun irais</i>
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst punish</i>	<i>tu pun irais</i>
<i>he should or would punish</i>	<i>il pun irait</i>
<i>we should or would punish</i>	<i>nous pun irions</i>
<i>you should or would punish</i>	<i>vous pun iriez</i>
<i>they should or would punish</i>	<i>ils pun iroient</i>

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>I should have punished</i>	<i>j'aurais pun é</i>
<i>thou wouldst have punished</i>	<i>tu aurais pun é</i>
<i>he would have punished</i>	<i>il aurait pun é</i>
<i>we should have punished</i>	<i>nous aurions pun é</i>
<i>you would have punished</i>	<i>vous auriez pun é</i>
<i>they would have punished</i>	<i>ils auraient pun é</i>

Or: *j'eusse pun é, tu eusses pun é, il eût pun é,—nous eussions pun é, vous eussiez pun é, ils eussent pun é.*

[IDIOMATICAL CONDITIONAL TENSES.]

<i>Condít. fut.</i>	<i>I ought to punish,</i>	<i>je devrais punir.</i>
<i>Condít. ant.</i>	<i>I ought to have punished,</i>	<i>j'aurais dû punir.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

<i>Punish thou</i>	<i>pun is</i>
<i>let him punish</i>	<i>qu'il pun isse</i>
<i>let us punish</i>	<i>pun issons</i>
<i>punish you or ye</i>	<i>pun issez</i>
<i>let them punish</i>	<i>qu'ils pun issent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

<i>That I may punish</i>	<i>que je pun isse</i>
<i>that thou mayst punish</i>	<i>que tu pun isses</i>
<i>that he may punish</i>	<i>qu'il pun isse</i>
<i>that we may punish</i>	<i>que nous pun issons</i>
<i>that you may punish</i>	<i>que vous pun issiez</i>
<i>that they may punish</i>	<i>qu'ils pun issent</i>

IMPERFECT.

*That I might punish
that thou mightst punish
that he might punish
that we might punish
that you might punish
that they might punish*

*que je pun isse
que tu pun isses
qu'il pun t*
*que nous pun issions
que vous pun issiez
qu'ils pun issent*

PERFECT.

*That I may have punished
that thou mayst have punished
that he may have punished
that we may have punished
that you may have punished
that they may have punished*

*que j'aie pun i
que tu aies pun i
qu'il ait pun i
que nous ayons pun i
que vous ayez pun i
qu'ils aient pun i*

PLUPERFECT.

*That I might have punished
that thou mightst have punished
that he might have punished
that we might have punished
that you might have punished
that they might have punished*

*que j'eusse pun i
que tu eusses pun i
qu'il eût pun i
que nous eussions pun i
que vous eussiez pun i
qu'ils eussent pun i*

Verbs to be conjugated like punir.

*Accomplir, to accomplish.
Assujettir, to subject.
Bannir, to banish.
Éclaircir, to clear up.
Embellir, to embellish.
Enhardir, to embolden.*

*Noircir, to blacken.
Rafraîchir, to refresh.
Ralentir, to slacken.
Remplir, to fulfil.
Trahir, to betray.*

EXERCISE XXIII.

INDICATIVE MOOD. PRES. I fulfil my obligations—I am finishing
remplir — f. (b) *finir*

my work—Thou punishest an obstinate child—He feeds that
ouvrage m. *obstiné* *nourrir*

little bird—We enlarge our estate at the expense of yours—
* *oiseau m.* *agrandir bien m.* *dépens m. pl.* (a)

You soften a disobliging answer—Your brothers choose a
adoucir désobligeant réponse f. *choisir*

picture—They are building a house; we are demolishing ours.
tableau m. (a) *bâtir maison f.* (b) *démolir* (c)

IMPERFECT. I did soften the heart of my tyrant—Thou
attendrir cœur m. *tyran m.*

didst weaken his prejudices—He was building a cottage—We
affaiblir préjugé m. (b) *chaumière f.*

did embellish our country-house——You were finishing your
embellir maison de campagne f. (b) finir

book—The poets did embellish these fables.
poète m. embellir — f.

PERF. DEFINITE. I demolished the edifice——He tarnished his
démolir édifice m. ternir

looking-glass——We furnished the money——You performed the
miroir m. fournir remplir

duties of your place——The spectators applauded.
devoir m. — f. m. applaudir.

PERF. INDEF. I have franked your letter and his——The pride
affranchir (c) orgueil m.
 of Alexander (p. 16, 6°) sullied his glory——We have succeeded——
ternir f. réussir

You have diverted the company——They have enlarged their house.
dévertir compagnie f.

PERF. ANT. I had built a wall——He had softened the wax——
muraille f. amollir cire f.

We had established our eldest son——You had filled your pockets
établir aîné fils m. remplir poche f.

——They had adorned their drawing-room.
embellir salon m.

PLUPERFECT. I had widened my windows——She had dazzled
élargir fenêtre f. éblouir
 the company——We had polished his manners——You had finished
polir manière f. finir

your work——They had weakened the force of their reasons.
ouvrage m. affaiblir — f. raison f.

FUT. ABSOL. I shall cure the disease——That idleness will
guérir maladie f. paresse f.

blunt his genius——You will finish your exercise——They will
engourdir génie m. thème m.

establish wise and just laws.
(d) loi f.

FUT. ANT. I shall have shortened——He will have fulfilled his
raccourcir accomplir

vows——We shall have hardened his heart.
vœu m. endurcir cœur f.

CONDIT. MOOD. PRES. I should cherish life——The tree would
chérir vie f.

blossom——We should fulfil our promises——They would finish
fleurir remplir promesse f.
 the book.

CONDIT. PAST. I should have chosen a pretty colour—He
choisir * *couleur f.*
 would have [filled up] the fortifications of that town—They would
remplir — *f.* *ville f.* *f.*
 have united gracefulness to beauty.
unir *grâce f.*

IMPERATIVE. Define that word—Let her choose a fan——Let
définir *mot m.* *éventail m.*
the young lady choose a book—Let us level the ground—Finish
aplanir *terrain m.*
your letters—Let them enrich the mind of their pupils.
enrichir *esprit m.* *élève m. & f.*

References.

- (a) See 113.

- (b) See note †, page 59.

- (c) See 114.

- (d) See reference 1, page 29.

- * This adjective must precede its substantive. (No 88, p. 22.)

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *EVOIR*.

Devoir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>To owe,</i>	D avoir.
PERFECT.	<i>To have owed,</i>	avoir d ú.
GERUND.	<i>Owing,</i>	d evant.
GERUND PAST.	<i>Having owed,</i>	ayant d ú.
PARTICIPLE.	<i>Owed,</i>	d ú.*
FUTURE.	<i>About to owe.</i>	devant d avoir.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I owe</i>	je d ois
<i>thou owest</i>	tu d ois
<i>he owes</i>	il d oit
<i>we owe</i>	nous d evons
<i>you owe</i>	vous d evez
<i>they owe</i>	ils d oivent †

* *Devoir* is the only verb which takes the *é* circumflex in the participle masculine singular only, to distinguish it from *du*, of the.

† Verbs of this conjugation have an irregularity in the third person plural present indicative.—They also form their future by changing *avoir* into *aurai*.

IMPERFECT.

<i>I did owe</i>	<i>je d avais</i>
<i>thou didst owe</i>	<i>tu d avais</i>
<i>he did owe</i>	<i>il d avait</i>
<i>we did owe</i>	<i>nous d avions</i>
<i>you did owe</i>	<i>vous d aviez</i>
<i>they did owe</i>	<i>ils d avaient</i>

PERFECT DEFINITE.

<i>I owed</i>	<i>je d us</i>
<i>thou owedst</i>	<i>tu d us</i>
<i>he owed</i>	<i>il d ut</i>
<i>we owed</i>	<i>nous d âmes</i>
<i>you owed</i>	<i>vous d âtes</i>
<i>they owed</i>	<i>ils d urent</i>

PERF. INDIV.	<i>I have owed,</i>	<i>j'ai d é.</i>
PERF. ANT.	<i>I had owed,</i>	<i>j'eus d é.</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>I had owed,</i>	<i>j'avais d é.</i>

[FOR THE IDIOMATICAL TENSES, SEE THE PRECEDING VERBS.]

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>I shall or will owe</i>	<i>je d evrai</i>
<i>thou shalt or will owe</i>	<i>tu d evrais</i>
<i>he shall or will owe</i>	<i>il d evra</i>
<i>we shall or will owe</i>	<i>nous d evrons</i>
<i>you shall or will owe</i>	<i>vous d evrez</i>
<i>they shall or will owe</i>	<i>ils d evront</i>
FUT. ANT. <i>I shall have owed,</i>	<i>j'aurai d é.</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I should or would owe</i>	<i>je d evrais</i>	
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst owe</i>	<i>tu d evrais</i>	
<i>he should or would owe</i>	<i>il d evrait</i>	
<i>we should or would owe</i>	<i>nous d evrions</i>	
<i>you should or would owe</i>	<i>vous d evriez</i>	
<i>they should or would owe</i>	<i>ils d evraient</i>	
CONDIT. PAST.	<i>I should have owed,</i>	<i>j'aurais d é.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

<i>Owe thou</i>	<i>d ois</i>
<i>let him owe</i>	<i>qu'il d oive</i>
<i>let us owe</i>	<i>d evons</i>
<i>owe you or ye</i>	<i>d evex</i>
<i>let them owe</i>	<i>qu'ils d oient</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

That I may owe
that thou mayst owe
that he may owe
that we may owe
that you may owe
that they may owe

que je d oive
que tu d oives
qu'il d oive
que nous d evions
que vous d eviez
qu'ils d oient

IMPERFECT.


That I might owe
that thou mightst owe
that he might owe
that we might owe
that you might owe
that they might owe

que je d usse
que tu d usses
qu'il dût
que nous dussions
que vous dussiez
qu'ils dussent

PERF. *That I may have owed,* *que j'aie d é.*
 PLUPERF. *That I might have owed,* *que j'eusse d é.*

[There are but few regular verbs of this conjugation; they are given in the Exercise.]

EXERCISE XXIV.

 We shall omit the compound tenses in the following exercises on verbs conjugated affirmatively, having fully exemplified them in the preceding pages.

INDICAT. PRES. I perceive the summit of the Alps——
 (a) * *apercevoir* *sommet m.* *Alpes f. pl.*

Thou receivest his advice——He understands that difficult rule——
 * *recevoir* *avis m. pl.* * *concevoir* *difficile règle f.*

We owe a considerable sum to your partners——They receive
considérable somme f. *associé m.*

an urgent invitation.
 —— f.

IMPERFECT. I did owe again——He did conceive——We owed——
 † *redevoir* *concevoir*

You did conceive the propriety of that behaviour——They did
convenance f. *conduite f.*

owe respect——They were receiving dispatches from the minister.
 —— m. || *dépêche f.*

PERF. DEF. I saw the castle from my window——We
 * *apercevoir* *château m.* *fenêtre f.*

received the news of his death——You conceived a great
nouvelle f. *mort f.*

esteem——They conceived the blackness of that crime.
estime f. *noirceur f.* —— m.

FUTURE. I shall receive the visit of your friend—He will
visite f.
 discover the spire of his village—We shall receive our income—
apercevoir clocher m. — m. revenu m.
 You will owe your misfortunes to your faults—They will receive
malheur m. faute f.
 our letters and theirs.

CONDIT. MOOD. PRES. I should conceive your project—He
projet m.
 would receive—We should receive your friends and theirs—You
 would discover the ship—They would perceive their errors.
vaisseau m. f.

IMPERATIVE. Conceive the horror of his situation—Let the child
.... f. — f.
 receive a present from his father—Let us receive his apology—
présent m. excuse f.
 Receive this mark of my confidence and esteem—Let them
marque f. confiance f. † estime f.
 perceive the snare.
piège m.

References.

(a) Remember that the five variable letters, *voir*, must be cut off before you add the proper termination.

* Verbs ending in *cevoir* change *c* into *ç* before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, in order to give the *c* the soft sound it has in the infinitive.

† In verbs expressing a repetition of the action, the English word *again* is translated into French by the syllable *re*, prefixed to the root of the verb; as, *devoir*, to owe; *redevoir*, to owe again.

‡ The pronoun must be repeated.

|| See note †, page 59.

FOURTH CONJUGATION IN *RE*.

Rendre.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	To render,	Rend <i>re</i> .
PERFECT.	To have rendered,	avoir rend <i>u</i> .
GERUND.	Rendering,	rend <i>ant</i> .
GERUND PAST.	Having rendered,	ayant rend <i>u</i> .
PARTICIPLE.	Rendered,	rend <i>u</i> .
FUTURE.	About to render,	devant rend <i>re</i> .

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESIDENT.

<i>I</i> render	je rend s
<i>thou</i> renderest	tu rend s
<i>he</i> renders	il rend
<i>we</i> render	nous rend ons
<i>you</i> render	vous rend ez
<i>they</i> render	ils rend ent

IMPERFECT.

<i>I did render</i>	<i>je rend ais</i>
<i>thou didst render</i>	<i>tu rend ais</i>
<i>he did render</i>	<i>il rend ait</i>
<i>we did render</i>	<i>il rend ions</i>
<i>you did render</i>	<i>vous rend iez</i>
<i>they did render</i>	<i>ils rend aient</i>

PERFECT DEFINITE.

<i>I rendered</i>	<i>je rend is</i>
<i>thou renderedst</i>	<i>tu rend is</i>
<i>he rendered</i>	<i>il rend it</i>
<i>we rendered</i>	<i>nous rend ites</i>
<i>you rendered</i>	<i>vous rend ites</i>
<i>they rendered</i>	<i>ils rend irent</i>

PERF. INDEF.	<i>I have rendered,</i>	<i>j'ai rend u.</i>
PERF. ANT.	<i>I had rendered,</i>	<i>j'eus rend u.</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>I had rendered,</i>	<i>j'avais rend u.</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>I shall or will render</i>	<i>je rendrai</i>
<i>thou shalt or wilt render</i>	<i>tu rendras</i>
<i>he shall or will render</i>	<i>il rendra</i>
<i>we shall or will render</i>	<i>nous rendrons</i>
<i>you shall or will render</i>	<i>vous rendrez</i>
<i>they shall or will render</i>	<i>ils rendront</i>

FUT. ANT. *I shall or will have rendered,* *j'aurai rendu.*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESNT.

<i>I should or would render</i>	<i>je rend rais</i>
<i>thou shouldst or wouldst render</i>	<i>tu rend rais</i>
<i>he should or would render</i>	<i>il rend rait</i>
<i>we should or would render</i>	<i>nous rend rions</i>
<i>you should or would render</i>	<i>vous rend riez</i>
<i>they should or would render</i>	<i>ils rend raient</i>

COND. PAST. *I should or would have rendered,* { j'aurais rend u,
or j'eusse rend u.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

<i>Render thou</i>	<i>rend s</i>
<i>let him render</i>	<i>qu'il rend e</i>
<i>let us render</i>	<i>rend ons</i>
<i>render you or ye</i>	<i>rend ez</i>
<i>let them render</i>	<i>qu'ils rend ent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

<i>That I may render</i>	<i>que je rend e</i>
<i>that thou mayest render</i>	<i>que tu rend es</i>
<i>that he may render</i>	<i>qu'il rend e</i>
<i>that we may render</i>	<i>que nous rend ions</i>
<i>that you may render</i>	<i>que vous rend iez</i>
<i>that they may render</i>	<i>qu'ils rend ent</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>That I might render</i>	<i>que je rend isse</i>
<i>that thou mightest render</i>	<i>que tu rend isses</i>
<i>that he might render</i>	<i>qu'il rend it</i>
<i>that we might render</i>	<i>que nous rend issions</i>
<i>that you might render</i>	<i>que vous rend issiez</i>
<i>that they might render</i>	<i>qu'ils rend issent</i>

PERF.	<i>That I may have rendered,</i>	<i>que j'aie rend u.</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>That I might have rendered,</i>	<i>que j'eusse rend u.</i>

Verbs to be conjugated like rendre.

<i>Attendre, to wait for.</i>	<i>Fendre, to cleave.</i>
<i>Correspondre, to correspond.</i>	<i>Interrompre, to interrupt.</i>
<i>Corrompre, to corrupt.</i>	<i>Pendre, to hang.</i>
<i>Dépendre, to depend.</i>	<i>Prétendre, to pretend.</i>
<i>Descendre, to descend.</i>	<i>Répandre, to spread.</i>
<i>Etendre, to extend.</i>	<i>Répondre, to answer.</i>

EXERCISE XXV.

INDICATIVE MOOD. **PRÉS.** I hear the voice of my friend—He
entendre voix f.

is waiting—We confound these notions—You waste your time—
|| *attendre confondre — f. perdre temps m.*
The children melt the lead—The great boys beat the little
fondre plomb m. grand battre
ones.

IMPERFECT. I did condescend—The dog did bite—We were
condescendre mordre ||

waiting—You were [coming down] the hill—They diffused the
attends | *descends* *collins f.* *répandre*
 graces of expression—They were [waiting for] their brothers.
 — *f.* — *f.* | *attends*

PREF. DEFIN. I waited the arrival of the mail—Thou soldest
arrivée f. malle f. vends
 thy services to the tyrant of thy country—He sold his house—
— m. tyran m. pays m. maison f.
 The scholar understood the rules of his grammar—We heard
écolier m. entendre règle f. grammaire f. entendre
 their complaints—You forbade that diversion—They spread
plainte f. défendre amusement m. répandre
 the glory of their nation.
— f. — f.

FUTURE. I shall [wait for] the opinion of sensible people——
attendre — f. *sensé* *personne* f. pl.
 Thou wilt hear that gentleman—He will condescend—We shall
monsieur *condescendre*
 suspend the prosecution of that affair—You will lose your
suspendre *poursuite* f. *affaire* f. *perdre*
 money—The different cities will pretend.
différent *ville* f. *prétendre*.

CONDIT. MOOD. PRES. I should expect the protection of the
attendre — *f.*
 minister—She would enlarge the bounds of her dominions—We
ministres m. *étendre* *limite f.* *état m.*
 should expect a favourable answer—They would suspend the
 — *réponse f.*
 election.
 — *f.*

IMPERATIVE. [Come down]—Let him hear their justification—
descendre — f.
 Let us [wait for] the result of that conference—Ye sovereigns,
résultat m. — f. *O souverains*
 make your people happy—Let them suspend their judgment—
rendre *peuple m. pl.* *jugement m.*
 Let the pupils return their books to the master.
élève m. & f. rendre *maître.*

References.

§ See note †, p. 59.

☛ The English word over this mark is not to be expressed in French, in this and future exercises.

TABLE OF THE TERMINATIONS OF REGULAR VERBS.

I. INFINITIVE MOOD.

		1st conj.	2nd.	3rd.	4th.
PRESENT.	To —	aim-er	pun-ir	d-avoir	ren-dre
PERFECT.	to have—ed	avoir,	é	u	du
GERUND.	—ing	ant	issant	evant	dant
GER. PAST.	having —ed	ayant	é	u	du
PARTICIPLE.	—ed	é	é	u	du
FUTURE.	about to —	devant	er	ir	evoir
					dre

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I — I do — I am —ing</i>	Je	aim-e	pun-is	d-eis	ren-de
<i>thou —est</i>	tu	es	is	ois	ds
<i>he —s</i>	il	e	it	oit	d
<i>we —</i>	nous	ons	issons	evons	dons
<i>you —</i>	vous	ez	issez	eviez	dez
<i>they —</i>	ils	ent	issent	oivent	dent

IMPERFECT.

<i>I did—was—ing—used to—</i>	Je	aim-ais	pun-issais	d-avais	ren-dais
<i>thou didst —</i>	tu	ais	issais	avais	dais
<i>he did —</i>	il	ait	issait	avait	dait
<i>we did—</i>	nous	ions	issions	evions	dions
<i>you did —</i>	vous	iez	issiez	eviez	diez
<i>they did —</i>	ils	aient	issaient	evaient	dalaient

PERFECT DEFINITE.

<i>I —ed</i>	Je	aim-ai	pun-is	d-us	ren-dis
<i>thou —edst</i>	tu	as	is	us	dis
<i>he —ed</i>	il	a	it	ut	dit
<i>we —ed</i>	nous	âmes	îmes	ûmes	dîmes
<i>you —ed</i>	vous	âtes	îtes	ûtes	dîtes
<i>they —ed</i>	ils	èrent	îrent	ûrent	dîrent

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

<i>I have —ed</i>	J'ai	aim-é	pun-î	d-u	ren-du
<i>thou hast —ed</i>	tu as	é	î	u	du
<i>he has —ed</i>	il a	é	î	u	du
<i>we have —ed</i>	nous avons	é	î	u	du
<i>you have —ed</i>	vous avez	é	î	u	du
<i>they have —ed</i>	ils ont	é	î	u	du

PERFECT ANTERIOR.

<i>I had —ed</i>	J'eus	aim-é	pun-î	d-u	ren-du
<i>thou hadst —ed</i>	tu eus	é	î	u	du
<i>he had —ed</i>	il eut	é	î	u	du
<i>we had —ed</i>	nous eûmes	é	î	u	du
<i>you had —ed</i>	vous eûtes	é	î	u	du
<i>they had —ed</i>	ils eurent	é	î	u	du

PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had —ed</i>	J'avais	aim-é	pun-î	d-u	ren-du
<i>thou hadst —ed</i>	tu avais	é	î	u	du
<i>he had —ed</i>	il avait	é	î	u	du
<i>we had —ed</i>	nous avions	é	î	u	du
<i>you had —ed</i>	vous aviez	é	î	u	du
<i>they had —ed</i>	ils avaient	é	î	u	du

FUTURE.

<i>I shall —</i>	Je	aim-erai	pun-irai	d-evrai	ren-drai
<i>thou wilt —</i>	tu	eras	iras	evras	dras
<i>he will —</i>	il	era	ira	evra	dra
<i>we shall —</i>	nous	erons	irons	evrons	drons
<i>you will —</i>	vous	erez	irez	evrez	drez
<i>they will —</i>	ils	eront	iront	evront	dront

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>I shall have — ed</i>	J'aurai	aim-é	pun-i	d-u	ren-du
<i>thou wilt have — ed</i>	tu auras	é	i	u	du
<i>he will have — ed</i>	il aura	é	i	u	du
<i>we shall have — ed</i>	nous aurons	é	i	u	du
<i>you will have — ed</i>	vous aurez	é	i	u	du
<i>they will have — ed</i>	ils auront	é	i	u	du

III. CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I should —</i>	Je	aim-erais	pun-irais	d-evrais	ren-drais
<i>thou wouldst —</i>	tu	erais	irais	evrais	drais
<i>he would —</i>	il	erait	irait	evrait	drait
<i>we should —</i>	nous	erions	irions	evrions	drions
<i>you would —</i>	vous	eriez	iriez	evriez	driez
<i>they would —</i>	ils	eraient	iraient	evraient	draient

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>I should have — ed</i>	J'aurais	aim-é	pun-i	d-u	ren-du
<i>thou wouldst have — ed</i>	tu aurais	é	i	u	du
<i>he would have — ed</i>	il aurait	é	i	u	du
<i>we should have — ed</i>	nous aurions	é	i	u	du
<i>you would have — ed</i>	vous auriez	é	i	u	du
<i>they would have — ed</i>	ils auraient	é	i	u	du

IV. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

<i>— thou</i>		aim-e	pun-is	d-ois	ren-ds
<i>let him —</i>	qu'il	e	isse	olive	de
<i>let us —</i>		ons	issions	evons	dons
<i>— you</i>		ez	issiez	eviez	dez
<i>let them —</i>	qu'ils	ent	issent	oivent	dent

V. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

<i>That I may —</i>	Que je	aim-e	pun-isse	d-olive	ren-de
<i>thou mayst —</i>	tu	es	isses	olives	dés
<i>he may —</i>	il	e	isse	olive	de
<i>we may —</i>	nous	ions	issions	evions	dions
<i>you may —</i>	vous	iez	issiez	eviez	diez
<i>they may —</i>	ils	ent	issent	oivent	dent

IMPERFECT.

<i>That I might —</i>	Que je	aim-asse	pun-isse	d-nasse	ren-disse
<i>thou mightst —</i>	tu	asses	isses	usses	disses
<i>he might —</i>	il	ât	ît	ût	dît
<i>we might —</i>	nous	assions	issions	ussions	dissions
<i>you might —</i>	vous	assiez	issiez	ussiez	dissiez
<i>they might —</i>	ils	assent	issent	ussent	dissent

PERFECT.

<i>That I may have — ed</i>	Que j'aie	aim-é	pun-i	d-u	ren-du
<i>thou mayst have — ed</i>	tu aies	é	i	u	du
<i>he may have — ed</i>	il ait	é	i	u	du
<i>we may have — ed</i>	nous ayons	é	i	u	du
<i>you may have — ed</i>	vous ayez	é	i	u	du
<i>they may have — ed</i>	ils aient	é	i	u	du

PLUPERFECT.

<i>That I might have — ed</i>	Que j'eusse	aim-é	pun-i	d u	ren-du
<i>thou mightst have — ed</i>	tu eusses	é	i	u	du
<i>he might have — ed</i>	il eût	é	i	u	du
<i>we might have — ed</i>	nous eussions	é	i	u	du
<i>you might have — ed</i>	vous eussiez	é	i	u	du
<i>they might have — ed</i>	ils eussent	é	i	u	du

References.

(a) See †, page 24.

* This adjective may precede or follow its substantive.

† *Un honnête homme*, an honest man; *un homme honnête*, a civil man. (458.)

‡ This adjective to precede its substantive.

¶ As this tense answers to the imperfect and perfect definite, it has been marked with a P, to denote that the perfect must be used; without that sign, it is to be rendered by the imperfect.

** See this note, page 67.

§ When the word *should* expresses a duty or necessity, or when it can be turned into *ought*, it is rendered into French by the conditional of the verb *devoir*. You should write, that is, you ought to write, *vous devriez écrire*.|| Whenever the present indicative of the verb *to be* precedes another verb in the infinitive mood, denoting futurity in the action, the idiomatical tense future indefinite positive is always used in French (p. 61).

†† Idiomatical tense (p. 61).

OF NEGATION.

164. (a) The adverb *not* renders an English verb negative. It is translated into French by *ne*, which is placed before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after it, in simple tenses.

I have not, *je n'ai pas*, or *je n'ai point*.*

165. (b) The words *do* or *did*, which generally precede an English verb conjugated negatively, are not expressed in French.

I do not love, *je n'aime pas*.

166. (c) In compound tenses, *ne* comes before the auxiliary, and *pas* or *point* after it.

I have not spoken, *je n'ai pas parlé*.

167. (d) When the verb is in the present tense of the infinitive, *ne* is not generally separated from either *pas* or *point*.

Not to study, *ne pas étudier*, or *ne point étudier*.

168. (e) If the verb is in the perfect of the infinitive, it is optional to separate them or not.

Not to have studied, { *ne pas avoir étudié*,
 { *n'avoir pas étudié*.

* *Ne* is employed without *pas* or *point*, if there is in the sentence a pronoun or adverb expressing negation, such as *nul*, none; *personne*, nobody; *jamais*, never; *rien*, nothing; *plus*, no more, &c.; as, I never give, *je ne donne jamais*; I give nothing, *je ne donne rien*; I only give —, or I give but —, *je ne donne que —*.

[*Point* is a stronger negative than *pas*, and is therefore preferred in general propositions. *L'homme vertueux ne craint point la mort*; a virtuous man does not fear death.

Point denies absolutely, and without restriction or exception; *pas* denies with modification: *Tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont point coupables*, means that none of the accused are guilty—*Tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont pas coupables*, means that amongst those who are accused, some are not guilty.

Point expresses something permanent or habitual; *pas* is used to denote something momentary or accidental. *Il ne lit point, il ne joue point*; he never reads, he never plays—*Il ne lit pas, il ne joue pas*; he does not read now, he does not play now.

Pas is used before adverbs and nouns of number: *pas souvent*, not often; *il n'a pas un ami*, he has not a friend.]

MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED NEGATIVELY.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>Not to give,</i>	Ne pas donner.
PERFECT.	<i>Not to have given,</i>	{ ne pas avoir donné. n'avoir pas donné.
GERUND.	<i>Not giving,</i>	ne donnant pas.
GERUND PAST.	<i>Not having given,</i>	n'ayant pas donné.
FUTURE.	<i>Not about to give,</i>	ne devant pas donner.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I do not give</i>	je ne donne pas
<i>thou dost not give</i>	tu ne donnes pas
<i>he does not give</i>	il ne donne pas
<i>we do not give</i>	nous ne donnons pas
<i>you do not give</i>	vous ne donnez pas
<i>they do not give</i>	ils ne donnent pas

IMPERFECT.

<i>I did not give</i>	je ne donnais pas
<i>thou didst not give</i>	tu ne donnais pas
<i>he did not give</i>	il ne donnait pas
<i>we did not give</i>	nous ne donnions pas
<i>you did not give</i>	vous ne donniez pas
<i>they did not give</i>	ils ne donnaient pas

PERFECT DEFINITE.

*I did not give
thou didst not give
he did not give
we did not give
you did not give
they did not give*

*je ne donnai pas
tu ne donnas pas
il ne donna pas
nous ne donnâmes pas
vous ne donnâtes pas
ils ne donnèrent pas*

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

*I have not given
thou hast not given
he has not given
we have not given
you have not given
they have not given*

*je n'ai pas donné
tu n'as pas donné
il n'a pas donné
nous n'avons pas donné
vous n'avez pas donné
ils n'ont pas donné*

PERFECT ANTERIOR.

*I had not given
thou hadst not given
he had not given
we had not given
you had not given
they had not given*

*je n'eus pas donné
tu n'eus pas donné
il n'eut pas donné
nous n'eûmes pas donné
vous n'eûtes pas donné
ils n'eurent pas donné*

PLUPERFECT.

*I had not given
thou hadst not given
he had not given
we had not given
you had not given
they had not given*

*je n'avais pas donné
tu n'avais pas donné
il n'avait pas donné
nous avions pas donné
vous n'aviez pas donné
ils n'avaient pas donné*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

*I shall not give
thou wilt not give
he will not give
we shall not give
you will not give
they will not give*

*je ne donnerai pas
tu ne donneras pas
il ne donnera pas
nous ne donnerons pas
vous ne donnerez pas
ils ne donneront pas*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

*I shall not have given
thou wilt not have given
he will not have given
we shall not have given
you will not have given
they will not have given*

*je n'aurai pas donné
tu n'auras pas donné
il n'aura pas donné
nous n'aurons pas donné
vous n'aurez pas donné
ils n'auront pas donné*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

*I should not give
thou wouldst not give
he would not give
we should not give
you would not give
they would not give*

je ne donnerais pas
tu ne donnerais pas
il ne donnerait pas
nous ne donnerions pas
vous ne donneriez pas
ils ne donneraient pas

CONDITIONAL PAST.

*I should not have given
thou shouldst not have given
he should not have given
we should not have given
you would not have given
they would not have given*

je n'aurais pas donné
tu n'aurais pas donné
il n'aurait pas donné
nous n'aurions pas donné
vous n'auriez pas donné
ils n'auraient pas donné

We likewise say: je n'eusse pas donné, tu n'eusses pas donné, il n'eût pas donné,—
nous n'eussions pas donné, vous n'eussiez pas donné, ils n'eussent pas donné.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Do not give
let him not give
let us not give
give not
let them not give*

ne donne pas
qu'il ne donne pas
ne donnons pas
ne donnez pas
qu'ils ne donnent pas

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*That I may not give
that thou mayst not give
that he may not give
that we may not give
that you may not give
that they may not give*

que je ne donne pas
que tu ne donnes pas
qu'il ne donne pas
que nous ne donnions pas
que vous ne donniez pas
qu'ils ne donnent pas

IMPERFECT.

*That I might not give
that thou mightst not give
that he might not give
that we might not give
that you might not give
that they might not give*

que je ne donnasse pas
que tu ne donnasses pas
qu'il ne donnât pas
que nous ne donnassions pas
que vous ne donnassiez pas
qu'ils ne donnassent pas

PERFECT.

<i>That I may not have given</i>	<i>que je n'aie pas donné</i>
<i>that thou mayst not have given</i>	<i>que tu n'aies pas donné</i>
<i>that he may not have given</i>	<i>qu'il n'ait pas donné</i>
<i>that we may not have given</i>	<i>que nous n'ayons pas donné</i>
<i>that you may not have given</i>	<i>que vous n'ayez pas donné</i>
<i>that they may not have given</i>	<i>qu'ils n'aient pas donné</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>That I might not have given</i>	<i>que je n'eusse pas donné</i>
<i>that thou mightst not have given</i>	<i>que tu n'eusses pas donné</i>
<i>that he might not have given</i>	<i>qu'il n'eût pas donné</i>
<i>that we might not have given</i>	<i>que nous n'eussions pas donné</i>
<i>that you might not have given</i>	<i>que vous n'eussiez pas donné</i>
<i>that they might not have given</i>	<i>qu'ils n'eussent pas donné</i>

EXERCISE XXVII.

INDICATIVE PRES. I do not speak of that event——I have
(b) (a) *parler* *événement m.*

no impatience—I have no more bread——That action does not
(a) ‡——f. || * *pain m.* — f. (b) (a)

deserve a reward——He is not happy—She does not call her
mériter. récompense f. (a) *heureux* (a) *appeler †*

brother—We have no pretension to the succession—You are not
(a) *prétention f.* — f. (a)

obliging—They do not relieve the poor.
complaisant (b) (a) *soulager* *pauvre m. pl.*

IMPERFECT. I was not angry—I had no money—He was not
(a) *fâché* ‡ *argent* (a)

learned—Eliza was not studious—She had not a good master—We
savant Elise (a) (a) *maître*

were not laborious—We were not building that house—You were
(a) (a) *bâtir*

not breakfasting—They were not active—My brother and sister
(a) *déjeuner* (a) *actif*

were not studying; they were playing.
(a) *étudier* *jouer.*

PERF. DEF. I did not reward my servant——That general
(a) *récompenser* *domestique m.*

did not invade their country—He did not neglect the study of
(a) *envahir* *pays m.* (a) (d) *négliger* *étude f.*

history—We did not advise that dangerous measure—You were
.... f. (a) *conseiller* *mesure f.*

not obstinate—You did not sell your carriage—They did not
 (a) *obstiné* (a) *vendre* *voiture f.* (a)
 answer—They did not blame your conduct.
répondre (a) *blâmer* *conduite f.*

PERF. INDEF. I have not received your letter—I have never
 (c) ||
 spoken to the king—He has not been prodigal—She has never been
 (c) *prodigue* ||
 pretty—We have not finished our work—We have not chosen a
joli (c) *achever* *ouvrage m.* (c) *choisir*
 good colour—You have not sealed your letters—They have not had
couleur f. (c) *cacheter* (c)
 the opportunity to . . . —They have not [sent back] his book.
occasion f. de . . . (c) *renvoyer*

PERF. ANT. I had not had a new hat—He had not been my
 (c) *neuf chapeau m.* (c)
 enemy—We had not punished his disobedience—You had not had
ennemi m. (c) *désobéissance f.* (c)
 a present from your mother—They had not had continual fears.
 (c) *continuel crainte f.*

PLUPERF. I had not warned your parents of your faults—We
 (c) *avertir* *parent m* *faute f.*
 had not returned his visit—You had not employed a good workman
 (c) *rendre* *visite f.* (c) *employer* *ouvrier m.*
 —They had not travelled.
 (c) *voyager.*

FUTURE. I shall not be impatient—I shall not compare my
 (a) (a) *comparer*
 fortune to yours—We shall never suspect your probity—You
|| *soupçonner* . . . f.
 will not approve that rash resolution—These merciless
 (a) *approuver* *téméraire* *résolution f.* *impitoyable*
 tyrants will never forgive their criminal intrigues.
tyran m. || *pardonner* . . . f.

FUT. ANT. I shall not have been ungrateful—He will not have
 (c) *ingrat* (c)
 received—We shall not have travelled—You will not have finished
 (c) (c) *finir*
 this book—They will not have carried that parcel.
 (c) *porter* *paquet m.*

CONDIT. MOOD. PRES. I should not prefer your profession to
(a) *préférer* — f.

his—She would not be troublesome—He would not suspend the
(a) *incommode* (a) *suspendre*

prosecution of his designs—We should not be subject to those
poursuite f. *dessein* m. (a) *sujet*

inconveniences—You would not like the society of those men—A
inconvenient m. (a) *aimer* f.

good minister would only aim at the glory and prosperity of the
ministre ‖ *viser à* § f.

nation.

— f.

CONDIT. PAST. I should not have sown that field—He
(c) *ensemencer* *champ* m.

would not have sacrificed his advantage to mine—We should not
(c) *sacrifier* *avantage* m. (c)

have given our consent to that bargain—You would not have
consentement m. *marché* m. (c)

been ill—These hasty resolutions would not have been prudent
malade *précipité* (c) —

IMPERATIVE. Do not be lavish—Do not act—Answer not—Let
(a) *prodigue* (a) *agir répondre* (a)

him not be thoughtless—Let not a child answer—Let not that
(a) *étourdi* (a) (a)

instance sully the glory of your former conduct—Let us never
traît m. *ternir* f. *premier conduite* f. ‖

neglect the duties of our salvation—Let us not covet the frail
(a) *négliger* *devoir* m. *salut* m. (a) *convoiter* *fragile*

goods of this world—Do not forget the fulfilment of your
bien m. *monde* m. (a) *oublier* *accomplissement* m.

promise—Do not refuse that proof of my sincere affection
promesse f. (a) *refuser* *témoignage* m. — — f.

—Let not the judges reject that proof of their innocence.
(a) *juge* m. † *rejeter* *preuve* f. — f.

References.

- (a) }
(b) } See this Rule.
(c) }

(d) See note †, page 67: see the verb *jurer* among the irregular verbs (p. 153).

* *Ne plus* is followed by *de* before a noun.

† Verbs ending in *eler* and *eter* have an irregularity in their orthography—they double the *l* and *t*, whenever that

letter is followed by *s* mute. See *appeler* (p. 139), and *jeter* (p. 153).

‡ When a substantive used in an unlimited sense is the direct object of a transitive verb, and comes immediately after an verb of negation, it takes only the preposition *de* without any article.

§ The conjunction *et* joins like cases in nouns or pronouns.

‖ See note *, page 83.

Read, translate and parse.

Je n'ai pas de gravures. Vous n'êtes pas paresseux.
Charles n'a pas reçu son argent. Ses dernières lettres
n'étaient pas consolantes. Vous n'avez pas cultivé son
esprit.

EXAMINATION.- 164. What word makes an English verb negative, and how is it translated? What is the place of the French negative *ne pas* or *ne point*, in simple tenses? 165. Are the words *do* or *did*, which generally accompany an English verb, expressed in French? 166. When the verb is in any compound tense, what is the place of the French negative *ne pas* or *ne point*? 167. Are *ne pas* or *ne point* always separated? 168. In what case are you at liberty to separate or not, the negative *ne pas* or *ne point*?

OF INTERROGATION.

169. (a) An English or French verb is made interrogative by placing the nominative after it:

Have you? *avez-vous?*

170. (b) An auxiliary verb (*do, did, &c.*) is generally used in English when a question is asked, and the nominative is placed after that auxiliary; in French the nominative pronoun follows the verb, and *do* or *did* is not expressed.

Do we speak? *parlons-nous?*

171. (c) If a verb has for its nominative a substantive that substantive comes first, and one of the pronouns, *il, elle, ils, elles*, according to its gender and number, is placed after the verb.

Does the child speak? *l'enfant parle-t-il?*

[This sentence must be construed in this manner: *the child, does he speak?*]

172. (d) In compound tenses the nominative pronoun comes after the auxiliary:

Have you spoken? *avez-vous parlé?*

173. (e) When the nominative is a noun, it must precede the auxiliary, and the pronoun precedes the participle.

Has your father spoken? *votre père a-t-il parlé?*

CONJUGATION OF A VERB USED INTERROGATIVELY.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Do I love?</i>	<i>aimé-je? * †</i>
<i>dost thou love?</i>	<i>aimes-tu?</i>
<i>does he love?</i>	<i>aime-t-il? ‡</i>
<i>does one love?</i>	<i>aime-t-on?</i>
<i>does she love?</i>	<i>aime-t-elle?</i>
<i>does your father love?</i>	<i>votre père aime-t-il? ‡</i>
<i>do we love?</i>	<i>aimons-nous?</i>
<i>do you love?</i>	<i> aimez-vous?</i>
<i>do they love?</i>	<i>aiment-ils?</i>
<i>do they love?—fem.</i>	<i>aiment-elles?</i>
<i>do your brothers love?</i>	<i>vos frères aiment-ils?</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>Did I love?</i>	<i>aimais-je?</i>
<i>didst thou love?</i>	<i>aimais-tu?</i>
<i>did he love?</i>	<i>aimait-il?</i>
<i>did we love?</i>	<i>aimions-nous?</i>
<i>did you love?</i>	<i>aimiez-vous?</i>
<i>did they love?</i>	<i>aimaient-ils?</i>

PERFECT DEFINITE.

<i>Did I love?</i>	<i>aimai-je?</i>
<i>didst thou love?</i>	<i>aimas-tu?</i>
<i>did he love?</i>	<i>aima-t-il?</i>
<i>did we love?</i>	<i>aimâmes-nous?</i>
<i>did you love?</i>	<i>aimâtes-vous?</i>
<i>did they love?</i>	<i>aimèrent-ils?</i>

* When the pronoun *je* comes after the first person singular of a tense ending in *e* mute, that *e* becomes accented.

† Questions are often asked by *est-ce que*, and then the nominative precedes the verb. *Est-ce que vous lisez Virgile?* Do you read Virgil? or, You read Virgil, do you? But this way of asking questions marks our surprise or doubt, rather than the mere desire of being informed of the truth. This mode of interrogation is also used with the first person singular of the present of certain verbs, where the sound would be harsh and disagreeable: we do not say, *rends-je? vends-je? perds-je? fonde-je? réponds-je? pars-je? cours-je? dors-je?* Sometimes we could not even be understood, as, for instance, *rends-je? vends-je? mène-je?* might be mistaken for the imperative *range, venge, mange*. We must therefore say, *est-ce que je rends? est-ce que je vends? &c.*

‡ When the third person singular ends with a vowel, a *t* between two hyphens (-t-) is put between the verb and the pronoun.

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

<i>Have I loved?</i>	<i>ai-je aimé? *</i>
<i>hast thou loved?</i>	<i>as-tu aimé?</i>
<i>has he loved?</i>	<i>a-t-il aimé?</i>
<i>has your brother loved?</i>	<i>votre frère a-t-il aimé?</i>
<i>have we loved?</i>	<i>avons-nous aimé?</i>
<i>have you loved?</i>	<i>avez-vous aimé?</i>
<i>have they loved?</i>	<i>ont-ils aimé?</i>
<i>have your brothers loved?</i>	<i>vos frères ont-ils aimé?</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Had I loved?</i>	<i>avais-je aimé?</i>
<i>hadst thou loved?</i>	<i>avais-tu aimé?</i>
<i>had he loved?</i>	<i>avait-il aimé?</i>
<i>had we loved?</i>	<i>avions-nous aimé?</i>
<i>had you loved?</i>	<i>aviez-vous aimé?</i>
<i>had they loved?</i>	<i>avaient-ils aimé?</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>Shall I love?</i>	<i>aimerai-je?</i>
<i>wilt thou love?</i>	<i>aimeras-tu?</i>
<i>will he love?</i>	<i>aimera-t-il?</i>
<i>shall we love?</i>	<i>aimerons-nous?</i>
<i>will you love?</i>	<i>aimerez-vous?</i>
<i>will they love?</i>	<i>aimeront-ils?</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Shall I have loved?</i>	<i>aurai-je aimé?</i>
<i>wilt thou have loved?</i>	<i>auras-tu aimé?</i>
<i>will he have loved?</i>	<i>aura-t-il aimé?</i>
<i>shall we have loved?</i>	<i>aurons-nous aimé?</i>
<i>will you have loved?</i>	<i>aurez-vous aimé?</i>
<i>will they have loved?</i>	<i>auront-ils aimé?</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Should I love?</i>	<i>aimerais-je?</i>
<i>wouldst thou love?</i>	<i>aimerais-tu?</i>
<i>would he love?</i>	<i>aimerait-il?</i>
<i>should we love?</i>	<i>aimerions-nous?</i>
<i>would you love?</i>	<i>aimeriez-vous?</i>
<i>would they love?</i>	<i>aimeraient-ils?</i>

* In interrogation the *e* of the pronoun *je* is never cut off before a participle.

CONDITIONAL PAST.

*Should I have loved?
wouldst thou have loved?
would he have loved?
should we have loved?
would you have loved?
would they have loved?*

*aurais-je aimé?
aurais-tu aimé?
aurait-il aimé?
aurions-nous aimé?
auriez-vous aimé?
auraient-ils aimé?*

Or: eusse-je aimé? eusses-tu aimé? eût-il aimé?—eussions-nous aimé? eussiez-vous aimé? eussent-ils aimé?

EXERCISE XXVIII.

INDICATIVE PRES. Have I books?—Dost thou bring good
(a) * (b) *apporter*

news?—Does he like the study of that language?—Do we
† *nouvelle f.* (h) *aimer étude f. langue f.*

love peace and tranquillity?—Do you prefer your house to his?
(a) *paix f. tranquillité f.* (b) *préférer*

—Have they coloured maps?
(a) *coloré * carte f.*

IMPERF. Was I negligent?—Didst thou dread his firmness?
(a) — (b) *redouter fermeté f.*

—Had she a needle?—Had your brother the virtues of his
(a) *aiguille f.* (c)

ancestors?—Had we any leisure?—Were we speaking to that
ancêtres m. pl. (a) (i) *loisir m.* (f)

man?—Did you blame his rashness?—Were they afflicted?—
(b) *blâmer témérité f.* (a) *affligé*

Were your sisters at the last ball?
(c) *d dernier † bal m.*

PERF. DEF. Did I lose the opportunity?—Did the king
(b) *perdre occasion f.* (c)

reward their services?—Did he reply?—Did we punish an
récompenser — m. (h) *répliquer* (b)

innocent mistake?—Did you correct the faults of that exercise?—
— *erreur f.* (b) (k) *corriger thème m.*


Did the soldiers occupy the fort?
(c) *soldat m. occuper* — m.

PERF. INDEF. Have I advised that dangerous measure?—Has
(d) *conseiller mesure f.* (e)

your partner received my letter?—Have we subjected our
associé m. (d) *assujettir*

will to theirs?—Have you related that anecdote?—Have your
volonté f. (d) raconter — f. (e)

tears softened the heart of that tyrant?
larmes f. attendrir tyran

 *The Perfect Anterior is seldom used interrogatively.*

PLUPERFECT. Had I examined the original authors?—Had she
(d) examiner — auteur m. (d)

offended her protectors?—Had we proposed a ridiculous opinion?
offenseur m. (d) proposer ridicule — f.

—Had you fulfilled your duties?—Had your friends procured a
(d) remplir devoir m. (e) procurer

good situation for my governess?
— f. d institutrice

FUTURE. Shall I finish your work?—Will Miss Lucy sing?—
(a) (c) Lucie chanter

Shall we dance?—Will you repeat his words?—Will they keep
(a) danser (a) répéter parole f. (a) garder
 that secret?
— m.

FUT. ANT. Shall I have travelled?—Will she have forgotten?—
(d) voyager (d) oublier
 Shall we have had that pleasure?—Will you have bought that
(d) plaisir m. (d) acheter
 beautiful horse?—Will they have imitated that work?
cheval m. (d) imiter ouvrage m.

CONDITIONAL MOOD. PRES. Should I disturb your private
(a) troubler particulier
 conversation?—Would your brother improve?—Should we lament
— f. (c) profiter (a) pleurer
 the death of that usurper?—Would you buy that poor
mort f. usurpateur m. (a) acheter & pauvre
 animal?—Would the inhabitants of this city refuse the offer of
— m. (c) habitant m. ville f. refuser offre f.
 the minister?
ministre m.

CONDIT. PAST. Should I have chosen a whimsical and capricious
(d) fantasque
 friend?—Would she have played?—Should we have published the
(d) jouer (d) publier

works of that statesman?—Would they have comforted that
œuvres f. pl. homme d'état (d) consoler
 disconsolate widow?
désolé veuve f.

References.

- (a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }
 (d) }

(f) See 169, and note †, page 59.

(h) See 170, and note †, page 91.

(i) Any, see note †, page 11.

(k) See note †, page 67.

* Partitive sense (p. 11).

† *Nouvelle* may remain in the singular, and be preceded by the indefinite article, *une bonne nouvelle*; or it may be taken in a partitive sense plural, *de bonnes nouvelles*.

‡ Adjectives of number usually precede the substantive.

‡ This adjective to precede its substantive.

Read, translate and parse.

Avez-vous des cartes? Auront-ils des fruits rares? La révolution a-t-elle ruiné cette famille? Ce maître donne-t-il de bonne musique à ses élèves?

EXAMINATION.—169. How is an English or French verb made interrogative? 170. Where is the nominative pronoun of a French verb placed when a question is asked? What do you observe concerning the English verbs *do* and *did*? 171. When a verb has a substantive for its nominative, what do you observe in the construction? 172. What is the place of the nominative pronoun in compound tenses? 173. When the nominative is a noun, what is its place in compound tenses? p. 91, note †. Are not questions also asked by *Est-ce que?* and in what sense? In what other instances do you make use of *Est-ce que?* *ibid.* †. When a verb ends in *e* mute in the first person singular, present tense, what alteration is made? p. 91, †. In what instances do you introduce *-t-* between the verb and the pronoun? p. 92 †. Is the *e* of *je* ever cut off before a participle in interrogations?

OF INTERROGATION AND NEGATION.

174. (a) When a verb is used interrogatively and negatively, *ne* comes before the verb in its simple tenses, and before the auxiliary, in its compound ones; *pas*, *point*, *jamais*, &c., always come after the pronoun nominative.

Does not your sister improve? votre sœur ne profite-t-elle point?
Have you not spoken? n'avez-vous pas parlé?

[This question is also asked by *n'est-ce pas que?* when we call upon others to confirm what we say: as, *n'est-ce pas que votre sœur profite?*]

**CONJUGATION OF A VERB
USED INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Do I not love?</i>	<i>n'aimé-je pas?</i>
<i>dost thou not love?</i>	<i>n'aimes-tu pas?</i>
<i>does he not love?</i>	<i>n'aime-t-il pas?</i>
<i>does one not love?</i>	<i>n'aime-t-on pas?</i>
<i>does not your brother love?</i>	<i>votre frère n'aime-t-il pas?</i>
<i>do we not love?</i>	<i>n'aimons-nous pas?</i>
<i>do you not love?</i>	<i>n'aimez-vous pas?</i>
<i>do they not love?</i>	<i>n'aiment-ils pas?</i>
<i>do not your brothers love?</i>	<i>vos frères n'aiment-ils pas?</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>Did I not love?</i>	<i>n'aimais-je pas?</i>
<i>didst thou not love?</i>	<i>n'aimais-tu pas?</i>
<i>did he not love?</i>	<i>n'aimait-il pas?</i>
<i>did we not love?</i>	<i>n'aimions-nous pas?</i>
<i>did you not love?</i>	<i>n'aimiez-vous pas?</i>
<i>did they not love?</i>	<i>n'aimaient-ils pas?</i>

PERFECT DEFINITE.

<i>Did I not love?</i>	<i>n'aimai-je pas?</i>
<i>didst thou not love?</i>	<i>n'aimas-tu pas?</i>
<i>did he not love?</i>	<i>n'aima-t-il pas?</i>
<i>did we not love?</i>	<i>n'aimâmes-nous pas?</i>
<i>did you not love?</i>	<i>n'aimâtes vous pas?</i>
<i>did they not love?</i>	<i>n'aimèrent-ils pas?</i>

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

<i>Have I not loved?</i>	<i>n'ai-je pas aimé?</i>
<i>hast thou not loved?</i>	<i>n'as-tu pas aimé?</i>
<i>has he not loved?</i>	<i>n'a-t-il pas aimé?</i>
<i>have we not loved?</i>	<i>n'avons-nous pas aimé?</i>
<i>have you not loved?</i>	<i>n'avez-vous pas aimé?</i>
<i>have they not loved?</i>	<i>n'ont-ils pas aimé?</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Had I not loved?</i>	<i>n'avais-je pas aimé?</i>
<i>hadst thou not loved?</i>	<i>n'avais-tu pas aimé?</i>
<i>had he not loved?</i>	<i>n'avait-il pas aimé?</i>
<i>had we not loved?</i>	<i>n'avions-nous pas aimé?</i>
<i>had you not loved?</i>	<i>n'aviez-vous pas aimé?</i>
<i>had they not loved?</i>	<i>n'avaient-ils pas aimé?</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

*Shall I not love?
wilt thou not love?
will he not love?
shall we not love?
will you not love?
will they not love?*

*n'aimerai-je pas?
n'aimeras-tu pas?
n'aimera-t-il pas?
n'aimerons-nous pas?
n'aimerez-vous pas?
n'aimeront-ils pas?*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

*Shall I not have loved?
wilt thou not have loved?
will he not have loved?
shall we not have loved?
will you not have loved?
will they not have loved?*

*n'aurai-je pas aimé?
n'auras-tu pas aimé?
n'aura-t-il pas aimé?
n'aurons-nous pas aimé?
n'aurez-vous pas aimé?
n'auront-ils pas aimé?*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

*Should I not love?
wouldst thou not love?
would he not love?
should we not love?
would you not love?
would they not love?*

*n'aimerais-je pas?
n'aimerais-tu pas?
n'aimerait-il pas?
n'aimerions-nous pas?
n'aimeriez-vous pas?
n'aimeraient-ils pas?*

CONDITIONAL PAST.

*Should I not have loved?
wouldst thou not have loved?
would he not have loved?
should we not have loved?
would you not have loved?
would they not have loved?*

*n'aurais-je pas aimé?
n'aurais-tu pas aimé?
n'aurait-il pas aimé?
n'aurions-nous pas aimé?
n'auriez-vous pas aimé?
n'auraient-ils pas aimé?*

Or: n'eussé-je pas aimé? n'eusses-tu pas aimé? n'eût-il pas aimé?—n'eussions-nous pas aimé? n'eussiez-vous pas aimé? n'eussent-ils pas aimé?

EXERCISE XXIX.

INDICATIVE. PRÉS. Am I not studious?—Has he not an amiable
(a) (a) *aimable*

companion?—Do we not feel your sorrows?—Do you not
compagnon m. (a) (c) *partager chagrin m.* (a)

prefer pleasure to your duty?—Have they not a large income?
préféer devoir m. (a) *gros revenu m.*

IMPERFECT. Did I not conceive that rule?—Was he not
(a) *concevoir règle f.* (a)

attentive?—Were we not impatient?—Did you not admire the
 (a) — (a) *admirer*
 profound wisdom of their institution?—Were they not watering
profond sagesse f. — (a) (b) *arroser*
 their garden?
jardin m.

PERF. DEF. Did I not excuse your mistakes?—Did not Cecilia
 (a) *excuser* *méprise f.* (a) *Cécile*
 admire the beauty of that landscape?—Did not we restore the
paysage m. (a) *rétablir*
 ancient discipline of the school?—Did you not study geography?
 — f. *école f.* (a) *étudier art.*
 —Did not the unjust conquerors seize the goods of the peaceful
 (a) *injuste conquérant saisir* *bien m.* *paisible*
 citizens?
citoyen m.

PERF. INDEF. Have I not had indulgent parents?—Hast thou
 (a) — * — m. (a)
 not been charitable?—Has not the tutor given fine
 — (a) *précepteur m.*
 engravings to his pupil?—Have we not rendered an essential
 * *gravure f.* *élève m. & f.* (a) *rendre* *essentiel*
 service to that young lady?—Have you not distinguished his
 — m. (a) *distinguer*
 friends from mine?—Have they not punished the guilty?
 (a) *coupable m. pl.*

PLUPERF. Had I not paid your creditors?—Had he not shown
 (a) *payer* *créancier m.* (a) *montrer*
 the fatal consequences of that innovation?—Had we not protected
 — — f. — f. (a) *protéger*
 that bad man?—Had you not given peaches and flowers to my
méchant (a) *pêches f.* *fleur f.*
 neighbours?—Had not your friends perceived their mistake?
voisin m. (a) *apercevoir* *méprise f.*

FUTURE. Shall I not have studious pupils?—Will he not be
 (a) *appliqué* (a)
 troublesome?—Shall we not give a watch to our son?—Will you
importun (a) *montre f.* *fils* (a)
 not assemble your friends and relations?—Will they not cease
rassembler *parent m.* (a) *cesser*
 their importunities?
importunité f.

FUT. ANT. Shall I not have been obstinate and particular?—
(a) *opiniâtre* *pointilleux*

Will not his sister have been inconsiderate?—Shall we not have
(a) *indiscret* (a)

tried a new method?—Will you not have been distrustful?—
essayer † *nouveau méthode f.* (a) *défiant*

Will they not have sacrificed their interest to the public good?
(a) *sacrifier* *intérêt m.* *bien m.*

CONDIT. PRES. Should I not have just and clear ideas?—Would
(a) *idée f.* (a)

not a sincere repentance extenuate your crime?—Should we not
repentir m. *exténuer* — *m.* (a)

regret his departure?—Would you not discover that atrocious
regretter *départ m.* (a) *dévoiler* *atroce*

plot?—Would not these uncertain principles [lead astray]?
complot m. (a) *incertain principe m.* *égarer*

CONDIT. PAST. Should I not have deceived the expectation
(a) *tromper* *attente f.*

of my family?—Would he not have played?—Should we not
famille f. (a) *jouer* (a)

have doubled our enjoyments?—Would you not have blamed his
doubler *jouissance f.* (a) *blâmer*

pride and incivility?—Would not those merchants have
orgueil m. † *impolitesse f.* (a) *négociant m.*

paid their debts?
payer *dette f.*

References.

a) See this Rule.

(b) See note †, page 59.

(c) See note ‡, page 67.

* Partitive sense.

† The pronoun must be repeated.

‡ This adjective to precede its substantive.

Read, translate and parse.

N'avez-vous pas divulgué notre secret? N'avez-vous pas prêté votre cheval à cet étourdi? Des fidèles historiens n'ont-ils pas raconté ces événements tragiques?

EXAMINATION.—174. When a verb is used negatively and interrogatively, where do you place *ne pas*, *ne point*, *ne jamais*, &c.?

OF PASSIVE VERBS.

175. An active verb (and an active verb only) may become passive, by adding its participle to every mood and tense of the auxiliary verb *être*, to be.

[The active verb *avoir* cannot become passive. We do not say: *un lièvre est eu*, *de l'argent sera eu*, &c.

Two neuter verbs, *obéir à* and *convenir de*, may become passive, as; *obéir au roi*, and *le roi est obéi*; *convenir d'une chose*, and *cette chose est convenue*.]

176. The participle is then declined, that is, takes the gender and number of the nominative to the verb.

177. Participles take an *e* mute for their feminine, and form their plural by the addition of *s*, as :

<i>He is punished</i>	<i>il est puni.</i>
<i>She is punished</i>	<i>elle est punie.</i>
<i>Charles and Adolphus are punished</i>	<i>Charles et Adolphe sont punies.</i>
<i>Eliza and Caroline are punished</i>	<i>Elise et Caroline sont punies.</i>

CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>To be loved,</i>	<i>Être aimé.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>To have been loved,</i>	<i>avoir été aimé.</i>
GERUND.	<i>Being loved,</i>	<i>étant aimé.</i>
GERUND PAST.	<i>Having been loved,</i>	<i>ayant été aimé.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>About to be loved,</i>	<i>devant être aimé.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I am loved</i>	<i>je suis aimé</i>
<i>thou art loved</i>	<i>tu es aimé</i>
<i>he is loved</i>	<i>il est aimé</i>
<i>we are loved</i>	<i>nous sommes aimés</i>
<i>you are loved</i>	<i>vous êtes aimés *</i>
<i>they are loved</i>	<i>ils sont aimés</i>

* Or *aimé*, when the pronoun *you* is used instead of *thou*, that is, when addressing a single person (156, p. 43).

IMPERFECT.

<i>I was loved</i>	<i>j'étais aimé</i>
<i>thou wast loved</i>	<i>tu étais aimé</i>
<i>he was loved</i>	<i>il était aimé</i>
<i>we were loved</i>	<i>nous étions aimés</i>
<i>you were loved</i>	<i>vous étiez aimés</i>
<i>they were loved</i>	<i>ils étaient aimés</i>

PERFECT DEFINITE.

<i>I was loved</i>	<i>je fus aimé</i>
<i>thou wast loved</i>	<i>tu fus aimé</i>
<i>he was loved</i>	<i>il fut aimé</i>
<i>we were loved</i>	<i>nous fûmes aimés</i>
<i>you were loved</i>	<i>vous fûtes aimés</i>
<i>they were loved</i>	<i>ils furent aimés</i>

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

<i>I have been loved</i>	<i>j'ai été aimé</i>
<i>thou hast been loved</i>	<i>tu as été aimé</i>
<i>he has been loved</i>	<i>il a été aimé</i>
<i>we have been loved</i>	<i>nous avons été aimés</i>
<i>you have been loved</i>	<i>vous avez été aimés</i>
<i>they have been loved</i>	<i>ils ont été aimés</i>

PERFECT ANTERIOR.

<i>I had been loved</i>	<i>j'eus été aimé</i>
<i>thou hadst been loved</i>	<i>tu eus été aimé</i>
<i>he had been loved</i>	<i>il eut été aimé</i>
<i>we had been loved</i>	<i>nous eûmes été aimés</i>
<i>you had been loved</i>	<i>vous eûtes été aimés</i>
<i>they had been loved</i>	<i>ils eurent été aimés</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had been loved</i>	<i>j'avais été aimé</i>
<i>thou hadst been loved</i>	<i>tu avais été aimé</i>
<i>he had been loved</i>	<i>il avait été aimé</i>
<i>we had been loved</i>	<i>nous avions été aimés</i>
<i>you had been loved</i>	<i>vous aviez été aimés</i>
<i>they had been loved</i>	<i>ils avaient été aimés</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>I shall be loved</i>	<i>je serai aimé</i>
<i>thou wilt be loved</i>	<i>tu seras aimé</i>
<i>he will be loved</i>	<i>il sera aimé</i>
<i>we shall be loved</i>	<i>nous serons aimés</i>
<i>you will be loved</i>	<i>vous serez aimés</i>
<i>they will be loved</i>	<i>ils seront aimés</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>I shall have been loved</i>	<i>j'aurai été aimé</i>
<i>thou wilt have been loved</i>	<i>tu auras été aimé</i>
<i>he will have been loved</i>	<i>il aura été aimé</i>
<i>we shall have been loved</i>	<i>nous aurons été aimés</i>
<i>you will have been loved</i>	<i>vous aurez été aimés</i>
<i>they will have been loved</i>	<i>ils auront été aimés</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I should be loved</i>	<i>je serais aimé</i>
<i>thou wouldst be loved</i>	<i>tu serais aimé</i>
<i>he would be loved</i>	<i>il serait aimé</i>
<i>we should be loved</i>	<i>nous serions aimés</i>
<i>you would be loved</i>	<i>vous seriez aimés</i>
<i>they would be loved</i>	<i>ils seraient aimés</i>

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>I should have been loved</i>	<i>j'aurais été aimé</i>
<i>thou wouldst have been loved</i>	<i>tu aurais été aimé</i>
<i>he would have been loved</i>	<i>il aurait été aimé</i>
<i>we should have been loved</i>	<i>nous aurions été aimés</i>
<i>you would have been loved</i>	<i>vous auriez été aimés</i>
<i>they would have been loved</i>	<i>ils auraient été aimés</i>

Or: j'eusse été aimé or aimée, tu eusses été aimé, il eût été aimé,—nous eussions été aimés or aimées, vous eussiez été aimés, ils eussent été aimés.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Be thou loved</i>	<i>sois aimé or aimée</i>
<i>let him be loved</i>	<i>qu'il soit aimé</i>
<i>let her be loved</i>	<i>qu'elle soit aimée</i>
<i>let us be loved</i>	<i>soyons aimés or aimées</i>
<i>be ye loved</i>	<i>soyez aimés or aimées</i>
<i>let them be loved</i>	<i>{ qu'ils soient aimés</i>
	<i>{ qu'elles soient aimées</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>That I may be loved</i>	<i>que je sois aimé</i>
<i>that thou mayst be loved</i>	<i>que tu sois aimé</i>
<i>that he may be loved</i>	<i>qu'il soit aimé</i>
<i>that we may be loved</i>	<i>que nous soyons aimés</i>
<i>that you may be loved</i>	<i>que vous soyez aimés</i>
<i>that they may be loved</i>	<i>qu'ils soient aimés</i>

IMPERFECT.

*That I might be loved
that thou mightst be loved
that he might be loved
that we might be loved
that you might be loved
that they might be loved*

*que je fusse aimé
que tu fusses aimé
qu'il fût aimé
que nous fussions aimés
que vous fussiez aimés
qu'ils fussent aimés*

PERFECT.

*That I may have been loved
that thou mayst have been loved
that he may have been loved
that we may have been loved
that you may have been loved
that they may have been loved*

*que j'aie été aimé
que tu aies été aimé
qu'il ait été aimé
que nous ayons été aimés
que vous ayez été aimés
qu'ils aient été aimés*

PLUPERFECT.

*That I might have been loved
that thou mightst have been loved
that he might have been loved
that we might have been loved
that you might have been loved
that they might have been loved*

*que j'eusse été aimé
que tu eusses été aimé
qu'il eût été aimé
que nous eussions été aimés
que vous eussiez été aimés
qu'ils eussent été aimés*

EXERCISE XXX.

INDICATIVE. PRES. I am attacked—He is not alarmed—We are
attaquer *alarmer*

protected—Are you praised?—They are invited by their friends.
protéger *louer* *inviter* *

IMPERF. I was not rewarded—She was punished—We were
récompenser

esteemed—You were encouraged—They were ruined.
estimer *encourager* *ruiner.*

PERF. DEF. I was deceived—The actor was not applauded—We
tromper *applaudir*

were betrayed—You were bitten by a dog—They were loved by
trahir *mordre* * *chien m.* †
their mother.

PERF. INDEF. I have been forgotten—The offer has been
oublier

rejected—We have been deceived—You have been exposed to
refuser *exposer*

the jealousy of the king—They have been arrested.
jalousie f. *arrêter.*

PERF. ANT. I had been punished—She had been applauded—
 We had been banished—You had been undeceived—The vessels
bannir *détromper* *vaisseaux m.*
 had been lost.
perdre.

PLUPERF. I had been received—The general had been sent
général *envoyer*
 to his army—We had been expected—You had been consulted—
armée f. *attendre* *consulter*
 The villages had been abandoned by their inhabitants.
— m. *abandonner ** *habitant m.*

FUTURE. I shall be protected—A modest girl will be encouraged—
 —Shall we be consulted?—You will not be applauded—They will
 be invited.

FUT. ANT. I shall have been warned—Amelia will have been
avertir
 invited—We shall have been blamed—Will you have been
 comforted?—The accomplishments of these ladies will have been
consoler *talent m.*
 admired.

CONDITIONAL PRES. I should be chosen—The invitation would
 be refused—We should be ruined—You would be received—The
 ministers would be sent to the tower.
tour f.

CONDIT. PAST. I should not have been warned of that danger—
avertir *— m.*
 He would have been sacrificed—We should have been preferred—
sacrifier *préférer*
 You would not have been forgiven by that merciless despot—
*pardonner ** *impitoyable despote m.*
 Your private conversations would have been disturbed.
particulier *— f.* *troubler.*

IMPERATIVE. Be not disheartened—Let not the church be
décourager *église f.*
 demolished—Let us be attached to our duties—Let colonies be
démolir *attacher* *colonie f.*
 sent to the Cape of Good Hope.
Cap m. *Bonne-Espérance.*

References.

* The government of a French passive verb is either *de* or *par*, (in English, *by*, *from*, *with*.) but with this difference, that *par* is used when the verb denotes an action, in which the body, or the body and mind are concerned; Rome was built by Romulus, *Rome fut bâtie par Romulus*;

he was deceived by his friend, *il fut trompé par son ami*.

† *De* is used when the verb expresses an action in which the mind only is concerned; she is beloved by her parents, *elle est chérie de ses parents*.—There are a few irregularities to both *par* and *de*.

Read, translate and parse.

Le voyageur a été tué. Les conspirateurs ont été décapités. Cette grande armée a été anéantie. La politesse de cette nation est admirée.

EXAMINATION.—175. What sort of verbs may become passive, and how is it done? 176. Is not the participle declinable when it follows the verb *to be*? What do you mean by the participle being declinable? 177. How is a participle made feminine? How is it made plural? *Ref. * above*. When is a French passive verb followed by *par*? *ib. †*. When must it be followed by *de*?

OF REFLECTED VERBS.

178. Reflected verbs are always conjugated with one of the double pronouns, *je me*, *tu te*, *il se*, *nous nous*, *vous vous*, *ils se*.—Thus the verb *to walk*, which is reflected in French, instead of

je promène	} will be conjugated thus	je me promène
tu promènes		tu te promènes
il promène		il se promène
nous promenons		nous nous promenons
vous promenez		vous vous promenez
ils promènent		ils se promènent

[A verb is *essentially* or *accidentally* reflected: *essentially*, if it cannot be conjugated without the second pronoun, as, *se repentir*, to repent; *accidentally*, if the second pronoun may be omitted, as, *se brûler*, to burn one's self.

Some verbs have the reflected form though the sense does not indicate the action of the subject upon itself, as, *se mourir*, to be dying; *s'en aller*, to go away.]

179. When a reflected verb is governed in the infinitive by another verb, the pronoun *se*, which precedes it, must correspond with the nominative to the first verb.

I intend to walk
thou intendest to walk
he intends to walk
we intend to walk
you intend to walk
they intend to walk

je compte me promener
tu comptes te promener
il compte se promener
nous comptons nous promener
vous comptez vous promener
ils comptent se promener

And not *je compte se promener, tu comptes se promener, &c.*

[There are a few exceptions to this rule.—We say, *je l'en ferai repentir*, instead of *se repentir, &c.*]

180. The compound tenses of reflected verbs are formed with *être*, and never with *avoir*, as in English.

CONJUGATION OF A REFLECTED VERB.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>To dress one's self,</i>	<i>s'habiller.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>To have dressed one's self,</i>	<i>s'être habillé.</i>
GERUND.	<i>Dressing one's self,</i>	<i>s'habillant.</i>
GER. PAST.	<i>Having dressed one's self,</i>	<i>s'étant habillé.</i>
PARTICIPLE.	<i>Dressed,</i>	<i>habillé.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>About to dress one's self,</i>	<i>devant s'habiller.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I — myself; I do — myself; I am —ing myself.

I dress myself
thou dressest thyself
he dresses himself
she dresses herself
one dresses one's self
we dress ourselves
you dress { yourself }
{ yourselves }
they dress themselves

je m'habille
tu t'habilles
il s'habille
elle s'habille
on s'habille
nous nous habillons
vous vous habillez
{ ils s'habillent }
{ elles s'habillent }

IMPERFECT.

I —ed myself; I did —; I used to —; I was —ing myself.

<i>I dressed myself</i>	<i>je m'habillais</i>
<i>thou dressedst thyself</i>	<i>tu t'habillais</i>
<i>he dressed himself</i>	<i>il s'habillait</i>
<i>we dressed ourselves</i>	<i>nous nous habillions</i>
<i>you dressed yourselves</i>	<i>vous vous habilliez</i>
<i>they dressed themselves</i>	<i>ils s'habillaient</i>

PERFECT DEFINITE.

I —ed myself; I did — myself.

<i>I dressed myself</i>	<i>je m'habillai</i>
<i>thou dressedst thyself</i>	<i>tu t'habillas</i>
<i>he dressed himself</i>	<i>il s'habilla</i>
<i>we dressed ourselves</i>	<i>nous nous habillâmes</i>
<i>you dressed yourselves</i>	<i>vous vous habillâtes</i>
<i>they dressed themselves</i>	<i>ils s'habillèrent</i>

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

I have —ed myself; I have been —ing myself.

<i>I have dressed myself</i>	<i>je me suis habillé</i>
<i>thou hast dressed thyself</i>	<i>tu t'es habillé</i>
<i>he has dressed himself</i>	<i>il s'est habillé</i>
<i>my brother has dressed himself</i>	<i>mon frère s'est habillé</i>
<i>we have dressed ourselves</i>	<i>nous nous sommes habillés</i>
<i>you have dressed yourselves</i>	<i>vous vous êtes habillés</i>
<i>they have dressed themselves</i>	<i>ils se sont habillés</i>
<i>my brothers have dressed themselves</i>	<i>mes frères se sont habillés</i>

With a nominative feminine we say :

<i>Je me suis habillée</i>
<i>tu t'es habillée</i>
<i>elle s'est habillée</i>
<i>nous nous sommes habillées</i>
<i>vous vous êtes habillées</i>
<i>elles se sont habillées</i>

PERFECT ANTERIOR.

I had —ed myself; I had been —ing myself.

<i>I had dressed myself</i>	<i>je me fus habillé</i>
<i>thou hadst dressed thyself</i>	<i>tu te fus habillé</i>
<i>he had dressed himself</i>	<i>il se fut habillé</i>
<i>we had dressed ourselves</i>	<i>nous nous fûmes habillés</i>
<i>you had dressed yourselves</i>	<i>vous vous fûtes habillés *</i>
<i>they had dressed themselves</i>	<i>ils se furent habillés</i>

* If the nominative *vous* is in the singular, that is, if it represents *tu*, *habillé* must be used for the masculine, and *habillée* for the feminine. See 156, p. 43.

PLUPERFECT.

I had —ed myself; I had been —ing myself.

<i>I had dressed myself</i>	<i>je m'étais habillé</i>
<i>thou hadst dressed thyself</i>	<i>tu t'étais habillé</i>
<i>he had dressed himself</i>	<i>il s'était habillé</i>
<i>we had dressed ourselves</i>	<i>nous nous étions habillés</i>
<i>you had dressed yourselves</i>	<i>vous vous étiez habillés *</i>
<i>they had dressed themselves</i>	<i>ils s'étaient habillés</i>

[IDIOMATICAL TENSES.]

Past tense just elapsed.

<i>I have just dressed myself</i>	<i>je viens de m'habiller</i>
<i>thou hast just dressed thyself</i>	<i>tu viens de t'habiller</i>
<i>he has just dressed himself</i>	<i>il vient de s'habiller</i>
<i>we have just dressed ourselves</i>	<i>nous venons de nous habiller</i>
<i>you have just dressed yourselves</i>	<i>vous venez de vous habiller</i>
<i>they have just dressed themselves</i>	<i>ils viennent de s'habiller</i>

Past definite anterior.

<i>I had just dressed myself</i>	<i>je venais de m'habiller, &c.</i>
----------------------------------	---

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall or will — myself; I shall be —ing myself.

<i>I shall dress myself</i>	<i>je m'habillerai</i>
<i>thou wilt dress thyself</i>	<i>tu t'habilleras</i>
<i>he will dress himself</i>	<i>il s'habillera</i>
<i>we shall dress ourselves</i>	<i>nous nous habillerons</i>
<i>you will dress yourselves</i>	<i>vous vous habillerez</i>
<i>they will dress themselves</i>	<i>ils s'habilleront</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have —ed myself; I shall have been —ing myself.

<i>I shall have dressed myself</i>	<i>je me serai habillé</i>
<i>thou wilt have dressed thyself</i>	<i>tu te seras habillé</i>
<i>he will have dressed himself</i>	<i>il se sera habillé</i>
<i>we shall have dressed ourselves</i>	<i>nous nous serons habillés</i>
<i>you will have dressed yourselves</i>	<i>vous vous serez habillés</i>
<i>they will have dressed themselves</i>	<i>ils se seront habillés</i>

[IDIOMATICAL FUTURE TENSES.]

<i>Fut. indef. pos.</i>	<i>I am to dress myself,</i>	<i>je dois m'habiller, &c.</i>
<i>Fut. instant.</i>	<i>I am going to dress myself,</i>	<i>je vais m'habiller, &c.</i>
<i>Fut. imperfect.</i>	<i>I was going to dress myself,</i>	<i>j'allais m'habiller, &c.</i>

* See note in the preceding page.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should or would — myself; I should be —ing myself.

<i>I should dress myself</i>	je m'habillerais
<i>thou wouldst dress thyself</i>	tu t'habillerais
<i>he would dress himself</i>	il s'habillerait
<i>we should dress ourselves</i>	nous nous habillerions
<i>you would dress yourselves</i>	vous vous habilleriez
<i>they would dress themselves</i>	ils s'habilleraient

CONDITIONAL PAST.

I should or would have —ed myself; I should have been —ing myself.

<i>I should have dressed myself</i>	je me serais habillé
<i>thou wouldst have dressed thyself</i>	tu te serais habillé
<i>he would have dressed himself</i>	il se serait habillé
<i>we should have dressed ourselves</i>	nous nous serions habillés
<i>you would have dressed yourselves</i>	vous vous seriez habillés
<i>they would have dressed themselves</i>	ils se seraient habillés

Or: je me fusse habillé, tu te fusses habillé, il se fût habillé,—nous nous fussions habillés, vous vous fussiez habillés, ils se fussent habillés.

[IDIOMATICAL CONDITIONAL TENSES.]

<i>Fut. cond.</i>	<i>{ I should dress myself or ought to dress myself,</i>	<i>je devrais m'habiller, &c.</i>
<i>Cond. ant.</i>	<i>{ I should have dressed myself or ought to have dressed myself,</i>	<i>j'aurais dû m'habiller, &c.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Dress thyself</i>	habille-toi
<i>let him dress himself</i>	qu'il s'habille
<i>let her dress herself</i>	qu'elle s'habille
<i>let us dress ourselves</i>	habillons-nous
<i>dress { yourself }</i>	habillez-vous
<i> { yourselves }</i>	
<i>let them dress themselves</i>	{ qu'ils s'habillent qu'elles s'habillent

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

That I may — myself; that I may be —ing myself.

<i>That I may dress myself</i>	que je m'habille
<i>that thou mayst dress thyself</i>	que tu t'habilles
<i>that he may dress himself</i>	qu'il s'habille
<i>that we may dress ourselves</i>	que nous nous habillions
<i>that you may dress yourselves</i>	que vous vous habilliez
<i>that they may dress themselves</i>	qu'ils s'habillent

IMPERFECT.

That I might — myself; that I might be —ing myself.

<i>That I might dress myself</i>	que je m'habillasse
<i>that thou mightst dress thyself</i>	que tu t'habillasses
<i>that he might dress himself</i>	qu'il s'habillât
<i>that we might dress ourselves</i>	que nous nous habillions
<i>that you might dress yourselves</i>	que vous vous habillassiez
<i>that they might dress themselves</i>	qu'ils s'habillassent

PERFECT.

That I may have —ed myself, &c.

<i>That I may have dressed myself</i>	que je me sois habillé
<i>that thou mayst have dressed thyself</i>	que tu te sois habillé
<i>that he may have dressed himself</i>	qu'il se soit habillé
<i>that we may have dressed ourselves</i>	que nous nous soyons habillés
<i>that you may have dressed yourselves</i>	que vous vous soyez habillés
<i>that they may have dressed themselves</i>	qu'ils se soient habillés

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have —ed myself.

<i>That I might have dressed myself</i>	que je me fusse habillé
<i>that thou mightst have dressed thyself</i>	que tu te fusses habillé
<i>that he might have dressed himself</i>	qu'il se fût habillé
<i>that we might have dressed ourselves</i>	que nous nous fussions habillés
<i>that you might have dressed yourselves</i>	que vous vous fussiez habillés
<i>that they might have dressed themselves</i>	qu'ils se fussent habillés

[OBSERVATION. As the conjugation of reflected verbs presents some difficulties to the English learner, it may be advisable to conjugate a few verbs on the preceding model; as, *se promener*, to walk, *se divertir*, to amuse one's self, *se rendre*, &c. It must likewise be remembered that the past tenses, contrary to the genius of the English language, are formed with the auxiliary verb *être*.]

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF REFLECTED VERBS.

181. The reflected verbs govern the genitive case in French; as, *se réjouir d'une chose*, to rejoice in a thing.

[Some few govern the dative case, as, *s'appliquer à*—others govern *à* or *de*, as, *s'occuper à* or *de*, but with a different meaning; others are not followed by any noun or preposition; such as, *se rappeler*, *s'imaginer*, &c.]


IMPORTANT OBSERVATION.

When an English verb is immediately followed by the pronoun *myself, thyself, &c.*, it is reflected in French; as, I burn *myself*, *je me brûle*; we flatter ourselves, *nous nous flattons*; but it often happens that the second pronoun is not expressed in English, and thence arises a difficulty which may be obviated by referring to the following list.

<i>s'asseoir</i>	to sit down	<i>se figurer</i>	to fancy
<i>se baisser</i>	to stoop	<i>se hâter</i>	to make haste
<i>se confier</i>	to confide	<i>s'imaginer</i>	to fancy
<i>se coucher</i>	to go to bed	<i>s'impatienter</i>	to grow impatient
<i>se dépêcher</i>	to make haste	<i>se lever</i>	to rise
<i>se démettre</i>	to resign	<i>se marier</i>	to marry
<i>s'échapper</i>	to escape	<i>se méfier</i>	to distrust
<i>s'élancer</i>	to leap upon	<i>se mêler</i>	to interfere
<i>s'empresser</i>	to hasten	<i>se moquer</i>	to laugh at
<i>s'en aller</i>	to go away	<i>s'offenser</i>	to take offence
<i>s'endormir</i>	to fall asleep	<i>se plaindre</i>	to complain
<i>s'enfuir</i>	to run away	<i>se promener</i>	to walk
<i>s'enrhumer</i>	to take cold	<i>se rappeler</i>	to remember
<i>s'enrichir</i>	to grow rich	<i>se réjouir</i>	to rejoice
<i>s'étonner</i>	to wonder	<i>se reposer</i>	to rest
<i>s'évanouir</i>	to faint away	<i>se réunir</i>	to unite, to meet
<i>s'exercer</i>	to practise	<i>se séparer</i>	to part
<i>se fier</i>	to trust	<i>se souvenir</i>	to remember

And the following: *s'abonner, s'abstenir, s'accorder, s'attendrir, se baigner, se débattre, se déborder, se dédier, se défier, se désister, s'emparer, s'enhardir, s'enraciner, s'entretenir, s'envoler, s'épanouir, s'esquiver, s'évaporer, s'évertuer, se farder, se flétrir, se fondre, se formaliser, se glisser, s'ingérer, s'insinuer, se méprendre, se mutiner, se piquer, se refroidir, se repentir, se rencontrer, se rendre, se ressouvenir, se rétablir, se retirer, se révolter, se saisir, se soumettre, se vanter.*

EXERCISE XXXI.

 In the preceding Exercises great care was taken to introduce such verbs only as admit of literal translation; in the following ones the genius of the two languages begins to be exemplified.

INDIC. PRES. I apply myself—Thou [art called]—*He stoops—
s'appliquer (a) *s'appeler* (b) *se baisser*

*We walk——You deceive yourself—They defend themselves.
 (b) *se promener* *se tromper* *se défendre*

IMPERF. *I was resting—Your sister was applying herself—We
(b) *se reposer*

did accuse ourselves—You *[were eager]—They *[grew cold.]
s'accuser (c) *s'empresser* (c) *se refroidir*.

PERFECT. DEF. I comforted myself—He presented himself to
se consoler *se présenter*
the assembly—We respected ourselves—You punished yourselves
assemblée f. *se respecter* *se punir*

—*They [lay down.]
(a) *se coucher*.

PERFECT INDEF. I have flattered myself—*He has recovered
se flatter *se rétablir*
—*We have stopped—*You have fancied—They have undressed
(b) *s'arrêter* (b) *s'imaginer* *se déshabiller*
themselves.

PERFECT ANT. I had lost myself—He had freed himself—
se perdre *s'affranchir*
*We had rejoiced—You had revenged yourselves—They had
(b) *se réjouir* *se venger*
ruined themselves.
se ruiner.

PLUPERF. *I had trusted to certain guides—*He had confided
se fier *sûr* — m. *se confier*
in that man—We had condemned ourselves—*You had wondered
d *se condamner* (b) *s'étonner*
—The armies *had met.
armée f. (b) *se rencontrer*.

FUTURE ABSOL. *I shall yield—He will devote himself to
(b) *se rendre* *s'adonner*
agriculture—We shall tire ourselves—You will [grow rich]—
— f. *se fatiguer* (c) *s'enrichir*
*They will part.
(b) *se séparer*.

FUTURE ANT. I shall have betrayed myself—He will have
se trahir
seized his arms—We shall have devoted ourselves—You will
s'emparer de *arme f.* *se devouer*
have fatigued yourselves—*They will have [taken offence.]
se fatiguer (d) *s'offenser*.

CONDITIONAL MOOD. PRES. *I should interfere in that affair—
se mêler de *affaires f.*

*He [would be impatient]——*We should relent——*You would
 (c) *s'impatienter* (b) *s'attendrir* (b)
 join——*They would [take cold.]
se réunir (d) *s'enrhumer*.

CONDITIONAL PAST. *I should have practised——He would have
 (b) *s'exercer*

retired from the world——*We should have escaped from
 (b) *se retirer de* monde m. (b) *s'échapper de*
 the wreck——You would have devoted yourselves to the education
navfrage m. *se dévouer* — f.
 of your children——*They would have walked.
enfant m. (b) *se promener*.

IMPERATIVE. *Trust to my promises——*Let him [get up]——Let
se fier (e) *promesse* f. *se lever*
 us refresh ourselves——Apply to mathematics——*Let them
se rafraîchir *s'appliquer* (e) *mathématique* f.
 hasten.
se hâter.

INFINITIVE. I begin *to rest——He refuses *to
commencer à (f) *se reposer* *refuser de*
 walk——We begin to rest——They begin to rest——You refuse
 (f) *se promener*
 to walk——We are glad to have * escaped——We endeavour to
bien aise de (f) *s'échapper* *tâcher de*
 inure ourselves to work——They are glad to have walked——
 (f) *s'habituer* (f) *se promener*
 They are sorry to have introduced themselves.
fâché de (f) *se présenter*.

IDIOMATICAL TENSES. I have just warmed myself——She has just
se chauffer
 warmed herself——We have just * got up——They have just got up——I
 had just undressed myself——*He had just stopped——We had just
s'arrêter
 recovered——They had just recovered——I am going to ride—— We
se rétablir *se promener à cheval*
 are going to ride——I ought to rest myself——He ought to rest himself
se reposer
 ——We ought to engage——You ought to have rested——They ought to
s'engager
 have hastened.
se hâter.

References.

Observe that different sorts of English verbs often become reflected in French: as—

(a) A passive verb: to be called, *s'appeler*; particularly when it has an inanimate object for its nominative, as, bad news is soon spread, *les mauvaises nouvelles se répandent bientôt*.

(b) A neuter verb; to walk, *se promener*.

(c) A neuter verb with an adjective; to grow mild, *s'adoucir*.

(d) An active verb with an accusative; to take cold, *s'enrhumer*.

* See Important Observation, p. 111.

(e) See 181.

(f) See 179.

Read, translate and parse.

Je me suis sacrifié. Nous nous séparerons. Son ami s'est offensé. Elle s'impatiente. Ils se proposent de voyager.

EXAMINATION.—178. How are reflected verbs conjugated? 179. When a reflected verb is in the infinitive, what do you observe with respect to the pronoun *se*? 180. How are the compound tenses of reflected verbs formed? *Ref. above*. What sort of English verbs may become reflected in French? 181. What case do reflected verbs govern?

CONJUGATION OF A REFLECTED VERB USED NEGATIVELY.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>Not to rise,</i>	ne pas se lever.
PERFECT.	<i>Not to have risen,</i>	{ ne s'être pas levé. ne pas s'être levé.
GERUND.	<i>Not rising,</i>	ne se levant pas.
GERUND PAST.	<i>Not having risen,</i>	ne s'étant pas levé.
FUTURE.	<i>Not about to rise,</i>	ne devant pas se lever.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*I do not rise
thou dost not rise
he does not rise
we do not rise
you do not rise
they do not rise*

*je ne me lève pas
tu ne te lèves pas
il ne se lève pas
nous ne nous levons pas
vous ne vous levez pas
ils ne se lèvent pas*

IMPERFECT.

*I did not rise
thou didst not rise
he did not rise
we did not rise
you did not rise
they did not rise*

*je ne me levais pas
tu ne te levais pas
il ne se levait pas
nous ne nous levions pas
vous ne vous leviez pas
ils ne se levaient pas*

PERFECT DEFINITE.

*I did not rise
thou didst not rise
he did not rise
we did not rise
you did not rise
they did not rise*

*je ne me levai pas
tu ne te levais pas
il ne se leva pas
nous ne nous levâmes pas
vous ne vous levâtes pas
ils ne se levèrent pas*

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

*I have not risen
thou hast not risen
he has not risen
we have not risen
you have not risen
they have not risen*

*je ne me suis pas levé
tu ne t'es pas levé
il ne s'est pas levé
nous ne nous sommes pas levés
vous ne vous êtes pas levés
ils ne se sont pas levés*

PERFECT ANTERIOR.

*I had not risen
thou hadst not risen
he had not risen
we had not risen
you had not risen
they had not risen*

*je ne me fus pas levé
tu ne te fus pas levé
il ne se fut pas levé
nous ne nous fûmes pas levés
vous ne vous fûtes pas levés
ils ne se furent pas levés*

PLUPERFECT.

*I had not risen
thou hadst not risen
he had not risen
we had not risen
you had not risen
they had not risen*

*je ne m'étais pas levé
tu ne t'étais pas levé
il ne s'était pas levé
nous ne nous étions pas levés
vous ne vous étiez pas levés
ils ne s'étaient pas levés*

FUTURE.

*I shall not rise
thou wilt not rise
he will not rise
we shall not rise
you will not rise
they will not rise*

*je me ne lèverai pas
tu ne te lèveras pas
il ne se lèvera pas
nous ne nous lèverons pas
vous ne vous lèverez pas
ils ne se lèveront pas*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

*I shall not have risen
thou wilt not have risen
he will not have risen
we shall not have risen
you will not have risen
they will not have risen*

*je ne me serai pas levé
tu ne te seras pas levé
il ne se sera pas levé
nous ne nous serons pas levés
vous ne vous serez pas levés
ils ne se seront pas levés*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

*I should not rise
thou wouldst not rise
he would not rise
we should not rise
you would not rise
they would not rise*

*je ne me lèverais pas
tu ne te lèverais pas
il ne se lèverait pas
nous ne nous lèverions pas
vous ne vous lèveriez pas
ils ne se lèveraient pas*

CONDITIONAL PAST.

*I should not have risen
thou wouldst not have risen
he would not have risen
we should not have risen
you would not have risen
they would not have risen*

*je ne me serais pas levé
tu ne te serais pas levé
il ne se serait pas levé
nous ne nous serions pas levés
vous ne vous seriez pas levés
ils ne se seraient pas levés*

Or : je ne me fusse pas levé, tu ne te fusses pas levé, il ne se fût pas levé,—nous ne nous fussions pas levés, vous ne vous fussiez pas levés, ils ne se fussent pas levés.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Rise not }
do not rise }
let him not rise
let us not rise
rise ye not }
do not rise }
let them not rise*

*ne te lève pas
qu'il ne se lève pas
ne nous levons pas
ne vous levez pas
qu'ils ne se lèvent pas*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*That I may not rise
that thou mayst not rise
that he may not rise
that we may not rise
that you may not rise
that they may not rise*

*que je ne me lève pas
que tu ne te lèves pas
qu'il ne se lève pas
que nous ne nous levions pas
que vous ne vous leviez pas
qu'ils ne se lèvent pas*

IMPERFECT.

*That I might not rise
that thou mightst not rise
that he might not rise
that we might not rise
that you might not rise
that they might not rise*

que je ne me levasse pas
que tu ne te levasses pas
qu'il ne se levât pas
que nous ne nous levassions pas
que vous ne vous levassiez pas
qu'ils ne se levassent pas

PERFECT.

*That I may not have risen
that thou mayst not have risen
that he may not have risen
that we may not have risen
that you may not have risen
that they may not have risen*

que je ne me sois pas levé
que tu ne te sois pas levé
qu'il ne se soit pas levé
que nous ne nous soyons pas levés
que vous ne vous soyez pas levés
qu'ils ne se soient pas levés

PLUPERFECT.

*That I might not have risen
that thou mightst not have risen
that he might not have risen
that we might not have risen
that you might not have risen
that they might not have risen*

que je ne me fusse pas levé
que tu ne te fusses pas levé
qu'il ne se fût pas levé
que nous ne nous fussions pas levés
que vous ne vous fussiez pas levés
qu'ils ne se fussent pas levés

EXERCISE XXXII.

 The sentences of the following Exercise being the same as the preceding, but negatively used, the French is purposely omitted.

IND. PRES. I do not apply myself—Thou art not called—He does not stoop—We do not walk—You do not deceive yourselves—They do not defend themselves.

IMPERF. I was not resting—Your sister was not applying herself—We did not accuse ourselves—You were not eager—They did not grow cold.

PERF. DEF. I did not comfort myself—He did not present himself to the assembly—We did not respect ourselves—You did not punish yourselves—They did not lie down (*se coucher*).

PERF. INDEF. I have not flattered myself—He has not recovered—We have not stopped—You have not fancied—They have not undressed.

PERF. ANT. I had not lost myself—He had not freed himself—We had not rejoiced—You had not revenged yourselves—They had not ruined themselves.

PLUPERF. I had not trusted to certain guides—He had not confided in that man—We had not condemned ourselves—You had not wondered—The armies had not met.

FUT. ABSOL. I shall not yield—He will not devote himself to agriculture—We shall not be tired—You will not grow rich—They will not part.

FUT. ANT. I shall not have betrayed myself—He will not have seized his arms—We shall not have devoted ourselves—You will not have fatigued yourselves—They will not have taken offence.

COND. MOOD. PRES. I should not interfere in that affair—He would not be impatient—We should not relent—You would not join—They would not take cold.

COND. PAST. I should not have practised—She would not have retired from the world—We should not have escaped from the wreck—You would not have devoted yourselves to the education of your children—They would not have walked.

IMPERATIVE. Let him not get up—Let us not refresh ourselves—Let us not apply to mathematics—Let them not hasten.

Read, translate and parse.

Il ne s'inquiète pas. Nous ne nous sommes pas amusés.
Il se moque de vos menaces. Nous ne nous occupons pas.

CONJUGATION OF A REFLECTED VERB USED WITH AN INTERROGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Do I rise?</i>	<i>me levé-je?</i>
<i>dost thou rise?</i>	<i>te lèves-tu?</i>
<i>does he rise?</i>	<i>se lève-t-il?</i>
<i>does my brother rise?</i>	<i>mon frère se lève-t-il?</i>
<i>does she rise?</i>	<i>se lève-t-elle?</i>
<i>does my sister rise?</i>	<i>ma sœur se lève-t-elle?</i>
<i>do we rise?</i>	<i>nous levons-nous?</i>
<i>do you rise?</i>	<i>vous levez-vous?</i>
<i>do they rise?</i>	<i>se lèvent-ils?</i>
<i>do my brothers rise?</i>	<i>mes frères se lèvent-ils?</i>
<i>do they rise?</i>	<i>se lèvent-elles?</i>
<i>do my sisters rise?</i>	<i>mes sœurs se lèvent-elles?</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>Did I rise?</i>	<i>me levais-je ?</i>
<i>didst thou rise ?</i>	<i>te levais-tu ?</i>
<i>did he rise ?</i>	<i>se levait-il ?</i>
<i>did we rise ?</i>	<i>nous levions-nous ?</i>
<i>did you rise ?</i>	<i>vous leviez-vous ?</i>
<i>did they rise ?</i>	<i>se levaient-ils ?</i>

PERFECT DEFINITE.

<i>Did I rise ?</i>	<i>me levai-je ?</i>
<i>didst thou rise ?</i>	<i>te levas-tu ?</i>
<i>did he rise ?</i>	<i>se leva-t-il ?</i>
<i>did we rise ?</i>	<i>nous levâmes-nous ?</i>
<i>did you rise ?</i>	<i>vous levâtes-vous ?</i>
<i>did they rise ?</i>	<i>se levèrent-ils ?</i>

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

<i>Have I risen ?</i>	<i>me suis-je levé ?</i>
<i>hast thou risen ?</i>	<i>t'es-tu levé ?</i>
<i>has he risen ?</i>	<i>s'est-il levé ?</i>
<i>has my brother risen ?</i>	<i>mon frère s'est-il levé ?</i>
<i>has she risen ?</i>	<i>s'est-elle levée ?</i>
<i>has my sister risen ?</i>	<i>ma sœur s'est-elle levée ?</i>
<i>have we risen ?</i>	<i>nous sommes-nous levés ?</i>
<i>have you risen ?</i>	<i>vous êtes-vous levés ?</i>
<i>have they risen ?</i>	<i>se sont-ils levés ?</i>
<i>have my brothers risen ?</i>	<i>mes frères se sont-ils levés ?</i>
<i>have they risen ?</i>	<i>se sont-elles levées ?</i>
<i>have my sisters risen ?</i>	<i>mes sœurs se sont-elles levées</i>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Had I risen ?</i>	<i>m'étais-je levé ?</i>
<i>hadst thou risen ?</i>	<i>t'étais-tu levé ?</i>
<i>had he risen ?</i>	<i>s'était-il levé ?</i>
<i>had we risen ?</i>	<i>nous étions-nous levés ?</i>
<i>had you risen ?</i>	<i>vous étiez-vous levés ?</i>
<i>had they risen ?</i>	<i>s'étaient-ils levés ?</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>Shall I rise ?</i>	<i>me lèverai-je ?</i>
<i> wilt thou rise ?</i>	<i>te lèveras-tu ?</i>
<i>will he rise ?</i>	<i>se lèvera-t-il ?</i>
<i>shall we rise ?</i>	<i>nous lèverons-nous ?</i>
<i>will you rise ?</i>	<i>vous lèverez-vous ?</i>
<i>will they rise ?</i>	<i>se lèveront-ils ?</i>

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Shall I have risen?</i>	<i>me serai-je levé?</i>
<i>wilt thou have risen?</i>	<i>te seras-tu levé?</i>
<i>will he have risen?</i>	<i>se sera-t-il levé?</i>
<i>shall we have risen?</i>	<i>nous serons-nous levés?</i>
<i>will you have risen?</i>	<i>vous serez-vous levés?</i>
<i>will they have risen?</i>	<i>se seront-ils levés?</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Should I rise?</i>	<i>me léverais-je?</i>
<i>wouldst thou rise?</i>	<i>te léverais-tu?</i>
<i>would he rise?</i>	<i>se léverait-il?</i>
<i>should we rise?</i>	<i>nous léverions-nous?</i>
<i>would you rise?</i>	<i>vous léveriez-vous?</i>
<i>would they rise?</i>	<i>se léveraient-ils?</i>

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>Should I have risen?</i>	<i>me serais-je levé?</i>
<i>wouldst thou have risen?</i>	<i>te serais-tu levé?</i>
<i>would he have risen?</i>	<i>se serait-il levé?</i>
<i>should we have risen?</i>	<i>nous serions-nous levés?</i>
<i>would you have risen?</i>	<i>vous seriez-vous levés?</i>
<i>would they have risen?</i>	<i>se seraient-ils levés?</i>

Or: me fusse-je levé? te fusses-tu levé? se fût-il levé?—nous fussions-nous levés? vous fussiez-vous levés? se fussent-ils levés?

EXERCISE XXXIII.

 *The French has been given in the Exercise, p. 111.*

INDIC. PRES. Do I apply myself?—Art thou called?—Does he stoop?—Do we walk?—Do you deceive yourselves?—Do they defend themselves?

IMP. Was I resting?—Was your sister applying herself?—Did we accuse ourselves?—Were you eager?—Did they grow cold?

PERF. DEF. Did I comfort myself?—Did he present himself to the assembly?—Did we respect ourselves?—Did you punish yourselves?—Did they lie down?

PERF. INDEF. Have I flattered myself?—Has he recovered?—Have we stopped?—Have you fancied?—Have they undressed?

 **PERF. ANT.** *Not used interrogatively.*

PLUP. Had I trusted to certain guides?—Had he confided in that man?—Had we condemned ourselves?—Had you wondered?—Had the armies met?

FUT. ABSOL. Shall I yield?—Will he devote himself to agriculture?—Shall we be tired?—Will you grow rich?—Will they part?

FUT. ANT. Shall I have betrayed myself?—Will he have seized his arms?—Shall we have devoted ourselves?—Will you have fatigued yourselves?—Will they have taken offence?

CONDIT. MOOD. PRES. Should I interfere in that affair?—Would he be impatient?—Should we relent?—Would you join?—Would they take cold?

CONDIT. PAST. Should I have practised?—Would she have retired from the world?—Should we have escaped from the wreck?—Would you have devoted yourselves to the education of your children?—Would they have walked?

Read, translate and parse.

Se sont-ils réjouis de cette nouvelle? Se serait-il fâché?
Nous sommes-nous amusés? Me promènerai-je cette
après-midi? Vos amis se sont-ils séparés?

CONJUGATION OF A REFLECTED VERB

USED INTERROGATIVELY AND WITH A NEGATION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Do I not rise?</i>	ne me levé-je pas?
<i>dost thou not rise?</i>	ne te lèves-tu pas?
<i>does he not rise?</i>	ne se lève-t-il pas?
<i>does not my brother rise?</i>	mon frère ne se lève-t-il pas?
<i>does she not rise?</i>	ne se lève-t-elle pas?
<i>does not my sister rise?</i>	ma sœur ne se lève-t-elle pas?
<i>do we not rise?</i>	ne nous levons-nous pas?
<i>do you not rise?</i>	ne vous levez-vous pas?
<i>do they not rise?</i>	ne se lèvent-ils pas?
<i>do not my brothers rise?</i>	mes frères ne se lèvent-ils pas?
<i>do they not rise?</i>	ne se lèvent-elles pas?
<i>do not my sisters rise?</i>	mes sœurs ne se lèvent-elles pas?

IMPERFECT.

*Did I not rise?
didst thou not rise?
did he not rise?
did we not rise?
did you not rise?
did they not rise?*

*ne me levais-je pas?
ne te levais-tu pas?
ne se levait-il pas?
ne nous levions-nous pas?
ne vous leviez-vous pas?
ne se levaient-ils pas?*

PERFECT DEFINITE.

*Did I not rise?
didst thou not rise?
did he not rise?
did we not rise?
did you not rise?
did they not rise?*

*ne me levai-je pas?
ne te levas-tu pas?
ne se leva-t-il pas?
ne nous levâmes-nous pas?
ne vous levâtes-vous pas?
ne se levèrent-ils pas?*

PERFECT INDEFINITE.

*Have I not risen?
hast thou not risen?
has he not risen?
has not my brother risen?
has she not risen?
has not my sister risen?
have we not risen?
have you not risen?
have they not risen?
have not my brothers risen?
have they not risen?
have not my sisters risen?*

*ne me suis-je pas levé?
ne t'es-tu pas levé?
ne s'est-il pas levé?
mon frère ne s'est-il pas levé?
ne s'est-elle pas levée?
ma sœur ne s'est-elle pas levée?
ne nous sommes-nous pas levés?
ne vous êtes-vous pas levés?
ne se sont-ils pas levés?
mes frères ne se sont-ils pas levés?
ne se sont-elles pas levées?
mes sœurs ne se sont-elles pas levées?*

PLUPERFECT.

*Had I not risen?
hadst thou not risen?
had he not risen?
had we not risen?
had you not risen?
had they not risen?*

*ne m'étais-je pas levé?
ne t'étais-tu pas levé?
ne s'était-il pas levé?
ne nous étions-nous pas levés?
ne vous étiez-vous pas levés?
ne s'étaient-ils pas levés?*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

*Shall I not rise?
wilt thou not rise?
will he not rise?
shall we not rise?
will you not rise?
will they not rise?*

*ne me lèverai-je pas?
ne te lèveras-tu pas?
ne se lèvera-t-il pas?
ne nous lèverons-nous pas?
ne vous lèverez-vous pas?
ne se lèveront-ils pas?*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Shall I not have risen ?</i>	<i>ne me serai-je pas levé ?</i>
<i>will thou not have risen ?</i>	<i>ne te seras-tu pas levé ?</i>
<i>will he not have risen ?</i>	<i>ne se sera-t-il pas levé ?</i>
<i>shall we not have risen ?</i>	<i>ne nous serons-nous pas levés ?</i>
<i>will you not have risen ?</i>	<i>ne vous serez-vous pas levés ?</i>
<i>will they not have risen ?</i>	<i>ne se seront-ils pas levés ?</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Should I not rise ?</i>	<i>ne me lèverais-je pas ?</i>
<i>wouldst thou not rise ?</i>	<i>ne te lèverais-tu pas ?</i>
<i>would he not rise ?</i>	<i>ne se lèverait-il pas ?</i>
<i>should we not rise ?</i>	<i>ne nous lèverions-nous pas ?</i>
<i>would you not rise ?</i>	<i>ne vous lèveriez-vous pas ?</i>
<i>would they not rise ?</i>	<i>ne se lèveraient-ils pas ?</i>

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>Should I not have risen ?</i>	<i>ne me serais-je pas levé ?</i>
<i>wouldst thou not have risen ?</i>	<i>ne te serais-tu pas levé ?</i>
<i>would he not have risen ?</i>	<i>ne se serait-il pas levé ?</i>
<i>should we not have risen ?</i>	<i>ne nous serions-nous pas levés ?</i>
<i>would you not have risen ?</i>	<i>ne vous seriez-vous pas levés ?</i>
<i>would they not have risen ?</i>	<i>ne se seraient-ils pas levés ?</i>

Or: ne me fusse-je pas levé ? ne te fusses-tu pas levé ? ne se fût-il pas levé ?—ne nous fussions-nous pas levés ? ne vous fussiez-vous pas levés ? ne se fussent-ils pas levés ?

EXERCISE XXXIV.

 *The French has been given in the Exercise, p. 111.*

INDIC. PRES. Do I not apply myself?—Art thou not called?—Does he not stoop?—Do we not walk?—Do you not deceive yourselves?—Do they not defend themselves?

IMPERF. Was I not resting?—Was not your sister applying herself to the study of botany?—Did we not accuse ourselves?—Were you not eager?—Did they not grow cold?

PERF. DEF. Did I not comfort myself?—Did he not present himself to the assembly?—Did we not respect ourselves?—Did you not punish yourselves?—Did they not lie down?

PERF. INDEF. Have I not flattered myself?—Has he not recovered?—Have we not stopped?—Have you not fancied?—Have they not undressed?

 **PERF. ANT.** *Not used interrogatively.*

PLUP. Had I not trusted to certain guides?—Had he not confided in that man?—Had we not condemned ourselves?—Had you not wondered?—Had not the armies met?

FUT. ABSOL. Shall I not yield?—Will he not devote himself to agriculture?—Shall we not be tired?—Will you not grow rich?—Will they not part?

FUT. ANT. Shall I not have betrayed myself?—Will he not have seized his arms?—Shall we not have devoted ourselves?—Will you not have fatigued yourselves?—Will they not have taken offence?

CONDIT. MOOD. PRES. Should I not interfere in that affair?—Would he not be impatient?—Should we not relent?—Would you not join?—Would they not take cold?

CONDIT. PAST. Should I not have practised?—Would she not have retired from the world?—Should we not have escaped from the wreck?—Would you not have devoted yourselves to the education of your children?—Would they not have walked?

Read, translate and parse.

Ne se réjouit-elle pas de vos succès? Cet homme ne s'est-il pas noyé? Ne se livre-t-elle pas à l'étude?

OF RECIPROCAL VERBS.

182. Reciprocal verbs are conjugated like reflected verbs, both in their simple and compound tenses, but have no singular, as they express the reciprocal action of persons or things upon each other. *Examples :*

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

<i>We assist one another</i>	nous nous secourons l'un l'autre
<i>You assist one another</i>	vous vous secourez l'un l'autre
<i>They assist one another</i>	ils se secourent l'un l'autre

PRESENT INDEFINITE.

<i>We have assisted one another</i>	{ nous nous sommes secourus l'un l'autre, &c.
-------------------------------------	---

[*D'une l'autre* for the feminine.—Should there be more than one individual on each side, *les uns les autres*, or *les unes les autres*, must be used.

Sometimes the preposition *entre* is prefixed to the verb, and the pronoun *l'un l'autre* is omitted; as, they kill one another, *ils s'entre-tuent*; instead of *ils se tuent l'un l'autre*.]

OF NEUTER OR INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

183. A neuter verb can never govern an accusative; but when it has reference to some object, its action is transferred by means of prepositions, chiefly *d'* and *de*.*

[Neuter verbs do not govern an accusative, because by nature they are destitute of that object which receives the action of a verb without the interposition of a preposition. Therefore we cannot say, according to the English, *le fils obéit le père*, the son obeys the father, but *le fils obéit au père*.]

184. Neuter verbs are generally conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir* in their compound tenses.

<i>avoir dormi</i>	to have slept
<i>avoir couru</i>	to have run

185. (a) The following form their compound tenses with *être*:

<i>aller</i>	to go	<i>naître</i>	to be born
<i>arriver</i>	to arrive	<i>sortir</i>	to go out
<i>entrer</i>	to come or go in	<i>tomber</i>	to fall
<i>mourir</i>	to die	<i>venir</i>	to come
<i>partir</i>	to set out	<i>revenir</i>	to come back
<i>rentrer</i>	to come in again	<i>devenir</i>	to become

To which must be added: *déchoir*, *décéder*, *éclore*, *retourner*, *retomber*, *parvenir*, *survenir*.—I have fallen, *je suis tombé*.

186. (b) The following neuter verbs are conjugated with *avoir* if they express an action, and with *être*, if they express the result of that action.

<i>accourir</i>	to run to	<i>rester</i>	to stay
<i>apparaître</i>	to appear	<i>passer</i>	to pass
<i>disparaître</i>	to disappear		

To these may be added: *demeurer*, *comparaître*, *échoir*, *accroître*, *décroître*, and a few others.—*L'armée a passé les Alpes*. *L'armée est passée*.

[*Croître*, *grandir*, *embellir*, *rajeunir*, *vieillir*, take the auxiliary *avoir*, when they mark a progressive action, and *être*, when they

* Some verbs are intransitive in one sense, and transitive in another, as, *descendre*, to come down; *descendre l'escalier*, to go down stairs; *parler*, to speak; *parler la même langue*, to speak the same language.

express the actual state resulting from that action.—*Ma mère a vieilli durant mon absence. Oui, elle est bien vieillie.*

The participles of neuter verbs conjugated with *être* are declined.]

[187. Some others take *avoir* or *être*, but to convey different meanings; as, *convenir*, with *avoir*, to suit; with *être*, to agree.]

EXERCISE XXXV.

We have [gone in]—The children had fallen—Your sister had
 (a) *entrer* (a) *tomber*
 [come down]—She is [coming down] stairs—She has [left off]
 (b) *descendre* (b) *escalier* m. *cesser de*
 reading—The rain [is over]—He has lived in London—He
lire *cesser* (b) *demeurer à Londres*
 remains in Paris—Have you [brought down] the picture?—
être demeurer à — (b) *descendre* *tableau* m.
 He has [been out]—He [is out]—The stag has escaped from the
 (b) *sortir* (b) *sortir* *cerf* m. (b) *à*
 dogs—One of the convicts has escaped from the officers, the
chien m. *criminel* m. (b) *à*
 other has [made his escape] out of prison—The truce has expired
de — f. *trêve* f. (b)
 —He [went up] into his room and [came down] again
 perf. indef. *monter à* *chambre* f. *descendre* —
 —She is [gone up] into her room and [laid down]—My sister has
monter dans *se coucher*
 [come in again]—He would run and he fell.
rentrer *courir* *tomber.*

References.

(a) } See Rule 185.
 (b) }

Read, translate and parse.

N'est-il pas encore revenu? Sa fièvre a cessé pendant une heure; sa fièvre est cessée ce matin. Ce jeune homme a grandi depuis peu de temps. Oui, il est bien grandi.

EXAMINATION.—182. How are reciprocal verbs conjugated? 183. Does a neuter verb govern the accusative? *Are not some verbs active in one sense and neuter

In another? 184. How are neuter verbs conjugated in their compound tenses? 185. Name those that form their compound tenses with *être*. 186. Which neuter verbs take *avoir* or *être*? [Are not the particles of some neuter verbs declined, and in what case?] 187. What neuter verbs take *avoir* or *être* for their compound tenses, to convey different meanings?

Of Neuter or Intransitive Verbs continued.

189. (a) Some neuter verbs govern the dative case in French, whatever preposition they may govern in English; as,

<i>applaudir à</i>	to applaud	<i>penser à</i>	to think of
<i>compatir à</i>	to pity	<i>plaire à</i>	to please
<i>consentir à</i>	to consent	<i>répondre à</i>	to answer
<i>contrevénir à</i>	to infringe	<i>renoncer à</i>	to renounce
<i>contribuer à</i>	to contribute	<i>remédier à</i>	to remedy
<i>déplaire à</i>	to displease	<i>ressembler à</i>	to resemble
<i>désobéir à</i>	to disobey	<i>résister à</i>	to resist
<i>nuire à</i>	to hurt	<i>songer à</i>	to think of
<i>obéir à</i>	to obey	<i>subvenir à</i>	to relieve
<i>obvier à</i>	to obviate	<i>succéder à</i>	to succeed
<i>parvenir à</i>	to attain	<i>survivre à</i>	to survive

[189. The following, *insulter*, to insult; *persuader*, to persuade; *rêver*, to dream; *travailler*, to work; sometimes govern the accusative, but most commonly the dative.]

EXERCISE XXXVI.

The wise Socrates did not applaud the follies of young Alcibiades

* *sage* (a) *folie* f.

—A good christian forgives his enemies—The distracted
chrétien m. *pardonner à* † *ennemi* m. *troublée*

goddess resembled a fury—That sensible girl pitied the sorrows
déesse f. (a) *furie* f. — P. (a) *chagrin* m.

of an unfortunate mother—The assembly of the gods applauded
infortuné *assemblée* f. *dieu* m. P. (a)

the words of Jupiter—I have fallen—He is arrived—Let us
parole f. — (c) (c)

resist tyranny—The son succeeded his father—The immense
(a) . . . P. (a) *

riches of the minister would have supplied the wants of
richesse f. ministre m. fournir d † besoin m.

the poor——The ancient philosophers enjoyed great
*pauvre m. pl. * jouir de † un*

consideration—I have just answered the letter of your son—He
considération f. (b) (a)

plays on the violin—They play at billiards—The consul
† jouer de violon m. † jouer d art. billard m. sing. —

enjoyed the privileges of royalty—He obeyed the orders of the
imp. — m. art. royauté f. p. obéir (a) ordre m.

king—You have escaped the wreck, but you will not escape
échapper d † naufrage m.

the justice of God—His behaviour displeased the company.
— f. conduite f. déplaire (a) compagnie f.

References.

(a) See 188.

(b) See the idiomatical tenses.

(c) See 185, and observe that, in passive verbs, *je suis*, with the participle, denotes a present; as, I am loved, *je suis aimé*; whereas, in neuter verbs, it denotes a perfect indefinite; as, I have fallen, *je suis tombé*.

* This adjective to precede its substantive.

† *Jouer*, to play, governs the genitive when it denotes to play upon musical instruments, *jouer du violon*; otherwise it governs the dative, *jouer aux échecs*.

‡ *De*, after a verb, denotes that it governs the genitive, and à the dative case.

Read, translate and parse.

Ce ministre jouit d'une grande réputation. Il a désobéi aux ordres de ses supérieurs. Il ne ressemble pas à son cousin.

EXAMINATION.—188. What verbs govern the dative case? 189. Which are the verbs that govern sometimes the accusative, but most commonly the dative?

OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

190. The impersonal verb is used in the third person singular only.

[In impersonal verbs, the nominative *il* has no relation to a substantive, as may be seen by the impossibility of substituting a noun in its place.]

191. (a) The impersonal verbs are :

it drizzles	<i>il bruine</i>	it rains	<i>il pleut</i>
it lightens	<i>il éclaire</i>	it thunders	<i>il tonne</i>
it freezes	<i>il gèle</i>	it concerns	<i>il importe</i>
it thaws	<i>il dégèle</i>	the matter or	<i>il s'agit</i>
it hails	<i>il grêle</i>	the question is }	
it snows	<i>il neige</i>		

[*Pleuvoir* is an irregular verb ; the rest are of the first conjugation.]

192. (b) Many personal verbs may become impersonal, and are frequently used as such. *Examples :*

it happens	<i>il arrive</i>	it appears	<i>il paraît</i>
it becomes	<i>il convient</i>	it seems	<i>il semble</i>

PLEUVOIR. *To rain.*

Gerund, pleuvant. Participle, plu.

IND. PRES.	<i>il pleut</i>	FUT. ANT.	<i>il aura plu</i>
IMP.	<i>il pleuvait</i>	COND. PRES.	<i>il pleuvrait</i>
PERF. DEF.	<i>il plut</i>	PAST.	<i>il aurait plu</i>
PERF. INDEF.	<i>il a plu</i>	SUBJ. PRES.	<i>qu'il pleuve</i>
PERF. ANT.	<i>il eut plu</i>	IMP.	<i>qu'il plût</i>
PLUP.	<i>il avait plu</i>	PERF.	<i>qu'il ait plu</i>
FUTURE.	<i>il pleuvra</i>	PLUP.	<i>qu'il eût plu</i>

193. (c) The auxiliary verb *to be, être*, becomes impersonal, 1st, whenever it is followed by an adjective used in a vague indeterminate sense or denoting the time of the day.

it is useful	<i>il est utile</i>
it was impossible	<i>il était impossible</i>
it has been dangerous	<i>il a été dangereux</i>
it would be surprising	<i>il serait surprenant</i>
it is two o'clock	<i>il est deux heures</i>
it will be four o'clock	<i>il sera quatre heures</i>

194. (d) 2ndly. The impersonal verb *to be*, coming before an adjective denoting the disposition of the weather, is translated by the irregular and impersonal verb *faire* (p. 151).

it is fine weather	<i>il fait beau</i>
it was warm	<i>il faisait chaud</i>
it will be windy	<i>il fera du vent</i>

195. (e) 3rdly. The verb *to be* becomes impersonal, when immediately followed by an article, a pronoun, a preposition, a verb, or an adverb; the pronoun *il* is then changed into *ce*.

ART.	it is the custom	<i>c'est la coutume</i>
PRON.	it was her duty	<i>c'était son devoir</i>
PREP.	it will be at my house	<i>ce sera chez moi</i>
VERB.	it would be to offend him	<i>ce serait l'offenser</i>
ADV.	it was then I saw	<i>ce fut alors que je vis</i>
ART.	it has been the custom	<i>ç'a été la coutume</i>

[*Ce* is sometimes used before an adjective; as, *c'est bon*, *c'est mauvais*; but then it refers to something mentioned before.]

196. (f) 4thly. The verb *to be* becomes impersonal when added to the adverb *there*. It is conjugated thus:

Y AVOIR, *There to be*.

Gerund, y ayant.

IND.	PRES.	<i>There is, or there are</i>	<i>il y a</i>
	IMP.	<i>There was, or there were</i>	<i>il y avait</i>
	PERF. DEF.	<i>There was, or there were</i>	<i>il y eut</i>
	PERF. IND.	<i>There has been</i>	<i>il y a eu</i>
	PERF. ANT.	<i>There had been</i>	<i>il y eut eu</i>
	PLUP.	<i>There had been</i>	<i>il y avait eu</i>
	FUT. ABS.	<i>There will be</i>	<i>il y aura</i>
	FUT. ANT.	<i>There will have been</i>	<i>il y aura eu</i>
COND.	PRES.	<i>There would be</i>	<i>il y aurait</i>
	PAST.	<i>There would have been</i>	<i>il y aurait eu</i>
SUBJ.	PRES.	<i>That there may be</i>	<i>qu'il y ait</i>
	IMP.	<i>That there might be</i>	<i>qu'il y eût</i>
	PERF.	<i>That there may have been</i>	<i>qu'il y ait eu</i>
	PLUP.	<i>That there might have been</i>	<i>qu'il y eût eu</i>

197. (g) Examples of the same verb used negatively, interrogatively, &c.

is there?	<i>y a-t-il?</i>
there is not	<i>il n'y a pas</i>
is there not?	<i>n'y a-t-il pas?</i>
will there be?	<i>y aura-t-il?</i>
will there not be?	<i>n'y aura-t-il pas?</i>

EXERCISE XXXVII.

- It is fine weather ; let us take a walk—It is [a sad thing] to be
 (d) *se promener* (c) *triste* ||
- sick and to have no money—There are men unworthy of that
 (f) † *indigne*
- name—It was exposing one's self to great danger—It is nature
nom m. (e) *s'exposer* *un* — *m.* (e) *art.*
- that speaks—It is the property of virtue to charm men—It was
qui (e) *propre m. art.* || *charmer art.* (e)
- ten o'clock—It does not freeze—It will rain—It was your brothers
dix heures (a) (a) * * P.
- who danced —It concerns children to avoid idleness—It is
qui danser P. (a) *aux* || *éviter art.* (c)
- dangerous to trust that man—Is there any fire in the parlour?—
 || *se fier à* (g) † *dans salle f.*
- There would be some danger—There is a man wounded—There
 (f) (f) * *blesé*
- has been a great battle, and there have been three thousand men
 (f) *bataille f.* (f) *
- killed—Does it rain?—It seems to a Mahometan that we are
tué (a) (b) — *m.* *que*
- unbelievers—Is there a railway from York to Edinburgh?—
incrédule (g) *chemin de fer m.* — *Edimbourg*
- It is the law of the land—It is the opinion of your father—There
 (e) *loi f.* *pays m.* (e) — *f.*
- were two pretenders to the crown of England.
 (f) *prétendant m.* *couronne f. d' Angleterre f.*

References.

- (a)
 (b)
 (c) } See this Rule.
 (d)
 (e)
 (f)
 (g)

* The impersonal *il y a*, governs *de* before the next participle.

† Partitive sense (p. 11).

‡ A noun of number requires *de* before the next participle.

|| The impersonal, *il convient, il appartient, &c., il est, il était*, followed by an adjective—*c'est, c'était, &c.*, followed by a noun—require *de* before an infinitive.

** *It is, it was*, followed by a substantive plural in the nominative, must be expressed by *ce sont, c'étaient, ce furent*; and not by *c'est, c'était, ce fut*. The same rule must be observed with the pronouns *eux* or *elles*: *ce sont eux, ce sont elles qui, &c.*

Read, translate and parse.

Il ne pleut pas. Y avait-il de la cavalerie à la revue ?
Il fait chaud. Il est impossible d'enseigner cet élève.
C'est mon devoir. Il est trois heures et demie.

EXAMINATION.—190. How are impersonal verbs conjugated, and how are they distinguished from other verbs? 191. Enumerate the impersonal verbs. 192. May not a personal verb become impersonal? 193. In what case does the verb *être* become impersonal? 194. When the verb *to be*, with an adjective, denotes the state of the weather, how is it translated into French? 195. In what instances is the pronoun *il* changed into *ce*, before the verb *être*? 196. Conjugate the impersonal verb *y avoir*.

Of Impersonal Verbs continued.

198. Conjugation of the impersonal verb **FALLOIR**, *to be necessary, requisite, needful; it must.*

INDIC. PRES.	<i>it is necessary, it must</i>	<i>il faut</i>
IMP.	<i>it was necessary, &c.</i>	<i>il fallait</i>
PERF. DEF.	<i>it was requisite, &c.</i>	<i>il fallut</i>
PERF. INDEF.	<i>it has been necessary, &c.</i>	<i>il a fallu</i>
PERF. ANT.	<i>it had been necessary, &c.</i>	<i>il eut fallu</i>
PLUP.	<i>it had been necessary, &c.</i>	<i>il avait fallu</i>
FUT.	<i>it will be necessary</i>	<i>il faudra</i>
FUT. ANT.	<i>it will have been necessary</i>	<i>il aura fallu</i>
COND. PRES.	<i>it would be needful</i>	<i>il faudrait</i>
PAST.	<i>it would have been needful</i>	<i>{ il aurait fallu</i>
SUBJ. PRES.	<i>that it may be requisite</i>	<i>{ il eût fallu</i>
IMP.	<i>that it might be requisite</i>	<i>qu'il faille</i>
PERF.	<i>that it may have been needful</i>	<i>qu'il fallût</i>
PLUP.	<i>that it might have been requisite</i>	<i>qu'il ait fallu</i>
		<i>qu'il eût fallu</i>

199. **VALOIR MIEUX**, *to be better.*

INDIC. PRES.	<i>it is better</i>	<i>il vaut mieux</i>
IMP.	<i>it was better</i>	<i>il valait mieux</i>
PERF. DEF.	<i>it was better</i>	<i>il valut mieux</i>
PERF. INDEF.	<i>it has been better</i>	<i>il a mieux valu</i>
FUT.	<i>it will be better</i>	<i>il vaudra mieux</i>
COND. PRES.	<i>it would be better</i>	<i>il vaudrait mieux</i>
SUBJ. PRES.	<i>that it may be better</i>	<i>qu'il vaille mieux</i>
IMPERF.	<i>that it might be better</i>	<i>qu'il valût mieux</i>

200. SUFFIRE, *to be sufficient, to be enough.*

INDIC. PRES.	<i>it is enough</i>	il suffit or c'est assez
IMP.	<i>it was enough</i>	il suffisait or c'était assez
PERF. DEF.	<i>it was enough</i>	il suffit or ce fut assez
PERF. IND.	<i>it has been enough</i>	il a suffi or ç'a été assez
FUTURE.	<i>it will be enough</i>	il suffira or ce sera assez
COND. PRES.	<i>it would be enough</i>	il suffirait or ce serait assez
SUBJ. PRES.	<i>that it may be enough</i>	qu'il suffise or que ce soit assez
IMP.	<i>that it might be enough</i>	qu'il suffît or que ce fût assez

[The English verb *must* is not impersonal, and may take the name of a person or thing for its nominative; the French verb *falloir* is always impersonal; therefore the construction must be altered.]

201. (a) The verb *falloir* usually expresses the necessity of acting, or doing. The conjunction *que* always follows it, and the next verb is in the subjunctive, thus :

<i>I must speak</i>	il faut que je parle
<i>thou must speak</i>	il faut que tu parles
<i>he must speak</i>	il faut qu'il parle
<i>we must speak</i>	il faut que nous parlions
<i>you must speak</i>	il faut que vous parliez
<i>they must speak</i>	il faut qu'ils parlent

[*Falloir*, with the subjunctive, shows that the obligation of acting is personal or individual.]

202. (b) When the necessity of acting is general, we use the infinitive after *falloir*.

<i>It was necessary to write</i>	il fallait écrire
----------------------------------	-------------------

[When the verb *falloir* expresses *want, necessity* of having, it is followed by a substantive, and a personal conjunctive pronoun precedes *falloir*. I want a hat, *il me faut un chapeau*; but as this rule requires the knowledge of pronouns, not yet explained, the illustration of this construction has been purposely deferred.]

203. (c) When the verb *falloir* is used in the present or future indicative, the following verb must be in the present subjunctive; the other tenses of *falloir* require the imperfect subjunctive.

il faut } que je *parle* à ma sœur.
 il faudra }
 il fallait }
 il fallut } que je *parlasse* à ma sœur.
 il a fallu }
 il faudrait }

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I must buy a good horse—He must buy a horse—My son
 (a) *acheter* *cheval* m. (a) (c) (b)
 wants a partner—He was obliged [to] stay at home—We must buy
associé m.p. (a) (c) *rester chez lui* (a) (c)
 a carriage—You must buy a good dictionary—They must buy
voiture f. (a) (c) *dictionnaire* m. (a) (c)
 books—You should answer his letter—You must speak to
 (a) *il faudrait* (c) *répondre* à (a) (c)
 your father about that affair—I shall be obliged [to] dismiss my
de *affaire* f. (a) (c) *renvoyer*
 servant—You must get up—He must sell his estate—It is
domestique m. (a) (c) *se lever* (a) (c) *terre* f. (f)
 necessary [to] avoid guilt, and [to] do good—That child
 (d) *éviter* art. *mal* m. *faire* art. *bien* m.
 must repeat a page of his vocabulary—We must speak—It would
 (a) (c) *répéter* m. (a) *parler* (c) (d)
 be better to die—One must study to be a scholar—Must
valoir mieux *mourir* (f) *étudier pour* *savant* (a)
 they not speak?—We were obliged to pay the sum—Princes
parler (c) *payer* *somme* f. art.—
 must be affable—They will be obliged to return the money—That
 (a) — (a) *rendre*
 money must [be returned.]
 (b) *rendre*.

References.

- (a) } in the infinitive without a preposition.
 (b) } See this Rule. (f) When the nominative to *must* is
 (c) } preceded by an indeterminate pronoun,
 (d) See 199, and observe that *falloir* as *one, people, it, &c.*, the French omit it,
 and *valoir mieux* govern the next verb and put the following verb in the infinitive.

Read, translate and parse.

Il faut qu'il parle au ministre. Il fallait éviter sa conversation. Il faudrait être bien avare, pour ne pas donner d'éducation à ses enfants. Il fallait voir cet homme sur-le-champ.

EXAMINATION.—200. *What difference is there between the English verb must, and the French verb falloir?* 201. What is the usual construction in French? 202. In what case may the French impersonal *falloir* be used? 203. What tense of the subjunctive must we use after *falloir*?

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

Some verbs, which are generally classed among the regular verbs of the first conjugation, have a peculiarity in the orthography of some of their persons or tenses. This subject has not been treated in elementary books. The French Academy itself does not explain either in what case the final radical consonants, instead of being doubled, should be preceded by an *è* grave, or in what instances those consonants neither affect the vowels which precede them, nor require to be doubled themselves. Suppose a pupil has the verb *inférer* to conjugate; his grammar teaches him that this verb is of the first conjugation ending in *er*; he, therefore will adapt the radical *infér* to the final letter of the conjugation in *er*; and will naturally write, *j'infère, tu infères, il infère, nous inférons, vous inférez, ils infèrent*. After having thus grammatically proceeded in the conjugation of this verb, it will not be an easy matter to persuade him, that in the six changes which this verb has undergone in the present tense only, he has committed no less than four orthographical errors. In fact, he had not been told that, *The vowel which precedes the final radical consonants is either long or short, according to the different vowels which follow that final radical consonant, and that it is essential that the orthography should be subservient to the difference in the sound.*

The omission of grammarians on a point of such importance to the pupil will be supplied here, and these verbs will be conjugated amongst the irregular in their alphabetical places, as models for the conjugation of other verbs of the same termination. These terminations are:

ayer
cer
éer
eler
éler
emer
ener
érer
eter
éter
ever
ger
ier
oyer
uer
uyer

See the irregular verbs

payer
avancer
agréer
appeler
révéler
semer
mener
différer
jeter
répéter
lever
juger
prier
employer
jouer
ennuyer

PARADIGM

TO SHOW THE SIMILARITY OF VERBS IN THEIR
FINAL SYLLABLES.

		INFINITIVE.			Present Gerund Participle			er, ir, oir, re ant é, i, u, t, s		
		<i>Je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils</i>			
INDIC.	<i>Pres.</i>	{ e, s, s, x,	{ es, s, s, x,	{ e; t; d; t;	ons,	ez,	ent			
	<i>Imp.</i>	ais,	ais,	ait;						
	<i>Perf.</i>	{ al, is, us, ins,	{ as, is, us, ins,	{ a; it; ut; int;						
	<i>Fut.</i>	rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront			
COND.	<i>Pres.</i>	rais,	rais,	rait;	rions,	riez,	raient			
IMPER.	{	{ e, s,	{ e, s,	e;	ons,	ez,	ent			
SUBJ.	<i>Pres.</i>	e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent			
	<i>Imp.</i>	{ asse, issee, ussee, inssee,	{ asses, issee, usses, inssee,	{ ât; ît; ût; int;	{ assions, issalons, ussions, inssalons,	{ assiez, issiez, ussiez, inssiez,	{ assent issent ussent inssent			

[Where only the first person of a tense is given, the other persons may easily be known by the *Paradigm*. Thus, *je mis, je croirais, j'obtiendrais, &c.*, look for the perfect definite, future, and conditional, in the *Paradigm*, and you will have *je mis, tu mis, il mit, &c.*; *je croirai, tu croiras, &c.*; *j'obtiendrais, tu obtiendrais, il obtiendrait, nous obtiendrions, &c.*

Observe, however, that *avoir, être, aller, dire, faire, convaincre, and vaincre*, deviate from the above *Paradigm*.]

AN ALPHABETICAL LIST

OF ALL THE FRENCH IRREGULAR VERBS.

[Aba.—Acc.]

Abat-tre, -tant, -tu ; j'abat-s, -tis, to pull down. Like battre.*

1. ABSOUDRE.

Absoudre, to absolve (defective).—Gerund, absolvant.*Part. absous, fem. absoute. Perf. avoir absous.**Indic. pres. j'absou-s, -s, -t ; absolv-ons, -ez, -ent.**Imperf. j'absolvais. (No perf. def.) Future, j'absoudrai.**Conditional pres. j'absoudrais.**Imperative, absous, qu'il absolve ; absolv-ons, -ez, -ent.**Subj. pres. que j'absolv-e, -es, -e ; -ions, -iez, -ent. (No imperf.)***s'Abst-enir, -enant, -enu ; je m'abst-iens, -ins, to abstain. Like tenir (p. 166).****Abstraire, to abstract (defective). Like traire (p. 166).**[*Faire abstraction de* . . . is usually preferred.]*Abstraire, distraire, extraire, rentraire, retraire, and soustraire, are conjugated like traire, and have neither perfect definite nor imperfect subjunctive.**As these verbs would sound harsh in many of their tenses, they are seldom used, except in the present of the infinitive, and those tenses which are formed with the participle.]***Accourir, -ant, -u ; j'accour-s, -us, to run to. Like courir (p. 145).**[This verb forms its compound tenses with *avoir* or *être*.—See 186 (p. 125), and Observations.]**Accroire, to make one believe.**[This verb is used in the present of the infinitive only, with all the tenses of *faire* (see that verb), as, *Je fais accroire, je faisais accroire, &c.**Faire accroire que* . . . , *en faire accroire*, and *s'en faire accroire*, follow the same conjugation.]**Accroître, -oissant, -u ; j'accr-ois, -us, to increase. Like croître (p. 145).**[This verb forms its compound tenses with *avoir* or *être*.—See 186, and Observations, p. 125.]**Accueillir, -ant, -i ; j'accueill-e, -is, to welcome. Like cueillir (p. 146).**

* The five primitive tenses (see note 1, p. 59.) are here given ; the other tenses and persons may easily be formed, either by the preceding paradigm, or by consulting the verb *battre*, which is the root of *abattre*.

2. ACQUÉRIR.

Acquérir, to acquire.—*Gerund*, acquérant.

Part. acquis. *Perf.* avoir acquis.

Indic. pres. j'acquiers, acquiers, acquiert; acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent.

Imperf. j'acquérerais. *Perf. def.* j'acquis. *Fut.* j'acquerrai.

Conditional pres. j'acquerrais.

Imperative, acquiers, qu'il acquière; acquérons, acquérez, qu'ils acquièrent.

Subj. pres. que j'acqui-ère, -es, -e; acquéri-ons, -iez, acquièrent.

Imperf. que j'acquisse.

[The double *x* in the future and conditional must be sounded strongly and distinctly.]

So are conjugated, *conquérir* (p. 144), *reconquérir*, *requérir*, and *enquérir*.]

Adjoindre, -gnant, -nt; j'adjoins, -gnis, to adjoin. Like *joindre*.
Admettre, -ettant, -is; j'admets, -is, to admit. Like *mettre*.

3. AGRÉER.

(Irregular in its orthography only.)

Agréer, to accept, to receive kindly.—*Gerund*, agréant.

Part. agréé. *Perf.* avoir agréé.

Indic. pres. j'agrée, -es, -e; agré-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. j'agréais; nous agréions.

Perf. def. j'agréai; nous agréâmes. *Future*, j'agréerai.

Condit. pres. j'agréerais.

Imperative, agréé, qu'il agrée; agréons, agréés, qu'ils agréent.

Subj. pres. que j'agrée. *Imperf.* que j'agréasse.

[The participle has three *es* in the feminine, *agréée*. The poets suppress an *e* in the future and conditional, *j'agrérai*, *j'agrérais*, &c.]

So are conjugated, *créer*, *désagréer*, *procréer*, *ragréer*, *récréer*, *suppléer*, &c.]

4. ALLER.

Aller, to go.—*Gerund*, allant. *Part.* allé.

Perf. être allé, or avoir été.

Indic. pres. je vais, vas, va; allons, allez, vont. *Imperf.* j'allais.

Perf. def. j'allai. *Perf. indef.* je suis allé, or j'ai été.

Pluperf. j'étais allé, or j'avais été. *Future*, j'irai.

Condit. pres. j'irais. *Past*, je serais allé, or j'aurais été.

Imperative, va, qu'il aille; allons, allez, qu'ils aillent.

Subj. pres. que j'aille, ailles, aille; allions, alliez, aillent.

Imperf. que j'allasse.

[1. We have seen by the preceding conjugation, that this verb forms some of its compound tenses with *avoir* or *être*. But observe that *avoir* is used when we

wish to express that we are returned from the place we had been at; thus, *il a été à Paris*, implies the return; but, *il est allé à Paris*, intimates that he is at Paris, or is still on his journey thither.

2. The imperative *va* is spelt *vas* when followed by *y*; *vas-y*, go thither; but if the *y* be followed by a verb, the *s* is not added; *va y donner ordre*, go and attend to it.]

5. S'EN ALLER.

s'en Aller, to go away.—*Gerund*, *s'en allant*.

Part. allé. Perf. s'en être allé.

Indic. pres. je m'en vais, tu t'en vas, il s'en va; nous nous en allons, vous vous en allez, ils s'en vont.

Imperf. je m'en allais. Perf. def. je m'en allai.

Perf. indef. je m'en suis allé. Future, je m'en irai.

Condit. je m'en irais.

Imperative, va-t'en, qu'il s'en aille; allons-nous-en, allez-vous-en, qu'ils s'en aillent.

Subj. pres. que je m'en aille. Imperf. que je m'en allasse.

Appar-aître, -aissant, -u; *j'appar-ais*, -us, to appear.

[This verb is conjugated like *paraître*, but with this difference, that *apparaitre* takes both the auxiliaries, *avoir* and *être*, for its compound tenses, but *paraître* only receives the auxiliary *avoir*. See 186. p. 125.]

Apparaître, to appear.

[This defective verb is a law term, and is used only in the infinitive and in the third person singular present indicative. It is then impersonal; *il appert*.]

Appart-enir, -enant, -enu; *j'appart-iens*, -ins, to belong. Like *tenir*.

6. APPELER.

(Irregular in its orthography. The final *l* is doubled before *e* mute.)

Appeler, to call,—*Gerund*, *appelant*.

Part. appelé. Perf. avoir appelé.

Indic. pres. j'appell-e, -es, -e; nous appel-ons, -ez, appellent.

Imperf. j'appelais. Perf. def. j'appelai. Fut. j'appellerai.

Condit. pres. j'appellerais.

Imperative, appell-e, -e; appel-ons, -ez, appellent.

Subj. pres. que j'appell-e, -es, e; appelions, -iez, appellent.

Imperf. que j'appelasse.

So are conjugated, *atteler*, *amonceler*, *chanceler*, *dételer*, *étinceler*, *ficeler*, *niveler*, *rappeler*, *renouveler*.

[Verbs ending in *eler* do not double *l* before the *e* mute, but the preceding *e* takes the grave accent. See *révéler*.]

Appr-endre, -enant, -is; *j'appr-ends*, is, to learn. Like *prendre*.

7. ASSAILLIR.

Assaillir, *to assail*.—*Gerund*, assaillant.

Part. assailli. *Perf.* avoir assailli.

Indic. pres. j'assaill-e, -es, -e; assaill-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. j'assaillais. *Perf. def.* j'assaillis. *Fut.* j'assaillirai.

Conditional, j'assaillirais. *Imperative*, assaille.

Subj. pres. que j'assaille. *Imperf.* que j'assaillisse.

[Wailly thinks that the future may be *j'assaillirai* or *assailleraï*.—*Trévoux* has only *assailleraï*. We follow the Academy.]

8. S'ASSEOIR.

s'Asseoir, *to sit down*.—*Gerund*, s'asseyant.

Part. assis. *Perf.* s'être assis.

Indic. pres. je m'ass-ieds, -ieds, -ied; asseyons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je m'asseyais. *Perf. def.* je m'assis.

Perf. indef. je me suis assis. *Fut.* je m'assiérai or asseyerai.

Condit. je m'assiérais or asseyerais.

Imperative, assieds-toi, qu'il s'asseye; asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous, qu'ils s'asseyent.

Subj. pres. que je m'asseye. *Imperf.* que je m'assisse.

[Grammarians do not agree about the orthography of this verb; we follow here the French Academy. Of the two future and conditional tenses given, the first is to be preferred.]

9. ASSEoir.

Asséoir, *to sit*. Like s'asseoir.

[~~Asséoir~~ Assortir, *to match*, is a regular verb, conjugated like *punir*, and not like the irregular verb, *sortir*.]

Astrei-ndre, -gnant, -nt; j'astrei-ns, -gnis, *to force*. Like *peindre*.

Attei-ndre, -gnant, -nt; j'attéi-ns, -gnis, *to reach*. Like *peindre*.

Attraire, *to attract* (*defective*).

[This verb is very seldom used but in the infinitive, though it has all its tenses, except the perfect definite and the imperfect subjunctive. It is conjugated like *traire*.—*Attirer* supplies it, as being more harmonious. See note on *Abstraire*.]

10. AVANCER.

(Irregular in its orthography. The c becomes ç before a and ô.)

Avancer, *to advance*.—*Gerund*, avançant.

Part. avancé. *Perf.* avoir avancé.

Indic. pres. j'avanc-e, -es, -e; avançons, avancez, avancent.

Imperf. j'avançais, avançais, avançait; avanc-ions, -iez, avan-çaient.

Perf. defin. j'avançaï, avanças, avança; avançâmes, avançâtes, avancèrent. *Future*, j'avancerai.

Condit. pres. j'avancerais.

Imperative, avanc-e, -e ; avançons, avancez, qu'ils avancent.

Subj. pres. que j'avance.

Imperf. que j'avançasse, avançasses, avançât ; avançassions, avançassiez, avançassent.

[So are conjugated, *amorcer*, *annoncer*, *délacer*, *dépêcer*, *dépiécer*, *devancer*, *enfoncer*, *énoncer*, *pincer*, *sucer*, and other verbs ending in *cer*.

See what has been said, reference **, p. 67, and observe that verbs ending in *écer*, change the *é* (acute) into *è* (grave), when followed by *e*, *es*, or *ent*—*je dépièce*.

Avenir, to happen (*impersonal*, *seldom used*).

Part. *avenu*—il *avient*, il *avenait*, il *avint*, il *aviendra*, il *avient*-*dra*, qu'il *avienne*, qu'il *avint*.

[We replace it by *il arrive*, *il arriva*, *il est arrivé*, &c.]

Avoir has been conjugated (p. 45).—*Ravoir* is used only in the infinitive.

11. BATTRE.

Battre, to beat.—*Gerund*, battant. *Part.* battu. *Perf.* avoir battu.

Indic. pres. je bats, bats, bat ; battons, battez, battent.

Imperf. battais. *Perf. def.* battis. *Future*, battrai.

Condit. battrais. *Imperative*, bats.

Subj. pres. que je batte. *Imperf.* que je battisse.

[So are conjugated, *abattre*, *combattre*, *débattre*, *s'ébattre*, *rabattre*, and *rebattre*.]

Bénir, to bless.

[This verb is regular, and conjugated like *punir* ; but in speaking of things consecrated by the church, its participle is *béni*, as, *du pain béni*, consecrated bread ; *de l'eau bénite*, holy water.]

12. BOIRE.

Boire, to drink.—*Gerund*, buvant. *Part.* bu. *Perf.* avoir bu.

Indic. pres. je bois, bois, boit ; buvons, buvez, boivent.

Imperf. je buvais. *Perf. def.* je bus. *Future*, je boirai.

Condit. pres. je boirais.

Imperative, bois, boive ; buvons, buvez, boivent.

Subj. pres. que je boive, -es, -e, ; buv-ions, -iez, boivent.

Imperf. que je busse.

13. BOUILLIR.

Bouillir, to boil, to burn, to be impatient.—*Gerund*, bouillant.

Part. bouilli. *Perf.* avoir bouilli.

Indic. pres. je bous, bous, bout; bouill-*ons*, -*ez*, -*ent*.
Imperf. je bouillais. *Perf. def.* je bouillis. *Future*, je bouillirai.
Condit. pres. je bouillirais.
Imperative, bous, bouille; bouill-*ons*, -*ez*, -*ent*.
Subj. pres. que je bouille. *Imperf.* que je bouillisse.

[When this verb is used transitively, we say, *faire bouillir* with the accusative: to boil an egg, *faire bouillir un œuf*.]

Braire, to bray (defective).—*Indic. pres.* tu brais, il brait; ils braient.
Future, il braira; ils brairont.
**Condit.* il brairait; ils brairaient.

[This verb is seldom used except in the infinitive, and the persons and tenses here given.]

Bruire, to roar, to rustle (defec.).—*Imperf.* il bruysait; ils bruyaient.

[*Bruyant* is often used, but as an adjective meaning “noisy,” “boisterous:” un enfant bruyant; des enfants bruyants.]

Cei-ndre, -gnant, -nt; je cei-ns, -gnis, to gird. Like *peindre*.
Choir, to fall (defective).

[This verb is used only in the infinitive and participle *chu*. It is now obsolete. *Tomber* has taken its place.]

14. CIRCONCIRE.

Circoncire, to circumcise (defective).—*Part.* circoncis.

Indic. pres. je circonci-*is*, -*is*, -*it*; -*isons*, -*isez*, -*isent*.

Perf. def. je circoncis. *Future*, je circoncirai.

Condit. je circoncirais.

Imperative, circonci-*is*, -*ise*; -*isons*, -*isez*, -*isent*.

Subj. pres. que je circoncise. *Imperf.* que je circoncisse.

Circonscri-re, -vant, -t; je circonscri-s, -vis, to circumscribe. Like *écrire*.

Circonv-enir, -enant, -enu; je circonv-iens, -ins, to deceive. Like *venir*.

[This verb is a law term.]

Clore, to close (defective).—*Part.* clos. *Pres.* je clos, clos, clôt.

Future, je clôrai. *Conditional*, je clôrais.

[*Gattel* and others write *clorre*; but the Academy writes *clore*.—*Enclore* is written and conjugated like *clore*. *Fermer* and *boucher* supply it.]

Combat-tre, -tant, -tu; je combat-s, -tis, to combat. Like *battre*.

Comm-ettre, -ettant, -is; je comm-ets, -is, to commit. Like *mettre*.

Compar-âitre, -aissant, -u; je compar-ais, -us, to appear. Like *connaître*.

[This verb takes both auxiliaries for its compound tenses. See *Apparaître*. See 186, p. 125.]

Compl-aire, *to humour (defective)*.—No gerund, and therefore no tenses or persons derived from it. The rest like *plaire*.
 se Compl-aire, -aisant, -u; je me compl-ais, -us, *to take delight in*.
 Like *plaire*.
 Compr-endre, -enant, -is; je compr-ends, -is, *to understand*. Like *prendre*.
 Comprom-ettre, -ettant, -is; je comprom-ets, -is, *to expose*. Like *mettre*.

15. CONCLURE.

Conclure, *to conclude*.—Gerund, *concluant*.
Part. concl. *Perf.* avoir concl. *Indic pres.* je concl-us, -us, -ut; concl-ons, -ez, -ent.
Imperf. je concluais, concluais, concluait; conclusions, concluiez, concluait. *Perf. def.* je conclus. *Future*, je conclurai.
Condit. je conclurais.
Imperative, conclue, -e; concl-ons, -ez, -ent.
Subj. pres. que je conclue, -es, -e; concl-ions, -iez, -ent.
Imperf. que je conclusse.

Concour-ir, -ant, -u; je concour-s, -us, *to concur*. Like *courir*.

16. CONDUIRE.

Conduire, *to conduct*.—Gerund, *conduisant*.
Part. conduit. *Perf.* avoir conduit.
Indic. pres. je cond-uis, -uis, -uit; -uions, -uisez, -uisent.
Imperf. je conduisais. *Perf. def.* je conduisis.
Future, je conduirai. *Condit.* je conduirais.
Imperative, cond-uis, -uise; uions, -uisez, -uisent.
Subj. pres. que je conduise. *Imperf.* que je conduisisse.

[So are conjugated, *construire*, *cuire*, *déduire*, *détruire*, *éconduire*, *enduire*, *induire*, *instruire*, *introduire*, *produire*, *réduire*, *séduire*, *traduire*.]

17. CONFIRE.

Confire, *to pickle, to preserve*.—Gerund, *confisant*.
Part. confit. *Perf.* avoir confit.
Indic. pres. je conf-is, -is, -it; -isons, -isez, -isent.
Imperf. je confisais. *Perf. def.* je confis. *Fut.* je confirai.
Condit. pres. je confirais.
Imperative, conf-is, -ise; -isons, -isez, -isent.
Subj. pres. que je confise. *Imperf.* que je confisse.

Conjoi-ndre, -guant, -nt; je conjoi-ns, -gnis, *to conjoin*. Like *joindre*.

18. CONNAÎTRE.

Connaître, to know.—*Gerund*, connaissant.

Part. connu. *Perf.* avoir connu.

Indic. pres. je conn-ais, -ais, -ait; *connaiss-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Imperf. je connaissais. *Perf. def.* je connus. *Fut.* je connaîtrai.

Condit pres. je connaîtrais.

Imperative, connais, connaisse; *connaiss-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Subj. pres. que je connaisse. *Imperf.* que je connusse.

[So are conjugated, *apparaître, comparaître, disparaître, méconnaître, paraître, reconnaître, and réparaître.*]

☞ Connaître, to know, means to be acquainted with, to know by sight; as, I know your father, that lady, his house; *je connais votre père, cette dame, sa maison.* When to know means mental knowledge, science, information, &c., it is translated by SAVOIR (p. 163).

Conquérir, to conquer (*defective*).—*Gerand*, conquérant.

Part. conquis. *Perf. def.* je conquis.

Subj. imperf. que je conquisse (*harsh*).

[It is also used in its compound tenses: *j'ai conquis, j'avais conquis, &c.*]

Consen-tir, -tant, -ti; je consen-s, -tis, to consent. Like sentir.

Construi-re, -sant, -t; je construi-s, -sis, to construct. Like conduire.

Cont-enir, -enant, -enu; je conti-ens, -ins, to contain. Like tenir.

Contrai-ndre, -gnant, contrai-nt; je contrai-ns, -gnis, to constrain.

Like peindre.

Contredi-re, -sant, -t; je contredi-s, -s, to contradict.

This verb is conjugated like *dire*; but in the second person plural of the present indicative and imperative, it makes *contredisez* instead of *contredites*.]

Contref-aire, -aisant, -ait; je contref-ais, -is, to counterfeit, to imitate. Like faire.

[*Cham baud* and other grammarians write, *contrefesant, nous contrefesons, je contrefesais.* We follow the French Academy.]

Contrev-enir, -enant, -enu; je contrev-iens, -ins, to infringe.

Like venir.

Convain-cre, convainquant, convaincu; je convaincs, convainquis.

Like vaincre.

Conv-enir, -enant, -enu; je conv-iens, -ins, to agree. Like venir.

[Convenir de, to agree, is conjugated with *être*; Convenir à, to suit, also Convenir, in the sense of to please, takes avoir in its compound tenses.]

Corromp-re, -ant, -u; je corromp-s, -is, to corrupt. Like rompre.

19. COUDRE.

Coudre, to sew.—*Gerund*, cousant.

Part. cousu. *Perfect*, avoir cousu.

Indic. pres. je couds, couds, coud; *cous-ons, -ez, -ent.*

Imperf. je cousais. *Perf. def.* je cousis. *Future*, je coudrai.
Condit. pres. je coudrais.
Imperative, couds, couse; cous-ons, -ez, -ent.
Subj. pres. que je couse. *Imperf.* que je cousisse.

[So are conjugated, *découdre* and *recoudre*.]

20. COURIR.

Courir, to run.—*Gerund*, courant.

Part. couru. *Perf.* avoir couru.

Indic. pres. je cours, cours, court; cour-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je courais. *Perf. def.* je courus. *Future*, je courrai.

Condit. pres. je courrais.

Imperative, cours, coure; cour-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je coure. *Imperf.* que je courusse.

[The double *r* in the future and conditional must be sounded strongly.]

So are conjugated, *accourir*, *concourir*, *discourir*, *encourir*, *parcourir*, and *secourir*.

Speaking of races or hunting, *courre* is sometimes used instead of *courir*: we say, *courir* or *courre un cerf*, *un lièvre*.]

Couv-rir, -rant, -ert; je couv-re, -ris, to cover. Like *ouvrir*.
Crai-ndre, -gnant, -nt; je crai-na, -gnis, to fear. Like *peindre*.

21. CROIRE.

Croire, to believe.—*Gerund*, croyant.

Part. cru. *Perf.* avoir cru.

Indic. pres. je crois, crois, croit; croy-ons, -ez, croient.

Imperf. je croy-ais, -ais, -ait; croyions, croyez, croyaient.

Perf. def. je crus. *Future*, je croirai.

Condit. pres. je croirais.

Imperative, crois, croie; croyons, croyez, croient.

Subj. pres. que je croie; croies, croie; croyions, croyiez, croient.

Imperf. que je crusse.

22. CROÎTRE.

Croître, to grow.—*Gerund*, croissant.

Part. crû. *Perf.* avoir crû.

Indic. pres. je crois, crois, croît; croiss-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je croissais. *Perf. def.* je crus. *Future*, je croîtrai.

Condit. pres. je croitrais.

Imperative, crois, croisse; croiss-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je croisse. *Imperf.* que je crusse.

[So are conjugated, *accroître* and *décroître*.]

23. CUEILLIR.

Cueillir, to gather.—*Gerund*, cueillant.

Part. cueilli. *Perf.* avoir cueilli.

Indic. pres. cueill-e, -es, -e; cueill-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je cueillais. *Perf. def.* je cueillis. *Future*, je cueillerai.

Condit. je cueillerais. *Imperative*, cueill-e, -e; -ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je cueille. *Imperf.* que je cueillisse.

[So must be conjugated, *accueillir* and *recueillir*.

Formerly the infinitive was *cueillir*, and this is the reason why we say *cueillerai* in the future.]

Cui-re, -sant, -t; je cui-s, -sis, to bake. Like *conduire*.

[When to bake or to cook is followed by an accusative, it is generally translated by *faire cuire*.]

Débat-tre, -tant, -tu; je débat-s, -tis, to debate. Like *battre*.

Déchoir, to decay (*defective*).—No *gerund*.

Part. déchu. *Perf.* être déchu.

Indic. pres. je déch-ois, -ois, -oit; déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoint.

(No *imperfect*.) *Perf. def.* déchus. *Future*, décherrai.

Condit. pres. décherrais. (No *imperative*.)

Subj. pres. déch-oie, déch-oies, déch-oie; déchoyions, déchoyiez, déch-oient. *Imperf.* déchusse.

[This defective verb is supplied by *laisser* and *decliner*.]

Déclore, to uncloze, to open (*defective*).—No *gerund*.

Part. déclos. *Perf.* avoir déclos.

Indic. pres. je déclos, il déclôt (no plural). *Fut.* je déclarai.

Condit. je déclarais. (No other tenses.)

[Ouvrir supplies it.]

Déconfi-re, -sant, -t; je déconfi-s, -s, to discomfit. Like *confire*.

Décou-dre, -sant, -su; je décou-s, -sis, to unsew. Like *coudre*.

Découv-rir, -rant, -ert; je decouv-re, -ris, to discover. Like *ouvrir*.

Décri-re, -vant, -t; je décri-s, -vis, to describe. Like *écrire*.

Décr-oître, -oissant, -u; je décr-ois, -us, to decrease. Like *croître*.

se Dédire, se dédisant, dédit; je me dédis, je me dédis, to retract.

[Like *dire*, except in the second person plural present indicative, and in the second person plural imperative: we say, *dédisez*, instead of *dédites*.]

Dédu-ire, -sant, -t; je dédui-s, -sis, to deduct. Like *conduire*.

Défaillir, to decay (*defective*).

Part. défailli. *Pres.* (no singular), nous défailions, vous défaillez, ils défaillent.

Imperf. je défaillais. *Perf. def.* je défaillis.

Perf. indef. j'ai défailli.

[*Décliner* and *tomber en défaillance* supply the tenses wanting.]

Déf-aire, -aisant, -ait; je déf-ais, -is, to undo. Like *faire*.

[*Chambaud* and others have *nous désaisons*, *je désaisais*, &c. See note on *contre-faire*, p. 144.]

Déjoindre, -gnant, -nt; je déjoins, -gnis, *to disjoin*. Like *joindre*.
 Démén-tir, -tant, -ti; je démens, -tis, *to give the lie*. Like *sentir*.
 se Dém-ettre, -ettant, -is; je me dém-ets, -is, *to resign*. Like *mettre*.
 se Dépar-tir, -tant, -ti; je me dépar-s, -tis, *to desist*. Like *partir*.
 Dépei-ndre, -gnant, -nt; je dépei-na, -gnis, *to describe*. Like *peindre*.

Dépl-aire, -aisant, -u; je dépl-ais, -us, *to displease*. Like *plaire*.
 Dépouvoir, *to leave unprovided (defective)*.

[This verb is seldom used but in the present of the infinitive, its participle *dépouvu*, and the compound tenses.]

Désappr-endre, -enant, -is; je désappr-ends, -is, *to unlearn*. Like *prendre*.

Desser-vir, -vant, -vi; je desser-s, -vis, *to clear the table, &c.* Like *servir*.

Détei-ndre, -gnant, -nt; je détei-na, -gnis, *to discolour*. Like *peindre*.

Dét-enir, -enant, -enu; je dét-iens, -ins, *to detain*. Like *tenir*.

Détrui-re, -sant, -t; je détrui-s, -sis, *to destroy*. Like *conduire*.

Dev-enir, -enant, -enu; je dev-iens, -ins, *to become*. Like *venir*.

se Dêvêt-ir, -ant, -u; je me dêvêt-s, -is, *to undress*. Like *vêtir*.

[Except in a few sentences, *se déshabiller* is preferred.]

24. DIFFÉRER.

(Irregular in its orthography.)

Différer, *to differ*.—Gerund, *différant*.

Part. *différé*. Perf. *avoir différé*.

Indic. *pres.* je diffère, -es, -e; *différons, différez, diffèrent*.

Imperf. je *différais*. Perf. *def.* je *différai*. Future, je *différerai*.

Condit. *pres.* je *différerais*.

Imperative, *diffère, diffère; différons, -ez, diffèrent*.

Subj. *pres.* que je *diffère, -es, -e; différons, différiez, diffèrent*.

Imperf. que je *différasse*.

[So are conjugated all verbs ending in *érer*; the *e* becomes grave whenever the *r* is followed by *e*, *es*, or *ent*.

Pronounce in the future and conditional, *je differrai, je differrais*, sounding the double *r* strongly; and so in all verbs in *érer*.]

25. DIRE.

Dire, *to say*.—Gerund, *disant*. Part. *dit*. Perf. *avoir dit*.

Indic. *pres.* je *dis, dis, dit; disons, dites, disent*.

Imperf. je *disais*. Perf. *def.* je *dis*. Future, je *dirai*.

Condit. *pres.* je *dirais*.

Imperative, *dis, dise; disons, dites, disent*.

Subj. *pres.* que je *dise*. Imperf. que je *disse*.

[So is conjugated *redire*; but the verbs *dédire*, *contredire*, *interdire*, *médire*, and *prédire*, make in the second person plural present indicative and in the imperative, *dédisez*, *contredisez*, *interdisez*, *médisez*, and *prédisez*, instead of *dédites*, &c.]

Disconv-enir, -enant, -enu ; je disconv-iens, -ins, *to disagree*. Like *venir*.

Discour-ir, -ant, -u ; je discour-s, -us, *to discourse*. Like *courir*.

Disjoi-ndre, -gnant, -nt ; je disjoi-ns, -gnis, *to disjoin*. Like *joindre*.

[This verb is used for material objects only.]

Dispar-aitre, -aissant, -u ; je dispar-ais, -us, *to disappear*. Like *connaître*.

Dissoudre, *to dissolve (defective)*.—*Gerund*, dissolvant.

Part. dissous, *m.* dissoute, *f.*

Indic. pres. je diss-ous, -ous, -out ; dissolv-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je dissolvais. (*No perfect definite.*) *Fut.* je dissoudrai.

Condit. pres. je dissoudrais.

Imperative, dissous, dissolve ; dissolv-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je dissolve. (*No imperfect.*)

[*Fonder* and *annuler* may supply it.]

Distraire, *to divert, to take from (defective)*, distrayant, distrait, je distrais. (*No perfect definite.*) Like *traire*.

[This verb is seldom used on account of the harshness of some of its tenses ; in the sense of *to divert*, *dissiper* and *donner des distractions* may supply it ; but when it means *to take from*, *enlever* is generally used. See note on *abstraire*, p. 137.]

26. DORMIR.

Dormir, *to sleep*.—*Gerund*, dormant.

Part. dormi. *Perf.* avoir dormi.

Indic. pres. je dors, dors, dort ; dorm-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je dormais. *Perf. def.* je dormis. *Fut.* je dormirai.

Condit. pres. je dormirais.

Imperative, dors, dorme ; dorm-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je dorme. *Imperf.* que je dormisse.

[So are conjugated, *endormir*, *se rendormir*, *s'endormir*.]

s'Ébattre, *to sport (defective)*.

[This verb is growing obsolete, but it is still used in the present of the infinitive. *Se divertir* or *se réjouir* supplies it.]

Ébouillir, *to boil away (defective)*.

[Seldom used but in the infinitive and participle *ébouilli*. Like *bouillir*.]

Échoir, *to be out (defective)*.—*Gerund*, échéant. *Part.* échu.

Indic. pres. il échoit, or il échet. (*No imperfect.*)

Perf. def. j'échus. *Future*, j'écherrai.

Condit. j'écherrais. *Subj. imperf.* que j'échusse.

[Its compound tenses are formed with *être* or *avoir*. See 186.]

Éclore, *to blow to hatch (defective).*—(No gerund.) *Part.* éclos.

Indic. pres. il éclot; ils éclosent. (No imperfect nor perfect definite.)

Perf. indef. il est éclos. *Future*, il éclôra.

Condit. pres. il éclôrait. *Subj. pres.* qu'il éclosse, qu'ils éclosent.

[No other tenses or persons—*s'ouvrir* and *paraître* supply it.]

Écondui-re, -sant, -t; j'écondui-s, -ais, *to show out.* Like *conduire*.

27. ÉCRIRE.

Écrire, *to write.*—*Gerund*, écrivant. *Part.* écrit. *Perf.* avoir écrit.

Indic. pres. j'écris, -is, -it; écriv-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. j'écrivais. *Perf. def.* j'écrivis. *Future*, j'écrirai.

Condit. j'écrirais. *Imperative*, écris, écriv-e; -ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que j'écrive. *Imperf.* que j'écrivisse.

[So are conjugated, *circonscrire*, *décrire*, *inscrire*, *prescrire*, *proscrire*, *récrire*, *souscrire*, and *transcrire*.]

Élire, -isant, -u; j'élis, -us, *to elect.* Like *lire*.

s'Emboire, *to imbibe.* (Term of painting.)

[This verb is seldom used: *s'imbiber* supplies it.]

Émettre, -ettant, -is; j'émets, -is, *to emit.* Like *mettre*.

Émoudre, -lant, -lu; j'émou-ds, -lus, *to grind (razors, knives, &c.)*

Like *moudre*.

Émouvoir, *to move, to stir up.* *Part.* ému. Like *mouvoir*.

[This verb is seldom used, except in the present of the infinitive, the participle, the present indicative and subjunctive, and in the compound tenses.]

28. EMPLOYER.

Employer, *to employ.*—*Gerund*, employant.

Part. employé. *Perf.* avoir employé.

Indic. pres. j'emploie, emploies, emploie; employons, employez, emploient.

Imperf. j'employais, -ais, -ait; employ-ions, -iez, -aient.

Perf. def. j'employai. *Future*, j'emploierai.

Condit. pres. j'emploierais.

Imperative, emploie, emploie; employons, employez, emploient.

Subj. pres. que j'emploie, emploies, emploie; employions, employiez, emploient. *Imperf.* que j'employasse.

[Conjugate in the same manner, *aboyer*, *cotoyer*, *coudoyer*, *déployer*, *ployer*, *reployer*, *noyer*, *nettoyer*, and *tutoyer*. See *envoyer*.]

Empreindre, -gnant, -nt; j'emprei-ns, -gnis, *to imprint.* Like *peindre*.

Enceindre, -gnant, -nt; j'encei-ns, -gnis, *to enclose.* Like *peindre*.

Enclore, to *enclose* (defective).—(No *gerund.*) *Part.* enclos.

Indic. pres. j'enclos, enclos, enclôt. *Future*, j'enclôrai.

Condit. pres. j'enclôrais. (No other tenses.)

[*Entourer* and *renfermer* supply it.]

Encour-ir, -ant, -u; j'encour-s, -us, to *incour*. Like *courir*.

Endor-mir, -mant, -mi; j'endor-s, -mis, to *lull asleep*. Like *dormir*.

s'Endor-mir, -mant, -mi; je m'endor-s, -mis, to *fall asleep*. Like *dormir*.

Endui-re, -sant, -t; j'endui-s, -sis, to *plaister*. Like *conduire*.

Enfrei-ndre, -gnant, -nt; j'enfrei-ns, -gnis, to *infringe*. Like *peindre*.

s'Enfuir, to *run away*. Like *fuir*.—S'enfuyant, enfui; je m'enfuis, je m'enfuis.

[Though the perfect indicative and imperfect subjunctive are to be found in the Dictionary of the French Academy, yet it is better to supply them by *prendre la fuite*, as, *je pris la fuite*, *que je prisse la fuite*.]

Enjoin-dre, -gnant, -nt; j'enjoin-ns, -gnis, to *enjoin*. Like *joindre*.

29. ENNUYER.

(Irregular in its orthography only.)

Ennuyer, to *tire*.—*Gerund*, ennuyant.

Part. ennuyé. *Perf.* avoir ennuyé.

Indic. pres. j'ennui-e, -es, -e; ennuy-ons, -ez, ennui-ent.

Imperf. j'ennuy-ais, -ais, -ait; ennuyions, ennuyiez, ennuyaient.

Perf. def. j'ennuyai. *Future*, j'ennuierai.

Condit. pres. j'ennuierais.

Imperative, ennui-e, -e; ennuy-ons, -ez, ennui-ent.

Subj. pres. que j'ennui-e, -es, ~~ste~~; ennuyions, ennuyiez, ennui-ent.

Imperf. que j'ennuyasse.

[So are conjugated, *appuyer*, *essuyer*, *désennuyer*, and all verbs in *uyer*. The letter *y* is changed into *i* before *e* mute.]

s'Enquérir, to *inquire*. Like *acquérir* (p. 136).

[Seldom used but in the infinitive and compound tenses; *s'informer* may supply it.]

s'Ensuivre, to *follow hence* (impersonal). Like *suivre*.

[The compound tenses are seldom used. This verb may also be used in the third person plural. *Voyez les erreurs qui s'ensuivraient de cette proposition.*—Acad.]

s'Entrem-ettre, -ettant, -is; je m'entrem-ets, -is, to *intermeddle*. Like *mettre*.

Entr'ouv-rir, -rant, -ert; j'entr'ouv-re, -ris, to *open a little*. Like *ouvrir*.

Entrepr-endre, -enant, -is; j'entrepr-ends, -is, to *undertake*. Like *prendre*.

Entret-enir, -enant, -enu; j'entret-iens, -ins, to *keep up*. Like *tenir*.

Entrev-oir, -oyant, -u; j'entrev-ois, -is, to *see a little*. Like *voir*.

30. ENVOYER.

(Irregular only in the future and the conditional.)

Envoyer, to send.—*Gerund*, envoyant.

Part. envoyé. *Perf.* avoir envoyé.

Indic. pres. j'envoie, -es, -e; envoyons, -ez, envoient.

Imperf. j'envoyais; envoyions, envoyiez, envoyaient.

Perf. def. j'envoyai. *Future*, j'enverrai.

Condit. pres. j'enverrais.

Imperative, envoie, -e; envoyons, -iez, envoient.

Subj. pres. que j'envoie, -es, -e; envoyions, -iez, envoient.

Imperf. que j'envoyasse.

[So is conjugated its derivative, *renvoyer*. See *employer*.]

Épreindre, -gnant, -nt; j'épreins, -gnis, to squeeze out. Like *peindre*.

s'Éprendre, to be smitten, to fall in love with.

[Seldom used but in the participle *épris*, with the auxiliary *être*.]

Équivaloir, -lant, -lu; j'équivaux, -lus, to be of equal value. Like *valoir*.

Éteindre, -gnant, -nt; j'éteins, -gnis, to put out. Like *peindre*.

Être, has been conjugated.

Étreindre, -gnant, -nt; j'étreins, -gnis, to bind fast. Like *peindre*.

Exclure, -uant, -u or us; j'exclus, -us, to exclude. Like *conclure*.

Extraire, to extract. Like *traire*.

[This verb may be supplied by *faire un extrait*, or *dépouiller*. See note on *abstraire*.]

Faillir, to fail (defective).

[The French Academy gives all the tenses of the indicative, observing, at the same time, that they are of little use; in fact this verb is seldom used except in the present infinitive and in the perfect definite or indefinite, *je faillis, j'ai failli, &c.* Its derivative is *défaillir*.]

31. FAIRE.

Faire, to make, or to do.—*Gerund*, faisant.

Part. fait. *Perf.* avoir fait.

Indic. pres. je fais, fais, fait; faisons, faites, font.

Imperf. je faisais. *Perf. def.* je fis. *Future*, je ferai.

Condit. pres. je ferais.

Imperative, fais, fasse; faisons, faites, fassent.

Subj. pres. que je fasse. *Imperf.* que je fisse.

[So are conjugated, *contrefaire, défaire, refaire, surfaire*, and *satisfaire*.

Some grammarians leave the choice of writing *faisant* or *fesant*, *je faisais* or *je fesais*.]

Falloir, *to be necessary, needful (impersonal)*, has been conjugated, p. 132.

Fei-ndre, -gnant, -nt; je fei-ns, -gnis, *to feign*. Like *peindre*.

Férir, *to strike*, obsolete, and only used in this sentence, *sans coup férir*, without striking a blow.

Fleurir, *to blossom*.

[This verb is conjugated like *punir*; but speaking of arts, science, and empires, it means *to flourish*, its gerund is then *florissant*, and in the imperfect the third person is *florissait* in the singular, and *florissaient* in the plural.—*Refleurir* is its derivative.]

Forclore, *to debar.*—*Part.* forclos. *No other tense.* (Term of law.)

Forfaire, *to transgress (defective)*. Its participle is *forfait*.

Fire, *to fry (defective)*.—*Part.* frit. To supply the different forms, we say, *je fais frire, tu fais frire, il fait frire, nous faisons frire, vous faites frire, ils font frire*.

[All the other tenses and persons are supplied with *faire* and the infinitive *frire*]

32. FUIR.

Fuir, *to run away, or to shun, to avoid.*—*Gerund*, fuyant.

Part. fui. *Perf.* avoir fui.

Indic. pres. je fu-is, -s, -t; fuy-ons, -ez, fuient.

Imperf. je fuyais. *Perf. def.* je fuis. *Future*, je fuirai.

Condit. pres. je fuirais.

Imperative, fuis, fuie; fuy-ons, -ez, fuient.

Subj. pres. que je fuie. *Imperf.* que je fuisse.

[*Fuir* is both active and neuter; in either case the perfect definite and imperfect subjunctive are seldom used. When the verb is neuter, *I ran away* is better translated by *je pris la fuite*; when used actively, *I shunned, I avoided*, is rendered by *févitai*.

The present of the subjunctive is very little used,—*que je prenne la fuite* supplies it.]

Géair, *to lie*, is obsolete, except in the following tenses; *gisant, gît, nous gisons, ils gisent, il gisait*: ex. *ci gît*, here lies; *le tout gît en cela*, the whole business lies in that point.

Hair, *to hate*.

[The only irregularity of this verb is in the singular of the present of the indicative, and the second person singular of the imperative. *Pres. je hais, tu hais, il hait*. The diphthong *ai* has then the sound of *è* (grave).—The perfect definite is not used.—The rest like *punir*.]

Honnir, *to dishonour*, is obsolete, and only said ludicrously in the participle *honné*.

Indui-re, -sant, -t; j'indui-s, -sis, *to induce*. Like *conduire*.

Inscri-re, -vant, -t; j'inscri-s, -vis, *to inscribe*. Like *écrire*.

Instrui-re, -sant, -t; j'instrui-s, -sis, *to instruct*. Like *conduire*.

Interdi-re, -sant, -t; j'interdi-s, -s, *to interdict*.

[This verb is conjugated like *dire*, but in the second person present indicative and imperative, it makes *interdisez*.]

Interromp-re, -ant, -u; j'interromp-s, -is, to interrupt. Like *rompre*.
Interv-enir, -enant, -enu; j'interv-iens, -ins, to intervene. Like *venir*.

Introdui-re, -sant, -t; j'introdui-s, -sia, to introduce. Like *conduire*.
Issir, to be born, is used in the participle *issu* only; *issu d'une famille ancienne*, descended from an ancient family.

33. JETER.

(Irregular in its orthography only.)

Jeter, to throw.—*Gerund*, jetant. *Part.* jeté. *Perf.* avoir jeté.
Indic. pres. je jette, jettes, jette; jetons, jetez, jettent.
Imperf. je jetais. *Perf.* je jetai. *Future*, je jetterai.
Condit. pres. je jetterais.
Imperative, jette, jette; jetons, jetez, jettent.
Subj. pres. que je jette, jettes, jette; jetions, jetiez, jettent.
Imperf. que je jetasse.

[So are conjugated, *cacheter, décacheter, projeter, recacheter*, and other verbs ending in *eter*. As to verbs in *éter*, see *répéter*.]

Joi-ndre, -gnant, -nt; je joi-ns, -gnis, to join. Like *peindre*.

34. JOUER.

(Irregular in its orthography only.)

Jouer, to play.—*Gerund*, jouant. *Part.* joué. *Perf.* avoir joué.
Indic. pres. je jou-e, -es, -e; jouons, jouez, jouent.
Imperf. je jouais, jouions. *Perf. def.* je jouai. *Fut.* je jouerai.
Condit. pres. je jouerais.
Imperative, joue, joue; jou-ons, -ez, jouent.
Subj. pres. que je jou-e, -es, -e; jouions, -iez, -ent.
Imperf. que je jouasse.

[So are conjugated, *avouer, clouer, déclouer, dénouer, échouer, nouer, secouer, trouer, vouer*.]

35. JUGER.

(Irregular in its orthography only.)

Juger, to judge.—*Gerund*, jugeant. *Part.* jugé. *Perf.* avoir jugé.
Indic. pres. je juge, juges, juge; jugeons, jugez, jugent.
Imperf. je jug-eais, -eais, -eait; jug-ions, -iez, jugeaient.
Perf. def. je jug-eai, -eas, -ea; jugeâmes, jugeâtes, jugèrent.
Future, je jugerai. *Condit. pres.* je jugerais.
Imperative, juge, juge; jugeons, jugez, jugent.
Subj. pres. que je juge. *Imperf.* que je jugeasse, &c.

Lever, has been conjugated, p. 114. It is irregular in its orthography only.

36. LIRE.

Lire, to read.—*Gerund*, lisant. *Part.* lu. *Perf.* avoir lu.

Indic. pres. je lis, lis, lit; lis-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je lisais. *Perf. def.* je lus. *Future*, je lirai.

Condit. pres. je lirais. *Imperative*, lis, lise; lis-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je lise. *Imperf.* que je lusse.

[So are conjugated, *élire*, *réélire*, *relire*.]

Luire, to shine (*defective*).—*Gerund*, luisant.

Part. lui. (*No feminine participle.*)

Indic. pres. je lu-is, -is, -it; luis-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je luisais. *Future*, je lui-rai.

Condit. pres. je lui-rais. *Subj. pres.* que je luisse.

Maint-enir, -enant, -enu: je maint-iens, -ins, to maintain. Like *tenir*.

Maudire, to curse.—*Gerund*, maudissant. *Part.* maudit.

Indic. pres. je maud-is, -is, -it; maudiss-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je maudissais. *Perf. def.* je maudis. *Future*, je maudirai.

Condit. pres. je maudirais.

Imperative, maud-is, -isse; maud-issons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je maudisse. *Imperf.* que je maudisse.

Méconn-altre, -aissant, -u; je méconn-ais, -us, not to know again.

Like *connaître*.

Médi-re, -sant, -t; médi-s, -s, to slander.

[Like *dire*; but in the second person plural indicative and second person plural imperative, it makes *médies*, instead of *médites*.]

Méfaire, to do wrong. This verb is only used in the infinitive.

37. MENER.

(Irregular in its orthography only.)

Mener, to lead.—*Gerund*, menant. *Part.* mené. *Perf.* avoir mené.

Indic. pres. je mèn-e, -ez, -e; men-ons, -ez, mènent.

Imperf. je menais. *Perf. def.* je menai. *Future*, je mènerai.

Condit. pres. je mènerais.

Imperative, mèn-e, -e; menons, menez, mènent.

Subj. pres. que je mèn-e, -es, -e; menions, meniez, mènent.

Imperf. que je menasse.

[So are conjugated all verbs in *ener*. The *e* before *n* takes the grave accent when the *n* is followed by an *e* mute.]

Men-tir, -tant, -ti; je men-s, -tis, to lie. Like *sentir*.

se Mépr-endre, -enant, -is; je me mépr-ends, -is, to mistake. Like *prendre*.

Mésosff-rir, -rant, -ert; je mésosff-re, -ris, to underbid. Like *offrir* (seldom used).

Messeoir, not to become (defective). Like *seoir*.

38. METTRE.

Mettre, to put.—*Gerund*, mettant. *Part. mis*. *Perf.* avoir mis.

Indic. pres. je mets, mets, met; mettons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je mettais. *Perf. def.* je mis. *Future*, je mettrai.

Condit. pres. je mettrais.

Imperative, mets, mette; mett-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je mette. *Imperf.* que je misse.

[So are conjugated, *admettre*, *commettre*, *compromettre*, *se démettre*, *s'entremettre*, *omettre*, *permettre*, *promettre*, *remettre*, *soumettre*, and *transmettre*.]

39. MOUDRE.

Moudre, to grind.—*Gerund*, moulant.

Part. moulu. *Perf.* avoir moulu.

Indic. pres. je mouds, mouds, moud; moul-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je moulais. *Perf. def.* je moulus. *Future*, je moudrai.

Condit. pres. je moudrais.

Imperative, mouds, moule; moul-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je moule. *Imperf.* que je moulusse.

[*Emoudre* and *remoudre* are conjugated like *moudre*.]

40. MOURIR.

Mourir, to die.—*Gerund*, mourant. *Part.* mort. *Perf.* être mort.

Indic. pres. je meurs, meurs, meurt; mour-ons, -ez, meurent.

Imperf. je mourais. *Perf. def.* je mourus. *Future*, je mourrai.

Condit. pres. je mourrais.

Imperative, meurs, meure; mour-ons, -ez, meurent.

Subj. pres. que je meure. *Imperf.* que je mourusse.

[The double *r* in the future and conditional must be sounded strongly and distinctly.]

41. MOUVOIR.

Mouvoir, to move.—*Gerund*, mouvant. *Part.* mu. *Perf.* avoir mu.

Indic. pres. je meus, meus, meut; mouv-ons, -ez, meuvent.

Imperf. je mouvais. *Perf. def.* je mus. *Future*, je mouvrai.

Condit. pres. je mouvrais.

Imperative, meus, meuve; mouv-ons, -ez, -meuvent.

Subj. pres. que je meuve, -es, -e; mouv-ions, -iez, meuvent.

Imperf. que je musse.

[*Emouvoir*, *s'émouvoir*, and *promouvoir*, follow the same conjugation.]

[Several tenses of this verb are not used on account of the harshness of their sound.]

Mouvoir is a technical term, used only in some general propositions; as, every free body moves in a straight line, *tout corps libre se meut en ligne droite*. The general acceptation of *to move* is *remuer*; as, move your arm, *remuez le bras*.]

42. NÂÎTRE.

Naître, to spring up, to arise, to be born.—*Gerund*, naissant. *Part.*, né. *Perf.* être né.

Indic. pres. je nais, nais, nait; naiss-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je naissais. *Perf. def.* je naquis. *Future*, je naîtrai.

Condit. pres. je naîtrais.

Imperative, nais, naisse; naiss-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je naisse. *Imperf.* que je naquisse.

[This verb forms its compound tenses with *être*. *Renâître* follows the same conjugation.]

Nuire, nuisant, nuir; je nuis; je nuisis; to hurt. The rest like *conduire*.

Obt-enir, -enant, -enu; j'obt-iens, -ins, to obtain. Like *tenir*.

Off-rir, -rant, -ert; j'off-re, -ris, to offer. Like *ouvrir*.

Oindre, to anoint.—*Gerund*, oignant. *Part.* oint.

Indic. pres. j'oins, oins, oint; oign-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. j'oignais. *Perf. def.* j'oignis. *Future*, j'oindrai.

Condit. pres. j'oindraï.

Imperative, oins, oigne; oignons, oignez, oignent.

Subj. pres. que j'oigne. *Imperf.* que j'oignisse.

[This verb is seldom used except in a religious sense.]

Om-ettre, -ettant, -is; j'om-ets, -is, to omit. Like *mettre*.

Oûir, to hear (defective).

[Only used in the infinitive, in the participle *ouï*, in the perfect definite singular, *j'ouïs, tu ouïs, il ouï*; and in the imperfect subjunctive, *que j'ouïsse, &c.*; its chief use is in the compound tenses followed by *dire*; as, *je l'ai ouï dire*.—*Entendre* supplies *ouïr*.]

43. OUVRIR.

Ouvrir, to open.—*Gerund*, ouvrant.

Part. ouvert. *Perf.* avoir ouvert.

Indic. pres. j'ouvr-e, -es, -e; ouvr-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. j'ouvrais. *Perf. def.* j'ouvris. *Future*, j'ouvrirai.

Condit. j'ouvrirais. *Imperative*, ouvre, ouvre; ouvr-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que j'ouvre. *Imperf.* que j'ouvrissse.

[So are conjugated, *couvrir*, *découvrir*, *entr'ouvrir*, *recouvrir*, *rouvrir*, *souffrir*, *offrir*, *mésoffrir*.]

Paitre, to graze, to feed (defective).—Gerund, paissant.

Part. pu. Perf. avoir pu. (Seldom used.)

Indic. pres. je pais, pais, pait; paiss-*ons*, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je paissais. (*No perf. def.*) *Future*, je paîtrai.

Condit. pres. je paîtrais.

Imperative, pais, païsse; paiss-*ons*, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je païsse. (*No imperf.*) Its derivative, *repaitre*, has the perfect definite *je repus*.

[*Manger, nourrir, and pâture* supply the tenses wanting.]

Parcour-ir, -ant, -u; je parcour-s, -us, to run over. Like courir.

Parfaire, to complete (obsolete).

Par-aitre, -aissant, -u; je par-ais, -us, to appear. Like connaître.

44. PARTIR.

Partir, to set out.—Gerund, partant. Part. parti. Perf. être parti.

Indic. pres. je pars, pars, part; part-*ons*, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je partais. *Perf. def.* je partis. *Future*, je partirai.

Condit. pres. je partirais. *Imperative*, pars, part-*e*; -*ons*, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je parte. *Imperf.* que je partisse.

[This verb is conjugated with *être*, but *repartir* (to answer) takes *avoir*, p. 161.]

Parv-enir, -enant, -enu; je parv-iens, -ins, to attain. Like venir.

[This verb takes *être* for its compound tenses.]

45. PAYER.

(Irregular in its orthography only.)

Payer, to pay.—Gerund, payant. Part. payé. Perf. avoir payé.

Indic. pres. je pai-*e* (*or paye*), -es, -e; payons, payez, paient.

Imperf. je pay-ais, -ais, -ait; payions, payiez, payaient.

Perf. def. je payai. *Future*, je paierai (*or payerai*).

Condit. pres. je paierais (*or payerais*).

Imperative, pai-*e*, -e; pay-*ons*, -ez, paient.

Subj. pres. que je pai-*e* (*or paye*), -es, -e; payions, payiez, paient (*or payent*).

Imperf. que je payasse.

[So are conjugated all verbs in *ayer*; as, *balayer, bégayer, effrayer, frayer, &c.*—But *rayer* and *délayer* never change the *y* into *i*.

The Academy leaves the choice of writing *il paye* or *il paie*, *je payerai* or *je paierai*, or even *je paîrai*.]

46. PEINDRE.

Peindre, to paint.—Gerund, peignant.

Part. peint. Perf. avoir peint.

Indic. pres. je peins, peins, peint; peign-*ons*, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je peignais. *Perf. def.* je peignis. *Future*, je peindrai.
Condit. pres. je peindrais.

Imperative, peina, peigne; peign-*ons*, -*ez*, -*ent*.

Subj. pres. que je peigne. *Imperf.* que je peignisse.

[So are conjugated, *astreindre*, *atteindre*, *ceindre*, *craindre*, *dépeindre*, *enfreindre*, *enjoindre*, *êtreindre*, *joindre*, *oindre*, *plaindre*, *rejoindre*, and *restreindre*.]

Perm-ettre, -ettant, -is; je perm-ets, -is, *to permit*. Like *mettre*.
 Plai-ndre, -gnant, -nt; je plai-ns, -gnis, *to pity*. Like *peindre*.

47. PLAIRE.

Plaire, *to please*.—*Gerund*, plaisant. *Part. plu.* *Perf.* avoir plu.

Indic. pres. je plais, plais, plaît; plais-*ons*, -*ez*, -*ent*.

Imperf. je plaisais. *Perf. def.* je plus. *Future*, je plairai.

Condit. pres. je plairais.

Imperative, plais, plaise; plais-*ons*, -*ez*, -*ent*.

Subj. pres. que je plaise. *Imperf.* que je plusse.

[So must be conjugated, *complaire*, *se complaire*, *déplaire*, and *se plaire*.]

Pleuvr, *to rain*, has been conjugated at p. 129.

Poindre, *to dawn* (*defective and obsolete*).

Portraire, *to draw, to portray* (*obsolete*).

Poursui-vre, -vant, -vi; je poursui-s, -vis, *to pursue*. Like *suivre*.

48. POURVOIR.

Pouvoir, *to provide*.—*Gerund*, pourvoyant.

Part. pourvu. *Perf.* avoir pourvu.

Indic. pres. je pourv-*ois*, -*ois*, -*oit*; pourvoy-*ons*, -*ez*, pourvoient.

Imperf. je pourvoy-*ais*, -*ais*, -*ait*; -*ions*, -*iez*, -*aient*.

Perf. def. je pourvus. *Future*, je pourvoirai.

Condit. pres. je pourvoirais.

Imperative, pourvois, pourvoie; pourvoy-*ons*, -*ez*, pourvoient.

Subj. pres. que je pourvoi-*e*, *es*, -*e*; pourvoy-*ions*, -*iez*, pourvoient.

Imperf. que je pourvusse.

49. POUVOIR.

Pouvoir, *to be able*.—*Gerund*, pouvant. *Part. pu.* *Perf.* avoir pu.

Indic. pres. je puis or peux, peux, peut; pouv-*ons*, -*ez*, peuvent.

Imperf. je pouvais. *Perf. def.* je pus. *Future*, je pourrai.

Condit. pres. je pourrais. (*No imperative*.)

Subj. pres. que je puisse. *Imperf.* que je pusse.

[In poetry and in common conversation, *je peux* is sometimes used, but *je puis* ought to be preferred. Interrogatively we do not say *peux-je*, but *puis-je?*—in the future and conditional, only one *r* is sounded.

With the verb *pouvoir* we may suppress the negation *pas* or *point*. I cannot, *je ne puis*. We cannot go out, *nous ne pouvons sortir*.—The same takes place with the verbs *cesser*, *oser*, and *savoir*.]

Prédire, *to forecast*.

[This verb is conjugated like *dire*, but in the second person plural indicative and second person plural imperative, it makes *prédisez*, instead of *prédites*.]

50. PRENDRE.

Prendre, *to take*.—*Gerund*, prenant. *Part. pris*. *Perf.* avoir pris.

Indic. pres. je prends, prends, prend ; pren-ons, -ez, prennent.

Imperf. je prenais. *Perf. def.* je pris. *Future*, je prendrai.

Condit. pres. je prendrais.

Imperative, prends, prenne ; prenons, prenez, prennent.

Subj. pres. que je prenne, -es, -e ; prenions, prenez, prennent.

Imperf. que je prisse.

[The letter *n* is doubled whenever it is followed by an *e* mute.

So are conjugated, *apprendre*, *comprendre*, *désapprendre*, *entreprendre*, *rapprendre*, *reprendre*, and *surprendre*.]

Prescri-re, -vant, -t ; je prescri-s, -vis, *to prescribe*. Like *écrire*.

Pressen-tir, -tant, -ti ; je pressen-s, -tis, *to foresee*. Like *sensir*.

Préva-loir, -lant, -lu ; je préva-ux, -lus, *to prevail*. Like *valoir*.

[The present subjunctive makes *prévale*, *prévalez*, *prévaille* ; *prévalions*, *prévaliez*, *prévalent*.]

se Prévaloir, *to take advantage*. Like *prévaloir*.

Prév-enir, -enant, -enu ; je prév-iens, -ins, *to prevent*, or *anticipate*.

Like *venir*.

51. PRÉVOIR.

Prévoir, *to foresee*.—*Gerund*, prévoyant.

Part. prévu. *Perf.* avoir prévu.

Indic. pres. je prév-ois, -ois, -oit ; prévoy-ons, -ez, prévoient.

Imperf. je prévoy-ais, -ais, -ait ; -ions, -iez, -aient.

Perf. def. je prévis. *Future*, je prévoirai.

Condit. pres. je prévoirais.

Imperative, prévoi-s, -e ; prévoy-ons, -ez, prévoient.

Subj. pres. que je prév-oie, -oies, -oie ; -oyions, -oyiez, -oient.

Imperf. que je préviasse.

52. PRIER.

Prier, *to pray*.—*Gerund*, priant. *Part. prié*. *Perf.* avoir prié.

Indic. pres. je prie, pries, prie ; prions, priez, prient.

Imperf. je pri-ais, -ais, -ait ; priions, priez, priaient.

Perf. def. je priaï. *Future*, je prierai.

Condit. pres. je prierais.

Imperative, prie, prie ; pri-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je pri-e, -es, -e ; priions, priez, prient.
Imperf. que je priasse.

[So must be conjugated, *crier, décrier, certifier, délier, défler, étudier, lier, nier, oublier, plier, relier.*

In the future and conditional of *crier* and *oublier*, the *e* mute is often omitted in poetry.]

Produi-re, -sant, -t ; je produi-s, -sis, to produce. Like *conduire*.
 Prom-ettre, -ettant, -is ; je prom-ets, -is, to promise. Like *mettre*.
 Promouvoir, to promote (defective).

[This verb is seldom used except in the infinitive, and in the compound tenses ; as, *il a été promu*, he has been promoted :—*avancer* supplies the rest.]

Proscri-re, -vant, -t ; je proscri-s, -vis, to proscribe. Like *écrire*.
 Prov-enir, -enant, -enu ; je prov-iens, -ins, to proceed. Like *venir*.

Quérir, to bring, to fetch (defective).

[This obsolescent verb is only used in the infinitive, with the verbs *aller, venir, and envoyer*.]

Rabat-tre, -tant, -tu ; je rabat-s, -tis, to abate. Like *battre*.
 Rappr-endre, -enant, -is ; je rappr-ends, -is, to learn again. Like *prendre*.
 se Rass-eoir, -eyant, -is ; je me rass-ieds, -is, to sit again. Like *asseoir*.
 Rattei-ndre, -gnant, -nt ; je rattei-na, -gnis, to overtake. Like *teindre*.
 Ravoir, to have again (defective).

[This verb has only the present of the infinitive.]

Rebat-tre, -tant, -tu ; je rebat-s, -tis, to beat again. Like *battre*.
 Rebouillir, to boil again. Like *bouillir*.
 Reclure, to shut up (defective).

[It is only used in the present of the infinitive and the compound tenses ; as, *il est reclus dans sa maison*, he is shut up in his own house.]

Recondui-re, -sant, -t ; je recondui-s, -sis, to lead back. Like *conduire*.
 Reconn-aître, -aissant, -u ; je reconn-ais, -us ; to know again. Like *connaître*.
 Reconquérir, to reconquer (defective). Like *conquérir*.
 Recou-dre, -sant, -su ; je recou-ds, -sis, to sew again. Like *coudre*.
 Recouv-rir, -rant, -ert ; je recouv-re, -ris, to cover again. Like *ouvrir*.
 Récri-re, -vant, -t ; je récri-s, -vis, to write again. Like *écrire*.
 Recueill-ir, -ant, -i ; je recueill-e ; -ris, to assemble together. Like *cueillir*.
 Redev-enir, -enant, -enu ; je redev-iens, -ins, to become again. Like *venir*.
 Redi-re, -sant, -t ; je redi-s, -s, to say again. Like *dire*.
 Rédui-re, -sant, -t ; je rédui-s, -sis, to reduce. Like *conduire*.

Réél-ire, -isant, -u; je réél-is, -us, *to re-elect*. Like *lire*.
 Ref-aire, -aissant, -ait; je ref-ais, -is, *to do again*. Like *faire*.
 Refleurir. See observations on the verb *fleurir*.
 Rejoi-ndre, -gnant, -nt; je rejoi-ns, -gnis, *to join again*. Like *peindre*.
 Rel-ire, -isant, -u; je rel-is, -us, *to read again*. Like *lire*.
 Reluire, *to shine (defective)*. Reluisant, relui; je reluis (*no perf. def. nor imperf. subj.*). The rest like *luire*.
 Rem-ettre, -ettant, -is; je rem-ets, -is, *to put again*. Like *mettre*.
 Remou-dre, -lant, -lu; je remou-da, -lus, *to grind again*. Like *moudre*.
 Ren-aître, -aissant, *to be born again (defective)*.

[This verb has no participle, and therefore no compound tenses. The rest is conjugated like *naître*.—It is only used in its proper sense, when speaking of the Phoenix or Prometheus.]

se Rendor-mir, -mant, -mi; je me rendor-s, -mis, *to fall asleep again*. Like *dormir*.
 Rentraire, *to darn*. Like *traire*. Rentrayant, rentrait; je rentrais. (*No perf. def. nor imperf. subj.*) See note on *abstraire*.
 Renvoyer, renvoyant, renvoyé; je renvoie, renvoyai, *to send back*. Like *envoyer*.
 Rep-aître, -aissant, -u; je rep-ais, -us, *to feed*. Like *pâtre*.
 se Repaître. Like *pâtre*.
 Repar-aître, -aissant, -u; je repar-ais, -us, *to appear again*. Like *connaître*.
 Repar-tir, -tant, -ti; je repar-s, -tis, *to set out again, to reply*. Like *partir*.

[In the sense of *to set out again*, *REPARTIR* is conjugated in its compound tenses with *être*—when it means *to reply*, it takes *avoir*.

When the verb signifies *to share, to divide, to distribute*, the first *e* is accented (*répartir*). It is then regular, and conjugated like *punir*, p. 68.]

se Repen-tir, -tant, -ti; je me repen-s, -tis, *to repent*. Like *sentir*.

53. RÉPÉTER.

(Irregular in its orthography only.)

Répéter, *to repeat*.—Gerund, répétant.
 Part. répété. Perf. avoir répété.
 Indic. pres. je répèt-e, -es, -e; répétons, répétez, répètent.
 Imperf. je répétais. Perf. def. je répétai. Future, je répéterai.
 Condit. pres. je répéterais.
 Imperative, répèt-e, -e; répétons, répétez, qu'ils répètent.
 Subj. pres. que je répèt-e, -es, -e; répétions, répétiez, répètent.
 Imperf. que je répétasse.

[So are conjugated all verbs in *éter*. As to verbs in *eter*, see *jeter*.]

Repr-endre, -enant, -is; repr-ends, -is, *to take back, to blame*. Like *prendre*.
 Requ-érir, -érant, -is; je requ-iers, -is, *to require*. Like *acquérir*.

54. RÉSOUDRE.

Résoudre, *to resolve*.—*Gerund*, résolvant.

Part. résolu. *Perf.* avoir résolu.

Indic. pres. je rés-ous, -ous, -out; résolv-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je résolvais. *Perf. def.* je résolus. *Future*, je résoudrai.

Condit. je résoudrais.

Imperative, résous, résolve; résolv-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je résolve. *Imperf.* que je résolusse.

* [When *résoudre* signifies *to change a thing into another*, its participle is *résous*, and that participle has no feminine.]

Ressen-tir, -tant, -ti; je ressen-s, -tis, *to resent*. Like *sentir*.

Ressor-tir, -tant, -ti; je ressor-s, -tis, *to go out again*. Like *sortir*.

[In the sense of *to belong to*, *to depend on a court of justice*, *RESSORTIR* is conjugated like *punir*.]

se Ressouv-enir, -enant, -enu; je me ressouv-iens, -ins, *to recollect*.

Like *venir*.

Restrei-ndre, -gnant, -nt; je restrei-nä, -gnis, *to restrain, to limit*.

Like *peindre*.

Ret-enir, -enant, -enu; je ret-iens, -ins, *to retain*. Like *tenir*.

Reva-loir, -lant, -lu; je reva-ux, -lus, *to be even with one*. Like *valoir*.

55. RÉVÉLER.

(Irregular in its orthography only.)

Révéler, *to reveal*.—*Gerund*, révélant.

Part. révélé. *Perf.* avoir révélé.

Indic. pres. je révèle, tu révéles, il révèle; révélons, révéléz, révèlent.

Imperf. je révélais. *Perf. def.* je révélai. *Future*, je révélerai.

Condit. pres. je révélerais.

Imperative, révèle, révèle; révélons, révéléz, révèlent.

Subj. pres. que je révèl-e, -es, -e; révé lions, révéliez, révèlent.

Imperf. que je révélasse.

[So are conjugated, *céler*, *décéler*, and all other verbs ending in *éler*. As to verbs in *eler*, see *appeler*.]

Rev-enir, -enant, -enu; je rev-iens, -ins, *to come back*. Like *venir*.

Revê-tir, -tant, -tu; je revê-ts, -tis, *to invest with*. Like *vêtir*.

[*Se revêtir de* (to put on), is conjugated like the preceding, but it is generally better to use the verb *mettre*.]

Rev-ivre, -ivant, -écu; je rev-is, -écus, *to revive*. Like *vivre*.

Rev-oir, -oyant, -u; je rev-ois, -is, *to see again*. Like *voir*.

56. RIRE.

Rire, to laugh.—*Gerund*, riant. *Part. ri.* *Perf.* avoir ri.

Indic. pres. je ris, ris, rit ; rions, riez, rient.

Imperf. je ri-ais, -ais, -ait ; rions, riez, riaient.

Perf. def. je ris. *Future*, je rirai.

Condit. pres. je rirais. *Imperative*, ris, rie ; rions, riez, rient.

Subj. pres. que je ri-e, -es, -e ; rions, riez, rient.

Imperf. que je risse.

[So is *sourire* conjugated.]

57. ROMPRE.

Rompre, to break.—*Gerund*, rompant.

Part. rompu. *Perf.* avoir rompu.

Indic. pres. je romp-s, -s, -t ; romps-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je rompais. *Perf. def.* je rompis. *Future*, je romprai.

Condit. pres. je romprais.

Imperative, romps, rompe ; romps-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je rompe. *Imperf.* que je rompisse.

[*Corrompre* and *interrompre* are its derivatives.]

Rouv-rir, -rant, -ert ; je rouv-re, -ris, to open again. Like *couvrir*.
Saillir, to jut out (*defective*).

[The tenses used are, the present of the infinitive, the gerund *saillant*, and the third person of the following tenses :—*Indic. pres.* il saillie, ils saillent. *Imperf.* il saillait, ils saillaient. *Fut.* il saillera, ils sailleront.—*Condit. pres.* il saillera, ils sailleraient.—*Saillir*, (to gush out) is regularly conjugated like *punir*, but has only the third persons ; *jailir*, however, which is regular, is preferred to *saillir*.]

Satisf-aire, -aisant, -ait—je satisf-ais, -is, to satisfy. Like *faire*.

58. SAVOIR.

Savoir, to know.—*Gerund*, sachant. *Part. su.* *Perf.* avoir su.

Indic. pres. je sais, sais, sait ; savons, savez, savent.

Imperf. je savais. *Perf. def.* je sus. *Future*, je saurai.

Condit. pres. je saurais.

Imperative, sache, sache ; sach-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je sache. *Imperf.* que je susse.

[SAVOIR, to know, means mental knowledge, information, science : as, he knows three languages, *il sait trois langues*. I know that she will write, *je sais qu'elle écrira*. Do you know your lesson ? *Savez-vous votre leçon ?* When to know signifies to be acquainted with, it is then translated by *connaître*. See that verb, p. 144.

Je ne saurais is very often used for *je ne puis*, yet we cannot say, *je ne saurais* for *je ne pourrais*, nor *je saurais* for *je puis*.]

Secour-ir, -ant, -u ; je secour-s, -us, to succour. Like *courir*.
Sédui-re, -sant, -t ; je sédui-s, -sis, to seduce. Like *conduire*.

59. SEMER (same as *mener*, p. 154).

Semer, to sow.—*Gerund*, semant. *Part.* semé. *Perf.* avoir semé.
Indic. pres. je sème, sèmes, sème; semons, semez, sèment.
Imperf. je semais. *Perf. def.* je semai. *Future*, je sèmerai.
Condit. pres. je sèmerais.
Imperative, sème, sème; semons, semez, sèment.
Subj. pres. que je sèm-e, -es, -e; semions, semiez, sèment.
Imperf. que je semasse.

[So are conjugated all verbs in *emer*; they take an accent grave on the *e* which precedes the *m*, whenever that letter is followed by an *e* mute.]

60. SENTIR.

Sentir, to feel.—*Gerund*, sentant. *Part.* senti. *Perf.* avoir senti.
Indic. pres. je sens, sens, sent; sent-ons, -ez, -ent.
Imperf. je sentais. *Perf. def.* je sentis. *Future*, je sentirai.
Condit. pres. je sentirais. *Imperative*, sens, sente; sent-ons, -ez, -ent.
Subj. pres. que je sente. *Imperf.* que je sentisse.

[So must be conjugated, *consentir*, *démentir*, *mentir*, *pressentir*, and *ressentir*.]

Seoir, to become, to fit well (defective).—*Gerund*, seyant.
Indic. pres. il sied; ils sièent. *Imperf.* il seyait; ils seyaient.
Future, il siéra; sièront. *Condit. pres.* il sierait; ils sièraient.
No other tenses or persons—*Aller bien*, *convenir*, may supply it.—
 This verb is not used in the infinitive.

[When *seoir* means to *sit*, it has only the gerund *séant* and the participle *sû*, which last is translated into English by *situated*. *Etre situé* supplies it.]

61. SERVIR.

Servir, to serve.—*Gerund*, servant. *Part.* servi. *Perf.* avoir servi.
Indic. pres. je sers, sers, sert; serv-ons, -ez, -ent.
Imperf. je servais. *Perf. def.* je servis. *Future*, je servirai.
Condit. pres. je servirais. *Imperative*, sers, serve; serv-ons, -ez, -ent.
Subj. pres. que je serve. *Imperf.* que je servisse.

[So is *desservir* conjugated.—*Asservir* is regular.]

62. SORTIR.

Sortir, to go out.—*Gerund*, sortant. *Part.* sorti. *Perf.* être sorti.
Indic. pres. je sors, sors, sort; sort-ons, -ez, -ent.
Imperf. je sortais. *Perf. def.* je sortis. *Future*, je sortirai.
Condit. pres. je sortirais. *Imperative*, sors, sorte; sort-ons, -ez, -ent.
Subj. pres. que je sorte. *Imperf.* que je sortisse.

[Its derivative is *ressortir*, to go out again.]

Souff-rir, -rant, -ert; je souff-re, -ris, to *suffer*. Like *ouvrir*.
Soum-ettre, -ettant, -is; je soum-ets, -is, to *submit*. Like *mettre*.
Sourdre, to *spring out* (*defective*).

[It has only the present of the infinitive, and the third persons of the present indicative, *sourd*, *sourdent*; as, *l'eau sourd de la terre*, the water springs out of the earth. *Sortir* may supply it.]

Sour-ire, -iant, -i; je sour-is, -is, to *smile*. Like *rire*.
Souscri-re, -vant, -t; je souscri-a, -vis, to *subscribe*. Like *écrire*.
Soustra-ire, -yant, -it; je soustra-is, to *subtract*. Like *traire*.

[See note on *abstraire*. *Oter* supplies it.]

Sout-enir, -enant, -enu; je sout-iens, -ins, to *support*. Like *tenir*.
se Souv-enir, -enant, -enu; je me souv-iens, -ins, to *remember*.
Like *venir*.
Subv-enir, -enant, -enu; je subv-iens, -ins, to *subvens*. Like *venir*.

63. SUFFIRE.

Suffire, to *suffice*.—*Gerund*, suffisant. *Part. suffi*. *Perf.* avoir suffi.
Indic. pres. je suff-is, -is, -it; suffis-ons, -ez, -ent.
Imperf. je suffisais. *Perf. def.* je suffis. *Future*, je suffirai.
Condit. je suffirais. *Imperative*, suff-is, -ise; suffis-ons, -ez, -ent.
Subj. pres. que je suffise. *Imperf.* que je suffisse.

[This verb is generally used as an impersonal, and signifies *to be sufficient*; as, *il suffit*, it is sufficient, it is enough, &c. It has been conjugated as such, page 133.]

64. SUIVRE.

Suivre, to *follow*.—*Gerund*, suivant. *Part. suivi*. *Perf.* avoir suivi.
Indic. pres. je suis, suis, suit; suiv-ons, -ez, -ent.
Imperf. je suivais. *Perf. def.* je suivis. *Future*, je suivrai.
Condit. je suivrais. *Imperative*, suis, suive; suiv-ons, -ez, -ent.
Subj. pres. que je suive. *Imperf.* que je suivisse.

[So are conjugated, *s'ensuivre* and *poursuivre*.]

Surf-aire, -aisant, -ait; je surf-ais, -is, to *exact*. Like *faire*.
Surgir, to *land*, to *arrive*, is becoming obsolete, but *surgir*, to *rise*, to *arise*, to *spring*, is in frequent use, and regularly conjugated like *punir*, p. 68.
Surpr-endre, -enant, -is; je surpr-ends, -is, to *surprise*. Like *prendre*.

Surseoir, to *supersede*, to *put off*.—A law term only used in the following tenses: *Gerund*, sursoyant. *Part. sursis*.

Indic. pres. je surs-ois, -ois, -oit; sursoyons, sursoyez, sursoient.
Imperf. je sursoyais. *Perf. def.* je sursis. *Future*, je sursoirai.
Condit. pres. je sursoirais. *Subj. imperf.* que je sursisse.

[*Suspendre*, *remettre*, *différer*, may supply it.]

Surv-enir, -enant, -enu; je surv-iens, -ins, *to come unexpectedly.*

Like *venir*.

Surv-ivre, -ivant, -écu; je surv-is, -ecus, *to survive.* Like *vivre*.

T-aire, -aisant, -u; je t-ais, -us, *to conceal.* Like *plaire*.

se Taire, *to be silent.* Like *plaire*.

Tei-ndre, -gnant, -nt; je tei-na, -gnis, *to dye.* Like *peindre*.

65. TENIR (same form as *venir*).

Tenir, *to hold.*—*Gerund*, tenant. *Part.* tenu. *Perf.* avoir tenu.

Indic. pres. je tiens, tiens, tient; tenons, tenez, tiennent.

Imperf. je tenais. *Perf. def.* je tins. *Future*, je tiendrai.

Condit. pres. je tiendrais.

Imperative, tiens, tienne; tenons, tenez, tiennent.

Subj. pres. que je tienne. *Imperf.* que je tinsse.

[So must be conjugated, *s'abstenir*, *appartenir*, *détenir*, *entretenir*, *maintenir*, *retenir*, and *soutenir*.]

Tistre, *to weave*, has only the participle *tissu*, woven. *Tisser* is the modern verb.

Tradui-re, -sant, -t; tradui-s, -sis, *to translate.* Like *conduire*.

66. TRAIRE.

Traire, *to milk.*—*Gerund*, trayant. *Part.* trait. *Perf.* avoir trait.

Indic. pres. je traie, traie, trait; tray-ons, -ez, traient.

Imperf. je trayais. (*No perf. def.*) *Future*, je trairai.

Condit. pres. je trairais.

Imperative, traie, traie; tray-ons, -ez, traient.

Subj. pres. que je traie. (*No imperf.*)

[The tenses wanting are supplied by *tirer*. Like *traire* are conjugated, *abstraire*, *attirer*, *distraindre*, *extraire*, *rentrier*, *retraire*, and *soustraire*.]

Transcri-re, -vant, -t; transcri-s, -vis, *to transcribe.* Like *écrire*.

Transm-ettre, -ettant, -is; transm-ets, -is, *to transmit.* Like *mettre*.

67. TRESSAILLER (like *assaillir*, p. 140).

Tressaillir, *to start.*—*Gerund*, tressaillant.

Part. tressailli. *Perf.* avoir tressailli.

Indic. pres. je tressaill-e, -es, -e; tressaill-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je tressaillais. *Perf. def.* je tressaillis.

Future, je tressaillirai.

Condit. pres. je tressaillirais.

Imperative, tressaill-e, -e; tressaill-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je tressaill-e, -es, -e; tressaill-ons, -iez, -ent.

Imperf. que je tressaillisse.

[*Tressaillir* is seldom used without the word *joie* or *peur*.]

68. VAINCRE.

Vaincre, *to vanquish*.—*Gerund*, vainquant.

Part. vaincu. *Perf.* avoir vaincu.

Indic. pres. je vaincs, vaincs, vainc; vainqu-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je vainquais. *Perf. def.* je vainquis. *Future*, je vaincrai.

Condit. pres. je vaincrais.

Imperative, vaincs, vainque; vainqu-ons, -ez, -ent.

Subj. pres. que je vainque. *Imperf.* que je vainquisse.

[So is conjugated, *convaincre*.

The *present* and *imperfect indicative* are seldom used. They may be supplied by *je suis victorieux, j'étais victorieux, &c.*

The letter *c* is changed into *qu* before the vowels *a, e, i, o*.]

69. VALOIR.

Valoir, *to be worth*.—*Gerund*, valant. *Part.* valu. *Perf.* avoir valu.

Indic. pres. je vaux, vaux, vaut; val-ons, -ez, -ent.

Imperf. je valais. *Perf. def.* je valus. *Future*, je vaudrai.

Condit. pres. je vaudrais.

Imperative, vaux, vaille; val-ons, -ez, -ent (*not used*).

Subj. pres. que je vaill-e, -es, -e; valions, valiez, vaillent.

Imperf. que je valusse.

[So are conjugated, *équivaloir* and *revaloir*.]

70. VENIR (same form as *tenir*).

Venir, *to come*.—*Gerund*, venant. *Part.* venu. *Perf.* être venu.

Indic. pres. je viens, viens, vient; venons, venez, viennent.

Imperf. je venais. *Perf. def.* je vins. *Perf. indef.* je suis venu.

Future, je viendrai. *Condit. pres.* je viendrais.

Imperative, viens, vienne; venons, venez, viennent.

Subj. pres. que je vienne. *Imperf.* que je vinsse.

[So are conjugated, *circonvenir*, *convenir*, *devenir*, *disconvenir*, *intervenir*, *parvenir*, *prévenir*, *provenir*, *redevenir*, *ressouvenir*, *se souvenir*, and *subvenir*.]

71. VÊTIR.

Vêtir, *to dress*.—*Gerund*, vêtant. *Part.* vêtu. *Perf.* avoir vêtu.

Indic. pres. je vêts, vêts, vêt; vêt-ons, -ez, vêtent.

Imperf. je vêtais. *Perf. def.* je vêtis. *Future*, je vêtirai.

Condit. pres. je vêtirais.

Imperative, vêts, vête; vêtons, vêtez, vêtent.

Subj. pres. que je vête. *Imperf.* que je vêtisse.

[The three first persons singular indicative are better supplied by *habiller*.

Vêtir is more commonly conjugated as a reflected verb; it then means *s'habiller*.

So are conjugated, *se dévêtir* and *revêtir*.]

72. VIVRE.

Vivre, *to live*.—*Gerund*, vivant. *Part.* vécu. *Perf.* avoir vécu.

Indic. pres. je vis, vis, vit; vivons, vivez, vivent.

Imperf. je vivais. *Perf. def.* je vécus. *Future*, je vivrai.

Condit. pres. je vivrais.

Imperative, vis, vive; vivons, vivez, vivent.

Subj. pres. que je vive. *Imperf.* que je vécusse.

[*Revivre* and *survivre* are conjugated in the same manner.

When *to live* means *to dwell*, *to reside*, it is expressed by *demeurer*: Where do you live? I live in the country.—*Où demeurez-vous? Je demeure à la campagne.*]

73. VOIR.

Voir, *to see*.—*Gerund*, voyant. *Part.* vu. *Perf.* avoir vu.

Indic. pres. je vois, vois, voit; voyons, voyez, voient.

Imperf. je voy-ais, -ais, -ait; voyions, voyiez, voyaient.

Perf. def. je vis. *Future*, je verrai. *Condit. pres.* je verrais.

Imperative, vois, voie; voyons, voyez, voient.

Subj. pres. que je voie, voies, voie; voy-ions, -iez, voient.

Imperf. que je visse.

[So are conjugated, *entrevoir* and *revoir*.

Only one *r* is sounded in the future and conditional.]

74. VOULOIR.

Vouloir, *to be willing*.—*Gerund*, voulant.

Part. voulu. *Perf.* avoir voulu.

Indic. pres. je veux, veux, veut; voul-ons, -ez, veulent.

Imperf. je voulais. *Perf. def.* je voulus. *Future*, je voudrai.

Condit. pres. je voudrais. *Imperative*, veuillez (*no other persons*).

Subj. pres. que je veuille, -es, -e; voulions, vouliez, veuillent.

Imperf. que je voulusse.

[The second person plural of the imperative, *veuillez*, is used in the sense of *deign*, *be so good as*, *be so kind as*; as an abridged expression for *ayez la bonté de vouloir*, *faites-moi le plaisir de vouloir*—*Be so good as to lend me your book, veuillez me prêter votre livre.* *Veux, voulons, voulez*, are very seldom used indeed, and only to excite in a person a strong determined will.]

EXERCISE XXXIX.—ABSOURDRE (p. 137), ACQUÉRIR
(p. 138), and their derivatives.

He has acquired celebrity by his work——Sesostris conquered
 f. ouvrage m. — P. *conquérir*
 a great part of Asia——I have inquired about that man——
partie f. *art. Asie f.* *s'enquérir de*
 Alexander conquered a vast empire——He has acquired by his
 P. — m. *acquérir par*
 merit great influence over the opinions of his cotemporaries——
une *sur* f. sing. *contemporain m.*
 He cannot convince his constituents of the sincerity of his intentions
convaincre *commettant* f. — f.
 —Have they resolved on peace or war?——
on résoudre *art. paix f.* *art. guerre f.*
 Wood when burning resolves into ashes and smoke——
art. bois m. qu'on brûle *se résoudre en cendre f.* † *fumée f.*
 Would that judge absolve the guilty?——The fog has
juge *coupable m. pl.* *brouillard m.*
 dissolved into rain—Those minerals have been dissolved in
se résoudre pluie f. *minéral (74.) m.* *dans*
aqua fortis.
eau f. forte.

Reference.


† The preposition *en* must be repeated.

EXERCISE XL.—ALLER (p. 138).

Shall we go out walking?——Let us go and see the review——
à la promenade *voir revue f.*
 I shall go to London—I am going home——He is gone to Rome——
Londres *à la maison* *perf. ind.* —
 He has been to Algiers——Let him go and do that errand——
Alger *faire commission f.*
 Will you go to the concert?——They are going for the doctor——
 — m. *chercher médecin m.*
 My sister and yours are going to the theatre——We shall go to
 spectacle m. *en*
 Scotland——Are these coaches going to London?——Must we go to
Ecosse f. *voiture f.* *Londres*

church?—Let them go and enjoy themselves—He has not
 art. *église f.* *s'amuser*
 been to see his sister—We are going to our country house—It
voir *campagne f.*
 is not [far off], I will walk—And I will ride or drive—
loin aller à pied m. aller à cheval en voiture f.
 I shall come and meet you.
aller au devant de vous.

IDIOMATICAL PHRASES FORMED WITH *ALLER*.

 Besides the idiomatical past and future tenses given in the regular conjugations, the verb *aller* is used to form a series of particular phrases, of which the following are in common use.

To go on foot, or to walk	<i>aller à pied.</i>
To go on horseback, or ride	<i>aller à cheval.</i>
To go or ride in a carriage	<i>aller en voiture.</i>
To go in a boat	<i>aller en bateau.</i>
To go and meet	<i>aller au devant de</i>

EXERCISE XLI.—*S'EN ALLER, to go away* (p. 139).

Let us [go away]—Do you [go away?]
 him not [go away] without being paid—They [went away] at
sans payer P. d
 seven—My sisters are [going away] next week—I shall
heures f. semaines f.
 not [go away] early—Make haste, for they are [going away]
de bonne heure se dépêcher car
 —Why do they [go away] so soon?—Must I [go away?]
pourquoi sûrement
 not detain James, he must [go away]—Let the boys [go away.]
retenir élève

EXERCISE XLII.—*BATTRE, and its derivatives* (p. 141).

They [pulled down] their house—They were beaten—The
P. abattre P.
 artillery [beat down] the wall—Do not beat that child—We
P. muraille f. battre
 were fighting for our country—Does he not beat his brother?
combattre pour la patrie f. battre
 Your brother beats William at chess.
battre aux échecs m.

EXERCISE XLIII.—CONDUIRE, and its derivatives (p. 148).

They led the people into error—We took the poor
P. induire peuple m. en f. P. reconduire
 man back to his cottage—Let us [carry on] the enterprise—We
chaumière f. conduire entreprise f.
 constructed our house—Do not drive your child to despair—
construire maison f. réduire art, désespoir m.
 The enemy will destroy the fortress—We conducted the
ennemi m. pl. détruire forteresse f. P. conduire
 ladies to the opera—We instruct our children—Did he not
dame f. opéra m. instruire
 introduce a new custom?—Would he introduce an [unknown
P. introduire nouveau coutume f. inconnu m.
 person?]
 She translated that fine poem—Bake that
P. traduire poème m. faire cuire
 apple tart—You captivate your hearers—My children
tourte f. aux pommes f. séduire auditeur m.
 destroy [every thing].
détruire tout.

EXERCISE XLIV.—CONNAÎTRE, and its derivatives (p. 144).

Do you know that man?—I knew that honest family—
connaître connaître famille f.
 We do not appear in public—He appears dissatisfied—He
paraître en — m. paraître mécontent
 acknowledges the obligation—He does not seem satisfied—
reconnaître — f. paraître satisfait
 Will you know your things again?—Sweet illusions, vain
reconnaître effet m. — f.
 phantoms, vanish—We [know each other].
fantômes m. disparaître se connaître.

EXERCISE XLV.—COURIR, and its derivatives (p. 146).

Let us not run—Do not incur his anger—We are [going over]
courir encourir colère f. parcourir
 his estate—I hastened at his cries—Did we not assist him in his
terre f. accourir à. cri m. P. secourir dans

distress and difficulties?—I will [run over] his book—They have
détresse f. embarras m. parcourir
 contributed to his success—In case of need she will have recourse
concourir succès m. dans le besoin recourir
 to her brother—Let us talk over his plans—I must run.
discourir de projet m. courir.

**EXERCISE XLVI.—CROIRE (p. 145), CROÎTRE (p. 145),
 COUDRE (p. 144), CONFIRE (p. 143), CUEILLIR (p. 146),
 MOUDRE (p. 155), and their derivatives.**

Do not gather these peaches; they are not ripe—Will you
cueillir pêche f. mûr
 preserve these apricots?—Have you pickled your cucumbers?—
confire abricot m. confire concombre m.
 I never will believe such news—We collected the votes—
croire † pareil nouvelle f. pl. P. recueillir voix f.
 They have increased their wealth—They are gathering the apples—
accroître bien m. cueillir pomme f.
 I have ground the coffee—Those knives have just been ground—
moudre café m. émoudre
 Unpick that seam, and sew that ribbon.
découdre couture f. coudre ruban m.

Reference.

† This adjective to precede its noun.

EXERCISE XLVII.—DIRE, and its derivatives (p. 147).

Tell the truth—These boys do not speak the truth—You
vérité f. enfants dire
 contradict yourself—They repeat the same thing a hundred times
se contredire redire
 —That wicked woman [spoke ill] of her neighbours—I had
méchant médire voisin m.
 predicted that misfortune—Do not contradict that poor girl—The
prédire malheur m. contredire fille
 physicians have forbidden Mr. F. wine and spirits—What
médecin m. interdire d. art. vin. m. art. liqueur f.
 was she saying to her children?—Did you not tell the bookseller
dire perf. ind. dire d. libraire m.

to send the book?—I cannot foretell the future—He told me
de envoyer liere m. prédire avenir m. dire
 strange things—I must tell my niece to come—Tell the gardener
singulier chose f. dire à — de venir dire à jardinier
 to plant some flowers—I have not said my lesson.
de planter fleur f. dire leçon f.

EXERCISE XLVIII.—ÉCRIRE, and its derivatives (p. 149).

Describe all the charms of that beautiful landscape—Let them
décrire charme m. paysage m.
 write to their sister the details of the mayor's feast—We subscribe
écrire banquet civique m. souscrire
 to your work—She was [writing down] her name—We transcribe
ouvrage m. inscrire nom m. transcrire
 his order —Write to London by return of post—My
ordre m. écrire Londres art. retour m. art. courrier m.
 children do not write; are they ill or idle?—Write to your
malade paresseux
 mother on your arrival—Shall you describe in your episode that
d arrivés f. décrire épisode m.
 dreadful tempest?—I have [given my consent] to their proposals—
affreux tempête f. souscrire proposition f.
 The triumvirs proscribed all their enemies—The historian who
— m. P. proscrire tout ennemi m. historien m.
 described the wars of the revolution presented to our view
P. décrire guerre f. — f. exposer yeux m. pl.
 a uniform series of murderous scenes—Have you written to your
uniforme suite f. meurtrier — f. écrire
 mother?

EXERCISE XLIX.—FAIRE, and its derivatives (p. 151).

Do your exercise—We undid the work—Let the cook
faire thème m. P. défaire ouvrage f. cuisinier
 boil this ham—Do your duty—She mimicked her
faire bouillir jambon m. faire devoir m. contrefaire
 governess—Have they done their task?—Do not make any
institutrice f. faire tâche f.
 noise—Let us hurt no one—You would do harm [wrong,
bruit m. faire mal à personne faire tort m. —

injury] to those people, by your silence in that respect—Do
ces gens-là par — m. d *égard m.*
 not mimic people—Those tradesmen exact—We defeated
contrefaire personne f. marchand m. surfaire p. défaire
 the enemy—You have counterfeited their signature—Let us
contrefaire — f.
 satisfy the master—We shall make war—Undo that knot—
satisfaire maître m. faire art. guerre f. défaire nœud m.
 You must pay your creditors.
satisfaire créancier m.

EXERCISE L.—LIRE, and its derivatives (p. 154).

I shall read your letter—Read mine—He was elected—Have
lire lettre f. p. élire
 you read that interesting history?—Have you read the paper?—
intéressant f. journal
 Shall I read that passage over again?—Read your Bible—Must I
relire — f.
 read that book from the beginning?—Let us read this passage.
lire depuis commencement m. lire — m.

EXERCISE LI.—METTRE, and its derivatives (p. 155).

They dress simply—Our troops began their march—
se mettre simplement troupe f. p. se mettre en marche
 Philosophy comprehends logic, ethics, physics,
.... f. comprendre art. logique f. art. morale f. art. physique f. sin.
 and metaphysics—We never admitted those principles—
art. métaphysique f. sing. p. admettre principe m.
 Has he committed that crime?—Does he set a great value on
commettre — m. *mettre prix m. d*
riches?—She will omit that circumstance—Do not omit
art. richesse f. omettre circonstance f.
 that essential duty—They have transmitted their glory to
essentiel devoir m. transmettre f.
 posterity—I have put my books in this place—You do not
art. f. mettre d — f.
 put on your neckcloth well—I allow William to [go out]
mettre mal cravate f. permettre d — *de sortir*

—The servants are laying the cloth— We shall [sit down] to
domestique m. mettre couvert m. se mettre à
 table at six—Have you put my letters [in the letter box?]
table à six heures mettre à la poste
 —They did not admit that man—[Put on] your hat—He
P. admettre mettre chapeau m.
 dresses [like a military man].
se mettre à la militaire.

EXERCISE LII.—OUVRIR, and verbs like it (p. 156).

I discovered his malice—Will not your friends offer their
P. découvrir — f. offrir
 assistance?—Do not open the door—We discovered their bad
secours m. ouvrir porte f. P. découvrir
 intentions—Our army was crowned with glory—They will
— f. P. se couvrir de
 [find out] the secret—Must I open the window?—[They will open]
découvrir — m. ouvrir fenêtre f. On ouvrira
 the gates—Do not offer him [any thing]—Let the servant
porte f. offrir rien domestique m.
 open the door—An impenetrable veil covers his designs—Let
ouvrir porte f. impénétrable voile m. couvrir dessein m.
 us not divulge our secrets—This rule [admits of] an exception—
découvrir — m. souffrir —
 Must we suffer their insults?—We discover your intention.
souffrir insulte f. découvrir — f.

EXERCISE LIII.—PEINDRE, and verbs like it (p. 157).

We do not fear the consequences—[Put out] the fire—He
craindre — f. éteindre feu m.
 never transgressed the laws of his country—They joined their
P. enfreindre loi f. pays m. P. joindre
 sighs and tears—Never affect low and ignoble sentiments—
soupir m. larme f. feindre bas — m.
 Join your efforts to mine—Did his prudence extinguish the fire
joindre — m. — f. éteindre feu m.
 of a disordered imagination?—I have just [put out] the candle—
dérégulé — f. éteindre chandelle f.

I was pitying those sad victims of the revolution—Were you
plaindre triste victime f. révolution f.
 painting an historical subject?—We fear death—They paint
peindre tableau m. craindre art. mort f.
 the manners——Parliament limited their power——They
mœurs f. pl. art. parlement m. astreindre puissance f.
 complain of cold—I feign being dissatisfied—I pretended
se plaindre art. froid m. feindre d'être mécontent p. feindre
 to be angry—Fear nothing—I fear his anger.
d'être fâché craindre rien colère f.

EXERCISE LIV.—PRENDRE, and its derivatives (p. 159).

We learn our grammar—Do not take my books—This
apprendre grammaire f. prendre livre m.
 news surprised the ministers—We have heard strange
p. surprendre ministre m. apprendre singulier
 news——He will not understand that order——Will not your
nouvelles f. pl. comprendre ordre m.
 children learn French?—I must take a cup of coffee
apprendre art. français m. prendre tasse f. café m.
 —Let him learn to dance—Let us learn useful things—Take
apprendre à danser utile chose f. prendre
 courage—He has forgotten his Latin.
 — m. *désapprendre latin m.*

EXERCISE LV.—SENTIR (p. 164), MENTIR, PARTIR
 (p. 144), DORMIR (p. 148), SERVIR (p. 164),
 and their derivatives.

I consent to your proposal—I have consented to the marriage
consentir proposition f. mariage m.
 of my son—I will contradict that report—Do they not swerve
fiis m. démentir rapport m. se départir
 from that principle?—Does he sleep?—I shall [set out] for
principe m. dormir partir pour
 France. next week—The parties agreed—We served
art. — f. art. semaines prochaines parties f. consentir servir
 our friends—Do the children sleep?—She does not feel her
ami m. dormir sentir

loss—They have repented—I have repented my obstinacy—
perte f. se repentir se repentir de entêtement m.

We shall [set out] at eleven—Let them leave my house.
partir à onze heures sortir de maison f.

EXERCISE LVI.—TENIR (p. 166), VENIR (p. 167),
and their derivatives.

This house belongs to my neighbour—The troops did not
appartenir voisin m. troupes f.
 restrain the mob—My brother is coming—They will become
contenir populace f. venir devenir
 rich and proud—Let them maintain their authority—Did they
riche fier maintenir autorité f.
 interpose in that affair?—Will he ever become wise?—I must
intervenir affaire f. jamais devenir sage
 maintain my opinion—His misfortunes proceed from his wicked-
soutenir — f. malheur m. venir méchan-
 ness—Let us prevent the bad effect of these prejudices—Hold
ceté f. prévenir effet m. préjugé m. tenir
 the book—I shall [come back]—I have restrained their impetuosity
revenir retenir f.
 —They relieve the wants of the poor—Will he obtain
subvenir à besoin m. pauvre m. parvenir à
 his ends?—Renounce your errors and prejudices—Will you
fin f. revenir de f. préjugé m.
 [be able] to accomplish your object?—That will suit my
pouvoir — venir à bout de dessein m. cela convenir à
 father—He will never own that fact—Must I own it?—
convenir de fait m. convenir
 He will become learned—The carriage has just arrived.
devenir savant voiture f. vient de

EXERCISE LVII.—*Other miscellaneous Irregular Verbs.*

We assaulted the entrenchments of the enemy—[Send for]
P. assaillir retranchement m. envoyer chercher
 your brother—The arts and sciences flourished under his reign—
fleurir sous règne m.

She moved the heart of that unfeeling man—We have extracted
P. émouvoir *insensible* *extraire*

a beautiful passage from that work——He was excluded from
 — m. *ouvrage m.* *P. exclure*

the company—Avoid these flatterers—I shall send spring
compagnie f. *fuir* *flatteur m.* *envoyer printanier*

flowers to these [young ladies]—She died of grief—That spring
fleur f. *demoiselle* *P. mourir chagrin m.*

moves the whole machine—We hate nobody—The empire of
mouvoir tout art. — f. *hater personne* — m.

the Babylonians was [a flourishing one]—That bill of exchange
 *florissant* *lettre de change f.*

has expired—The first term expires at Midsummer—I was near
échoir *échoir à la Saint-Jean* *P. faillir*

falling—The queen hates that vain pomp and all the parade
tomber *hater* — *pompe f.* *appareil m.*

of grandeur—I [have a glimpse of] something——I could
art. — f. *entrevoir* *quelque chose* *pouvoir*

not foresee that event——We suppress interesting circumstances
prévoir *événement m.* *tairer* *intéressant circonstance f.*

—Virgil was born at Mantua—[Have the goodness to] read my
Virgile P. naître à Mantoue *veuillez lire*

letter——The Greeks vanquished the Persians at Marathon,
Grec vaincre P. *Perses à* —

Salamis, Plataea, and Mycale—See the admirable order
d Salamine, d Platie *d* — *voir* — *ordre m.*

of the universe—The celebrated d'Aguesseau was promoted to
univers m. — *P. promouvoir*

the dignity of chancellor—Will he [be able] to come?—Let us see
 f. *chancelier m.* *pouvoir venir* *voir*

—This hat becomes your sister—Those colours will not
chapeau m. *soeur à* *sœur f.* *couleur f.*

become that lady—That horse [is good for nothing]—[Be so good
soeur à *dame* *cheval* *ne valoir rien* *vouloir*

as]—An ounce of gold [is equivalent] to fifteen ounces of
once m. *or m.* *équivaloir*

silver——We [were sitting down] on the top of that hill——
argent m. *s'asseoir* *sur sommet m.* *édifice m.*

The judge [put off] the execution of the sentence—The axletree
surseoir *exécution f.* — f. *essieu m.*

of our carriage broke——Bad company corrupts the
voiture f. P. se rompre *compagnie f. pl.* *corrompre*

minds of young people—Do not interrupt your brother ;
esprit m. sing. *gens* pl. *interrompre* *frère* m.
 he is busy—He lives in solitude—He could not survive his
occupé *vivre dans* art. — f. *P. pouvoir* *survivre* d
 misfortune—Fathers [live again] in their children—We shall not
malheur m. *revivre dans* *enfant* m.
 laugh.
rire.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

205. Personal pronouns are used for the names of persons or things, and are divided into *conjunctive* and *disjunctive*.

206. The *personal conjunctive* pronouns are immediately united to a verb, either as nominatives, or as datives or accusatives.

207. These pronouns are used without article or preposition, and are thus declined :

First person, masc. and fem.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	I,	<i>je.</i>	we,	<i>nous.</i>
Dat.	to me,	<i>me.</i>	to us,	<i>nous.</i>
Acc.	me,	<i>me.</i>	us,	<i>nous.</i>

Second person, masc. and fem.

Nom.	thou,	<i>tu.</i>	you,	<i>vous.</i>
Dat.	to thee,	<i>te.</i>	to you,	<i>vous.</i>
Acc.	thee,	<i>te.</i>	you,	<i>vous.</i>

Third person, masc.

Nom.	he, it,	<i>il.</i>	they,	<i>ils.</i>
Dat.	to him, to it,	<i>lui.</i>	to them,	<i>leur.</i>
Acc.	him, it,	<i>le.</i>	them,	<i>les.</i>

Third person, fem.

Nom.	she, it,	<i>elle.</i>	they,	<i>elles.</i>
Dat.	to her, to it,	<i>lui.</i>	to them,	<i>leur.</i>
Acc.	her, it,	<i>la.</i>	them,	<i>les.</i>

208. The preceding pronouns, whether in the dative or accusative, are placed before the verb or its auxiliary.

I see him,	<i>je le vois.</i>
You knew her,	<i>vous la connaissiez.</i>
He has spoken to them,	<i>il leur a parlé.</i>

EXERCISE LVIII.

It is now considered unnecessary to continue giving the gender of nouns, as this great difficulty must have been long since overcome by the use of my Analytical Table, if the pupil has attended to the directions given in the preface of that work.

She assembled the nobles and animated them by her words and
P. assembler — P. animer par parole
 by her example—I have seen him—He rewards them—I give you
exemple (c) voir (a) (a) (b)
 my consent——You will surprise her—We shall relieve them—
consentement surprendre (a) soulager (a)
 They were not speaking to me—His conduct displeases me—They
(b) déplaire (b)
 paid him his wages and dismissed him—He will give me that
P. payer (b) gage P. renvoyer (a) (b)
 proof of his friendship—That man pleases me—He knows me—
preuve amitié f. plaire (b) connaître (a)
 He knows it—Thy flatterers have ruined thee—We tell him the
savoir (a) flatteur (c) (a) dire (b)
 truth, but he will not believe us—The presence of her son
vérité vouloir croire (a)
 comforted her—He stopped to speak to them—The desire of
P. consoler (a) P. s'arrêter (d) (b) passion (e)
 getting money to support a vain expense corrupts the heart of
acquérir (d) soutenir † dépense corrompre
 man—I will punish you if you neglect to do your duty—My mother
(a) si (e)
 will not allow me to speak to him—I have borrowed it from
**vouloir permettre (b) de (b) emprunter (a) d*
 a friend—My father has a house to let—I have spent my time in
(f) louer passer (g)
 reading and writing—Palamedes invented the game of chess to
lire (b) écrire Palamède P. inventer jeu échecs (d)
 amuse his soldiers and to teach them the stratagems of war.
(d) apprendre (b) stratagème art. guerre.

References.

- (a) Pronoun in the accusative, see 206. by *à* after verbs, substantives, and adjectives, signifying *inclination, readiness, fitness, &c.*
 (b) Pronoun in the dative, see 208.
 (c) The pronouns *me, te, le, and la*, are spelt *m', t', l',* before a vowel or *h* mute.
 (d) The preposition *to* coming before an infinitive is expressed in French by *pour* when it means *in order to*.
 (e) This verb must be in the infinitive preceded by *de*.
 (f) *To*, before an infinitive, is expressed

by *à* after verbs, substantives, and adjectives, signifying *inclination, readiness, fitness, &c.*

(g) *In*, before a gerund, is often translated by *à* with an infinitive.

* This verb is not here an auxiliary, and therefore must be rendered by the present of *vouloir*.

† This adjective before its substantive.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Acquérir, apprendre, connaître, corrompre, croire, déplaire, dire, écrire, lire, payer, plaire, renvoyer, savoir, surprendre, voir, and vouloir.

Read, translate and parse.

Ma mère a eu la bonté de m'envoyer du raisin. Je vous verrai ce soir. Madame B. tâcha de la consoler, et lui promit un bel oiseau.

EXAMINATION.—205. How are personal pronouns divided? 206. Why are they called conjunctive? 207. How are these pronouns declined? 208. What is their place in the sentence? *Ref.* (e) When is the preposition *to* translated into French by *pour* before an infinitive? (g) When is the same preposition to be rendered by *à* with an infinitive? (h) When *in* comes before an English gerund, how is it translated into French?

Of Personal Conjunctive Pronouns continued.

209. (a) When the verb is in the imperative affirmative, the governed pronoun is put after it in French, as in English, and *me, te*, are changed into *moi, toi*.

Speak to them,
Write to him,
Answer us,
Let us see them,
Give me,

parlez-leur.
écrivez-lui.
répondez-nous.
voyons-les.
donnez-moi.

210. (b) But when the verb in the imperative is used with a negation, the personal pronouns precede the verb.

Do not speak to them,
Do not write to him,
Do not answer us,
Let us not see them,
Do not give me,

ne leur parlez pas.
ne lui écrivez pas.
ne nous répondez pas.
ne les voyons pas.
ne me donnez pas.

EXERCISE LIX.

Answer me—Do not answer me—Grant him that favour—
Répondre (a) (b) *accorder* (a)

Lend me a volume of your Roman History—Let us apply
prêter (a) — *romain* *s'appliquer*

ourselves to our studies—Take these diamonds and sell them—
 (a) *étude prendre diamant m.*

Come and speak to me—Let me write my letter—Allow me
venir — ** *laisser* ** *permettre* (a)

to represent to you an easy way to preserve the liberty and
de (c) *facile moyen de* † *conserver*

honour of your people—Let her [come in]—Do not keep him
art. *peuple* † ‡ *entrer tenir* (b)

in suspense—Give us your word that you will [give up] her
en suspens (a) *parole que renoncer à*

acquaintance—Seek renown and pleasure, and leave
chercher art. gloire art. plaisir m. laisser

me my misery and pain—Relate to me the history of your
 (a) *misère* || *douleur raconter* (a)

misfortunes—Do not lend him your horse—Teach them the
malheur (b) *enseigner à* (a)

rules of French versification—Set them at liberty—Do not
français art. — f. *mettre* (a) *en*

confine me—Listen to me—Do not listen to me—Follow me—
renfermer (b) *écouter* — (a) — (b) *suivre* (a)

Do not follow me—Give them away or sell them.
 (b) *donner* — *vendre.*

References.

- (a) } See this Rule. .
 (b) }
 (c) See 208.

† To preserve, may be changed into of preserving; in this and similar cases, the present of the infinitive with *de* before it must be used in French.

‡ Let, in the sense of to allow, to suffer, must be rendered by *laisser*, with the next verb in the present of the infinitive.

§ *Le, la*, after an imperative, do not lose the *e* or *a* before a word beginning with a vowel.

** When the pronouns *me* and *thee* come between an imperative and an infinitive, we use *me* and *te* if the imperative is a nenter verb; if active, *moi* and *toi* must be used.

|| Repeat the pronoun possessive.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Mettre, permettre, prendre, suivre, tenir, and venir.

Read, translate and parse.

Place-toi près de l'orchestre. Prêtez-lui votre voiture et vos chevaux. Dites-lui que j'attends sa réponse. Racontez-moi les aventures de votre voyage à la cour de Vienne.

EXAMINATION.—209. What is the place of the pronoun personal conjunctive with a verb in the imperative affirmative? What do you observe concerning *me* and *te*? 210. When the imperative is negative, what is the place of the pronoun personal? *Ref.* * When two verbs in the imperative are joined by a conjunction, what do you observe with respect to the place of the pronouns personal? *ib.* ‡ Does the pronoun *le* or *la* suffer elision before a vowel after an imperative?

OF THE PERSONAL DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

211. (a) The disjunctive personal pronouns follow the verbs from which they are usually disjoined by a preposition, or by a conjunction.

Declension of the Personal Disjunctive Pronouns.

First person, masc. and fem.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom. & Acc..	I or me,	<i>moi.</i>	we or us,	<i>nous.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from me,	<i>de moi.</i>	of or from us,	<i>de nous.</i>
Dat.	to me,	<i>à moi.</i>	to us,	<i>à nous.</i>

Second person, masc. and fem.

Nom. & Acc.	thou,	<i>toi.</i>	you,	<i>vous.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from thee,	<i>de toi.</i>	of or from you,	<i>de vous.</i>
Dat.	to thee,	<i>à toi.</i>	to you,	<i>à vous.</i>

Third person, masc.

Nom. & Acc.	he, him, or it,	<i>lui.</i>	they or them,	<i>eux.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from him, it,	<i>de lui.</i>	of or from them,	<i>d'eux.</i>
Dat.	to him,	<i>à lui.</i>	to them,	<i>à eux.</i>

Third person, fem.

Nom. & Acc.	she, her, or it,	<i>elle.</i>	they or them,	<i>elles.</i>
Gen. & Abl.	of or from her, it,	<i>d'elle.</i>	of or from them,	<i>d'elles.</i>
Dat.	to her,	<i>à elle.</i>	to them,	<i>à elles.</i>

212. (b) The personal pronouns are disjunctive in French when they are governed by reflected verbs.

He applied to me, *il s'adressa à moi.*
I will complain of you, *je me plaindrai de vous.*

213. (c) They are also disjunctive after the following verbs :

<i>Aller</i> , to go	<i>penser</i> }	to think
<i>en appeler</i> , to appeal	<i>songer</i> }	
<i>accourir</i> }	<i>parvenir</i> , to reach	
<i>courir</i> }	<i>venir</i> , to come	

[And the following: *marcher, voler, viser, boire, faire attention, prendre intérêt, avoir recours, être* (in the sense of *to belong*), *avoir égard*, and after all verbs which require the preposition *à*.]

EXERCISE LX.

He complains of her—I expect nothing from you—He spoke
se plaindre (b) *attendre* (a) P.
 of them to the minister, and they were admitted to a secret
 (a) *ministre* P. *admettre*
 conference—That depends on me—It depended on you to
conférence f. *cela dépendre de* (a) (a) *de*
 excel your rivals—Who is there?—It is I, he, she,
l'emporter sur — *qui est là?* *c'est ** *ce sont*
 they—The praise is due to her alone—I am used to him—
louange devoir † *accoutumé* †
 Remember him—Were you speaking of her?—Fickle fortune
se souvenir de (b) (a) *volage* art. —
 seems to mock you—Three gentlemen of the neighbourhood
paraître se moquer de (b) *messieurs* *voisinage*
 presented themselves to us—Mr. C. [came up] to me to ask
 P. *se présenter* (b) P. *venir* (c) *demander*
 my opinion—This book is mine—Is this the man?—Yes, it is—Is
 — (c) *est-ce là* *c'est **
 that your sister Caroline?—Yes, it is—I have recourse to you—
 * (c)
 Your brother came to us, and we were not thinking of him—I am
 P. (c) *penser à* (c)
 superior to him—I have seen your eldest sister; she inquired about
 † *ainsi* || *s'informer de*

you—Mr. D. ran to me, and gave me that letter; read it—They
 (b) P. (c) P. *donner*
 alone had the courage to do it—They appealed to us.
 † P. (d) *faire* P. (e)

References.

- (a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }
 (d) See reference †, p. 182.
 * In answer to questions, the pronoun must be disjunctive. It is also the case in elliptical sentences when no verb is expressed: *to whom did you speak?—to him.* *A qui avez-vous parlé?—A lui.*
- † The adjectives *semblable, accoutumé, attaché, égal, supérieur, étranger*, must be followed by a disjunctive personal pronoun.
 ‡ The adjective *seul* is preceded by a disjunctive personal pronoun.
 § This verb must be in the past indefinite.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Admettre, faire, paraître, se plaindre, se souvenir, and venir.

Read, translate and parse.

Parlez-vous de moi? Prenez garde à vous. Ce chapeau est à lui. Ils ont eu recours à elle. Songez à moi. Il vint à moi.

EXAMINATION.—211. What is the place of the personal disjunctive pronouns? How are they declined? 212. When are the personal pronouns used disjunctively? 213. Name the verbs that require the personal pronouns to be disjunctive in French.—*Ref.* * In answer to questions, or in elliptical phrases, which are the pronouns in use?—*ib.* † What adjectives require the pronoun disjunctive after them?

Of Personal Disjunctive Pronouns continued.

214. (a) When the verb governs, at the same time, a pronoun of the first or second person in the accusative, and another in the dative, the dative is a disjunctive.

He has introduced me to him, *il m'a présenté à lui.*

215. (b) When two personal pronouns in the dative come after a verb, the second must be a disjunctive.

I forgive both you { *je vous pardonne et à lui aussi*; or better
 and him, { *je pardonne à vous et à lui.*

216. (c) Two pronouns in the dative come after the verb, if they denote opposition.

I speak to him, and not to you, *je parle à lui, et non à vous.*

[217. (d) The preceding pronouns are, in particular cases, compounded with the word *self* in English, and *même* in French.

Myself,	<i>moi-même, de moi-même, &c.</i>
Thyself,	<i>toi-même.</i>
Ourselves,	<i>nous-mêmes.]</i>

[These compound words indicate the person or thing, in a stronger or more positive manner than the simple pronoun.]

218. (e) *Myself, thyself, &c.* are rendered by *moi-même, toi-même, &c.* when they come after a verb which is not reflected.

I will write it myself, *je l'écrirai moi-même.*

219. (f) These pronouns are also used after those reflected verbs which govern a preposition after them.

She relies on herself, *elle se fie à elle-même.*

[And after a few reflected verbs which do not govern any preposition after them: as, they betray themselves, *ils se trahissent eux-mêmes.*—This must be acquired by practice, as proper rules cannot be given.]

220. (g) There is a personal pronoun of the third person singular, used indeterminately; it is *se* or *soi*, *one's self, itself*, which is thus declined:

<i>Se soi,</i>	or	<i>soi-même.</i>
<i>de soi,</i>	or	<i>de soi-même.</i>
<i>à soi,</i>	or	<i>à soi-même.</i>

* [*Se* is always used before a verb, *soi*, after a preposition or a conjunction. *Soi* is of both genders, but singular only. *Se* is of both genders and numbers, and is used instead of *soi*, *à soi*, *eux*, *à eux*, *elles*, *à elles*. *Il se flatte*, that is, *il flatte soi*; *ils se flattent*, *ils flattent eux-mêmes*; *elle se donne des louanges*, that is, *à elle-même*.]

221. (h) *Soi* relates to a preceding noun masculine singular, taken in a general sense.

The loadstone attracts iron to itself, *l'aimant attire le fer à soi.*

EXERCISE LXI.

Your father has directed me to them to borrow money—He
addresser (a) (i) emprunter
 will do it himself—The wise man is master of himself—Write
faire (e) sage (A)
 to her first, and then to them—I have just received a note
** d'abord ensuite ** *billet*
 from Mrs. L.—She sends her compliments both to you and her—
faire — et (b) † (b)
 That lady was dear both to you and me—Offer it to him and to
dame cher (b) (b) présenter (b)
 them—We will recommend you to them—He has been virtuous,
(b) recommander (a) vertueux
 but he ascribed all his virtue to himself—Water runs of itself—
*‡ rapporter tout (e) couler ***
 They are angry with him—You will find in me a father and
fâché contre † trouver en †
 a friend—She will stay with us—You will speak after them—
rester avec † après †
 This letter is for me, and not for you—Speak to him yourself—She
(c) non (c) (d)
 mistrusts herself—Vice is odious of itself—Men often reject
*se défier de (f) art. — ** souvent*
 truth, though evident in itself—Virtue is amiable of itself
*art. vérité quoique — ** de ***
 —It is essential to take care of one's self.
de prendre garde à (g)

References.

- (a) }
 (b) }
 (c) }
 (d) }
 (e) } See this Rule.
 (f) }
 (g) }
 (h) }

(i) See reference (d), page 181.

** When the word *itself* means of its nature, it is rendered by *soi*, whether the substantive is masculine or feminine.

* When two pronouns in the dative denote the order in which a thing is done, they are both disjunctive: *Speak to him first, and then to her; parlez à lui d'abord, et ensuite à elle.*

† The personal disjunctives are always used after prepositions.

‡ The sentence in the example 215, may also be translated thus: *je vous pardonne ainsi qu'à lui* (p. 185).

‡ This verb in the past indefinite.

Read, translate and parse.

Il s'est adressé à moi. Je m'en rapporte à vous et à elle.
 Donnez à elle et non à lui. Ne parlez pas contre lui.

EXAMINATION.—214. When must the pronoun in the dative be a disjunctive in French? 215. If two dative cases come after a verb, what must be the construction? 216. What is the place of these pronouns when denoting opposition? 217. How do you translate the word *self*? 218. When are the compound pronouns *moi-même, toi-même, etc.*, used? 219. When are they used after reflected verbs? 220. Decline the indeterminate *soi*. 221. When is *soi* used?—*Ref.* * When two pronouns denote the order of an action, what are their places?—*ib.* † What pronouns are used after prepositions?—*ib.* ‡ What other construction can you give the sentence, *je pardonne à vous et à lui*?

OF SUPPLYING PRONOUNS.

222. The words *en, y*, act frequently as pronouns, and are called supplying pronouns, because they always have a relation to an antecedent which they replace.

[The supplying pronouns *en, y*, are used instead of *de lui, à lui, d'eux, à eux, d'elle, à elle, d'elles, à elles*, which cannot refer to inanimate objects; speaking of a house we cannot say: *je parle d'elle*, but *j'en parle*.

When *en* or *y* refers to persons, it generally has a vague indeterminate sense: *he is an honest man, trust to him*, may be rendered by *c'est un honnête homme, fies-vous à lui*, or *fies-vous-y*; but the first sentence relates more particularly to his person, and the second to his probity. This delicate distinction is not always attended to, for we say: *Pensez-vous à moi? J'y pense*; though *je pense à vous*, would be more energetic and grammatical.]

223. (a) *En* expresses of him, of her, of it, of them; by it, with it, for it, &c.; some, any, none: it comes immediately before the verb by which it is governed.

I speak of him, her, it, or them, *j'en parle.*

224. (b) *Y* is rendered into English by to him, to her, to it, to them, there, here, therein, for it, thither, in it, and likewise precedes the verb.

I consent to it, *j'y consens.*
I am going there, *j'y vais.*

225. (c) If the verb is in the second person singular or plural, or first person plural of the imperative affirmative, the supplying pronouns follow it.

Be sure of it, *soyez-en sûr.*
Consent to it, *consentez-y.*

EXERCISE LXII.

I have just received his letter, but do not speak of it—If you
mais * (a) *si*
 wish to see fine pictures, he has some—I went to the Lyceum;
vouloir → *voir* *tableau* (a) *P. aller* *Lycée*
 we were speaking of it—If you promise me not to speak of it, I
 (a) *promettre*† * (a)
 will tell you a secret—She has written a beautiful essay on filial
dire — *écrite* *essai sur*
 piety; her mother will be delighted with it—His relations have
charmé (a) *parent*
 consented to it—Walk into my study, you will find there
consentir (b) *entrer dans* *cabinet* *trouver* (b)
 paper, pens, and ink—You have received your books, send some
envoyer (c)
 to your sister—She has not been there, I am sure of it—Is your
 (b) (a)
 father at home?—He is—He is not—He has made his profit by it
chez lui † † *faits* (a)
 —I am glad of it—You are sorry for it—Be sure of it—I have
bien aise (a) *fâché* (a) (c)
 made a trial of it—Do you see the river? that descent leads to
l'essai (a) *voir* *rivière* *descente* *conduire* (b)
 it—I surveyed her with astonishment, she did not seem to
P. examiner *avec étonnement* *P. paraître*
 take notice § of it—You have seen the new play, were you
faire attention à (b) *nouveau pièce*
 pleased with it?—Your father loves you; I am persuaded of it—
content de (a) (a)
 My mother has sent me those grapes, I will send some to
envoyer *raisin* sing. (a)
 your brother—Have you any new books?
nouveaux

References.

(a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }

* Observe that *en* or *y* are placed after *ne*.

† *Promettre* requires *de* before the next infinitive it governs.

‡ In French we must specify where *he is* or *is not*; and instead of repeating

the words *at home*, we use the supplying pronoun *y*, and say, *il y est* (he is in it); *il n'y est pas* (he is not in it). However, these interrogative phrases are generally answered by, *oui, monsieur*; *non, monsieur*.

§ *Of it* is here rendered by *y*, because the verb *faire attention* governs the preposition *à*. The two languages do not

always correspond in this respect. This is one of the greatest difficulties the pupil has to encounter, and for which no rules can be given. In cases like the above we shall give the governed preposition as a help for the learner.—*De* governed by a verb or an adjective is expressed by

the supplying pronoun *en*, when it refers to some words antecedent.

! The answer to this sentence, *I have*, must be literally in French: *J'ai*, as the pronoun *en* or *y* supplies the place of those words which are understood in English.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Aller, conduire, consentir, dire, écrire, envoyer, faire, paraître, promettre, voir, vouloir.

Read, translate and parse.

Cet homme vous plaît; vous en parlez souvent. C'est une belle charge; il y aspirait depuis long-temps. C'est un endroit charmant; je compte m'y fixer.

EXAMINATION.—222. What are the supplying pronouns, and why are they so called? 223. How is *en* translated in English? 224. How is *y* rendered? What place have these pronouns in the sentence? 225. When are they placed after the verb?

Of Supplying Pronouns continued.—LE.

226. (a) *Le* (so) is another supplying pronoun, of both genders and numbers, and serves to avoid the repetition of an adjective, a substantive used adjectively, and sometimes part of a sentence, in answer to interrogations.

You are young, and I am not (so)	<i>vous êtes jeune, et je ne le suis pas.</i>
Are you content? I am (so)	{ <i>êtes-vous content?</i> _____ <i>contents?</i> } <i>je le suis.</i>

227. (b) When *le* represents a substantive, or an adjective taken substantively expressed in the preceding proposition, it agrees in gender and number with the antecedent.

Are you the lady who sent for me?—I am.

*êtes-vous la dame qui m'a envoyé
chercher?—je le suis.*

EXERCISE LXIII.

He is happy, but we are not so—Madam, are you a queen?—I
heureux (a) *reine*
 am—Are you the queen?—I am—Are you the king's ministers?—
 (a) (b) *ministres*
 We are not—Gentlemen, are you Englishmen?—We are—Are you
 (b) *Messieurs* *Anglais* (a)
 a mother?—I am—Are you the mother of that fine child?—I am
mère (a) *beau* (b)
 —We have been ill, and we are so still—Are you Mrs. F.?—
malade (a) *encore*
 Yes, I am—Are you Mr. A.'s daughters?—Yes, we are—Are you
 (b) *filles* (b) *
 Madame de Genlis?—No, I am not—I thought you were
 (b) *prendre pour*
 Miss L.'s sister—No, Sir, I am not—You are never pleased;
Mademoiselle *sœur* (b) *content*
 be so now—He is satisfied, but we are not.
 (a) *à présent* *satisfaire* (a) †

References.

(a) } See this Rule.
 (b) }

answer, and say simply, *oui* or *non*.

* When the substantive is plural, it is better to suppress the last member of the
 † So is often understood in English—*le* must be expressed in French.

Read, translate and parse.

Êtes-vous la sœur de Madame B.?—Je la suis. Êtes-vous veuve?—Je le suis.

EXAMINATION.—226. When is the supplying pronoun *le* used? 227. When is the same pronoun *le* declinable?

PLACE OF THE PERSONAL CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

228. (a) When two or more personal conjunctive pronouns are governed by a verb, the dative case comes before the accusative.

I will tell it you, *je vous le dirai*.

OF PERSONAL CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

229. (b) If the pronouns are both of the third person, the accusative precedes the dative case.

I will tell it him, *je le lui dirai.*

230. (c) *Y* and *en* are placed immediately before the verb; and when they happen to meet together, *en* is always last.

I will speak of it, *j'en parlerai.*
I sent some there, *j'y en enverrai.*

231. (d) When *y* and *en* come with a personal conjunctive pronoun, they are placed last.

I will bring you some thither, *je vous y en apporterai.*

[232. When the sense is sufficiently defined without *y*, that letter is omitted; as, *je vous y en apporterai*, which is better expressed by, *je vous en apporterai*. As to phrases like these, *envoyez-lui y en*, *portons-lui y en*, they are absolutely condemned, though they may be found in some grammars.]

233. *Y* is suppressed before the future and conditional of the verb *aller*. We say, *j'irai*, *j'irais*, instead of *j'y irai*, *j'y irais*.

234. From what has been said, it follows that,

<i>Me, te, se, nous, vous,</i>	go before every other.
<i>le, la, les,</i>	go before <i>lui, leur</i> .
<i>lui, leur,</i>	go before <i>y</i> .
<i>y,</i>	goes before <i>en</i> .

[The preceding arrangement holds good, whether the verb is affirmative, negative, interrogative, &c.; but with verbs in the imperative without a negation, see the next rule.]

As the use of the preceding pronouns is attended with difficulties, particularly when the verb is negatively or interrogatively used; the following table will, it is presumed, remove the difficulties of the Exercises, and familiarise the pupil with a construction which is constantly occurring.

On or il ma sœur.... mon frère	me la,	me la,	me les,	m'en	....	donnera.
	me l'y,	me les y,	m'y,	m'y en	....	enverra.
	te le,	te la,	te les,	t'en	....	donnera.
	te l'y,	te les y,	t'y,	t'y en	....	enverra.
	se le,	se la,	se les,	s'en	....	promet.
	se l'y,	se les y,	s'y,	s'y en	....	procurera.
	nous le,	nous la,	nous les,	nous en	....	donnera.
	nous l'y,	nous les y,	nous les y,	nous y en	....	enverra.
	vous le,	vous la,	vous les,	vous en	....	donnera.
	vous l'y,	vous les y,	vous y,	vous y en	....	enverra.
	le lui,	la lui,	les lui,	lui en	....	promet.
	le leur,	la leur,	les leur,	leur en	....	promet.
	le leur y,	la leur y,	les leur y,	leur y en	....	enverra.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Afirm.</i>	Il me le donnera, il me la donnera, &c.
<i>Negat.</i>	Il ne me le donnera pas.
<i>Interr.</i>	Me le donnera-t-il ?
<i>Int. & Neg.</i>	Ne me le donnera-t-il pas ?

<i>Afirm.</i>	Il me l'a donné.
<i>Negat.</i>	Il ne me l'a pas donné.
<i>Interr.</i>	Me l'a-t-il donné ?
<i>Int. & Neg.</i>	Ne me l'a-t-il pas donné ?

EXERCISE LXIV.

PRESENT. I offer it to him—I do not offer it to him—Do I offer
offrir (b)
it to him ?—Do I not offer it to him ?—He offers it to me.
(a)

This and the following sentences must be made negative, interrogative, and both interrogatives and negatives.

We offer it to you—You offer it to them—They offer it to her—
(a) (b) (b)
I describe it to you—He describes it to me—We describe it to
décrire (a) (a) (b)
them—You describe it to him—They describe it to them.
(b) (b)

IMPERFECT. I did ask it of you—She did ask it of them
demandar d (a) (b)
—We did ask it of her—You did ask it of him—They did ask
(b) (b)
it of me.
(a)

PREF. DEF. I promised it to you—He promised it to me—We
promettre (a) (a)

promised it to her—You promised it to them—They promised it to
 us—*(b)* *(b)*
 I said it to them—She said it to me—We said it to her—
dire *(b)* *(a)* *(b)*
 You said it to us—They said it to you.
(a) *(a)*

PERF. INDEF. I have denied it him—He has denied it me—
refuser *(b)* *(a)*
 We have denied it you—You have denied it us—They have denied
 it her.
(b)

PLUPERFECT. I had punished him for it—She had punished
punir *(d)* *en*
 you for it—We had punished them for it—They had punished
*punis *** *punis ***
 us for it.

FUTURE. I shall accuse them of it—He will accuse her of it—
accuser *(d)* *en*
 We shall accuse you of it—You will accuse me of it—They will
 accuse us of it.

FUT. ANT. I shall have informed him of it—He will have
informer *(d)*
 informed you of it—We shall have informed her of it—You will
*informés ***
 have informed them of it—They will have informed us of it.
*informés *** *informés ***

CONDITIONAL. I should incite him to it—He would incite me
exciter *(d)* *y*
 to it—We should incite them to it—You would incite us to it—
 They would incite her to it.

CONDIT. PAST. I should have compelled him to it—She would
forcer *(d)* *y*
 have compelled them to it—We should have compelled you to it—
*forcés ***
 You would have compelled us to it—They would have compelled
*forcés ***
 me to it.

EXERCISE LXV. (*On Reflected Verbs*, p. 106.)

PRES. I use myself to it—She uses herself to it—We use ourselves to it—You use yourself to it—They use themselves to it.
s'accoutumer d (e)

IMPERF. I did abstain from it—He did abstain from it—We did abstain from it—You did abstain from it—They did abstain from it.
s'abstenir de (e)

PERFECT DEF. I wondered at it—She wondered at it—We wondered at it—You wondered at it—They wondered at it.
s'étonner de (e)

PERF. INDEF. I have fancied it—She has fancied it—We have fancied it—You have fancied it—They have fancied it.
*s'imaginer**

PLUPERF. I had opposed it—He had opposed it—We had opposed it—You had opposed it—They had opposed it.
s'opposer d (e)
*opposés***

FUTURE. I shall expect it—He will expect it—We shall expect it—You will expect it—They will expect it.
s'attendre d (e)

FUT. ANT. I shall have trusted to it—She will have trusted to it—We shall have trusted to it—You will have trusted to it—They will have trusted to it.
se fier d (e) *fés*
*fés***

CONDIT. I should perceive it—She would perceive it—We should perceive it—You would perceive it—They would perceive it.
s'apercevoir de(e)

CONDIT. PAST. I should have boasted of it—He would have boasted of it—We should have boasted of it—You would have boasted of it—They would have boasted of it.
se vanter de (e)
*vanités***
*fem. vanités***

References (for the 64th and 65th Exercises).

- (a)
(b) } See this Rule.
(c)
(d)

(e) The preposition *à* is the sign of the dative, and is translated by *y* when it relates to an antecedent; *de*, as the sign of the genitive, is in this case rendered by *en*, and both precede the verb.

* The verb *s'imaginer* does not govern either the genitive or dative case; it has therefore only the pronoun *le*, which must precede the verb, according to the rule given for personal conjunctive pronouns; *je me le suis imaginé, &c.*

** The participle must be declined, and it agrees with the preceding pronoun accusative, *es, la, les, nous*. The rule will be given hereafter.

Irregular verbs in the exercises. S'abstenir, décrire, dire, offrir, promettre.

Read, translate and parse.

Vous voulez faire un présent à votre sœur : voilà un bel éventail ; vous devriez le lui offrir. Je lui en parlerai. Je vous en rendrai un compte exact. Il n'allait point dans cette maison ; le jeu l'y a introduit.

EXAMINATION.—228. What is the place of the personal conjunctive pronouns when there is one in the dative and the other in the accusative case? 229. What are their places if they are of the third person? 230. What is the place of *en* and *y* with respect to the verb? 231. What is their place when used with conjunctive pronouns? 232, 233. In what case is the pronoun *y* omitted? 234. What is the order of these pronouns with respect to each other?

PLACE OF PERSONAL AND SUPPLYING PRONOUNS WITH AN IMPERATIVE.

235. (a) When a verb in either of the second persons or the first plural of the imperative, governs two personal pronouns, the accusative comes first, and both follow the verb.

Give it to him,
Send them to us,

donnes-le-lui.
envoyes-les-nous.

[236. (b) This rule is not observed with reflected verbs in the second persons: *rappelez-vous-la*, recollect her; *proposez-vous-le pour modèle*, take him as a model; *attachez-vous-les*, secure their friendship; but with the first person plural it follows the rule.]

237. (c) *Me* and *te* become *moi* and *toi*, except before *en*; this last may finish the sentence.

Give it me,	<i>donnez-le-moi.</i>
Give me some,	<i>donnez-m'en.</i>

238. (d) *Y* comes before *moi* and *toi*, or finishes the phrase.

Carry me there,	<i>menez-y-moi.</i>
Carry us thither,	<i>menez-nous-y.</i>
Go thither,	<i>transportes-y-toi.</i>

[It is often possible to avoid using these last sentences, which are inharmonious. We may say, for instance: *Je vous prie de m'y mener, veuillez m'y mener, vous n'avez qu'à nous y mener, fais moi le plaisir de t'y transporter.*

By the last sentence, it may be seen that an *s* has been added to the second person of the imperative, *transportes*: this irregularity takes place whenever the verb ends in *s* mute before *y*.—See the verb *aller*, 2nd note, p. 139.]

EXERCISE LXVI.

Let us offer it to him—Bring them to us—Give it him—Do not
offrir (a) apporter (a) (a)
 give it me—Propose it to him—Send it to me—Recollect them
(e) proposer (a) envoyer (c) se rappeler (b)
 —Use yourself to it—Be satisfied with it—Let us part
s'accoutumer à (d) se contenter de (c) se défaire
 with it—Think of it—Let us submit to it—Let him not submit
de (c) penser à (d) se soumettre à (d)
 to it—Do not compel me to it—Do not mention it to him—Do not
forcer à (g) parler de (g)
 send it me—Do not propose it to him—Let us not trouble
(e) (h) s'inquiéter de
 ourselves about it—Do not trust to it—If the animals of the earth
(g) se fier (g)
 are intended for our use, let us kill them, but let us not tease
destiné (177.) à usage tuer (i) mais tourmenter
 them wantonly—Let us warn them of it—Well! let us
*(k) par plaisir avertir de * bon!*
 expect it.
s'attendre à (d)

References.

- (a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }
 (d) }
 (e) See 238 and 210.
 (g) See 231 and 210.
 (h) See 229 and 210.
 (i) See 209.

(k) See 210.

* *Avertissons-les-en* is the grammatical construction of this sentence, yet, as the sound is inharmonious, a delicate ear will prefer another turn. For the same reason, *Fen, l'en, leur en*, are generally avoided.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Offrir, se défaire, and se soumettre.

Read, translate and parse.

Ne t'en étonne pas. Ne les y provoquons pas. Amenez-les-y. Présentez-le-lui. Ne te l'imagine pas. Rendez-le-moi. Promettez-le-lui.

EXAMINATION.—235. What is the place of the personal pronouns with a verb in the imperative affirmative? 236. Is there not an irregularity with respect to reflected verbs? 237. When are *me* and *te* changed into *moi* and *toi*? When does the second person singular of the imperative take a final *s*, in verbs of the first conjugation?

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

239. Relative pronouns are those which relate to a preceding noun or pronoun, called the *antecedent*.

240. (a) The relative pronouns are *who*, *which*, *that*, and *what*; the first three are translated into French by *qui*, for both genders and numbers.

Nom.	who, which, that,	<i>qui</i> .
Gen. & Abl.	of or from whom, or whose,	<i>de qui</i> ,* or <i>dont</i> .
Dat.	to whom, to which, to that,	<i>à qui</i> .
Acc.	whom, which, that,	<i>que</i> .

[*Qui* is invariable, that is, of both genders and numbers, but communicates the number and person of its antecedent to the verb. *Moi qui suis, toi qui es, lui, elle, l'homme qui est, nous qui sommes, vous qui êtes, les hommes, les femmes qui sont.*]

* *De qui* is more properly the ablative case, and signifies *from whom*.

241. (b) *Qui* and *que* relate to persons and things; *de qui* and *à qui* relate to persons only.

The man who speaks,	<i>l'homme qui parle.</i>
The stars which you observe,	<i>les étoiles que vous observez.</i>
The lady to whom I speak,	<i>la dame à qui je parle.</i>

242. (c) *Dont* may relate either to persons or things, but is always placed between two substantives, or between a substantive and the verb which governs it.

This officer whose bravery is known,	<i>cet officier dont la bravoure est connue.</i>
The horse I make use of,	<i>le cheval dont je me sers.</i>

[The relative pronoun should be placed next to its antecedent, especially when a separation would render the sense ambiguous: Ex. I have required of your friendship a favour which will be valued by me, *j'ai demandé à votre amitié une faveur qui me sera chère*, and not *j'ai demandé une faveur à votre amitié, qui me sera chère*, for then *qui* might equally relate to *amitié* or *faveur*. When the relative and antecedent must be separated, *lequel* takes the place of *qui*. See observations on 244.]

243. *Who, which, and that*, are also translated by *lequel*, which is thus declined :

<i>Lequel</i> , m. s.	<i>laquelle</i> , f. s.	<i>lesquels</i> , m. pl.	<i>lesquelles</i> , f. pl.
<i>duquel</i> ,	<i>de laquelle</i> ,	<i>desquels</i> ,	<i>desquelles</i> .
<i>auquel</i> ,	<i>à laquelle</i> ,	<i>auxquels</i> ,	<i>auxquelles</i> .

244. (d) *Lequel* relates to persons and things, and is chiefly used after prepositions, or to avoid an ambiguity.

The disorder in which he found them,	<i>le désordre dans lequel il les trouva.</i>
The man with whom I live,	<i>l'homme avec lequel je demeure.</i>

[As *qui*, *que*, and *dont*, are of both genders and numbers, the sense is not always sufficiently clear; we therefore employ their synonyms *lequel*, *duquel*, &c., which, on account of their different terminations, and of the articles prefixed to them, remove all ambiguity. *C'est un effet de la providence qui....*; as *qui* relates to *effet*, and not to *providence*, say, *lequel*. The same pronoun, *lequel*, &c., is preferred whenever the relative *qui* is necessarily separated from its antecedent, as in the above sentence.]

EXERCISE LXVII.

We speak of those heroes who have subverted the throne of a tyrant—He is ruined because he has trusted to the probity of a

<i>héros</i>	(a)	<i>renverser</i>	<i>trône</i>
<i>tyran</i>		<i>parce que</i>	<i>se fier</i>

correspondent, whom he believed an honest man—The ladies
correspondant (a) croire

whom you see are my cousins—The young man of whom I have
(a) voir (c)

spoken to you deserves to be encouraged—The glory to which
mériter de (d)

heroes sacrifice, is often a false glory—I should like to see those
*sacrifier souvent § aimer**

countries which are barbarous, but which you admire—I know from
(a) barbare (a) savoir

whom you have received this information—I know the man for
(b) avis m. connaître

whom you work—The lady he married had a great fortune—I
(d) travailler † P. épouser imp. — f.

have found for your sister, a house which appears very pretty—
trouver (a) paraître fort

You know that there is a new edition of my book which is to
nouveau édition f. (d)

appear the first of next month—The child to whom every body
prochain (a)

yields is unfortunate—The tree to which I give the preference is
céder malheureux arbre m. (d)

the oak—The town he comes from is populous and well built—There
chêne venir || populeux bien bâtir

is a pleasure in meeting the eyes of the person we have just
du à rencontrer personne †

obliged—I am Diomedes who wounded Venus at the siege of Troy
Diomède (a) P. blesser Vénus à siège m. Troie

—A power which terror and force have founded cannot be of long
puissance (a) — fondée † §

duration—I have bought a country-house of which the situation is
durée acheter (c)

pleasant and romantic—All the advantages which we enjoy come
agréable romantique tous avantages (c) jouir de venir

from God—I met your mother in the park, who told me you
P. rencontrer au parc (c) dire

were ill—The man I was speaking to—I know the principle from
malade † connaître principe

which your system is derived—He rejected a proposal, the utility
|| P. rejeter

of which he knew—They have nothing to which they can
*** connaître *† puissances*

apply—He did not know what to do—I do not know who did
s'appliquer *savoir* †|| *que* *savoir* †|| *faire*
 that—[These are] the places through which he has passed.
voici *par* *où*

References.

- (a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }
 (d) }
 (e) See note on 244.
 * *Aimer* governs the preposition *à* before an infinitive.
 † The relative pronouns are never omitted in French.
 ‡ *Ne peut être* or *ne saurait être*.—See the verb *savoir* (p. 163).
 § This adjective to precede its substantive.
 || When the relative pronouns are in the genitive, dative, or ablative, and refer to an inanimate object, they may be

expressed by *où*, or by *lequel*, *dans lequel*, &c., if the verb denotes place, motion, or rest, at least figuratively.

** As the relative pronoun *qui*, in all its cases, is placed immediately after its antecedent in French, say, of which he knew the utility.

*† *De quoi* and *à quoi* often supply the place of *duquel*, *auquel*, *de laquelle*, *à laquelle*, &c., but only when relating to inanimate objects.

†|| *Qui*, *que*, and *quoi*, are often used absolutely; in that case, *qui* signifies *quel homme*, *quelle personne*, and *que* and *quoi*, *quelle chose*.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Connaitre, croire, dire, faire, paraître, savoir, and venir.

Read, translate and parse.

L'histoire ancienne de Rollin est un livre dont on doit recommander la lecture. C'est une personne à la discrétion de laquelle je n'oserais me fier.

EXAMINATION.—239. What do you mean by relative pronouns? 240. Which are they? 241. What words may be the antecedents of *qui* and *que*?—When are *de qui* and *à qui* used? 242. When is *dont* used? 243. Decline *lequel*. 244. In what case is *lequel* to be preferred to *qui*? *Ref.* † Can the relative pronouns be omitted in French? *ib.* || When can the word *où* or *lequel* be used indifferently? *ib.* ** May the relative pronoun *qui* be separated from its antecedent? *ib.* *† What words do *de quoi* and *à quoi* supply, and in what case? *ib.* †|| What is the meaning of *qui*, *que*, and *quoi*, when used absolutely?

OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

245. The interrogative pronouns are, *who*, *what*, and *which*.

246. (a) *Who* (*qui*) refers to persons only, and is thus declined:

Nom.	Who?	<i>qui, or qui est-ce qui ?</i>
Gen.	of or from whom?	<i>de qui, or de qui est-ce que ?</i>
Dat.	to whom?	<i>à qui, or à qui est-ce que ?</i>
Acc.	whom?	<i>qui, or qui est-ce que ?</i>

Who is there?	<i>qui est là ?</i>
Of whom do you speak?	<i>de qui parlez-vous ?</i>
To whom do you write?	<i>à qui écrivez-vous ?</i>
Whom have you seen?	<i>qui avez-vous vu ?</i>

247. (b) *What*, used in the sense of *what thing*, is declined as follows :

Nom.	What?	<i>qu'est-ce qui ?</i>
Gen.	of what?	<i>de quoi ?</i>
Dat.	to what?	<i>à quoi ?</i>
Acc.	what?	<i>que, or qu'est-ce que ?</i>

What vexes you?	<i>qu'est-ce qui vous afflige ?</i>
What are you complaining of?	<i>de quoi vous plaignez-vous ?</i>
What are you thinking of?	<i>à quoi pensez-vous ?</i>
What are you doing?	<i>que faites-vous ?</i>

248. (c) *What*, before a substantive or in the sense of *what sort*, is rendered by *quel*, and is thus declined :

Nom.	What?	<i>quel, m.</i>	<i>quelle, f.</i>	<i>quels, m. pl.</i>	<i>quelles, f. pl.</i>
Gen.	of what?	<i>de quel,</i>	<i>de quelle,</i>	<i>de quels,</i>	<i>de quelles.</i>
Dat.	to what?	<i>à quel,</i>	<i>à quelle,</i>	<i>à quels,</i>	<i>à quelles.</i>

What book do you take?	<i>quel livre prenez-vous ?</i>
Of what lady do you speak?	<i>de quelle dame parlez-vous ?</i>

249. (d) *Which*, used relatively, is rendered by *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, &c. through all its cases, (see 243,) and implies a comparison.

Which of the two will you have?	<i>lequel des deux voulez-vous ?</i>
Which of these French ladies is his sister?	<i>laquelle de ces Françaises est sa sœur ?</i>

250 (e) When a question is asked by *que*, the pronoun personal nominative comes after the verb, but if *qu'est-ce que* is used, the pronoun personal precedes the verb.

What do you say?	<i>{ que dites-vous ?</i> <i>{ qu'est-ce que vous dites ?</i>
------------------	--

251. (f) When the nominative is not a pronoun, it may come before or after the verb.

What does your father say? { *que dit votre père?*
qu'est-ce que votre père dit?

EXERCISE LXVIII.

Of whom do you speak?—Whom will you consult in that
 (a) (a) *consulter dans*
 affair?—Which of these two pictures do you prefer?—To whom
 (d) *tableau* (a)
 shall I write?—Which of your sisters learns French?—Which of
 (d) *apprendre* (d)
 these horses will you buy?—I have bought a book—What is it?—
acheter
 Do you know what those anecdotes are, to which he was alluding?
savoir † (d) *faire allusion*
 —What do you say?—What do you think of it?—What does your
 (b) (b) (f)
 brother study?—I do not know what to say—Whom have you
savoir † *en dire* (a)
 seen?—Of what does your master complain?—What are your
voir (b) *se plaindre* (c)
 motives?—What sum does he ask?—I have something to tell
 (c) *demandeur* *quelque chose dire*
 you—What is it?—What makes you laugh?—Which of the maritime
 † (b) *faire* *rire* (d) —
 powers had the advantage in that war?—What passion is he
puissances P. *avantage dans* (c) —
 inclined to?—What does he want?—What have you done with
enclin (b) *demandeur* (b) *faire de*
 your slate?—In what have I neglected to fulfil my duty?—On
ardoise En quoi || *négliger de remplir* *Sur*
 what will you examine me?—What, said he, could occasion
quoi || *vouloir* ** *dit-il* *† *pouvoir occasionner*
 this mistake?—That is in what you are mistaken—What does it avail
méprise en || *se tromper* *† *servir à*
 him to have merit, if he has no friends?—Who came to ask for
d'avoir (a) *est venu en demander*
 me?—[Here are] two roads; which must I take?—What! you have
voici route (d) *faut-il prendre* *†
 not done your exercise!—Whose hat is this?—It is Sophia's.
faire *|| *C'est à*

References.

- (a)
(b)
(c)
(d)
(e)

See this Rule.

* When the pronoun *what* comes before the verb *to be* and refers to a substantive, it is rendered by *quel*, as in the above sentence, *quel livre est-ce ?* or the substantive may be repeated, as, *quel est ce livre ?*

† *Quelles sont ces anecdotes auxquelles, &c.*, by this sentence it is seen that the substantive to which *quel* refers, must come after the word *être*.

‡ *What*, in the sense of *which thing*, is translated by *que* when it comes after the verb *savoir* followed by an infinitive.

§ With reference to the word *something*, or to a whole sentence, *what is it ?*

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Apprendre, dire, écrire, faire, se plaindre, pouvoir, rire, savoir, servir, and vouloir.

must always be rendered by *qu'est-ce que c'est ?*

|| *What*, after a preposition, without a noun, is always expressed by *quoi*.

** *Qu'est-ce qui* cannot be parted from its verb by any intermediate sentence.

*† This verb must be in the perfect indefinite.

*‡ With the verbs *servir* and *importer*, the pronoun *what* is expressed by *que*: what does it signify ? *qu'importe ?* in that case it is used instead of *de quoi*, *en quoi*, *à quoi*.

§§ *What* is sometimes used interjectively, and then it is translated by *comment*, *quoi*, *hé quoi*: what ! you are not up yet ! *comment*, *quoi*, *hé quoi*, *vous n'êtes pas encore levé !*

*|| *Whose*, interrogative, is rendered by *à qui*.

Read, translate and parse.

Lequel des deux frères avez-vous vu ? Apportez-moi une des tables. Laquelle ? Vous paraissez affligé ; que vous est-il arrivé ?

EXAMINATION.—245. What pronouns are called interrogative ? 246. How is *qui* declined ? 247. In what sense is the interrogative *what* translated by *qu'est-ce qui* ?—What is the difference between *qui*, *que*, and *qui est-ce qui*, *qui est-ce que* ? 248. When is the pronoun *what* translated by *quel* ? 249. How is the interrogative *which* translated ? 250. When an interrogative sentence is preceded by *que*, what is the place of the personal pronoun nominative to the verb ?—If *qu'est-ce que* is used, what is the construction ? 251. When the nominative is not a pronoun, what is the construction of the sentence ? *Ref.** When the pronoun *what* comes before the verb *to be* with reference to a substantive, what is the construction ? *ib.* § How do you translate *what is it ?* with reference to the word *something* ? *ib.* §§ Is not *what* sometimes used interjectively ? How is it then translated ?

OF DEMONSTRATIVE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

252. (a) When the demonstrative pronouns, *this* and *that*, *these*, and *those*, have a reference to a preceding noun, they are called *demonstrative disjunctive pronouns*: they are thus expressed :

that to St. Denis—Which of these two oranges will you have?—
 (b) †

Which you please—This house is sold and that is let—Here are
 † *qu'il vous plaira* (a) *louer*

several horses, choose this or that—Mr. C. and Mr. G. fought
choisir (b) (b) *p. se battre*

a duel; the former was wounded and the latter was killed—Which
en duel (a) *p. blessé* (a)

of these horses shall I ride?—Which you please.
monter vous voudrez.

References.

(a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }

* The supplying pronoun *en* often
 supplies the place of a whole sentence
 —say, *if you take one of them.*

† When a question is asked by *which*,
 the answer in French must be *celui qui*,
celle qui, *ceux qui*, &c., or *celui que*, *celle*
que, &c. Which of these two men is the
 taller? The one on your right. *Lequel*
de ces deux hommes est le plus grand?
Celui qui est à votre droite.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Battre, conduire, dire, faire, and prendre.

Read, translate and parse.

Ne me refusez pas cela. Ceci est bon, mais cela est
 mauvais. Voilà deux tabatières, celle-ci est d'or, celle-là
 est d'argent (*better*, celle-ci est en or, celle-là est en argent).

EXAMINATION.—252. How do you express the demonstrative disjunctive pronouns?
 How are they declined? 253. What is the use of the participles *ci* and *là*, when
 joined to the demonstrative pronouns? 254. When are *ceci* and *cela* used? *Ref.* †
 When a question is asked by *which*, what pronoun must be used in French for the
 answer?

Of Demonstrative Disjunctive Pronouns continued.

256. (a) When *this*, *that*, *these*, and *those*, are used to
 avoid the repetition of the noun antecedent, they are ex-
 pressed by *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, and *celles*.

I admire the translations of Pope *j'admire les traductions de Pope*
 and those of Delille, *et celles de Delille.*

257. (b) The demonstrative pronouns, *celui*, *celle*, &c. may also be followed by the relative pronoun *qui*, in all its cases: as,

He who,	<i>celui qui.</i>
She who,	<i>celle qui.</i>
Such as, or they who,	<i>ceux qui.</i>
Such as, or they whom,	<i>ceux que.</i>
They whose,	<i>ceux dont, or de qui, &c.</i>

[In maxims and proverbial sentences the pronoun *celui* is frequently omitted before *qui*, as, *Qui vit content de peu est indépendant.*]

258. The demonstrative disjunctive pronouns are declined with the prepositions *de* and *d*.

EXERCISE LXX.

The object of your desires is that of our contempt—The disorders
 (a) *mépris* *maladie*
 of the mind are more dangerous than those of the body—He who
esprit plus que (a) *corps* (b)
 cannot keep a secret, does not deserve to have a friend—He who
pouvoir garder mériter de (b)
 oppresses the poor shall be punished—They know not the
opprimer pauvre pl. connaître
 price of learning who despise it—He who lives unknown lives
prix art. science † mépriser (b) || *vivre ignorer*
 happy—They who are contented with their condition are happy—
 (b) *satisfait de* — f.
 They whom you protect have merit—She brought her picture and
 (b) *protéger mérite portrait*
 that of her son—You punished him who was not guilty—Such as
 (a) *perf. indef.* (b) *coupable* (b)
 seem to be happy are not always so—He who told you so
paraître (b) *perf. def.* *cela*
 has deceived you.
trompé

References.

(a) } See this Rule.
 (b) }
 † In this sentence the nominative to the verb is parted from its relative *who*: these inversions must be carefully avoided in French, by joining the antecedent to its relative, thus: *they who despise learning, know not the value of it.*

|| To give additional force to this kind of sentence, we use *celui-là* instead of *celui*, and transpose the propositions, thus: *Celui qui vit ignorer vit heureux*, is the simple expression, but, *Celui-là vit heureux qui vit ignorer* is the energetic form. *Celui-là qui vit ignorer vit heureux* does not exactly present the same meaning.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Pouvoir, paraître, connaître, vivre, and satisfaire.

Read, translate and parse.

Celui qui aime le travail est heureux. J'approuve votre conduite et celle de votre sœur.

EXAMINATION.—256. When the demonstrative pronouns are used to avoid the repetition of a noun, how are they translated? 257. How do you translate *he who, she who, etc.*?

OF INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

259. The indeterminate pronouns are so called because they present to the mind the idea of an object used in a vague and indeterminate manner.

260. These pronouns may be divided into four classes :
1st. Those that are never joined to a noun. 2ndly. Those which are always joined to a substantive. 3rdly. Those which are sometimes joined to a noun, and sometimes not. 4thly. Those followed by *que*.

The following are never joined to a noun :

<i>Autrui,</i>	others, our neighbours.
<i>Chacun,</i>	{ each person or thing (<i>collectively</i>). every one, every person (<i>distributively</i>).
<i>Personne,</i>	{ nobody (<i>negatively</i>). anybody (<i>interrogatively</i>).
<i>Quelqu'un,</i>	somebody.
<i>Quiconque,</i>	whoever, any person whatever.
<i>Rien,</i>	{ nothing. anything, something.

261. (a) *Autrui* applies to persons only, is of both genders and numbers, and is used exclusively in the genitive and dative cases.

He depends on others,

il dépend d'autrui.

262. (b) *Chacun*, m., *chacune*, fem.; it has no plural—when used distributively it is immediately followed by the preposition *de*.

Every one has his faults, *chacun a ses défauts.*
 Every one (each) of you shall translate a page, *
*chacun de vous traduira une page.**

263. (c) *Personne* is always masculine singular. When it means *nobody* it takes *ne* before the verb.

He admits nobody to his table, *il n'admet personne à sa table.*

264. (d) In interrogation, or in phrases denoting doubt, *personne* does not require the negative *ne*.

Would anybody dare deny it? *personne oserait-il le nier?*

265. (e) *Quelqu'un* takes the gender and number.

quelqu'un, m. *quelqu'une*, f. somebody, one out of several.

quelques-uns, m. pl. } some, several out of a greater
quelques-unes, f. pl. } number.

Some one of these gentlemen, *quelqu'un de ces messieurs.*

Some one of these ladies, *quelqu'une de ces dames.*

Some of these books, *quelques-uns de ces livres.*

266. (f) *Quiconque* has no plural, and refers to persons only.

Whoever told you so is wrong, *quiconque vous l'a dit a tort.*

267. (g) *Rien*. Masculine singular—With a negation it takes *ne* before the verb.

He says nothing, *il ne dit rien.*

268. (h) When used without a negation, and in sentences expressing doubt, it means *anything*.

I question whether there is any *je doute que rien soit plus propre*
 thing better calculated to .. *d..*

* This sentence may likewise be translated by *vous traduirez chacun une page*. This transposition is often elegant.

269. The preceding pronouns are declined with *de* and *d*, thus, *chacun, de chacun, d chacun, &c.*

EXERCISE LXXI.

He has given a watch to each of his children —A good Christian
montre (b) chrétien
 rejoices in the happiness of others—Every body has his opinion—
se réjouir de bonheur (a) (b)
 None knows whether he is just before God—He is esteemed by
(c) savoir si devant de
 nobody—Did ever anybody find the true cause of the tide?
*(c) jamais (d) P. trouver *véritable marée*
 —I have seen somebody in the garden; was it you?—Some of the
voir (e) était-ce (e)
 ancient historians relate that fact—Whoever affirms the truth of
** rapporter fait (f) affirmer vérité*
 the fact is wrong—He does nothing—Is there anything in his
avoir tort faire (g) y avoir (h)
 conduct which you disapprove?—Every one lives as
conduits subj. pres. désapprouver (b) vit comme
 he likes—Every body will be rewarded [according to] his works—
il lui plait (b) selon œuvres pl.
 These two sentences have each a different sense—Nobody can
plaire (b) — sans (a)
 please him—Has ever anybody doubted the existence of God?—
plaire d (d) douter de —
 I will make use of some of your books—Whoever spares the
se servir (e) (f) épargner
 bad does harm to the good—Have you ever seen anything
méchant pl. faire tort bon pl. jamais (h) †
 so beautiful?—There is nothing noble but truth—
de si † (g) de — que art. vérité
 Was ever anybody so unfortunate?
P. y avoir (d) † aussi

References.

(a) }
 (b) }
 (c) }
 (d) }
 (e) } See this Rule.
 (f) }
 (g) }
 (h) }

* This adjective before its substantive.

† *Personne* and *rien* require *de* before an adjective or participle: nobody wounded, *personne de blessé*: nothing new, *rien de nouveau*.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Faire, plaire, savoir, se servir, vivre, and voir.

Read, translate and parse.

Connaissez-vous quelqu'un de ces messieurs? Quiconque ne pense qu'à soi est indigne de vivre. Chacun a son opinion. Personne a-t-il jamais su gouverner un ballon? Rien de si agréable que la musique de cet opéra.

EXAMINATION.—259. Why are the indeterminate pronouns so called? 260. How are they divided? Name those that are never joined to a noun. 261. In what case is *autrui* used? 262. What is the meaning of *chacun*? 263. What do you observe concerning *personne*? 264. When is *personne* used without *ne*? 265. What is the meaning of *quelqu'un*, and how is it declined? 266. When is *quiconque* used? 267 & 268. What do you observe concerning *rien*? 269. How are those pronouns declined? *Ref.* † What pronouns require *de* before a participle or adjective?

Of Indeterminate Pronouns continued.

The three following indeterminate pronouns are always joined to a substantive.

<i>Chaque,</i>	each, every.
<i>Quelconque,</i>	any, whatever, whatsoever.
<i>Quelque,</i>	some, any.

270. (a) *Chaque* is of both genders and has no plural.

Every sailor had a reward, *chaque matelot eut une récompense.*

271. (b) *Quelconque* is of both genders and follows the substantive; its plural is *quelconques*.

He will submit to no authority *il ne veut se soumettre à aucune*
whatever, *autorité quelconque.*

272. (c) *Quelque* agrees in number with the substantive to which it is joined.

Some accident,	<i>quelque accident.</i>
Some difficulties,	<i>quelques difficultés.</i>

EXERCISE LXXII.

Each science has its principles—They removed all obstacles

(a) ——— *principe* P. ôter art.

whatever—We have just received some books from London—There

(b) (c) *Londres*

is, in every plant, a certain quality which renders it wholesome or
 (a) rendre salutaire

hurtful—He stops at every word—There is no nation whatever
 nuisible s'arrêter à (a) mot aucun (b)

that has no idea of a God, Creator of the universe—Find me
 qui n'ait point de trouver

any two persons who approve that action, and I will approve
 (b) approuver

it myself—Every step he takes is an imprudence—
 moi-même (a) démarche que faire

Have you not any answer to give me?—Each victory increased
 (c) † réponse à faire (a) P. accroître

the glory of the nation—We have friends in this town—I have
 (c) †

seen some workmen who are ready to work for you—They
 (c) † ouvrier prêt à travailler

took away all the books—That man has a certain reserved and
 P. emporter †

mysterious air.

References.

- (a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }

* This adjective before its substantive.

† Quelques amis has the same meaning as des amis, except that custom has ren-

dered the sense of *des* more indeterminate and more vague than *quelques*.

‡ Certain after a substantive is an adjective; before it, it is an indeterminate pronoun, which takes the gender and number.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Accroître, faire, and voir.

Read, translate and parse.

Le retour de chaque saison. Avec quelques précautions, vous réussirez. Ne lui donnez aucun secours; il ne le mérite pas.

EXAMINATION.—Which are the indeterminate pronouns that are always joined to a noun? 270. Of what gender and number is the word *chaque*? 271. What is the gender of *quelconque*, and what is its place in the sentence? 272. With what word does the pronoun *quelque* agree? *Ref.* † What is the difference between *quelques* and *des*?

Of Indeterminate Pronouns continued.

The following indeterminate pronouns are sometimes joined to a noun and sometimes not.

<i>L'un ou l'autre,</i>	either.
<i>Ni l'un ni l'autre,</i>	neither.
<i>Plusieurs,</i>	several, many.
<i>Aucun, nul, pas un, pas de,</i>	} not any, not one, not any one, no.
<i>point de,</i>	
<i>L'un l'autre,</i>	one another, each other.
<i>L'un et l'autre,</i>	both.

273. (a) *Plusieurs* is always plural and of both genders.

Several victories, *plusieurs victoires.*

274. (b) *Nul, aucun, pas un, pas de, point de*, having a negative sense, take *ne* before the verb; feminine, *nulle, aucune, pas une*.

We have not any proof, { *nous n'avons nulle preuve.*
 aucune preuve.
 point de preuves.

[The words *nul* and *aucun* seem to be indifferently used, yet the former is more proper in sentences generally exclusive.—As *aucun* signifies *not one*, it excludes all idea of plurality: the same may be said of *nul*, when it precedes the substantive. When however the noun has no singular, *aucun* and *nul* must agree with the noun: *aucuns, frais, nulles funérailles.*]

275. (c) *L'un l'autre*, m., *l'une l'autre*, f., expresses a reciprocal relation between persons or things; it is thus declined:

	Singular.	Plural.
One another,	<i>l'un l'autre,</i>	<i>les uns les autres.</i>
Of one another,	<i>l'un de l'autre,</i>	<i>les uns des autres.</i>
To one another,	<i>l'un à l'autre,</i>	<i>les uns aux autres.</i>

[*L'un l'autre* is used with reference to two, and *les uns les autres* with reference to more than two. The verb on which these pronouns depend must be reciprocal.—When used separately, they denote a difference: *il prit l'un pour l'autre*. If they have a relation to two substantives, *l'un* refers to the first object and *l'autre* to the last. Ex. *Osons opposer Socrate même à Caton; l'un était plus philosophe, et l'autre plus citoyen.*

Les uns, les autres, d'autres, mark a division of several persons or things. *Parmi les hommes, les uns recherchent les honneurs; les autres, la gloire; d'autres, les richesses.*]

276. (d) *L'un et l'autre*, m., *l'une et l'autre*, f., expresses union.

	Singular.	Plural.
Both,	<i>l'un et l'autre,</i>	<i>les uns et les autres.</i>
Of both,	<i>de l'un et de l'autre,</i>	<i>des uns et des autres.</i>
To both,	<i>à l'un et à l'autre,</i>	<i>aux uns et aux autres.</i>

The verb must be plural : *l'un et l'autre sont bons.*

277. (e) *L'un ou l'autre*, m., *l'une ou l'autre*, f., marks disjunction, and is thus declined :

	Singular.	Plural.
Either,	<i>l'un ou l'autre,</i>	<i>les uns ou les autres.</i>
Of either,	<i>de l'un ou de l'autre,</i>	<i>des uns ou des autres.</i>
To either,	<i>à l'un ou à l'autre,</i>	<i>aux uns ou aux autres.</i>

The verb agrees with its nominative : *l'un ou l'autre le fera ; les uns ou les autres le feront.*

278. (f) *Ni l'un ni l'autre*, m., *ni l'une ni l'autre*, f., marks separation, and is used in negative sentences ; the verb must be preceded by *ne*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Neither,	<i>ni l'un ni l'autre,</i>	<i>ni les uns ni les autres.</i>
Of neither,	<i>ni de l'un ni de l'autre,</i>	<i>ni des uns ni des autres.</i>
To neither,	<i>ni à l'un ni à l'autre,</i>	<i>ni aux uns ni aux autres.</i>

[The verb which follows *ni l'un ni l'autre* may be either singular or plural. It may be said that the plural is proper when both subjects or nominatives concur to the action : neither has done his duty ; *ni l'un ni l'autre n'ont fait leur devoirs* ; and that the singular should be used if only one of the two subjects is the real nominative : neither the one nor the other is my father, *ni l'un ni l'autre n'est mon père.*]

EXERCISE LXXII.

I will send him none of my books—Rather will reward you
envoyer (d) (e) *récompenser*
 —We ought to assist one another—These women slander
devoir se secourir (c) *parler mal de**

each other—Neither of them loves her—Both are good—No
(c) (f) (d) (b)

expression, no truth of design and colouring, no stroke of genius in
— (b) *vérité dessin coloris (d) trait génie*

that work—I love my father and mother, and I wish to please
ouvrage voudrais-à-plaire d

them both—Telemachus and Iphicles were both vigorous and
(b) *Télémaque (d) fort*

brave, of the same stature, of the same [sweet disposition], of
courageux même taille douceur

the same age, and both alike dear to their parents—Many poems
— || (d) *chéri de (a) poème*

of great merit appear obscure because the reader [is not acquainted
paraître parce que connaître

with] the ancient fables or natural objects to which the poet
† — f. art. *objet m.*

alludes—Those who apply themselves to several sciences do
faire allusion s'appliquer (a) — f.

not succeed in any—Both his brother and sister are dead—Both
réussir dans (b) §

religion and virtue are the bonds of civil society—Both
art. — art. *lien — art. †*

houses have sent an address to the king.
chambre envoyer adresse

References.

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)
(e)
(f)

See this Rule.

|| Both may likewise be rendered by *tous deux* or *tous les deux*, particularly when it is not joined to any noun or pronoun, and refers to two persons; *tous deux* generally follows the verb, which must be preceded by *ils*, &c.—*Tous les deux*, and *tous deux*, do not present the same idea; *tous les deux* means the one and the other, *tous deux*, the one with the other, together. *Racine et Voltaire ont fait tous les deux des tragédies admirables; Paul et Virginie mar-*

chaient tous deux en se donnant la main. When *both* refers to substantives of things, it will always be safer to make use of *l'un et l'autre*.

* The preposition *de* must come between the two pronouns.

† This adjective to precede its substantive.

‡ When *both* comes immediately before a noun not used adjectively, it is rendered by *les deux*: both armies, *les deux armées*.

§ *Both* is not expressed in French when it precedes two nouns or pronouns united by the conjunction *and*: both France and England, *la France et l'Angleterre*.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. *Connaître*, *envoyer*, *faire*, *paraître*, *plaire*, and *se secourir*.

Read, translate and parse.

Ils se méfient les uns des autres. Les deux frères nous ont écrit plusieurs lettres aujourd'hui. Ni l'un ni l'autre ne disent l'avoir fait. L'un ou l'autre vous écrira.

EXAMINATION.—273. How is *plusieurs* translated? 274. What do you observe concerning *ni*, *aucun*, and *pas un*? May *ni* and *aucun* be indifferently used? 275. Decline *l'un l'autre*. When is that pronoun used? 276. What number does the pronoun *l'un et l'autre* govern in a verb? 277. Decline *l'un ou l'autre*. 278. Decline *ni l'un ni l'autre*.

Of Indeterminate Pronouns continued.

The following indeterminate pronouns are always followed by *que*.

<i>Qui que,</i>	whoever, whatsoever person.
<i>Quoi que,</i>	whatever (thing).
<i>Qui que ce soit,</i>	whoever.
<i>Quoi que ce soit,</i>	whatever, whatsoever.
<i>Quel que,</i>	{ whoever it may be.
<i>Quelque que,</i>	{ of whatever kind it may be.
<i>Tout que,</i>	whatever be the
<i>Tout ce que,</i>	all which (whatever).
	all that which, everything.

279. (a) *Qui que* requires the verb in the subjunctive. It is said of persons only.

Whoever you may be, *qui que vous soyez.*

280. (b) *Quoi que*. (Thing is understood.) The verb must be in the subjunctive.

Whatever you may say, *quoi que vous disiez.**

281. (c) *Qui que ce soit* is said of persons only.

Whoever has said that is wrong, *qui que ce soit qui l'ait dit, il a tort.*

[When used with a negation, it means *nobody whatever* : I saw nobody whatsoever, *je n'ai vu qui que ce soit*. In this sense *personne* is more frequently used.]

* It may also be rendered by *quelque chose que vous disiez*, or *quoi que ce soit que vous disiez*.

282. (d) *Quoi que ce soit*, is only said of things.

Whatever he may do, *quoi que ce soit qu'il fasse.*

[When negatively used it means *not any thing* whatever. I have found nothing whatever, *je n'ai trouvé quoi que ce soit*. In this sense *rien* is more commonly used.

Quoi que ce soit qui is the nominative of a verb; *qui que ce soit que* is used as accusative: whoever has done it; *qui que ce soit qui l'a fait*: whomever you know; *qui que ce soit que vous connaissez*. The verb is in the conjunctive—*quoi que ce soit que*, is likewise used as accusative: whatever he does; *quoi que ce soit qu'il fasse*. The other cases of both pronouns are likewise used; as, *A qui que ce soit que vous parlez, de quoi que ce soit qu'il s'occupe.*

EXERCISE LXXIV.

I have spoken to nobody whatever—Whatever may happen, *arriver*
 write immediately—I complain of nothing whatever—Whatever
sur-le champ *se plaindre* (d) (b)
 happens to him, he is always the same—Whoever that foreigner
toujours * *même* (a) *étranger*
 may be, he is very amiable—This poem is the same that I have
pouvoir être *très-aimable* *poème* *
 read—That general is the same who commanded the army in
 * *commander* *armées en*
 Spain—Whatever you say, do not commit me.
Espagne (d) *compromettre*

References.

(a)
 (b)
 (c)
 (d)

See this Rule.

* *Même*, the same, is likewise a pronoun indeterminate declinable before a

noun; *le même livre, la même femme, les mêmes enfants*. Sometimes it is used with reference to a preceding noun, with which it agrees in gender and number: *cet homme n'est plus le même*.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Écrire, se plaindre, pouvoir, and compromettre.

Read, translate and parse.

**Quoi que vous fassiez, vous ne réussirez pas. Je n'ai vu
qui que ce soit.**

EXAMINATION.—What are the indeterminate pronouns followed by *que*? 279, 280. Mention the difference between *qui que* and *quoi que*. 281, 282. Between *qui que ce soit* and *quoi que ce soit*.

Of Indeterminate Pronouns continued.

283. (a) *Quelque*, followed by a verb, is written in two words, *quel que*; in that case *quel* is an adjective, and agrees in gender and number with the nominative to the verb; *que* is a conjunction and remains undeclined: the verb must be in the subjunctive.

Whatever his talent may be,	<i>quel que soit son talent.</i>
Whatever his fortune may be,	<i>quelle que soit sa fortune.</i>
Whoever his friends may be,	<i>quels que soient ses amis.</i>
Whoever his protectors may	<i>quelles que soient ses protections,</i>
be, he will not succeed,	<i>il ne réussira pas.</i>

[We must say: *Quels que soient son talent et sa fortune*, because *quel* relates to substantives of different genders. And: *quel que soit son talent ou sa fortune*, because there is an ellipsis after *ou*: *quel que soit son talent, ou quelle que soit sa fortune.*]

284. (b) *Quelque . . . que*. When united to a substantive, *quelque* agrees with it in number, and governs the verb in the subjunctive.

Whatever faults you have com-	<i>quelques fautes que vous ayez com-</i>
mitted, he will forgive you,	<i>mises, il vous pardonnera.</i>

285 (c) When united to an adjective, *quelque* is indeclinable, being a real adverb: it governs the subjunctive.

However great your faults may	<i>quelque grandes que soient vos</i>
be, he will forgive you,	<i>fautes, il vous pardonnera.</i>

[The same rule is observed when *quelque* is followed by a participle or an adverb—*quelque considérés qu'ils soient, quelque adroitement qu'ils s'y prennent*. It must be observed however that we must say: *quelques grandes fautes que vous ayez commises*, because, when there is a substantive after the adjective, *quelque* is an adjective, and therefore agrees in number with the noun.]

EXERCISE LXXV.

Whatever your motives may be, your conduct will be condemned
(a) motif condamné

—However amiable she may be, I prefer her sister—Whatever that
(c) (a)

phenomenon may be, it is not against the order of nature—
phénomène contre ordre art. —

Whatever services he has done me, I have paid him for them—All
 (b) — m. *rendus* *payer* en

the nations of the earth worship a Supreme Being, however
 — f. *adorer* — *Etre* (c)

different their temper, manners, and inclinations may be—
caractère m. *mœurs* f. — f.

Whatever your birth may be, whatever your elevation and
naissance f. — *élévation*

glory, you ought to despise nobody—Whatever talents you have
devoir — *mépriser* (b) — m.

received from nature, you may improve them by study
reçus art. — *pouvoir perfectionner* art. *étude*

—Whatever great actions he has done—However beautiful she
 (c) † — f. *faire* (c)

may be, she ought not to be vain.
devoir

References.

(a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }

† See observation on 285.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Faire, pouvoir.

Read, translate and parse.

Quelques services que vous lui rendiez, il en sera reconnaissant.

EXAMINATION.—283. How is *quel que* used? 284. How is *whatever* translated when united to a substantive? 285. Is *quelque* declinable before an adjective?

Of Indeterminate Pronouns continued.

286. (a) When *whatever, whatsoever*, may be turned into *all . . . which*, they are expressed by *tout* with *que* before the verb.

I will submit to whatever terms you shall prescribe, *je me soumettrai à toutes les conditions que vous imposerez.*

287. (b) When *whatever* can be turned into *everything*, or *all that which*, it is expressed by *tout ce qui* or *que*.

I am ready to do whatever *je suis prêt à faire tout ce qu'il*
you please, *vous plaira.*

288. (c) *Tout*, before an adjective, is used in the sense of *quelque*, and is indeclinable.—The verb in the indicative.

Artful as they are, *tout artificieux qu'ils sont.*

[The difference between *tout* and *quelque* will be seen in the two following phrases: *Tout habile qu'est Delille, il lui échappe quelques fautes. Quelques habiles que soit Delille, on peut le surpasser.* By the first sentence the speaker is convinced that Delille is a great poet; he expresses it as a positive fact, and employs the indicative; by the second, he does not acknowledge Delille's talent as positive, and he expresses his doubt by using the subjunctive, the mood of doubt and uncertainty.]

289. (d) *Tout*, modifying an adjective, is a real adverb, and should therefore be indeclinable; yet it takes the gender and number before an adjective feminine beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated.

They are quite astonished,	<i>ils sont tout étonnés.</i>
She is quite astonished,	<i>elle est tout étonnée.</i>
She is quite stupefied,	<i>elle est toute stupéfaite.</i>
They are quite surprised,	<i>elles sont toutes surprises.</i>

EXERCISE LXXVI.

He keeps an exact account of whatever money he receives—
tenir compte (a)

Learned as he is, he did not understand that passage—They covet
(c) P. comprendre désirer

whatever is new, because they have experienced whatever is
(b) nouveau éprouver (b)

familiar—Ignorant as he is, he has judgment—However rich they
(c) jugement (c)

are, they will give you nothing—Everything proves it—Children
rien tout P. prouver

as they are, they behaved with much propriety—Ugly as these
(c) se conduire beaucoup de convenance laid (d)

girls are, they are proud—Bold as she is, she could not deny it—
P. fier (d) P. pouvoir nier

Everything is favourable to us—She was quite trembling—Poor as
tout ‡ *favorable* (d)

she is, he will marry her—They are quite disconcerted.
 (d) *vouloir épouser* *ils* (d) *interdit*

References.

(a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }
 (d) }

† *Tout* may be also employed before substantives used adjectively.

§ When *tout* is employed alone, it signifies *all things, every thing*.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Comprendre, se conduire, lire, se plaindre, pouvoir, and tenir.

Read, translate and parse.

Tout ce que vous dites est vrai. La vertu tout austère qu'elle est.

EXAMINATION.—286. When the word *whatever* can be turned into *all that which*, how is it translated? 287. And when it means *every thing*? 288. How is *tout* used in the sense of *quelque*? 289. Is not *tout* used in the feminine?

OF THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUN *On*.

290. (a) *On* expresses a vague and indefinite nominative to a verb, and is never used but in the third person singular. It is translated into English by *one, people, men, we, they, &c.*

It is said,
 One says, } *on dit.*
 People say,
 They say,

291. (b) When in a passive voice (which is not much used in French) it is merely said that an action has taken place, without determining precisely by whom or what it has done, *on* is used as a nominative in French, by changing the passive into the active voice; thus—

Passive.
 It is reported,
 It was thought,
 Letters had been written,

Active.
 One reports,
 One thought,
 They had written letters,

On rapports.
On croyait.
On avait écrit des lettres.

[292. (d) The pronoun *on* is masculine singular; yet when it evidently relates to a woman, the adjective must be feminine. It may be sometimes followed by a plural, though the verb remains singular: a woman is not always young and pretty; *on n'est pas toujours jeune et jolie*: they fought like desperate men; *on se battit en désespérés.*]

293. (d) *On* is usually repeated before every verb to which it is nominative.

They praise him, threaten him, *On le loue, on le menace, on le caresse* him, yet they cannot alter his indolent disposition. *cependant on ne peut changer son caractère indolent.*

[But *on* cannot be repeated in the same sentence when it refers to different substantives, as *quand on est aimable on vous aime*,* for in this sentence the two words *on* relate to different individuals.

294. (d) After the words *et, si, ou*, or any other vowel except *e* mute, *l'on* is used instead of *on*, to avoid the disagreeable sound occasioned by the meeting of two vowels, as, *ou, on, et on, si on*. *L'on* is likewise preferred after *que* before the syllables *con, con, ca*; we say, *ce que l'on conçoit*, and not *ce qu'on conçoit*.

But *l'on* is not used before *le, la, les*, as, *si l'on le voit*; the *hiatus* is preferable to *cacophony*.†—*L'on* ought not to be used at the beginning of a sentence, the euphonic letter *l* being then unnecessary.]

EXERCISE LXXVII.

One would not believe it—We ought to encourage the efforts of
 (a) (a) *devoir* ———
 those who apply themselves to the arts and sciences—If
s'appliquer ——— *art.*
 coquetry be a vice when a woman is young, it is a folly when she
coquetterie est ——— (c) *folie* (c)
 is old—Nothing was heard but shouts of joy—She was of that age
 (b) *cri* *joie* *dans l'âge*
 in which a woman is past being pretty, though she may still be
où (e) *n'est plus* *mais où l'on est encore*
 handsome—I am commanded to assist you—A new piece was acted
belle (b) *de aider* (b) *p. donner*
 yesterday at the opera—People think they have done everything,
 (d) *croire* (d) *faire*
 when they have done no evil—In that house they laugh, play,
quand (d) *mal dans* (d) *rire jouer*

* Quand quelqu'un est aimable on l'aime.

† The *hiatus* is the meeting of several vowels, as, *si on vient, il va à Alençon*.—*Cacophony* is produced by the concurrence of discordant syllables, as, *ce qu'on conçoit*.—It is by *euphony* that both constructions are avoided.

dance, sing, [in short], they spend time most agreeably——
danser chanter enfin (d) passer art. très-agréablement

We learn easily what we understand——Rejoicings were
 (a) *apprendre aisément ce que (e) comprendre réjouissance †*

made on the king's birth-day——Somebody knocks at the
jour de la naissance (a) frapper à

door——It is said that he is dead——One cannot walk in
 (b) *mourir (a) pouvoir se promener dans*

such weather——When a woman is married she is not always
un pareil (c) (c) toujours

mistress of her actions——They say the queen is ill——Some
maitresse (a) malade

ships are fitting at Portsmouth——You have been rewarded, or
vaisseau † équiper à (b) récompenser

they will soon reward you——Your carriage is making——Prepara-
 (e) *bientôt voiture † travailler à †*

tions are making for the coronation.
faire pour couronnement m.

References.

- (a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }
 (d) }
 (e) }

† Sentences like this, in which the nominative to the verb *to be* is not the real agent, the active voice must be used with *on* for its nominative.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Apprendre, comprendre, croire, dire, faire, mourir, pouvoir, and rire.

Read, translate and parse.

On aurait cru que la maison allait s'écrouler. On attribue l'invention de la poudre à un Allemand. On parle d'équiper une flotte.

EXAMINATION.—290. How is *on* translated into English? 291. When is the English passive verb changed into an active verb in French, with *on* for its nominative? 292. When *on* relates to women, what do you observe concerning the adjective or participle? 293. Is *on* always repeated before every verb? 294. What do you observe concerning *Fon*?

OF THE GERUND.

295. (a) The gerund is indeclinable when it expresses an action.

A father loving his children,	<i>un père aimant ses enfants.</i>
Children loving their father,	<i>des enfants aimant leur père.</i>

296. (b) The gerund is often used to express a quality : it then becomes a real adjective and agrees with the noun it qualifies.

An obliging answer,	<i>une réponse obligeante.</i>
Surprising effects,	<i>des effets surprenants.</i>

[A few gerunds have their corresponding adjectives or nouns, but differ in their orthography.—Gerund : *Extravagant, intrigant, fabricant, vaquant, adhérent, affluant, coïncident, différant, équivalent, excellent, négligeant, précédant, présidant, résidant.*—Adjectives : *Extravagant, intrigant, fabricant, vacant, adhérent, affluant, coïncident, différent, équivalent, excellent, négligent, précédent, président, résident.*]

297. (c) When the gerund is preceded by the preposition *by*, it generally denotes an action during the transaction of which another is acted by the same subject : it is then indeclinable and preceded by *en*.

Speaking thus, she stabbed herself,	<i>en parlant ainsi, elle se poignarda.</i>
-------------------------------------	---

[298. (d) The preposition *en* is here used in the sense of *as*, *when*, *whilst* : *as she spoke these words*, or *when, whilst she was speaking thus, she stabbed herself*. The above conjunctions, when used in cases like these, should therefore be rendered by *en* with the gerund ; as, he made these reflections, &c., *en faisant ces réflexions, il, &c.*]

299. (e) The gerund is indeclinable when it comes at the head of an incidental sentence, and is not governed by a preposition.

Agatha, weeping bitterly, threw herself into her mother's arms,	<i>Agathe, fondant en larmes, se jeta dans les bras de sa mère.</i>
---	---

300. (f) The English gerund, coming immediately after a noun or a pronoun in the middle of a sentence, is generally resolved into the present or imperfect of the indicative with the pronoun *qui* before it.

I have seen my brother play- *j'ai vu mon frère qui jouait*
 ing in the garden, *(jouant) dans le jardin.*

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

Charlotte and her brother George, perceiving a pretty butterfly
 ——— (a) *apercevoir* *papillon*
 endeavoured to catch it—Your sister is a charming girl—That
P. tâcher de attraper (b)
 mountain commanding an extensive view, was well calculated
 (a) *commander étendu* *propre*
 for our observations—We (290.) have obtained peace by making
 d ——— obtenir art. (c) *faire*
 great sacrifices—We (290.) form our mind by reading good
se former l'esprit (c)
 books—I have seen these children interesting their masters,
 (a) *intéresser*
 fearing to displease them, and crying when they received
 (a) *trembler de déplaire d* (a) *pleurer quand*
 the least reproach from them—The streets are filled with
moindre reproche *rue f.* *remplir de*
 these interesting children—I fear going there—I cannot
 (b) *craindre de*
 help believing it—Time is a real blunderer, placing,
s'empêcher de * art. *brouillon* (a) *mettre*
 replacing, ordering, disordering, impressing, erasing,
 (a) *remettre* (a) *ranger* (a) *déranger* (a) *imprimer* (a) *effacer*
 approaching, removing, and making all things good and
 (a) *approcher* (a) *éloigner* (a) *rendre*
 bad, and almost always [impossible to be known again]—You
presque *méconnaissable*
 will learn to speak French by writing it—The Greeks, indeed,
apprendre à parler (c) *écrire* *Grec à la vérité*
 when they [went away,] left me some provisions—These are
 (d) *partir* *P. laisser* ——— *ce*
 reasons concluding the same thing—Conjecturing that I was
 (f) *conclure* (e) *se douter*
 rich, and finding that I was ignorant, he thought it would be
 (e) *juger* *P. croire*
 easy to deceive me.
 (g) *facile*

References.

- (a) }
 (b) }
 (c) } See this Rule.
 (d) }
 (e) }
 (f) }

(g) See 193, p. 129, and reference I, page 131.

* When the gerund in English is governed by a preceding verb, that gerund is translated into French by the present of the infinitive.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Apprendre, conclure, craindre; croire, déplaire, écrire, faire, lire, mettre, obtenir, pâtir, remettre, and voir.

Read, translate and parse.

Ce charmant poème est connu de tout le monde. En travaillant à cet ouvrage il se proposait d'être utile à la jeunesse. Un homme craignant Dieu. La religion dominante de l'Angleterre est le protestantisme.

EXAMINATION.—295. When is the French gerund indeclinable? 296. When does it become declinable? 297. When is the word *en* prefixed to a French gerund? 298. Is not the preposition *en* used in the sense of *as*, *when*, *whilst*? 299. Is the gerund declinable at the head of an incidental sentence? 300. In what cases is the English gerund rendered by a tense of the indicative?

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

PARTICIPLES OF ACTIVE VERBS.

301. An active verb governs the accusative in French.

[An active verb may, in French as in English, be used without an accusative; but then it must be in an indefinite sense: *je sais méditer, entreprendre, et agir*, I can plan, undertake, and act.]

302. The accusative case governed by an active verb may either precede or follow that verb.

303. (a) When the accusative follows the verb, the participle remains undeclined.

He has received a letter,
 She has received a letter,
 They have written letters,

il a reçu une lettre.
elle a reçu une lettre.
ils ont écrit des lettres.

304. (b) If the accusative precede the verb, the participle must agree with that accusative in gender and number.

The letter he has received,	<i>la lettre qu'il a reçue.</i>
The letters she has written,	<i>les lettres qu'elle a écrites,</i>
The lesson you have learned,	<i>la leçon que vous avez apprise.</i>

[305. (c) The accusative preceding a verb must be either a noun with the relative *que* or the pronouns *me, te, se, le, la, les, nous, vous, lequel*,—or even *que de*, followed by a substantive: as, I have seen her, *je l'ai vue*; I have seen them, *je les ai vus*; what house have you bought? *quelle maison avez-vous achetée?* how many hours you have lost! *que d'heures vous avez perdues!*

EXERCISE LXXIX.

I have just [sent back] the books which you had lent me—
renvoyer livre m. (b) prêter

What business have you undertaken?—That servant has served
 (c) *affaire f. (b) entreprendre domestiques servir*

us—That book has served us—The Amazons have acquired celebrity
 (c) *servir à † Amazons (a) acquérir*

—The lady to whom my sister has written a letter has answered
dame (a) écrire

her this morning—What pains I have taken!—[Here is] the letter
ce matin que de (c) prendre voici

I have received—Where is your pen?—I have lost it—Where are
 (b) *où (b) perdre*

your books?—I have lost them—I have rewarded Eliza—I have
 (b) *récompenser Elise*

not rewarded my children—Eliza, I have rewarded you—Have I
 (a) *(b)*

not rewarded you, my dear children?—How many horses have you
 (b) *combien de cheval (c)*

bought?—Where are your sisters?—I have not seen them—How
où (b)

many faults you would have avoided in this exercise, if you had
faute f. (c) éviter dans thème si

[attended to] the directions I have given you!
suivre (a) instruction (b)

References.

(a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }

† We say, *servir quelqu'un*, to serve somebody; and *servir à quelqu'un*, to be useful to somebody; hence the difference in the participles of these two sentences.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Acquérir, écrire, entreprendre, prendre, renvoyer, servir, and suivre.

Read, translate and parse.

Les mathématiques que vous avez apprises vous seront utiles. Nous avons accepté votre offre obligeante.

EXAMINATION.—301. What is the government of an active verb? 302. What may be the place of an accusative in a sentence? 303. Is the participle declined when followed by its accusative? 304. When is the participle to be declined? 305. What are the words necessarily used for the accusative preceding its verb?

ON THE PARTICIPLES OF REFLECTED VERBS.

OBSERVATION.—The verb *être* being used instead of *avoir* in the conjugation of reflected verbs (180, p. 106), the participles exactly follow the rule given for active verbs—hence:

306. (a) The participle of a reflected verb is declined whenever the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se* (singular and plural), *nous*, *vous*, are real accusatives.

Lucretia killed herself,

Lucrèce s'est tuée.

[*Se* is an accusative; *Lucrèce a tué elle-même*, or *Lucrèce a tué Lucrèce*; therefore the participle *tuée* is made feminine according to rule 304.]

307. (b) But when the above pronouns are in the dative case, the participle remains undeclined.

Lucretia killed herself,

Lucrèce s'est donné la mort.

[The accusative is *la mort*, which follows the verb: *se* is instead of *à elle*, or *à Lucrèce*, and therefore a dative case.—Neuter verbs accidentally reflected have their participles invariable, because indeed a neuter verb cannot govern an accusative.—These verbs are *se plaire*, *se déplaire*, *se complaire*, *se rire*, *se sourire*, *se parler*, *se succéder*, *se nuire*. Ex.: *Ils se sont plu à me contrarier*.]

308. (c) If the accusative case is a noun and precedes the verb (a construction common in the French language) the participle is declined.

The death which Lucretia gave *la mort que Lucrèce s'est donné.*
herself.

EXERCISE LXXX.

What a task you have imposed on yourself!—They fancied
*quelle tâche s'imposer s'imaginer **
that I was joking—They have written to each other—She has
† *que plaisanter (b) s'écire*
given herself up to despair—They have rendered themselves
s'abandonner désespoir (a) se rendre
formidable—Men built themselves cities—The academies have
redoutable (b) se bâtir ville (b)
proposed objections to one another—The cities which those nations
se faire
have built. for themselves.
(c) *se bâtir*

References.

- (a) }
(b) } See this Rule.
(c) }

* This verb to be in the perfect indefinite.

† *Que je plaisantais* may be considered as the accusative of *s'imaginer*, and therefore *se* is a dative case.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Écrire, se faire.

Read, translate and parse.

Elle s'est dispensée de venir. Elle s'est donné de grands
airs. Ils se sont crus perdus.

EXAMINATION.—306. When is the participle of a reflected verb declined? 307. When does it remain undecined? 308. What do you observe with respect to reflected verbs, when their preceding accusative is a noun?

PARTICIPLES OF PASSIVE, NEUTER, AND IMPERSONAL
VERBS.

309. (a) The participle of a passive verb agrees in gender and number with its nominative (177, p. 100).

She is loved,	<i>elle est aimée.</i>
We are satisfied,	<i>nous sommes satisfaits.</i>
Their houses are sold,	<i>leurs maisons sont vendues.</i>

310. (b) The participle of a neuter verb conjugated with *être* is declinable.

My sister is come,	<i>ma sœur est venue.</i>
My brothers are gone out,	<i>mes frères sont sortis.</i>

311. (c) The two verbs, *paraître*, to appear, and *sembler*, to seem, require the following participles to be declined.

She appears afflicted,	<i>elle paraît affligée.</i>
They seem displeased,	<i>ils semblent mécontents.</i>

[312. (d) In the above sentences the verb *être*, to be, is always understood in French. Thence this *Rule*: A participle not joined to the verb *avoir*, or *être*, agrees in gender and number with the word it modifies: A mother loved by her children, *Une mère chérie de ses enfants.*]

313. (e) When the participle is part of an impersonal verb, it is never declined.

Great misfortunes have happened,	<i>il est arrivé de grands malheurs.</i>
The rain which has fallen,	<i>la pluie qu'il a fait.</i>

[In the first example, the participle agrees with its nominative *il*; in the second, the verb *faire* has lost its active signification, and is the equivalent of *qui a été*, *qui a existé*, and as it expresses now only existence, the preceding *que* is not governed by any verb. This is one of those expressions which cannot be analysed, and which forms a real gallicism.]

EXERCISE LXXXI.

A year is soon over—The wicked are always tormented
année bientôt (b) passer méchant pl. (a) tourmenter
 by their conscience—The Greeks were persuaded that the soul is
 ——— *Grec (a) âme*
 immortal—That kingdom has been formed from the ruins of the
 (a) *former ruine*
 Roman empire—When he saw the urn in which were inclosed
romain ——— quand p. voir urne où (a) †† renfermer

the ashes of his friend, he shed a torrent of tears—They have
cendre P. *verser* — *larme*

answered our expectations—The Castilians, exasperated against
 * *répondre d'attente* sing. *Castillan (d) irriter* *contre*

their king, assembled—Transported with a cruel joy, my mother
 P. *s'assembler* (d) * *de* †

came to me—They appeared astonished at the reception they
venir † P. (c) *de* *accueil* *qu'on leur*

[met with]—The excessive heat which we had last summer
 P. *faire* *chaleur* (c) *faire* § *été*

has occasioned diseases—The disputes that have occurred concerning
causer — (c) *y avoir* *au sujet de*

religion, have corrupted charity—The great changes
 art. — f. *altérer* art. *changement* m.

which have taken place in the administration have given rise to
 (c) *y avoir* — f. *donner lieu*

different conjectures—What adventure have you met with?
 — f. *aventure* f. (c) *arriver*

References.

- (a)
(b)
(c)
(d)
(e)

See this Rule.

* The preposition *with*, preceded by a participle, is rendered into French by *de*: a tree loaded with fruit; *un arbre chargé de fruit*.

† See the disjunctive personal pronouns, page 183.

‡ This adjective precedes its noun.

** The participle of a neuter verb conjugated with *avoir*, is never declined, nor any participle when it relates to a dative or genitive case.

†† The transposition of the nominative after its verb, does not affect the agreement of the participle.

§ This verb to be in the perfect indefinite.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Faire, paraître, venir, and voir.

Read, translate and parse.

Mes sœurs ont été effrayées. Ils sont descendus. Quelle fâcheuse aventure vous est-il arrivé?

EXAMINATION.—309. Is the participle of a passive verb declined? 310. When are the participles of neuter verbs declinable? 311. What do you observe concerning *paraître* and *sembler*? 312. Repeat the rule for participles not joined to *avoir* or *être*. 313. Is the participle of an impersonal verb declined?

Of the Participle continued.

314. (a) The participle is not declined when followed by a verb which governs the preceding accusative.

The house which I have had built, *la maison que j'ai fait bâtir.*

The rules which I have begun to explain, *les règles que j'ai commencé à expliquer.*

[In the above sentences the accusatives *maison* and *règles* are governed by the infinitives *bâtir* and *expliquer*, for we say, *j'ai fait bâtir*, *quoi?*—*la maison*; *j'ai commencé à expliquer*, *quoi?*—*les règles*.]

315. (b) By the preceding rule, the participles *dû*, *fallu*, *pu*, *voulu*, are indeclinable, because they always have after them a verb, expressed or understood, which governs the preceding accusative.

He has made the apologies he ought, *il a fait les excuses qu'il a dû (faire).*

[When *devoir* means *to be indebted*, its participle agrees with the preceding accusative.]

316. (c) The participle is declinable when the following verb does not govern the preceding accusative.

I have heard her sing, *je l'ai entendue chanter.*
I saw it fall (a house), *je l'ai vue tomber.*

[In the above sentences the infinitives express actions done by the person or thing spoken of; on the contrary, in the examples to rule 314, the infinitives imply actions done on persons or things mentioned in the sentence; hence these phrases are correct, *je l'ai vu peindre*, I saw her picture drawn; and *je l'ai vue peindre*, I saw her painting, that is to say, in the act of painting.]

317. (d) A participle between two *que*s is never declined.

The answers which I had foreseen they would give you, *les réponses que j'avais prévues qu'on vous ferait.*

[In sentences like this the participle always has the end of the sentence for its accusative: *j'avais prévues*, *quoi?*—*qu'on vous ferait des réponses*.]

318. (e) The participle is invariable when it has for its accusative *l'* representing a member of a sentence.

This letter is more interesting than I had thought, *cette lettre est plus intéressante que je ne l'avais crue.*

[Here *P* is the equivalent of *cela*, which is masculine singular, that is: *cette lettre est plus intéressante que je n'avois cru qu'elle étoit intéressante*. As the participle would be placed between two *que*, it is indeclinable by the preceding rule.]

EXERCISE LXXXII.

Imitate the virtues which you have heard praised—These are
 (a) *entendre louer*
 the books which I ordered from France—The figures which
 (a) *faire venir* — f.
 you have learned to draw have great beauties—I have seen
 (c) *apprendre à dessiner* (c)
 them fight—Study the lesson you have forgotten to learn—
se battre étudier † (a) *oublier de apprendre*
 Study the lesson which I have given you to learn—I have done
 (c) *donner à rendre*
 you all the services I could—The language which you have
 † (b) *pouvoir langue* (a)
 resolved to learn, is not difficult—The reasons which he had
résoudre difficile (a)
 imagined I should approve—The play which I have seen acted did
croire pièce f. (a) *jouer*
 not succeed—We used all the means we could—These actresses
réussir employer moyen † (b) pouvoir actrice
 are clever; I have seen them play and have heard them applauded
habile (c) (a) *applaudir*
 —These trees were beautiful; I have seen them grow and have
arbres (c) *croître* (a)
 seen them cut down—[Unfortunate men!] I have seen them run
abattre infortunés (c) *courir*
 to avoid their creditors, and I have seen them arrested—They
pour éviter créancier (a) *arrêter On*
 have forced them to go out—[This is] the letter I told him
 † *faire en sortir voici* (a)
 you would receive—The lady whom you have heard sing, is a
que (c)
 pupil of Velluti—This ballad is delightful, I have heard it sung
élève romance charmant (a)
 by Miss Stevens—The famine happened as Joseph had
 — *P. arriver ainsi que* — (c)
 predicted—He has been punished for a fault his master had
prédire faute†
 recommended him to avoid—I have allowed them to go—He has
 (a) *éviter* (c) *laisser partir*

not succeeded, notwithstanding the steps you advised him to
réussir malgré mesure † (a) conseiller de

take—the battle took place as I had foreseen—He has troops,
avoir lieu comme (e) prévoir troupes

and he has requested some from the other nations of Greece—
*demandeur * d peuple de la Grèce*

How many people he has seduced by his fine promises!—
combien de personnes (f) séduire beaux promesses f.

Mr. M. is my friend; the services which I have received from him
† en

penetrate me with gratitude—These variations are Paganini's;
de reconnaissance

I have heard him play them twice.
(a) deux fois

References.

- (a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }
 (d) }
 (e) }
 (f) } See 305.

* The pronoun *en* having the signification of *de cela* cannot exercise any influence on the participle; thus we say, speaking of letters, *J'en ai reçu*; this sentence is elliptical, and means *J'ai reçu un certain nombre de cela (de lettres)*. We must observe, however, that some grammarians decline the participle, especially after the words *combien*

and *que*; speaking of flowers, for instance, they would write, *combien J'en ai cueillies!*—*Des fautes, que J'en ai commises!*

† The relative pronoun must be expressed in French.

‡ In this sentence, *en* has no analogy with the preceding (Note *), for the accusative governed by the participle is the pronoun *que*, having services for its antecedent.—We might have said, *de lui*.

§ The participle *fait* when followed by an infinitive without a preposition is always invariable: *on les a fait punir*.

Irregular verbs in this exercise. Abattre, apprendre, battre, combr, croire, dire, employer, faire, lire, partir, pouvoir, prédire, prévoir, résoudre, séduire, venir, and voir.—[Henceforth the irregular verbs will not be noticed at the end of the exercises.]

Read, translate and parse.

La dame que vous avez cessé de voir est très-spirituelle.
 Les soldats que j'ai vus combattre. J'ai cité les plus beaux traits que j'ai pu.

EXAMINATION.—314. Is the participle declinable when it is followed by a verb governing a preceding accusative? 315. What participles are indeclinable, and why? 316. When the participle is followed by a verb, in what case is it declinable? 317. Is the participle declined between two *que*? 318. When the accusative *P* represents a member of a sentence, is the participle to agree with that accusative?

OF PREPOSITIONS.

319. A preposition serves to express the relation which certain words bear to each other. It has no meaning of itself, is indeclinable, and always precedes, in French, the word which it governs.

[There are some prepositions which are essentially such, that is, which belong to no other sort of words, as *dans*, *avec*; others that are accidentally so, as the words *durant*, *eu*, which are also part of the verbs *durer* and *voir*.

When a preposition is compounded of several words, as, *à cause de*, *au dessus de*, it is called a *prepositive phrase*.]

320. Prepositions may be divided into three classes, according to the cases they govern.

FIRST CLASS.

(a) Chief Prepositions governing the accusative.

Après, after, next to
avant, before
avec, with, against
chez, at, to, among, in
contre, against, near
dans, in, into
depuis, since, from, for
dès, from
devant, before
derrière, behind
durant, during
en, in, to, into
entre, between
envers, towards, to
environ, about
excepté, except, but

malgré, in spite of
moyennant, by means of
nonobstant, notwithstanding
outré, besides, beyond
par, by, through
parmi, among
pendant, whilst, during
pour, for
sans, { without, were it not for,
 but for
sous, under
selon, } according to
suisant, }
sur, on, upon, over
touchant, concerning
vers, towards

Against my advice,
 Except your cousin,

contre mon avis.
excepté votre cousin.

[*Voici* and *voilà* (255, p. 205), have been classed by many grammarians among prepositions, but they are implicit prepositions, that is, comprehended in one word without an ellipsis. *Voici* signifies *vois ici*, and *voilà*, *vois là*. Hence they may be followed by a noun, as, *voici ma maison*, *voilà la mer*, *voici* pointing out the nearest and *voilà* the most distant object.]

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

He was walking behind me—There is a deep valley between
marcher (a) *y avoir* *† *profond* *vallée* (a)
 these two mountains—You have left your books upon the table in
montagne *laisser* (a) — †
 my study, go and fetch them and put them on your shelves—
cabinet *chercher* *mettre* (a) *tablette*
 You will arrive before me—Do not place yourself before that
 † *se placer* †
 lady—I am going to my sister's—She is at your mother's—I think
aller * *croire*
 she is returned from my mother's—I shall go to London in two
revenir * *aller* *Londres* ††
 days—Do you think I can learn French in two years?—I intend
jour *pres. subj.* †† *avoir dessein*
 to begin in a month—I shall be with you in an hour—I can walk
de †† †† *aller*
 there in half an hour—Politeness [is better attended to] in
y †† *demi-heure* *règne plus* d
 London than in the country—He was arrested yesterday, and is
que † *province* P. *hier*
 now in prison—Why do you blame my generosity towards
d présent † *pourquoi* †
 Sophia?—They went towards the church—The enemies fortified
 P. *aller* † P. *se fortifier*
 themselves during the whole winter—According to Locke and
 † *hiver* ** *les avis*
 Condillac—A son should behave according to the advice of his
devoir *se comporter* ** *les avis*
 father—He came towards night to my house—You will find your
 P. *venir* † *nuit* (a) * *trouver*
 atlas upon the table—The English have great advantages over other
 — (a) *Anglais* *avantage* (a)
 nations—I have seen him among the crowd—He did it for me—
 — *voir* †‡ *foule* P. *faire* (a)
 The wars between Rome and Carthage—I have looked upon and
guerre † — *regarder desus*
 under the table—You speak for, and I against—I have not
 * *dessous* †* †*
 seen you for a month—They fought for two days—The garrison
 †† *se battre* †† *garrison*
 has provisions for six months—The hermit lived on the
 †† *mois* *demeurer* (a)

mountain—I shall be glad to hear by what means you have
de apprendre (a) *moyen*
 acquired this quality.
acquérir

References.

(a) See this Rule.

* To or at my house is translated by *chez moi*; to his house, *chez lui*; to their house, *chez eux*; to your house, *chez vous*. From a person's house, is translated by *de chez*; house is not expressed in either case.

† *Devant* denotes generally a proximity of time, and is used in opposition to *après*, after. *Derrière* marks a situation, and its contrary is *derrière*, behind.

‡ *Dans* points out positively. *En* denotes a place in an indeterminate manner: *Dans l'église*; *dans la ville*; *en province*, *en classe*.

§ *Vers* is said of place and time. *Envers* is said of persons.

|| *During* is rendered into French both by *durant* and *pendant*, but the former denotes a continual duration.

** *Selon* is said of opinion, and *sui-*
vant of practice.

*† This adjective before its noun.

†† *Entre* and *parmi*—the first is said of two objects only. *Parmi* is said of several and will be followed by a plural noun or a collective.

†† *En* is translated by *dans* to denote the time of beginning an action, and *en* denotes the time of performing it.

§† *For* is expressed by *depuis* to denote the two extremes of a period of time; by *pendant* to denote the duration, and by *pour* to express the end.

*† *Dessus*, over, above; *dessous*, under—*dehors*, out, and *dedans*, within, are prepositions when opposed to one another, in that case the last only is followed by the word it governs: *Il y a des animaux dessus et dessous la terre*.

||* The word governed by the preposition may be sometimes understood, especially in familiar language. The *Académie* has this sentence: *Il a pris son manteau, et s'en est allé avec*, he took his cloak and went away with it.

Read, translate and parse.

☞ In parsing a preposition mention the word it governs in the sentence.

Il travaille toute la semaine excepté le dimanche. On le trouva parmi les morts. Il a été ingrat envers son bienfaiteur. Cachez-vous derrière ce rideau. Il est en ville.

EXAMINATION.—319. What is a preposition? 320. How are they divided? 321. Mention those which require an accusative after them. *Ref.* † What is the difference between *avant* and *devant*? *ib.* ‡ Are *en* and *dans* used indiscriminately? *ib.* § What is the difference between *vers* and *envers*? *ib.* || When is *durant* preferable to *pendant*? *ib.* ** In what do *selon* and *sui-*
vant differ? *ib.* †† What is the difference between *entre* and *parmi*? *ib.* †† Between *dans* and *en*?

SECOND CLASS.

322. (a) Chief Prepositions governing the genitive case.

d cause de, on account of, because
d côté de, by next to
d couvert de, sheltered from

d force de, { by strength of
 { by dint of
d l'abri de, sheltered from

à la faveur de, by means of
à la réserve de, except
à l'égard de, as to, with regard to
à l'exception de, excepted
à l'entour de } about
autour de }
à l'insu de, without the know-
 ledge of
à moins de, under
à raison de, at the rate of
au delà de, } on this side of
en delà de, }
au delà de, on the other side of
au dessus de, above
au dessous de, below, under
aux dépens de, at the expense of
aux environs de, round about

au lieu de, instead of
au milieu de, in the middle of
au moyen de, { by means of
 { in virtue of
auprès de, next to, near, by
près de, near, by
au péril de, } at the peril of
au risque de, }
au travers de, through
de, of, from
en dépit de, in spite of
faute de, for want of
le long de, along
loin de, at a distance from
proche de, near
pour l'amour de, for the sake of
vis-à-vis de, opposite

Near the fire,
 Beyond the Rhine,

auprès du feu.
au delà du Rhén.

THIRD CLASS.

323. (b) *Prepositions governing the dative case.*

à, to
par rapport à, with respect to

jusqu'à, to, till, even to, as far as
quant à, as for

As far as Paris,
 As for me,

jusqu'à Paris.
quant à moi.

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

We walked in the meadow along the river—From the
P. se promener prairie (a) depuis
 building of the city to the end of the monarchy—He will succeed
fondation (b) jusque monarchie*
 by means of your advice—Do you know the lady who was seated
(a) avis connaître
 next to me?—We live opposite the assembly room; we
(a)† demeurer (a) vis-à-vis† salle d'assemblée
 shall be happy to see you—That child is happy with its mother
bien aise de †
 —We penetrated as far as the camp, which we plundered—Riches
P. (b) P. piller
 supply the place of understanding, reason, science, and even
suppléer à esprit § § même §

youth and beauty—He will obtain that employment in spite of
jeunesse § *beauté* *obtenir* *emploi* (a)

all their endeavours—Napoleon had extended his empire
effort *Napoléon* *étendit*

from the Tagus to the shores of the Baltic—We discovered
** depuis le Tage* (b) *rivage* *mer Baltique* *r. découvrir*

the spire of the cathedral above the other churches of the city—
flèche *cathédrale* (a) *ville*

They have suffered on your account—Miss C. has been to the
souffrir (a)

play without the knowledge of her mother—They reckon
spectacle m. *On compte*

seventy miles from London to Dover—For want of economy he
mille ** Londres* *Douvres* (a) *économie*

is reduced to sell his estate—By dint of study and application she
reduire *terre* (a) *étude* §

has attained the first prize of her class—They are playing by the
prix *class* (a)

door—The cricket match was put off on account of the bad
partie de croquet *r. remettre* (a)

weather—I shall accompany you as far as the park-gate—I shall
temps (b) *grille du parc*

be happy to teach you French, but as to your progress
charmé de enseigner *le Français* (b) *progress m. pl.*

I cannot answer for it; it will depend on your application and
pouvoir répondre de *cela* *de*

memory—I will come and see you on Monday or Tuesday—
 § *venir* — ||

Signor P.'s concert will take place on the 28th—In the morning
 — *avoir lieu* || ||

or evening?

References.

(a) } See this Rule.
 (b) }

* When the sentence begins with *depuis*, its corresponding preposition is *jusqu'à*, but if it begins with *de*, the preposition *à* is used: as, from London to Paris, *de Londres à Paris*; or, *depuis Londres jusqu'à Paris*.

† When *près* and *auprès* serve to denote proximity of place, the latter signifies particularly *next to*. *Auprès* also gives an idea of assiduity and sentiment.

‡ *Vis-à-vis*, in familiar conversation, may also govern the accusative: 'we say, *vis-à-vis l'église*, or *de l'église*.

§ The prepositions *de*, *à*, *en*, are repeated; the same may be said of all prepositions of one syllable, when the words they govern have no similarity of signification. We say: *dans la paix et dans la guerre*; *par la force et par l'adresse*; but they are not repeated when their governments are synonymous—*par la force et la violence*; *avec courage et intrepidité*.

|| The English preposition *on* is not expressed in French before the days of the week or the date of the month. The same may be said of *in* before nouns denoting any part of the day.

Read, translate and parse.

Par quels moyens avez-vous acquis cette qualité? J'espère que nous irons passer l'été de l'autre côté des Alpes. Ces paroles pénétrèrent jusqu'au fond de mon cœur.

EXAMINATION.—322. Mention the prepositions which require a genitive case after them. 323. What are those which govern the dative case? *Ref.** What are the corresponding prepositions to *depuis* and *de*? *ib.†* What is the difference between *près* and *auprès*? *ib.‡* Does not the preposition *vis-à-vis* govern two cases? *ib.§* What prepositions are repeated in the sentence? *ib.‖* In what cases are the English prepositions *on* and *in* suppressed in French?

OF ADVERBS.

324. The adverb is an indeclinable word, which modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

VERB.	To speak eloquently,	<i>parler éloquentement.</i>
ADJECTIVE.	Very agreeably,	<i>très-agréable.</i>
ADVERB.	Very often,	<i>très-souvent.</i>

[Adverb signifies joined to a verb. It generally serves to express a circumstance or modification of the verb, that is, *when, where, how*, it was done: *I spoke to him yesterday; he will come here; he writes elegantly.*—The modification expressed by the adverb always renders the sense full and complete, and in this point the adverb differs from the preposition, which always requires the word it governs, to form a complete sense. With an adverb we say, *il parle facilement*, and, with a preposition, *il parle avec facilité.*]

325. Adverbs are simple or compound, that is, are formed of one or several words.

SIMPLE.	Seldom,	<i>rarement.</i>
COMPOUND.	This morning,	<i>ce matin.</i>

[An adverb compounded of two or several words, is called an *adverbial phrase*, except when this expression is formed of two adverbs, as, *très-bien, assez mal.*]

326. Adverbs are divided into the following classes, according to their meaning.

1. Adverbs of *Time*.
2. — *Place and Order*.
3. — *Quantity*.
4. — *Quality and Manner*.
5. — *Affirmation, Negation, Doubt, Comparison, and Interrogation*.

The chief adverbs of time are,

327. (a) *For the Present.*

<i>A présent</i> , now, at present	<i>aujourd'hui</i> , to-day	
<i>maintenant</i> , now	<i>dès aujourd'hui</i> , } this very day	
<i>à cette heure</i> , at this time	<i>aujourd'hui même</i> , }	
<i>sur-le-champ</i> , } immediately	<i>cette après-midi</i> , this afternoon	
<i>tout de suite</i> , } directly	<i>tout à l'heure</i> , { this minute	
<i>à l'instant</i> , } instantly	<i>ce matin</i> , this morning	
<i>incessamment</i> , }	<i>ce soir</i> , to night, this evening	
<i>vite</i> , quick		

328. (b) *For the Time past.*

<i>Hier</i> , yesterday	<i>tout récemment</i> , } very lately	
<i>avant-hier</i> , the day before yesterday	<i>nouvellement</i> , }	
	<i>la dernière fois</i> , the last time	
<i>hier au soir</i> , { last evening	<i>l'année dernière</i> , last year	
{ last night	<i>l'autre jour</i> , the other day	
<i>hier matin</i> , yesterday morning	<i>jusqu'ici</i> , hitherto	
<i>la veille</i> , }	<i>jusqu'à présent</i> , till now	
<i>le jour précédent</i> , } the day before	<i>il y a huit jours</i> , a week ago	
<i>l'avant-veille</i> , { the day before	<i>il y a long-temps</i> , a long time ago	
{ the eve	<i>il y a quinze jours</i> , a fortnight ago	
<i>anciennement</i> , }	<i>il y a quelque temps</i> , some time ago	
<i>autrefois</i> , } formerly	<i>il n'y a qu'un moment</i> , } just now	
<i>jadis</i> , }	<i>tout à l'heure</i> , }	
<i>depuis peu</i> , lately, of late	<i>dernièrement</i> , lately	
<i>naguère</i> , not long since	<i>cette nuit</i> , } last night	
<i>auparavant</i> , before	<i>la nuit dernière</i> , }	
<i>récemment</i> , recently		

329. (c) *For the Time to come.*

<i>Demain</i> , to-morrow	<i>tantôt</i> , by and by	
<i>après-demain</i> , the day after to-morrow	<i>l'année qui vient</i> , } next year	
<i>le lendemain</i> , the next day	<i>l'année prochaine</i> , }	
<i>le surlendemain</i> , two days after	<i>d'àvenir</i> , for the future	
<i>le jour suivant</i> , the following day	<i>dorénavant</i> , } henceforth	
<i>demain matin</i> , to-morrow morning	<i>désormais</i> , }	
<i>demain soir</i> , { to-morrow evening	<i>dans peu</i> , } shortly	
{ to-morrow night	<i>sous peu</i> , }	
<i>à la veille</i> , on the eve	<i>dans six mois d'ici</i> , six months hence	
<i>tôt</i> , soon	<i>avant qu'il soit long-</i> } before long	
<i>bientôt</i> , very soon	<i>temps</i> , }	

330. (d) *For Time in general.*

<i>D'abord</i> , at first	<i>de bon matin</i> ,	} early in the morning
<i>souvent</i> , often	<i>de grand matin</i> ,	
<i>quelquefois</i> ,	<i>pas encore</i> , not yet	
<i>parfois</i> ,	<i>de nouveau</i> , anew	
} sometimes	<i>le matin</i> , in the morning	
	<i>l'après-midi</i> , in the afternoon	
<i>rarement</i> , seldom	<i>de jour</i> , by day	
<i>jamais</i> , ever or never	<i>de nuit</i> , by night	
<i>à jamais</i> , for ever	<i>jour et nuit</i> , day and night	
<i>presque jamais</i> , scarcely ever	<i>tous les deux jours</i> ,	} every other day
<i>plus que jamais</i> , more than ever	<i>de deux jours l'un</i> ,	
<i>toujours</i> , always	<i>en plein jour</i> ,	} at noon day
<i>pour toujours</i> , for ever and ever	<i>en plein midi</i> ,	
<i>presque toujours</i> , most commonly	<i>de jour en jour</i> , from day to day	
<i>depuis</i> , since	<i>tous les jours</i> , every day	
<i>à toute heure</i> ,	<i>tout le jour</i> ,	} the whole day
<i>à tout moment</i> ,	<i>toute la journée</i> ,	
<i>à tout instant</i> ,	<i>tout d'un coup</i> , all at once	
} every moment	<i>continuellement</i> , continually	
	<i>tout-à-coup</i> , suddenly	
<i>continuellement</i> , continually	<i>en moins de rien</i> , in a trice	
<i>sans cessa</i> ,	<i>de temps</i> , in time	
} incessantly	<i>de temps en temps</i> , now and then	
	<i>en temps et lieu</i> , in proper time and place	
<i>cependant</i> , in the meanwhile	<i>en même temps</i> , at the same time	
<i>d'ordinaire</i> , mostly	<i>peu de temps après</i> , shortly after	
<i>d'ordinaire</i> , as usual, usually	<i>depuis ce temps-là</i> , ever since	
<i>communément</i> , commonly	<i>à loisir</i> , leisurely	
<i>fréquemment</i> , frequently	<i>déjà</i> , already	
<i>la plupart du temps</i> , most times	<i>au premier jour</i> ,	} the first opportunity
<i>alors</i> , then	<i>à la première occasion</i>	
<i>pour lors</i> , at that time	<i>dans l'occasion</i> , upon the occasion	
<i>dès-lors</i> , from that time	<i>à propos</i> , seasonably	
<i>plus tôt</i> , sooner	<i>fort à propos</i> , very seasonably	
<i>au plus tôt</i> , as soon as possible	<i>enfin</i> , at last	
<i>trop tôt</i> , too soon	<i>ensuite</i> , afterwards	
<i>tôt ou tard</i> , sooner or later	<i>au commencement</i> , at the beginning	
<i>tantôt</i> , sometimes, soon	<i>à la fin</i> , at the end	
<i>tard</i> , late		
<i>trop tard</i> , too late		
<i>au plus tard</i> , the latest		
<i>soudain</i> , on a sudden		
<i>au plus vite</i>		
<i>en toute diligence</i> ,		
} with all speed		
	<i>de bonne heure</i> , early	

331. When the verb modified by an adverb is in a simple tense, the adverb is placed immediately after it.

He always speaks,

il parle toujours.

332. When the verb is in a compound tense, the adverb often comes between the auxiliary and the participle.

They have always spoken in *ils ont toujours parlé en ma*
my favour, *faveur.*

[333. The following adverbs of time, *hier, aujourd'hui, demain, depuis, ensuite, tantôt, tard, matin*, follow the participle as in English: I should have brought it yesterday, *je l'aurais apporté hier*. In simple tenses they may either precede or follow the verb: it rains to day, *aujourd'hui il pleut*, or *il pleut aujourd'hui*.

334. The adverbs *bien*, well; *mieux*, better; *mal*, ill; *jamais*, never; *trop*, too much; are generally placed before the present of the infinitive: it is dangerous to read too much, *il est dangereux de trop lire*. *Plus*, in the sense of *no more, no longer*, should always precede it: I am determined to see him no more, *je suis décidé à ne plus le voir*.

The English adverbs of time, which are put at the beginning of the sentence, generally keep the same place in French: then she sang the victories of Soliman, *ensuite elle chanta les victoires de Soliman*.

[335 The clearness, nay, even the sense of a sentence, often depends on the place of the adverb; for instance, *elle aime beaucoup à lire*, means that she is fond of reading, whereas, *elle aime à lire beaucoup*, means that she likes to read a great deal.]

EXERCISE LXXXV.

I saw your brother yesterday at the theatre—We expected him
P. voir (b) spectacle attendre
the day before yesterday—If you intend to go soon into the
(b) se proposer de bientôt à
country, come and see me before—Formerly the education of
campagne (b) (b)
ladies was neglected; now it is attended to—Hereafter I shall not
femme (a) on s'en occuper (c)
be so indulgent—Children should obey immediately—From that
si — devoir obéir (a)
time I ceased to see him—Hitherto my health has been very good
(d) P. de (d) très
—Mrs. N. came to see us yesterday, and we shall return her
Madame P. (d) rendre
visit to-morrow—All the troops will be ready to march at the same
(c) prêt à (d)
time—When we were last year at Paris, we went every day to the
quand (b) à (d)
theatre, and now and then to the chamber of Deputies—I get up
spectacle (d) Député se lever
early to write—On a sudden we perceived the enemy—This
(d) (d) P. ennemi pl.

merchant is on the eve of failing——We expect them every
négociant (c) *faire faillite* *attendre*
 moment—You will see me before long—Henceforth you will find
 (d) (c) (c) *trouver*
 me at home at five o'clock—He has been robbed at noon day—
chez moi à cinq heures *voler* (d)
 I will do it this very day—We often think of you—I seldom
faire (a) (d) *penser à* (d)
 speak to him—I sometimes meet her walking—She never
 (d) *rencontrer* *à la promenade* (d)
 [goes out] alone—The next day Sylla proscribed forty senators and
sortir seul (c)] P.
 sixteen hundred knights, and, two days after, forty senators
seize * *cent chevalier* (c)
 more—He has hitherto borne his misfortunes with magnanimity
de plus (b) *supporter infortune avec*†
 —The wicked will be punished sooner or later—Sometimes I
méchant pl. (d) ‡ *tantôt*
 write, sometimes I read, at other times I walk—He will be there
 † *d'autres fois*
 sooner than you.
 (d)*†

References.

(a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }
 (d) }

* Nouns of number are indeclinable, except *quatre-vingts*, eighty, and *cent*, a hundred, when multiplied by a number and not followed by another; as, eighty scholars, *quatre-vingts écoliers*; two hundred men, *deux cents hommes*; but they are invariable when they come before another noun of number: two hundred and eighty-six men, *deux cent quatre-vingt six hommes*. In writing the date of the year *mille* is spelt *mil*: in the year one thousand eight hundred and twenty-two, *l'an mil huit cent vingt-deux*; but

mentioning a date before Jesus Christ, we write *mille*, as, *l'an deux mille de la création du monde*.—The hyphen (-) is a sign of addition and replaces the conjunction *et*, except in *quatre-vingts*.

† When a substantive, together with the preposition *avec*, forms an adverbial location, no article is used before that noun: with honour, *avec honneur*, that is, *honorablement*; this expression must follow the verb.

‡ When *tantôt* is alternate it is placed before the verb.

*† We now write *plus tôt* in two words—*plutôt* signifies rather, and implies preference; *plus tôt* only relates to time; its contrary is *plus tard*.

Read, translate and parse.

 In parsing adverbs only name them.

Il va rarement à la campagne. Nous les attendons de jour en jour. Vous êtes venu trop tôt. Je la quitte dès aujourd'hui.

EXAMINATION.—324. What is an adverb? 325. How are adverbs divided with respect to their formation? 326. How are they divided with respect to their meaning? 327. Mention the adverbs relating to present time. 328. To past time. 329. To future time. 330. To time in general. 331, 332. What is the place of the adverb in the sentence? 333. Mention those adverbs of time which generally follow the participle. 334. Enumerate those adverbs which precede the infinitive. What adverbs have the same place in both languages? *Ref.** What nouns of number are indeclinable? *ib.†* Is the article used before nouns forming an adverbial expression with the preposition *avec*? *ib.‡* What is the place of *tantôt* when used alternately? *ib.*†* What is the difference between *plus tôt* and *plutôt*?

Of Adverbs continued.

335. Adverbs of place and order.

<i>Où</i> , where	<i>proche</i> ,	} hard by
<i>d'où</i> , whence	<i>tout auprès</i> ,	
<i>par où</i> , which way	<i>tout contre</i> ,	
<i>par quel endroit</i> , through what place	<i>ailleurs</i> , elsewhere	
<i>de quel endroit</i> , from what place	<i>nulle part</i> , nowhere	
<i>ici</i> , here	<i>quelque part</i> , somewhere	
<i>d'ici</i> , hence	<i>vis-à-vis</i> , opposite	
<i>par ici</i> , this way	<i>à côté</i> , by	
<i>là</i> , there	<i>de côté</i> , aside	
<i>de là</i> , thence	<i>à terre</i> , down	
<i>par là</i> , that way	<i>par terre</i> , on the ground	
<i>là-bas</i> , yonder	<i>devant</i> ,	} before
<i>en bas</i> , below, below stairs	<i>par devant</i> ,	
<i>dedans</i> ,	<i>sur le devant</i> , on the fore part	
<i>en dedans</i> ,	<i>derrière</i> ,	} behind
<i>dehors</i> ,	<i>par derrière</i> ,	
<i>en dehors</i> ,	<i>autre part</i> , somewhere else	
<i>là haut</i> , above.	<i>partout</i> , everywhere	
<i>en haut</i> , up, upstairs	<i>deça</i> ,	} on this side
<i>dessous</i> , under	<i>en deça</i> ,	
<i>dessus</i> , above	<i>de ce côté-ci</i> ,	
<i>jusqu'où</i> , how far?	<i>dela</i> ,	} on that side
<i>jusqu'ici</i> , so far, down to here,	<i>en delà</i> ,	
as far as this place	<i>de ce côté-là</i> ,	
<i>jusque-là</i> , so far, down to there,	<i>des deux côtés</i> ,	} on both sides
as far as that place	<i>de part et d'autre</i> ,	
<i>loin</i> , far, far off	<i>de tous côtés</i> ,	} on every side
<i>près</i> , near	<i>de toutes parts</i> ,	
<i>ici près</i> ,	<i>de côté et d'autre</i> , about and about	} on all sides
<i>près d'ici</i> ,	<i>au même endroit</i> , in the same place	
<i>tout près d'ici</i> , just by	<i>par delà</i> ,	} farther
<i>ici autour</i> , hereabouts	<i>plus loin</i> ,	
<i>aux environs</i> , thereabout	<i>ça et là</i> , up and down	
<i>bien loin</i> , very far	<i>d droite</i> , on the right	
<i>bien près</i> , very near	<i>d gauche</i> , on the left	

<i>à main droite</i> , on the right hand	<i>ensemble</i> , together	
<i>à main gauche</i> , on the left hand	<i>ensuite</i> , afterwards	
<i>depuis le haut jusqu'en bas</i> , from the top to the bottom	<i>de suite</i> ,	} one after another
	<i>l'un après l'autre</i> ,	
<i>en avant</i> , forward	<i>séparément</i> , separately	
<i>en arrière</i> , backward	<i>pêle mêle</i> , confusedly	
<i>au dehors</i> ,	<i>à la fois</i> , at once	
<i>dans les pays étrangers</i> ,	<i>un d'un</i> , one by one	
} abroad	<i>deux à deux</i> , two and two	
	<i>en foule</i> , in a crowd	
<i>au dedans</i> ,	<i>sans dessus dessous</i> , upside down	
<i>dans le royaume</i> ,	<i>tour-à-tour</i> , by turns	
} at home	<i>dernièrement</i> , lastly	
	<i>à rebours</i> , the wrong way, backwards	
<i>premierement</i> , first or firstly		
<i>secondement</i> ,		
} secondly		
<i>deuxièmement</i> ,		
<i>en premier lieu</i> , in the first place		
<i>en dernier lieu</i> , lastly		
<i>alternativement</i> , alternately		

336. The adverbs of order are placed either before or after the verb, or even at the head of the sentence.

At first he gave him his liberty, { *d'abord il lui donna sa liberté.*
 { *il lui donna d'abord sa liberté.*

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

He has been killed just by—That village is not far off; do not
tuer (a) — m. (a)
 you see it yonder?—I shall go nowhere to day—Carry all that up-
 (a) * *porter* (b)
 stairs—We left her behind—Those two generals commanded
 (a) *r. laisser* (a)
 by turns—You may come in this way—She will go out that way
 (a) *pouvoir entrer* (a) *sortir* (a)
 —We surrounded the enemy and attacked them on all sides—
P. ennemi pl. P. (a)
 Where do you live now?—The painter had brought together
 (a) *demeurer* *peindre* *rassembler*
 in the same picture, several different objects; here a troop of
dans un tableau plusieurs (a)
 bacchantes, there a group of young people; here a sacrifice, there a
bacchantes (a) *jeunes gens* (a) (a)
 discussion of philosophers—How far did you go yesterday?—I
dispute *philosophes* (a) *P.*
 went as far as London—He endeavoured to sow jealousy every
P. jusqu'à Londres *tacher* *de semer* (a)
 where—I wish I could escape that danger, but I do not know
 † *vouloir pouvoir échapper à* *savoir*

which way—Read books of instruction first, and afterwards you
 (a) (a) (a)
 [may proceed] to those of entertainment—Call on my sister;
 † *passer* *agrément* *passer chez*
 she lives near here—Where is my grammar? I have left it
demeurer (a) (a) *laisser*
 somewhere—I cannot recollect the name of the gentleman who
 (a) *se rappeler* *monsieur*
 has brought this young lady here, though we were at school
amener (a) *quoique* perf. subj. *en pension*
 together formerly—We treat one another by turns—He is below
 (a) *se traiter* (a)
 —Is she not upstairs?—The soldiers were scattered up and down
 (a) *dispersé* (a)
 in an open camp, unarmed and without a commander.
mal gardé — *m. sans armes* — *chef*.

References.

(a) See 335.

(b) See 253, page 205.

* *Nulle part* requires *ne* before the preceding verb.

† This verb must be in the future.

‡ This verb should be in the conditional.

Read, translate and parse.

Où voulez-vous aller? N'allez pas loin. Faites premièrement ce dont nous sommes convenus, ensuite vous pourrez vous promener aux environs. On le rencontre partout.

EXAMINATION.—335. Enumerate the adverbs of place and order. *Ref.** What do you observe concerning the adverb *nulle part*? 336. What is the place of the adverbs of order in the sentence?

Of Adverbs continued.

337. (a) The following adverbs of quantity require the preposition *de* before the next noun.

Combien, { how much
 { how many

peu, little*un peu*, a little*tant soit peu*, ever so little*beaucoup*, much, a great deal*pas beaucoup*, not much*guère* or *guères*, but little*assez*, enough*suffisamment*, sufficiently*trop*, too much*trop peu*, too little*tant*, so much, so many*autant*, as much*plus*,*davantage* (347), } more*moins*, less

How much money?
Too much bread,

combien d'argent?
trop de pain.

[328. The adverb *bien* is often used for *beaucoup*; in that sense it requires the article before the next substantive. He has many friends, *il a bien des amis*, or *il a beaucoup d'amis*.]

339. (b) The other adverbs of quantity are,

<i>De beaucoup</i> , by much	<i>en abondance</i> , in plenty
<i>peu à peu</i> , by degrees, little by little	<i>abondamment</i> , plentifully
<i>de plus</i> , moreover	<i>par dessus le marché</i> , into the bargain
<i>tout au plus</i> , at most	<i>cher</i> , dear
<i>au moins</i> ;	<i>trop cher</i> , too dear
<i>du moins</i> ,	<i>à peu près</i> , <i>à peu de chose près</i> ,
<i>pour le moins</i> ,	nearly, within a small matter
<i>environ</i> , about	<i>cent fois</i> , a hundred times
<i>à bon marché</i> , cheap	<i>à demi</i> ,
<i>à vil prix</i> , at a vile price	<i>à moitié</i> ,
<i>combien de fois</i> ? how many times?	} by half, by halves
<i>une fois</i> , once	<i>d'autant plus</i> , so much the more,
<i>deux fois</i> , twice	the more
<i>trois fois</i> , three times	<i>d'autant moins</i> , so much the less,
	the less

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

How much sugar do you take?—How many lessons a week
 (a) *sucres* (a) *par*
 can you give me?—You pay little attention to what I tell you
pouvoir faire (a) *ce que*
 —You see to how many dangers we are exposed—How many times
 (a) — (a) *fois*
 did I tell you to write to your father?—I spoke to him
 perf. indef. *de* P.
 only once, but I saw him twice—I told it you a hundred
 (b) *voir* (b) perf. indef. — (b)
 times—He has little money—Give him a little money; do not give
 (a) (a)
 him too much—He gave me a quire of fine paper into the bargain
 (b) * *main beau* (b)
 —If you give me a verb, I will learn it by degrees—There
apprendre (b)
 were many ladies, and we had a great deal of pleasure—He has
 (a) P. (a)
 increased his fortune by much—My father has bought a horse
augmenter (b) *acheter*

very cheap — He has as many books as you — Men are the
 (b) (a) On (b)
 more happy as they are more virtuous — You have not patience
qu'on
 enough — You have played enough — This picture would have
 (c) *jouer* (c) *tableau*
 pleased me more — Give me more time — There was in his way
plaire † † *manière*
 of living little daintiness, but much neatness — His company is to
délicatesse mais (a) *propreté* † (a)
 be avoided — There are many people here — I like to go to the
éviter ‖ *monde*
 Tuileries, because there are generally many people.
parce que ‖

References.

(a) } See this Rule.
 (b) }
 (c) See 337, and observe that *assez*
 must precede the noun, or follow the
 verb it modifies.

* *Of* it is understood in this sentence.

† When the adverb *more* is joined to
 a noun, it is translated by *plus de* with
 that noun; but when it modifies a verb
 or relates to an antecedent, *davantage*

is proper and follows the verb or the
 participle.

‡ *A*, before an infinitive, has an active
 meaning in French, although need to
 translate a passive expression in Eng-
 lish.

§ If we wish to express our astonish-
 ment or disappointment at seeing so
 many people, *bien* should be used, other-
 wise *beaucoup* is preferred.

Read, translate and parse.

Elle a bien de la bonté. Combien de papier voulez-
 vous? Vous avez autant de patience que de talents. Vous
 parlez beaucoup trop. Étudiez davantage.

EXAMINATION.—337. What are the adverbs of quantity which govern the pre-
 position *de*? 338. Does the adverb *bien* govern the same preposition as *beaucoup*?
 339. What are the other adverbs of quantity? *Ref.* (c) What is the place of
assez with a noun, and with a verb? *Ob.* † When is the adverb *more* to be trans-
 lated by *plus* or *davantage*?

*Of Adverbs continued.*340. (a) *Adverbs of quality and manner.*

Bien, well
mal, bad, wrong
fort bien, } very well
très-bien, }

fort mal, }
très-mal, } very badly
bien mal, }
à l'aise, at ease

à plaisir, for pleasure's sake
à regret, } with reluctance
à contre cœur, }
de bon cœur, } very willingly
de bonne volonté, }
de bon gré, } of one's own
de plein gré, } accord
à mon gré, to my mind
à votre gré, to your mind
au naturel, to the life
à l'envie, in emulation of one
 another
de sang froid, in cold blood
exprès, on purpose
tout de bon, in good earnest
pour rire, in a joke
pour badiner, in jest
en riant, } for fun
en badinant, }
au hasard, at random
par hasard, by chance
à tout hasard, at all events
goutte à goutte, by drops

au pis aller, let the worst come
 to the worst
sans faute, without fail
à toute force, by all means
de manière à, so as to
de toutes les manières, all ways
à tous égards, in all respects
au dépourvu, unthought of
sans façon, } without cere-
sans cérémonie, } mony
en diligence, in haste
à pied, on foot
à cheval, on horseback
à la mode, after the fashion
à l'anglaise, after the English
 fashion
de mieux en mieux, better and
 better
de pis en pis, worse and worse
à peine, scarcely
presque, almost
modestement, modestly
sagement, wisely

FORMATION OF THE ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES.

341. The adverbs of quality and manner are formed from adjectives, thus :

342. (b) When an adjective masculine ends with a vowel, the final *ment* is added to it; as,

Wise,	<i>sage</i> ;	wisely,	<i>sagement</i> .
Polite,	<i>poli</i> ;	politely,	<i>poliment</i> .

[The following seven take an *é* accented before the final *ment*: *accablement*, *commodément*, *incommodément*, *conformément*, *énormément*, *uniformément* and *opiniâtrément*.

The adjectives *nouveau*, *beau*, *mou*, and *feu*, form their adverbs from their feminine, *nouvelle*, *belle*, *molle* and *folle*, thus, *nouvellement*, *bellement*, *mollement*, *follement*. *Impuni* is also an exception, and makes *impunément*.]

343. (c) When the adjective masculine ends with a consonant, the syllable *ment* is added to its feminine termination.

Great, *grand*, m. *grande*, f. greatly, *grandement*.

[*Gentil* makes *gentiment*.—The following nine adverbs take *é* accented before *ment*: *communément*, *confusément*, *diffusément*, *expressément*, *importunément*, *obscurément*, *précisément*, *profondément*, *profusément*.]

344. (*d*) Adjectives ending in *ant** or *ent* form their adverbs by changing *nt* into *ment*.†

Constant, *constant*; constantly, *constamment*.
Eloquent, *éloquent*; eloquently, *éloquemment*.

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

Your house is very well situated—This young man has given us
(*a*) *faid*
a description to the life—The workmen did that easily—He
(*a*) *ouvrier v. faire aisé* (*b*)
denied the fact absolutely—He has acted conformably to your
absolu (*b*) *conforme* (*a*)
orders—I am deeply afflicted at his misfortunes—That barrister
profond (*f*) *affliger de malheur* *avocat*
has pleaded very eloquently—The town was beautifully illuminated
très (*b*) *superbe* (*b*)
—They live economically—It is necessary to know the human
économique (*b*) *falloir en connaître*
heart to judge well of others—That philosopher is obstinately
(*a*) *obstiné* (*b*)
attached to his system—He is dangerously wounded, and even
système *dangereux* (*c*) *même*
some say mortally—I had previously sold my share—We desire
dire mortel (*c*) *précédent* (*d*) *part*
ardently to see the end of that lawsuit—He sings in tune—
ardent (*d*) *procès* *juste* †
She sings out of tune—I will always blindly submit to
faux † *aveugle* (*e*) *se soumettre*
your decisions—Walk slowly—He has told me confidentially that
— *marcher* (*g*) *confident* (*d*) *que*
he would not marry Miss C. before the death of her uncle—We
épouser
dine precisely at four o'clock.
à quatre heures précises.

* Adjectives in *ant* derived from verbs, seldom have any adverbs; thus *charm-ingly* cannot be rendered in French by a single word, but an equivalent to it must be found; such as, *d'une manière charmante*.

† *Lent*, slow, makes *lentement*, slowly; and *présent*, present, makes *présentement*, presently; *véhément* makes *véhémentement*, but as its pronunciation is harsh, we say instead, *d'une manière véhément*. No other exception.

References.

- (a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }
 (d) }
 (e) See note to rule 342.
 (f) See note to rule 343.
 (g) See note † to rule 344.
- ‡ These adjectives are here used as adverbs, and therefore do not vary. The adjectives so used are, *bas, haut, cher, clair, droit, faux, juste, ferme, fort, mauvais, soudain, vite*, and a few others. Ex. *parler haut*, to speak aloud.
- § When an adverb is modified by another, the modifying one is placed first: *fort poliment*. The adverbs of time precede those of place, quantity, comparison and manner; but the adverbs of affirmation, negation, or doubt, precede every other: Yes, he is almost always very grossly deceived, *oui, il est presque toujours très-grossièrement trompé*.

Read, translate and parse.

Au pis aller nous ne perdrons que nos peines. J'ai un fort bon cheval, mais le vôtre est à tous égards préférable. Cette dame est habillée à la française. Il consentit à regret à mon départ.

EXAMINATION.—340. Repeat the adverbs of quality and manner. 341. How are the adverbs of quality and manner formed from adjectives? 342. How are adverbs formed from adjectives masculine ending with a vowel? 343. If the masculine adverb ends with a consonant, how is the adverb formed? 344. How do adjectives ending in *ant* or *ent* become adverbs? *Ref.* ‡ What adjectives are used as adverbs? *ib.* § What is the place of adverbs with respect to each other?

Of Adverbs continued.

345. (a) *Adverbs of affirmation, negation, doubt, comparison, and interrogation.*

<i>Oui, yes</i>		<i>peut-être, perhaps</i>
<i>certain, certainly</i>	} certainly	<i>probablement, probably</i>
<i>vraiment, truly</i>		<i>vraisemblablement, very likely</i>
<i>en vérité, indeed</i>		<i>aussi, also, as</i>
<i>à la vérité, in truth</i>		<i>de la sorte, } thus, so</i>
<i>sans doute, without doubt</i>		<i>ainsi,</i>
<i>non, ne, ni, } no, not, nor</i>		<i>de même, so</i>
<i>pas, point,</i>		<i>comme, as</i>
<i>ne plus, no longer</i>		<i>comme cela, like that</i>
<i>point du tout, not at all</i>		<i>ni plus ni moins, neither more</i>
<i>nullement, by no means</i>		<i>nor less</i>
<i>en nulle manière, not in the least</i>		<i>plutôt, rather (note *†, p. 244)</i>
<i>jamais, never (or ever)</i>		<i>pourquoi? why?</i>
		<i>Comment? how?</i>

<i>combien ?</i> how much?		<i>jusqu'où ?</i> how far?
<i>combien y a-t-il ?</i>	} how long?	<i>d'où vient ?</i> whence come it ?
<i>combien de temps y a-t-il ?</i>		<i>quand ?</i> when?
<i>jusqu'à quand ?</i>		

346. The adverbs of affirmation and negation have no particular place, as they are generally used alone or in answer to what has been said before.

[347. *Observations on the government of some Adverbs.*—We have seen (p. 247) that adverbs of quantity require the preposition *de* before the following noun. We must except *davantage* and *presque*, which admit of no regimen. *Loins* and *près* require *de* before the following verb in the infinitive. A few adverbs of manner ending in *ment* may have a preposition after them, which is always the same as that of the adjective from which they are formed; as, *indépendamment de* . . . , *préférentiellement à* . . . , *relativement à*]

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

I think he will not willingly do it—He is a laconic man, he
faire
 always answers yes or no—If you pardon him, I will pardon him
répondre (a) (a) si
 also—Perhaps you would do better not to refuse him—I by no
(a) faire de
 means consent to it—How long have you been at Paris?—
*(a) consentir **
 How long will you stay?—How long have you been learning
*†† **
apprendre
 French?—How long will you abuse my patience?—How far shall
†† abuser de (a)
 we go to meet her?—See, how he works!—Why did you not
au devant de || (a)
 write your letter?—How could you think so?—Whence comes it
(a) (a) (a)
 that one no longer sees that magnificence which shone every
(a) — f. briller
 where at my departure?—Where would your servant find a
départ † domestique
 better place?—When did your sister promise to come?—Where
meilleur † promettre de venir
 would your brother have slept?—How far has Cæsar carried his
† coucher † Césaire étendre
 conquests?—How much does your brother lose?—Indeed you are
conquêtes † perdre (a)
 not reasonable—Certainly you must be tired—When shall I have
(a) devoir (a)

the pleasure of seeing you?—Yes, sister, I shall always shun the
ma sœur *éviter*
 society of that bad man—We certainly shall go out together—You
méchant (c) *sortir*
 will perhaps often meet him—Carthage was at last entirely ruined
 (b) (b) *rencontrer* — *f. p.* (b)
 by the Romans—I always received him cordially.
 . . . (b) *p.* *amicalement.*

References.

(a) See 345.

(b) See reference §, page 252.

* When the adverb *how long* refers to a situation still continuing, it must be rendered by *combien y a-t-il que*, as, *How long have you been ill?* *Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes malade?* You are still ill, the situation continues: but if the situation has ceased to exist, it must be expressed by *combien de temps*, as, *combien de temps avez-vous été malade?* you are no longer so.

† When an interrogative and affirmative sentence begins with *combien*, *comment*, *quand*, *où*, *d'où*, *par où*, *de qui*, *à qui*, *de quoi*, *à quoi*, it is sometimes

indifferent to place the nominative before or after the verb, but the choice of these constructions is a matter of taste, and depends on the sound of the words.

‡ See the preceding note, and observe that if the verb has some words immediately joined to it, the nominative must be placed first.

§ *Comme* means to *what degree*, with what activity; *comment* relates to the manner.

¶ When the adverb *how long* means *what length* of time, and relates to a future, it is translated by *combien de temps*, but when it means *until what time*, *jusqu'à quand* is used.

Read, translate and parse.

Comment se conduit-il à présent? Pourquoi vous fâchez-vous toujours? N'en doutez plus. Craignez-vous son ressentiment?—Non, point du tout. Certes, ou je me trompe, ou l'affaire s'est passée ainsi.

EXAMINATION.—345. Repeat the adverbs of affirmation, negation, doubt, comparison, and interrogation. 346. Have adverbs of affirmation and negation any particular place in the sentence? 347. What sort of adverbs require a preposition after them?

OF THE DIFFERENT DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION IN
ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

348. The different modification of adjectives and adverbs are commonly called degrees of comparison.

349. The three degrees of comparison are, the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

350. The positive simply expresses the quality of a person or thing, without any increase or diminution: a fine woman, *une belle femme*.

OF THE COMPARATIVE.

351. The comparative draws a comparison between two objects.

352. When two persons or things are compared, the one is said to be equal, superior, or inferior to the other; thence three sorts of comparatives—

The comparative of equality,
The comparative of superiority,
The comparative of inferiority.

OF THE COMPARATIVE OF EQUALITY.

353. (a) The comparative of equality is formed by placing *aussi* (as) before the adjective.

The tulip is as beautiful as the *la tulipe est aussi belle que la*
rose, *rose.*

[Comparative expressions of equality are also formed with *autant de* and a substantive: he has as much politeness as his brother, *il a autant de politesse que son frère*. Or with *aussi* and an adverb: he behaved as politely as his brother, *il se comporta aussi poliment que son frère*.]

354. (b) The conjunctions *as* and *than*, which join the two members of a comparison, are invariably expressed in French by *que*.

EXERCISE XC.

Delicacy of taste is a gift of nature as scarce as true
art. *délicatesse* *don* art. — (a) *rare* (b) art. *vrai*

genius—The love of our neighbour is as necessary in society
 du prochain (a) art.

for the happiness of life, as in Christianity for eternal
pour bonheur art. *vie* (b) art. *christianisme* art.

salvation—Miss N. has as much loveliness and gentleness as Miss P.
salut (a) **amabilité* † *douceur* (b)

—He is as learned as his father—He is as modest as well-informed
(a) *savant* (b) (a) (b) *instruit* †

—She is as modestly dressed as I wish—The colors of life in
(a) *habillée* (b) *désirer* art.

youth and age appear as different as the face of
art. *jeunesse* † *âge avancé* (a) (b) art.

nature in spring and winter—Your brother has as much docility
au printemps en hiver (a) *
 and affability as his cousin—At length this man, seeing the vessel
 † (b) *enfin*
 ready, descended from the craggy rocks, with as much speed and
prêt escarpé (a) **vitesse* †
 agility as Apollo in the forest of Lycia flies across the precipices
 (b) *.... passer précipice*
 when he pursues the stags and wild boars, to pierce them with his
poursuivre cerf sanglier percer de
 arrows—It is as easy to do good as to do evil.
flèche (a) *aisé de faire bien* (b) *de mal.*

References.

(a) } See this Rule.

(b) } *Autant de*, with a noun, is here the equivalent of *aussi* with an adjective.

† The preposition must be repeated.

‡ We may also say: *il est modeste*

autant qu'instruit. This expression, less used than the other, is nevertheless more energetic. I must observe that *autant* is frequently used before a participle, as, *cet homme est autant estimé qu'aimé*.

Read, translate and parse.

Ce livre est aussi beau que les autres. Mademoiselle L. est aussi grande que sa mère. Elle a autant d'esprit que de sagesse et de beauté.

EXAMINATION.—348. What do you mean by degrees of comparison? 349. What are the degrees of comparison, and how many are there? 350. What is the positive? 351. What do you mean by the comparative degree, and what is its office? 352. How many sorts of comparatives are there? 354. How do you translate into French the conjunctions *as* and *than*, when denoting a comparison?

OF THE COMPARATIVE OF SUPERIORITY.

355. (a) The comparative of superiority is formed by placing *plus* (more) before an adjective.

She is more amiable than her sister, *elle est plus aimable que sa sœur.*

[We likewise form comparative expressions of superiority by means of *plus de* before a substantive: she has more learning than you, *elle a plus de savoir que vous.* Or with *plus* and an adverb: she speaks more politely than her sister, *elle parle plus poliment que sa sœur.*

356. (b) The comparative degree is often formed in English by the addition of the letters *er* or *r* to the adjective; as *great*, *greater*; *large*, *larger*; *small*, *smaller*: as these additional letters stand for the adverb *more*, they must be rendered into French by its corresponding adverb *plus*; as *plus grand*, &c.]

EXERCISE XCI.

The simplicity of nature is more amiable than all the embellish-
 art. (a) (e) orne-
 ments of art—Iron and steel are more useful than gold
 ment art. — art. art. *acier* (a) *utile* (c) art.
 and silver—Homer was perhaps a greater genius than Virgil;
 art. *Homère* (b) (c) *Virgile*
 but Virgil had incontestably more taste than Homer—They are
 (c) (c)
 richer than you think—The republic of Athens was more illustrious
 (b) * *croire* *Athènes* r. (a)
 than that of Lacedæmon—Milton appears to me more sublime than
 (c) *Lacédémone* *paraître* (a) (c)
 all the other epic poets—London is more populous than Paris—
épique poète *Londres* m. (a) *peuplé* (c)
 It is more noble to forgive than to avenge—They have a small
 (d) (a) *pardonner* * *se venger* *petit*
 fortune, and a smaller income—B. has a brighter imagination
 — f. (b) *revenu* m. (b) *brillant*
 than C.—I am stronger than when I was in America—My house is
 (c) (b) * *Amérique*
 larger than yours—You make greater progress than I should
 (b) *grand* (c) (b)
 have thought.
penser.

References.

- (a) } See this Rule.
(b) }
(c) See 354.
(d) See reference I., page 131.
* When the word *than* coming after a comparative of superiority or inferiority, serves to join two verbs together, it is expressed by *que de* before an infinitive, and by *que se* before a verb in any tense of the indicative mood. Observe, however, that *se* is left out when there is an adverb or a conjunction between *que* and the verb.

Read, translate and parse.

Elle est plus aimable qu'elle ne l'était il y a deux ans. Cette table est plus commode que la mienne. Il est plus difficile d'éviter la censure que d'obtenir des applaudissements.

EXAMINATION.—355. How is the comparative of superiority formed? 356. What do you observe with respect to the addition of the letters *er* or *r* to some English adjectives? *Ref.* * When is the word *than* coming after a comparative rendered into French by *que de*, *que ne*, or simply by *que* before a verb?

OF THE COMPARATIVE OF INFERIORITY.

358. (a) The comparative of inferiority is formed, in affirmative sentences, by prefixing the adverb *moins* (less) to the adjective.

She is less amiable than her sister, *elle est moins aimable que sa sœur.*

[A comparative locution of inferiority is also formed by prefixing *moins* to an adverb: she speaks less sensibly than her sister, *elle parle moins sensément que sa sœur*; or by placing *moins de* before a substantive: she has less avarice than her sister, *elle a moins d'avarice que sa sœur.*]

359. (b) In negative sentences, the comparative of inferiority is formed by placing *si* (so) before the adjective.

She is not so amiable as her sister, *elle n'est pas si aimable que sa sœur.*

[We likewise form comparative locutions of inferiority with a substantive, thus: she has not so much avarice as her sister, *elle n'a pas tant or autant d'avarice que sa sœur*; and with an adverb: she does not speak so sensibly as her sister, *elle ne parle pas si sensément que sa sœur.*]

360. (c) Three adjectives and three adverbs are irregular in the formation of their comparative.

Adj.	{	<i>bon</i> , good <i>petit</i> , little <i>mauvais</i> , bad	comp.	{	<i>meilleur</i> , better, (never <i>plus bon</i>) <i>moindre</i> , or <i>plus petit</i> , less <i>pire</i> , or <i>plus mauvais</i> , worse
------	---	--	-------	---	--

This horse is good, little, bad, *ce cheval est bon, petit, mauvais.*
 This is better, less, worse, *celui-ci est meilleur, plus petit, plus mauvais.*

Adv.	{	<i>bien</i> , well <i>mal</i> , ill <i>peu</i> , little	comp.	{	<i>mieux</i> , better <i>pis</i> , or <i>plus mal</i> , worse <i>moins</i> , less
------	---	---	-------	---	---

He writes well, ill, little, *il écrit bien, mal, peu.*
 She writes better, worse, less, *elle écrit mieux, pis, moins.*

EXERCISE XCII.

The Thames is not so rapid as the Rhine—This fruit is good, but
Tamise * *Rhin*
 that is better—Your horse is worse than mine—He is not so learned
 (c) (c) * *savant*
 as his brother—We are less happy than you think—John has not
 (a) (d) *penser* —
 so much docility and affability as his cousin—Autumn is not so
 (b) † ... art. *automne*
 varied as spring, but it is richer—I have as much learning as you,
varié art. *savoir*
 but I am not so sensible—She has less generosity than her father,
mais avoir (b) *esprit* (a) *générosité*
 but more than her sister had—He is not so enlightened as he
 (d) * *éclairé*
 appears [to be]—He is less polite and obliging than his sister—
 (a) † *obligeant*
 He writes less elegantly and correctly than the other—She is so
 (a) † ||
 good, so amiable, so modest! Who could help loving her?
pouvoir s'empêcher de
 —Sincere and virtuous men, who are always the same, and who
 art.
 subject themselves to the rules of virtue, can never be so
se soumettre art. *pouvoir*
 agreeable to princes as these who flatter their prevailing passions—
 — *dominant* — f.
 Women speak better than they write—Women do not speak better
 (c) (d) (c)
 than they write—The state was not then less agitated than it had
 † (a) *troubé*
 been formerly.

References.

- (a) } See this Rule.
 (b) }
 (c) }
 (d) See reference *, page 257.
 * In these and similar sentences, *aussi* may be used instead of *si*; the ear must be consulted.
 † The adverb of comparison must be repeated before every adjective or ad-

verb compared, but before a substantive the preposition *de* is generally sufficient.

† *Ne* is not used before the second verb when the first part of the sentence is negative.

|| *Si* before an adjective, in the sense of *tellement* (to such a degree), marks extension, and is as often used in French as *so* is in English.

Read, translate and parse.

Vous écrivez avec moins d'attention que votre sœur. Mademoiselle S. a moins d'agréments naturels que son amie, mais elle est plus douce et plus aimable.

EXAMINATION.—358. How do you form the comparative of inferiority in affirmative sentences? 359. And in negative phrases? 360. Mention the adjectives and adverbs that form their comparative irregularly. *Ref.* † Must the adverb of comparison be repeated before adjectives or adverbs compared? *ib.* ‡ Is *ne* always used before the verb in the second member of the sentence?

OF THE SUPERLATIVE.

361. The superlative expresses the quality of a person or thing, in a very high, or in its highest degree; hence two sorts of superlative, *the absolute*, and *the relative*.

362. (a) The superlative absolute is formed by prefixing to the adjective or adverb, one of the words *très*, *fort*, *bien*, *infiniment*, *extrêmement*, &c. It is called absolute, because it does not express any relation to another object.

London is a very large city,
I am very happy,
This book is extremely fine,

Londres est une très-grande ville.
je suis fort heureux.
ce livre est extrêmement beau.

[The quality expressed in the highest or lowest degree may sometimes be rendered in one word, as, very learned, *savantissime*; very large, *grandissime*; very small, *minime*; very scarce, *rarissime*: these expressions are, however, confined to familiar language.

Some adjectives have neither comparative nor superlative, such as *éternel*, *universel*, *mortel*, *immense*, *excellent*, *parfait*, *infini*, *divin*, &c., because they express a quality in its highest degree.]

363. (b) The superlative absolute is also formed by prefixing *le plus*, *le mieux*, *le moins*, to an adjective when no comparison is implied. The article remains undeclined.

That lady does not shed tears, even when she is most afflicted. *cette dame ne pleure pas, lors même qu'elle est le plus affligée.*

364. (c) The superlative relative is formed by prefixing the article *le*, *la*, *les*, to the comparative of superiority or

inferiority. It is called relative because it expresses a relation to other objects, and always implies a comparison.

London is the largest of cities, *Londres est la plus grande des villes.*
The least advantageous, *le moins avantageux.*

[365. (d) This superlative is often formed in English by the addition of the syllables *est* or *st* to the adjective or adverb; as, *great, greatest; soon, soonest*; it is always rendered in French by *le plus, la plus, les plus*, before the adjective or adverb; as, *le plus grand, le plus tôt.*]

366. (e) The following superlatives (adjectives and adverbs) are formed irregularly.

	Adjectives.	Adverbs.
The best,	<i>le meilleur,</i>	<i>le mieux.</i>
The worst,	<i>le pire or le plus mauvais,</i>	<i>le pis or le plus mal.</i>
The least,	<i>le moindre or le plus petit,</i>	<i>le moins.</i>

367. (f) *Le plus, le mieux, le moins*, are invariable when they refer to a verb or an adverb, for in that case they always form an adverbial locution.

Racine and Boileau are the two French poets who write best, *Racine et Boileau sont les deux poètes français qui écrivent le mieux.*

[In this example, *le mieux* signifies in the highest degree.]

368. (g) When the superlative relative precedes its substantive, the article serves for both; if placed after it, the article must be repeated before each.

The handsomest women, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{les plus belles femmes.} \\ \textit{les femmes les plus belles.} \end{array} \right.$

[369. (h) After a pronoun possessive the article is omitted; as, my best friend, *mon meilleur ami.*]

EXERCISE XCIII.

The castle is the highest part of the city—The least excusable of
(d) *partie* *ville* (c)

all errors is that which is wilful—That landscape is very much
tout art. volontaire paysage (a)

varied and infinitely agreeable—Artful men found the key
varié (a) *artificieux* *clef*
 to his heart, and drew from it the most important secrets—Charity
de *tirer* (c) *art.*
 is the greatest virtue of a Christian—That scene is one of those
 (d) —
 which were most applauded—Of all prose writers Buffon and
P. (b) *écrivain en prose*
 Bossuet express themselves the most nobly—His best friends know
s'exprimer (b) (h) (e) *savoir*
 nothing of his secrets—The shortest follies are the best—M. is the
 (d) *court folie* (e)
 greatest miser in England—The Alps are the highest, steepest,
 (d) *avare** *Angleterre* *Alpes* (d) *haut* † (d) *escarpé*
 and most picturesque mountains in Europe—Alas! said he, am I
pittoresque * — *hélas !, tait-il*
 the son of the wisest and most patient of men?—He is the most
 (d) (c) (c)
 wicked and ignorant of his family—The most ancient and general
 † (a) †
 idolatry was the worship rendered to the sun — Self-love is
 *culte* *soleil art. amour-propre*
 the most persuasive of all flatterers—The most clever men are not
 (e) *flatteur* (e) *habile gens*
 always the most virtuous—You have done your duty without the
 (c) *devoir sans*
 least attention—Your excuse is bad, but hers is the worst that
 (e) — (e) *qu'on*
 could be given—Of all flowers, the anemone pleases me most—
puisse donner *art.* *anémone* (f)
 She is not the most unhappy of the three sisters—She has the art of
 (e)
 shedding tears when she is the least afflicted—Rome is the most
verser (b) *affligée* (g) (c)
 celebrated city in the world.
*ville **

References.

* After a superlative, *in* is rendered by *du, de la, de l', and des*.

† *Le plus, le moins, &c., must be repeated before every adjective.*

‡ When three or more adjectives serve to qualify a noun, they are, almost without exception, put after it.

(a) }
 (b) }
 (c) }
 (d) } See this Rule.
 (e) }
 (f) }
 (g) }
 (h) }

Read, translate and parse.

Voilà le plus beau de vos ouvrages. Le style de Bossuet est extrêmement élevé, mais il est quelquefois dur et rude. Je préfère une maison de campagne au plus beau palais.

EXAMINATION.—361. What do you mean by superlative? How many sorts of superlatives are there? 362. How is the superlative absolute formed, and why is it so called? 363. When is the article undeclined before a superlative? 364. How is the superlative relative formed, and why is it called relative? 365. Is not the English superlative formed by the addition of *st* or *est*? 366. Enumerate those adjectives and adverbs which form their superlatives irregularly. 367. When are *le plus*, *le mieux*, *le moins*, invariable? 368. In what case is the article repeated with a superlative? 369. Is the article used before a superlative when accompanied by a possessive pronoun?

EXERCISE XCIV.—RECAPITULATION ON THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREES.

Riches are more dangerous than poverty is troublesome—I
Les richesses f. (a)
 am more satisfied with his conduct than with yours—The most
de *
 beautiful comparison that there is, perhaps in any language, is that
qu'il y ait *langue*
 which Pope has drawn from the Alps, in his Essay on Criticism
tirer Alpes Essai art. Critique
 —He is more inclined to hurt than to oblige—A good child is not
disposé à nuire (b)
 less respectful to his masters than to his parents—I am taller
envers * *grand*
 than you by two inches—The way from London to Paris by
†de pous route Londres — *par*
 Brighton and Dieppe is shorter than by Calais, by ninety miles—
 — *→ †de mille*
 The more you study, the more you will improve—The shorter the
↪ † étudier ↪ † profiter ↪ †
 day is, the longer the night—The more I sing, the more hoarse
↪ † ↪ † ↪ † enroué
 I am—The fewer faults I find, the more I praise my pupils—The
↪ † moins ↪ † louer élève ↪
 fewer desires, the more peace—The more I know mankind, the
† ↪ † ↪ † les hommes ↪

less I value life—He urged reasons the most powerful—She
 † *estimer* *p. faire valoir* † *fort*
 saw in their situation, danger the most alarming, and in the
P. — †
 behaviour of G. selfishness the most inexcusable—The more I
conduite *art. égoïsme* — †
 read the works of alchymists, the more I am persuaded they are
alchymists — † *se persuader*
 equally obscure, and that it is impossible to understand them,
de
 even where they are most explicit—The best instruc-
même dans les endroits où (c) *clair*
 tion we can give to our children, is a good example—
pouvoir subj. *ce* *exemple*
 The more he receives, the less he expends.
— † — † dépenser.

References.

(a) See ref. *, page 257.

(b) Observe that when the first infinitive is preceded by *à*, the word *than* is rendered by *qu'à*.

(c) See 363 page 260.

* When an adjective used comparatively requires a preposition before the next substantive, the same preposition is repeated after *que*, if the second part of the comparison is dependent on the same adjective.

† The preposition *by* is expressed by *de*, after a comparative.

‡ *The more, the less*, either repeated, or used in opposition to each other, are not translated in French by the superlative, but by the comparative, *plus, moins*; the more I know him, the less I esteem him; *plus je le connais, moins*

je l'estime. When the comparison is made with two substantives or two adjectives, the order of the words is as follows, 1. *plus or moins*; 2. the nominative to the verb; 3. the verb; 4. the adjective or substantive governed by the verb: the more difficult a thing is, the more honourable, *plus une chose est difficile, plus elle est honorable*. Sentences of this kind are susceptible of a different translation, by transposing the two members, and placing the adverb *d'autant* before the first comparative, and *que* after it; as, *une chose est d'autant plus honorable qu'elle est plus difficile*.

§ The article definite must precede the substantive in French, before a superlative.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

370. The conjunction is an indeclinable part of speech, which serves to join words or sentences together—*Let us study—we wish to acquire knowledge—time passes—Let us remember—it does not return.*

[Here are five distinct sentences which are unconnected and independent of each other. In order to form but one phrase of the whole, we must make use of

[A *cause que* is generally replaced by *parce que*. This last conjunction is written in two words; *par ce que*, in three words, is not a conjunction, it signifies by what, or by the thing which. Examples of both: *parce que vous dites la vérité, on vous croira*, because you speak the truth, they will believe you; *par ce que vous dites, je vois que vous avez raison*, by what you say, I see you are right.]

EXERCISE XCV.

Form your mind, heart, and taste, while you are young—You
 * *esprit* (a)
 have had several proofs of my affection, because you have done
plusieurs preuves — (a) *faire*
 your duty—I was vexed at her impatience, yet I granted her
 P. *piqué de* — (a) P. *accorder*
 request—I have not seen him since he returned—Since affection
demande (a) *revenir* (a) —
 is a fault, avoid everything that may have the appearance of it
défaut *tout ce* *pouvoir*
 —He not only maintained the tenets of the church because they
 (a) *défendre* *dogme m.* (a)
 were ancient, but he adhered to them with the zeal of a theologian
 (a) *adhérer*
 —If you are convinced of the necessity of these two accomplish-
 (a) *convaincre* *talent*
 ments, my admonitions are unnecessary—While they were abroad,
avis *inutile* (a) *en dehors*
 a dreadful plague depopulated the cities at home—I learn from the
terrible peste ravager *au dedans* *par*
 letters of my friends, as well as by common report, that you
aussi bien que *public* *art. rumeur* (a)
 are indefatigable in all kinds of good offices—He knows your
infatigable *art. genre* *connaître*
 partiality to his enemy, nevertheless he has accepted your medi-
partialité pour (a)
 ation—He has neither friends nor foes.
 (a) † *ennemi*.

References.

(a) See this Rule.
 * We say, *se former le goût* and † This conjunction requires *ne* before
former son goût, but the first expression its verb: the noun which follows this
 seems to be less precise, less energetic conjunction takes no article.
 than the second.

[*Malgré que* is now obsolete and replaced by *quoique*, except in the proverbial expression *malgré qu'il en ait*, that is, *contre son gré*, against his will.]

EXERCISE XVI.

The general began the action, though he had not yet assembled
 —P. *engager* — (a) *

all his troops—I shall not set out till I have dined—I will go to
partir (a)

town to-morrow, provided you accompany me—Though you
Londres (a) (a)

study much and take great pains, you make very little progress
 † *beaucoup* *progrès*

—I shall not yet finish this book, unless you advise me—God
conseiller

grant you may succeed—For fear it should rain, I will take the
 (a) *réussir* † *

carriage—If you see your sister and speak to her, give my
voiture (b) † *faire*

compliments to her—Though you have the best master in England,
 — (a) * ‡

if you do not learn your grammar well, you will never speak
 (b) *apprendre*

good French—God forbid I should blame your conduct—He
 (a) *

dares not do it for fear she should be scolded—We will not go
 ‡ *oser* † * *gronder*

unless she invites us—I am going to write to your sister, though
 † * (a)

she never answers me—I will explain to you every difficulty,
 * *expliquer* *toutes les* pl.

that you may not be disheartened in your undertaking—In case
 (a) * *décourager* *entreprise* (a)

you want my assistance, call me, I shall be near you.
avoir besoin de —

References.

(a) See this Rule.

(b) See 373.

* When the verb of the principal proposition is in the present or future, the verb governed in the subjunctive must be in the present, if we mean to express a present or future, or in the perfect if we mean to express a past: I wish he may come, *je désire qu'il vienne*;

I do not believe he has received his money, *je ne crois pas qu'il ait reçu son argent*.—When the first verb is in any of the past tenses or conditional, the second verb must be in the imperfect subjunctive, when we wish to express a present or future, but the pluperfect subjunctive is used to express a past: I was afraid that you would come too

late, *je craignais que vous ne vinssiez trop tard*; I did not know that you had studied astronomy, *je ne savais pas que vous eussiez étudié l'astronomie*.

* The conjunction *que* is elegantly used after *et* in the second part of a sentence, instead of repeating the conjunctions *puisque*, *quand*, *quoique*, *si*, *&c.*—In that case *que* always requires the subjunctive.

† The conjunctions *à moins que*, *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, require *ne* with the verb, if it is not negative in English, and *ne pas* when the verb is negative: unless he comes, *à moins qu'il ne vienne*; unless he does not come, *à moins qu'il ne vienne pas*.

‡ With the verb *oser*, the second negation may be omitted.

§ See reference †, page 262.

Read, translate and parse.

Soit que je lise ou que j'écrive, je ne puis souffrir qu'on fasse du bruit auprès de moi. Quoiqu'elle ait deux ans de moins que sa sœur, elle a beaucoup plus de talents. Supposé qu'il se soit trompé, ce n'est pas sa faute.

EXAMINATION.—374. Repeat the conjunctions which govern the subjunctive mood in French. *Ref.* * What tense of the subjunctive do you use after a conjunction? *id.* † What conjunction is used instead of repeating the preceding one, in the second part of the sentence? *id.* ‡ What conjunctions govern *ne* before the next verb?

Of Conjunctions continued.

375. *Conjunctions governing the infinitive.*

376. (a) The present of the infinitive is always used after the following conjunctions:

afin de, to, for, in order to
de peur de, } for fear of
de crainte de, }
au lieu de, instead of
bien loin de, very far from
excepté de, except to

avant de, } before
avant que de, }
à moins de, } unless
à moins que de, }
plutôt que de, rather than to

377. The following prepositions are accidentally conjunctions: *à*, to; *sans*, without; *pour*, in order to; *de*, of; *après*, after; *jusqu'à*, as far as; *sauf*, save; they require the next verb in the infinitive: I did it without thinking of it, *je l'ai fait sans y penser*.

378. (b) When both verbs have the same nominative, that which comes after the conjunction, expressed or understood,

is elegantly put in the infinitive, and the conjunction *que* is changed into *de*.

I shall see him before I go *je le verrai avant d'aller à la campagne*
into the country, (instead of *avant que j'aille*).

EXERCISE XCII.

We cannot betray truth without rendering ourselves guilty—
trahir art. † *coupable*
What pleasure I took in hearing her!—If I did not accept the
* *entendre*
bargain, it was for fear of losing—At last I began to long for
marché (a) P. *à désirer de revoir*
my native country, that I might repose after my travels and
natal pays m. (b) *pouvoir se reposer voyage*
fatigues, in the places where I had spent my earliest years, and
— *lieu passer premier*
gladden my old companions with the recital of my adventures—
réjouir par récit
After having examined my legacy with more attention than it
† *mon legs* —
deserved, I left it to the relations who had envied it so
n'en mériter P. abandonner parent
much—He is continually playing instead of learning his lesson—
(a)
Their conversations frequently turn upon the delicacies of their
— *souvent rouler*
language; and they have an academy which is employed in fixing
langue *
it—After I had done my exercise, I went away—He has been
† *faire thème P. s'en aller*
punished for having neglected his duty.
† *négliger devoir.*

References.

(a) } See this Rule.

† See observation 377.

(b) }

† The words *for* and *after* generally

* *En*, coming before a verb, is generally require the next verb in the perfect infinitive.

Read, translate and parse.

On ne peut être heureux sans pratiquer la vertu. Nous nous retirâmes de peur d'être surpris. Il le fit pour le contrarier.

EXAMINATION.—375. What conjunctions are always used with the present of the infinitive? 377. Are not some prepositions accidentally used as conjunctions? *Ref.* ‡ What tense of the infinitive do you generally use with the conjunctions *for* and *after*? 378. When both verbs have the same nominative, is not the infinitive elegantly used after the conjunction instead of the subjunctive?

OF INTERJECTIONS OR EXCLAMATIONS.

379. Interjections are words which express the passions or emotions of the mind. The principal are :

<i>Ah !</i>	<i>eh !</i>	<i>hé !</i>
<i>allons !</i>	<i>ferme !</i>	<i>eh bien !</i>
<i>bon !</i>	<i>gare !</i>	<i>eh quoi !</i>
<i>bah !</i>	<i>hélas !</i>	<i>ô !</i>
<i>courage !</i>	<i>hola !</i>	<i>oh !</i>
<i>chut !</i>	<i>ho !</i>	<i>paix !</i>
<i>ciel !</i>		

[Interjections are either essentially such, as, *chut ! ah ! hélas ! &c.* ; or accidentally, as, *allons ! bon ! paix ! &c.*

There are also interjective locutions, such as, *paix donc ! hé quoi ! fi donc !*

380. An essential point in the use of interjections, is never to place them between words which custom has made inseparable.

381. *Ah !* expresses joy, grief, admiration, &c.—*ha !* expresses astonishment, surprise.

<i>Ah ! how happy I am !</i>	<i>ah ! que je suis heureux !</i>
<i>Ah ! is it you ?</i>	<i>ha ! c'est vous ?</i>

382. *Oh !* is used in exclamation ; *ho !* in calling.

<i>Oh ! how unhappy they are !</i>	<i>oh ! qu'ils sont malheureux !</i>
<i>Ho ! come here,</i>	<i>ho ! venez-ici.</i>

383. *Ô* is used in invocations, or in apostrophe—it always precedes the substantive.

<i>O my father,</i>	<i>ô mon père.</i>
---------------------	--------------------

384. *Hé !* is principally used to call, to warn, or to express astonishment.

Ah ! what are you going to do ? *hé ! qu'allez vous faire ?*

385. *Eh!* expresses affliction, grief.

Eh! qui n'a pas pleuré quelque perte cruelle? DELILLE.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

How! said he, is it not possible to [make people obedient]
 (a) *Hé quoi!* P. — de soumettre le gens
 without [starving them to death?]
 les faire mourir de faim P. de tous côtés
 that savage and frightful island, but alas! I found in it nothing
 horrible affreux île f. hélas! P.
 but sorrow—Sir, said I, I do not desire to give this poor woman
 douleur P. qu'on fasse *
 any further trouble—For shame, said he, a man of your humanity
 de la peine à f. donc! P. vous avez de l'humanité,
 would make a bad policeman; I must acquit myself of
 vous ne seriez pas bon à faire un gendarme
 my commission—For heaven's sake, I replied, have some regard to
 — de grâce P. avoir un égard
 entreaty, and abate a little of your severity, in consideration
 art. prière se relâcher rigueur faveur
 of the present, which this lady will offer you—Oh! that is
 présent m. va vous faire (a).
 another affair, said he; that is what we call a figure of rhetoric
 P. voilà ce qui s'appelle
 well placed; now let us see; what has she to give me?
 (a) *eh bien!* voyons

References.

(a) See 379.

* This adjective before its substantive,

Read, translate and parse.

Hé bien! mon enfant, comment se porte ta mère? Ah!
 je respire enfin. O jeunesse imprudente!

EXAMINATION.—379. What is an interjection? What are the principal interjections? 380. What is the place of the interjection? 381 to 385. What observations do you make on some interjections?

The pupil has now gone through the most difficult and essential part of the Grammar. He may here begin to read the "Exercises on Conversation" (published by W. ALLAN, London), with great advantage, as the phrases selected in the first and second parts of that work are particularly intended as illustrations of the foregoing rules. This will not only preclude the necessity of going a second time over the Grammar, but will also exercise his memory, and, in making him acquainted with colloquial phraseology, will tend to facilitate his progress in speaking the French language with purity and elegance.

GRAMMATICAL INSTITUTES

OF THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE.

SECOND PART.

SYNTAX.*

386. **SYNTAX** is that part of Grammar which treats of the arrangement and proper use of words, and fixes their place in the sentence or proposition.

387. Syntax principally consists of two parts, *Concord*, and *Government* or *Regimen*.

388. *Concord* is the agreement of one word with another, as the article or the adjective with the noun, the pronoun with the word for which it stands, the verb with its **nominative** or **subject**.

389. *Government* or *Regimen* is the power which one part of speech has over another, in determining the mood, tense, and person of a verb; the cases of a noun, pronoun, &c.

[The word used after a substantive, an adjective, a verb, a preposition, &c., to complete the sense of such words, is better called *complement* than *regimen*.—*L'amour* *de la vertu*; *fidèle* .. *à l'honneur*; *aimer* .. *sa patrie*; *avant* .. *vous*, may serve as examples. *De la vertu* completes the sense of *l'amour*; *à l'honneur*, that of *fidèle*; *sa patrie* completes the sense of *aimer*; and *vous* that of *avant*: the same may be said of the participles and conjunctions, which also require certain words after them to complete the sense which they express.]

390. A *sentence* or *proposition* is the expression of a judgment; that is, an operation of the mind, which affirms or denies a thing upon any subject—*La vertu est aimable*, is a proposition, for I assert that the quality *aimable* belongs to *vertu*.

Vertu is the subject, *est* the verb, *aimable* the attribute.

* This part will contain only such portions of syntax as are unexplained in the foregoing pages.

391. *Le vice n'est pas aimable* is another assertion, in which I deny that the quality *aimable* belongs to *vice*.

[The first proposition is called affirmative ; the second, negative.

There are three sorts of propositions, the principal, the incidental, and the subordinate. These are subdivided into principal absolute, or principal relative ; incidental determinative, and incidental explicative. A proposition is, besides, direct or indirect, full or elliptical, expletive, implicit, &c.]

392. In a sentence there are as many propositions as there are verbs in a personal mood. Thus in the sentence, *La défiance blesse l'amitié, le mépris la tue*, there are two verbs used in a personal mood, *blesse* and *tue* ; and consequently two propositions.

[Considered grammatically, the proposition has as many parts as there are words : it takes the name of *phrase*. Considered logically, it contains but three : the subject, the verb, and the attribute.]

OF THE ARTICLES.

393. The article definite is used before substantives common, expressing a *genus*, a *species*, or an *individual*.

394. (a) The substantive common designates a *genus*, when it represents the totality of objects implied in the substantive.

*Les hommes sont mortels.**

Les enfants sont légers.

L'homme devrait s'attacher à régler ses passions.

[In this last example, *l'homme* signifies *tous les hommes*.

Sometimes the article indefinite is preferred in French, in order to convey an idea of generality. Example : The king ought to be the father of his people. *Un roi doit être le père de son peuple.*]

395. (b) The substantive common designates a *species*, when it expresses a particular class of objects, having some similarity or resemblance to each other.

Les hommes à imagination sont malheureux.

Les enfants studieux sont aimés.

L'homme faible se laisse gouverner.

[*L'homme faible* signifies *tous les hommes faibles*.]

* The English to the examples is now considered unnecessary.

396. (c) The substantive common designates an *individual*, when it presents to the mind the idea of one object only.

Le roi est chéri de ses sujets.

L'Angleterre est un grand royaume.

Le livre que vous lisez est très intéressant.

397. (d) The article is repeated before every substantive.

Le cœur, l'esprit, les mœurs, tout gagne à la culture.

[The suppression of the article sometimes occurs when there are but two substantives often mentioned together, *le flux et reflux*; *les ambassadeurs et serviteurs de Dieu*; or when they are nearly synonymous, *les savanes, ou prairies naturelles*.]

EXERCISE I.

A man who is only sensible of those evils which he feels himself
 § ——— d ——— *sentir lui-même*
 has a hard heart; and if he cannot deny himself any gratification
 || ——— *s'imposer aucune privation*
 he has a narrow soul—Man was born for society; beasts,
 || *bas âme* art. (a) *est né* art. art. (a) art.
 fishes, birds, and even reptiles were created for his use—The
 (a) art. (a) *même* art. (a) P. *usage*
 diseases of the mind are more difficult to cure than those of the
 (b) *maladie* f. *âme* *à guérir*
 body—Weakness, fear, melancholy, and ignorance,
corps art. (d) *faiblesse* art. *crainte* art. *mélancolie* art. ———
 are the sources of superstition—The man whom you saw yester-
 ——— (a) art. ——— (c) *avez vu*
 day is not sociable—The city of Rome was founded 753 years
 (c) *ville* P.
 before Christ—Custom is the legislator of languages—
Jésus Christ (a) art. *usage* (a) *langue*
 The source of all passions is sensibility—Young people are
tout ——— f. † art. (a) art. (b) *jeunes gens*
 inconstant—Innocence of manners, sincerity, obedience,
 art. (b) ——— *mœurs* art. (a) art. (a) *obéissance*
 and abhorrence of vice, inhabit that happy country—Am-
 art. (b) *horreur* art. *habiter* *pays* art.
 bitious men sacrifice [everything] to fortune—The king has been
 (b) *sacrifier tout* † art. (a) (c) *

very ill——Modesty and simplicity are to be preferred to
malade art. (a) art.

ambition and impudence——Astronomy, navigation,
 art. (a) art. *effronterie* art. (a) art. — art.

philosophy, formerly confined within the bounds of Chaldea,
 *renfermer* art. (c) *Chaldée*

Egypt and Greece, are now known to all Europe—A wise
 art. (c) *Égypte* art. (c) *Grèce* *de* (c) ‡

man does not judge by appearances—She has an oval face, a
 (b) *sur* art. (a) ‡ *figure*

smiling countenance, a little mouth, and dark eyes.

|| *riant visage* ‡ *bouche* ‡ *noir*

References.

- (a)
 (b)
 (c)
 (d)

See this Rule.

* It is evident that the speaker, if in London, means the king of England—in France, it would mean the French king. The circumstances indicating the definite sense are often suppressed in both languages.

† When *tout* is used in the sense of *all*, or *the whole of*, it requires the article definite before the following substantive.

‡ The article definite is used after the verb *avoir* before substantives which name something belonging to the body

and are followed by an adjective: *elle a la main blanche*; but the indefinite article must be used when the adjective precedes: *elle a une folle main*. Nouns plural take *de* only if the adjective precedes: *elle a de belles mains*; when the adjective follows, the article definite is used: *il a les yeux bleus*, rather than *des yeux bleus*.

|| When the adjective expresses a quality which belongs to the body as well as the mind, either article may be used: *il a un visage triste*; *il a le cœur dur*. Taste must decide.

§ In general propositions the English often use the indefinite article *a*, the French prefer the definite *le*.

Of the Article continued (see p. 11).

398. (a) The article partitive is used before nouns common, when the word *some* or *any* is either expressed or understood in English.

J'ai *du* papier.
 Vous avez *de la* fortune.
 Nous avons *des* amis.

399. (b) But the article is supplied by the preposition *de*, when the substantive, taken in a partitive sense, is preceded by an adjective.

Donnes-moi *de bon pain*.
 Je bois *d'excellente bière*.
 Il y a *de belles femmes* en Angleterre.
 On voit *de grands effets* nés *de petites causes*.

[When we wish to fix the attention on the substantive, that is, to make it the principal idea, we sometimes, in opposition to the preceding rule, use the article indefinite, as, *voilà de la vraie poésie, c'est la de la bonne philosophie, &c.* We likewise say, (1) in a precise determinate sense, *j'ai du meilleur pain*,* and, (2) in a general sense, *j'ai de meilleur pain*.**]

400. (c) When the adjective and the substantive are so far united as to form but one and the same word, the article partitive must be used.

Des jeunes gens ; des petits-maitres.

[Some authors have used the article definite before a substantive taken in a partitive sense, and preceded by an adjective, but which may be separated from it. *L'autre jour il interrogeait des petits enfants*.—SEVIGNE. *Ils chassaient devant eux des fines et des petits chevaux* (ponies).—CHATEAUBRIAND. *Nous voulions trouver des honnêtes gens*.—MONTESQUIEU. In this case the adjective and the substantive must be considered as forming an inseparable word.]

EXERCISE II.

This fine kingdom has been torn by intestine commotions—It
déchirer civil (a) trouble
 is just that the poor who are willing to labour should have
vouloir — travailler sient
 food in abundance to satisfy the cravings of nature, and
une nourriture abondante besoin art. —
 raiment to defend them from the inclemency of the
 art. (a) *vêtement pl. rigueur*
 weather—There are Spaniards who have sense, but their books
saison Espagnol (c) bon sens
 are absolutely destitute of it: see one of their libraries, and you
manquer bibliothèque f.
 will say that it has been collected by a secret enemy to human
rassembler ennemi de
 understanding—If a philosopher were to live with fops
 art. *raison vivait (c) petit-maitre*
 he would be [laughed at] by the silliest buffoons of society,
jouer mauvais bouffon art.
 and their insipid puns would pass for witty sayings—The
**fade quelibet (b) bon mot*

* No. 1 means: *I have some of the best bread*; No. 2: *I have better bread*.—A. H.

consequences of great passions are blindness of mind and
 ——— † art. *aveuglement* art.

depravity of heart—I speak of good education—There are
 art. *dépravation* art. † *y avoir*

in the remotest part of the forest, lofty poplars, fit for
reculé lieu (b) *grand* *propre à*

building a ship—When I find young men so humble and so
bâtir (c) *jeunes gens*

docile, I never refuse them that information which my studies have
refuser † *lumière pl.* *étude*

enabled me to procure them—History often represents old gen-
mettre en état de art. *présenter* (b)

erals conquered by young soldiers—I have fine pictures in the
vaincre (b) (b) *tableaux*

other room—If I see any birds in my field, I will kill them—I
 (a) *oiseaux* *champ* *tuer*

firmly believe, that good houses, good clothes, good living, with
fermement (b) (b) *habits* (c) *bonne chère*

good laws and liberty, are better than scarcity, anarchy, and
 (b) (d) *valoir mieux* art. (d) *déserte* art. (d)

slavery—Almost all the ancient philosophers were great
 art. (d) *esclavage* *presque* * *ont été* (b)

travellers—He [was very assiduous] to win the affection of the old
voyageur *s'appliquer* *gagner* — †

captains—Forests of black fir shaded us gloomily on our right—
 (a) *ombrager* *tristement* —

Let us propose to ourselves great examples to imitate rather than
se proposer (b) *plutôt*

vain systems to follow—A judicious preacher always recommends
 (b) *système*

those virtues which he thinks his audience practise the least:
 † *croire que* *auditeurs pratiquer le moins* (d)

truth at court, disinterestedness in the city,
 art. *sincérité* art. *sour* (d) art. *dans* *cette*

and sobriety in the country.
 (d) art. d *campagne*.

References.

- (a) } See this Rule.
- (b) }
- (c) }

(d) See Rule (a) page 275.

* This adjective precedes its substanti-

† This expression is used in a deter-

definite, for the word *sous* is neither expressed nor understood before the adjective: so we say, *Le propre des belles actions, la vie des grands hommes*.

‡ *That* and *these* followed by a substantive and a relative, *who*, *which*, must be rendered by the article *celui* in French.

Of the Article continued.

401. (a) The article definite precedes nouns of dignities, titles, and liberal professions, followed by proper names, or preceded by the words *monsieur*, &c.

L'amiral Nelson.
Le maréchal Soult.
Monseigneur l'archevêque.

402. (b) Substantives expressing the titles of persons take the article definite after *monsieur*, *madame*, when they are used ceremoniously.

Monsieur le marquis désire-t-il qu'on mette les chevaux à la voiture ?
Madame la comtesse désire-t-elle qu'on serve le thé ?

403. (d) *Monsieur*, *madame*, *mademoiselle*, are also used with the article before nouns of abuse.

Monsieur l'impudent, mademoiselle la paresseuse.

EXERCISE III.

Colonel Grant was killed at the beginning of the action—Cardinal
 (a) P. tuer (a)

Wolsey was one of the greatest ministers that ever lived—Learn,
 P. furent jamais

Mr. Philosopher, that it is too late for reflection when the
 (d) il n'est plus temps de réfléchir

folly is committed—Prince Gallitzin resigned the command of
 faire une sottise (a) P. remettre

the army to Count Romanzow, and returned to Petersburg—
 Comte (a) P. Pétersbourg

Bishop Burnet very judiciously observes, that the subjects of
 (a) remarquer

a government, which is at once despotic and elective,
 gouvernement en même temps

labour under great disadvantages—Marshal Gerard commanded
 être exposé à inconvénient (a) Gérard

the French army in Belgium—Admiral Vernon, a man of more
 en Belgique (a)

courage than experience, was sent to command a fleet in the
 brave expérimenté P.

West Indies, to distress the enemy in that part of the globe—
Indes Occidentales harasser sur

Mr. Wildman, no doubt you have seen a great many of your
 (d) *Sauvage sans doute que beaucoup*

countrymen who prefer living in the woods; but we think differently
compatriotes vivre penser

—Idle boy! why did you not study your lesson?—My eyes were
 † *pareseux n'avez-vous pas*

fixed on those old men whilst they were thus speaking to me;
vieillard tandis que ainsi

they had a long and rough beard, short and grey hair,
*négligé * barbe blanc * cheveux pl.*

thick eyebrows, lively eyes, a steady countenance, a grave and
 * *sourcil vif * ferme †*

commanding voice, plain and ingenuous manners.
*plein d'autorité * parole simple ingénu || manières.*

References.

(a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.

(d) }
 * See note †, page 277.

‡ The word *monsieur* is here omitted.

|| See Rule (a), page 277.

† See note ||, page 277.

Of the Article continued.

404. (a) Proper names of countries, provinces, rivers, winds, and mountains, are preceded by the article definite.

La France est plus peuplée que l'Espagne.

La Normandie est arrosée par la Seine.

Les Alpes sont plus hautes que les Pyrénées.

L'aquilon n'y souffle jamais.

[The article relates here to a substantive common understood; as, *la contrée appelée France, la rivière nommée Seine, les montagnes appelées Alpes, &c.*

When the names of kingdoms, rivers, regions, &c. are used as regimen of another substantive, they take the article when the sentence does not imply any object of comparison: thus we say, *les villes de l'Asie ont connu le luxe de bonne heure*; but we must say, *les villes d'Asie ne sont pas bâties comme celles d'Europe*, because there is a comparison implied.]

405. (b) Kingdoms, provinces, &c., having the same name with their capital cities, do not take the article.

Naples est un pays délicieux.

Alger est en Afrique.

[In that case the words *royaume, république, lie, province, &c.*, are often used before them. *Les états de Venise, or de la république de Venise.*]

406. (c) The preposition *de* is used without the article, before proper names denoting the countries we leave or come from.

Je viens de Portugal, de Russie, de Suède.

Il est parti d'Espagne, de Hollande, d'Écosse.

407. (d) When the sentence expresses the going to a country, or the living in it, the article is supplied by the preposition *en*.

Nous demeurons en Angleterre, en Irlande.

Nous allons en Suisse, en Italie, en Allemagne.

408. (e) But if the country we live in, are going to, or coming from, is not in Europe, the article is used.

Ils vont au Japon, au Mexique.

Nous arrivons de la Jamaïque, du Canada.

409. (f) Nouns of countries are used without any article after a noun of dignity or title, or more generally after the names of commodities, as, wine, silk, &c. In both cases the noun is used adjectively.

Le roi de Portugal, l'empereur d'Autriche.

Soies d'Italie, vins de France, fruits d'Amérique.

[Observe that we say, *Description de la France*, and *histoire de France*; *les guerres d'Amérique*, or *les guerres de l'Amérique*; *topasse du Brésil*, and *bois de Brésil*—the omission of the article occasioned by the more frequent use of the expression renders the sense more vague and indeterminate.]

EXERCISE IV.

The Rhone is the most rapid river in Europe—The mountains of
(a) ——— *Jénoue m.*

Asia Minor are Olympus, Ida, Taurus—Genoa is a
(a) *Asie Mineure* (a) *Olympe* (a) ——— (a) ——— (b) *Gènes*
maritime country—The Danube and the Rhine take their
(a) ——— m. (a) *Rhin m. avoir*

sources nearly in the same part of Europe—I intend to go
—— *presque* *partis* (a) ——— *avoir dessein de*

to Italy in the spring—The eruption of Vesuvius often causes
 (d) *Italie* au *eruption* (a) *Vésuve*
 great devastations—Geneva was a small republic between France,
ravage (b) *Genève* imp. (a)
 Switzerland, and Savoy—Olympus, Pindus, Parnassus,
 (a) *Suisse* (a) *Savoie* (a) *Pinde* (a) *Parnasse*
 and Helicon, are famous mountains among the poets—I hope to
 (a) *Helicon* *célèbre*
 go next year to the East Indies, and to Hindostan; from
années (e) *Indes Orientales* (e) *Hindoustan*
 thence I shall go to Mexico and Virginia; afterwards I shall
 (e) *Mexique* (e) *Virginie*
 return to France—He likes to travel; he was last year in Italy;
 (d) — *voyager* imp. (d)
 he comes now from Russia; he will stay this winter in England,
 (c) *Russie* *rester* (d) *Angleterre*
 and he will go next spring to Scotland and Ireland; after which
 (d) *Ecosse* (d) *Irlande* *quoi*
 he intends to set sail for America, and after having spent
mettre à la voile (a) *Amérique* *passer*
 two years in the Brazils, he will embark for China and Japan
au Brésil *s'embarquer* (a) *Chine* (a) *Japon*
 —Naples comprehends a part of ancient Campania—The best
 (b) *renfermer* ‡ (a) *Campanie*
 coffee is that which comes from Arabia—The woollens of Segovia
café (a) . . . *drap* *Ségovie*
 are much esteemed, but I prefer those of Catalonia—Sicily is
 (f) *Catalogne* (a) *Sicile*
 the granary of Italy—I have crossed the Thames several times
grenier (a) *traverse* *Tamise*
 in a boat—Europe is bounded on the north by the Frozen Ocean,
 (a) *au* *Mer glaciale*
 on the east by Asia, on the south by the Mediterranean, which
 (a) *Asie* *Méditerranée*
 divides it from Africa, and on the west by the Atlantic, which
 (a) *Afrique* *Atlantique*
 separates it from America—The emperor of Germany and the
séparer (a) *Amérique* (f) *Allemagne*
 king of Prussia went to the congress—Touraine is considered as
 (f) *Prusse* P. *congrès* (a) — *regarder*
 the garden of France—French wines are much esteemed—The
 (a) (f)

[territory of] Mantua, Milan, and Parma, as well
 * *Mantouan* * *Milanois* * *le duché de Parme*
 as the Low Countries and French Flanders, have often been
 † † *Flandre* sing.
 desolated by wars between France and Austria.
ravager art. (a) — (a) *Autriche*.

References.

- (a) } derstood and the adjective only remains
 (b) } — *le Milanois*, that is, *le pays Milanois*.
 (c) } † When a noun of country is qualified
 (d) } by an adjective, the article is used: *Les*
 (e) } *Pays-Bas*.
 (f) } † This adjective precedes its substan-
 * Proper names of countries also take tive.
 the article when the substantive is un-

Of the Article continued.

410. (a) Proper names of persons, though applied to several, do not take the sign of the plural, when they only serve to name persons.

Je n'ai pas vu les Delville.

[The substantive is here a family name, which would be entirely altered by the addition of *s*. *Dupui* and *Dupuis*, *Lavau* and *Lavaux*, *Andrieu* and *Andrieux* are names of different families; hence the invariability of their orthography. *Les Dupui se sont alliés aux Dupuis; les Villars ont intenté un procès aux Villars, qui avaient ajouté un s à leur nom.*

Yet we write in the plural: *Les Césars, les Gracques, les Horaces, les Scipions, les Stuarts, les Guises, les Condés, les Bourbons*, whether in imitation of the Latins who always use the plural, or because these words are rather titles or surnames than proper names, and designate certain classes, certain families, and not individuals.]

411. (b) The article plural is emphatically used before names of men famous in history, or otherwise celebrated; but the names do not take the sign of the plural.

Les plus grands orateurs, tels que les Cicéron et les Démosthènes.

[Here the proper names preserve the singular form though preceded by the article plural; it is because they designate the very individual who bore those names. We say without changing the sense, *tels que Cicéron et Démosthènes*; but the expression will lose all its energy.

Sometimes the article indefinite is used in both languages. *Un César, un Alexandre.*]

412. (c) Proper names take both the article and the sign of the plural, when they are employed as common substantives, *i. e.* to designate individuals similar to those whose name is used by way of comparison.

*Les Virgiles sont rares à présent.**

413. (d) When a proper name is used to denote an individual distinction, it is preceded by the article definite.

La Mérope de Voltaire.

414. (e) The article *la* is used before the names of actresses, dancers, and others, when they are spoken of rather in a contemptuous manner; otherwise *madame*, *mademoiselle*, is and should be preferred.

Madame Catalani, Mademoiselle Mars.

[Formerly the article *la* was used before the names of celebrated actresses or singers, and even before the names of ladies of distinction, but without implying either contempt or lightness of character. Madame de Sévigné frequently uses those expressions.]

415. (f) The article precedes the names of some celebrated Italian poets and painters.

Le Tasse, l'Arioste, le Titien, &c.

[Some are used without the article: *Metastase, Raphaël, Pétrarque, Alfieri, &c.* No rule can be given.]

EXERCISE V.

We have no [personal acquaintance with] the Pinkertons—
connaître personnellement (a)

Racine's *Andromache* is the first tragedy in which a modern
(d) *Andromaque*

author has shown himself the rival of the great tragic writers of
se montrer *écrivain*

Athens—Corneille, Racine, and Voltaire have illustrated the French
Athènes (b) (b) (b)

drama—A parity of sentiments often [brings together] men
scène La ressemblance des rapprocher

of very different conditions; [that is the reason why] Augustus,
voilà pourquoi (b) *Auguste*

Mecenas, Scipio, Richelieu, and Condé, lived [in the greatest
(b) *Mécène* (b) *Scipion* (b) (b) *vivre* *famili-*

* *Virgiles* becomes here a sort of common noun synonymous of *grands poètes*. *Les Virgiles sont rares, means, les grands poètes comme Virgile sont rares.*—A. H.

intimacy] with men of genius—Saint Huberti* charmed all Paris
érement gens d'esprit (e)

by the melody of her voice—Massillons are very uncommon at this
(c) rare

time—The pleadings of Le Maître contain a greater number of
*plaidoyer **

quotations than all the works of Demosthenes and Cicero—The
citation

language of Cicero, Virgil, and Horace, will live for ever in
langue (b) (b) (b) — éternellement par

their writings—Tasso's Jerusalem Delivered, and Ariosto's
*écrit (f) * (d) Jérusalem Délivré (f)*

Orlando Furioso, are two poems which will be for ever the glory
(d) Roland le Furieux à jamais

of Italy—Boileau and Gilbert were the Juvenals of their time—The
Italie (b) (b) (a) ||

Didots and the Crapelets have acquired the reputation of the
(b) (b)

Elzevirs and the Aldes—The two Chéniers were good poets—
(b) (b) (a)

Dubarry was a woman of low birth——Racine's Athalie is the
(e) basse extraction (d) —

master-piece of the French drama—The Apollo di Belvedere
chef-d'œuvre scène française (d) Apollon du Belvédère

and the Venus de Medici are valuable remains of antiquity—A
(d) Médicis précieux art.

foreigner who was at the Parisian Opera, otherwise called the
étranger Opéra de Paris

Royal Academy of Music, thought the ladies who composed the
P. croirs

academy were among the first at court——Having desired his
des de la cour prior

neighbour to tell him the names of those ladies of fashion,
voisin de apprendre grandes dames

the latter answered: the queen of Crete is Pelissier, she was
celui-ci Crète (e) son

originally a stocking-mender; the other, who repre-
premier état était celui de - ravendeuse

sents the princess her sister, is Hermance; her father was a
(e)

* Cécile Clavel, dite SAINT HUBERTI, débuta à l'Opéra en 1777, et fut assassinée à Londres en 1819.—A. H.

cobbler—Cornelle and La Fontaine did not think so—The Creator
savetier (b) † (b) † *penseur*
 of heaven and earth is the God of Christians.
 ‡ ‡ (d) *Dieu Chrétien.*

References.

(a) }
 (b) }
 (c) } See this Rule.
 (d) }
 (e) }

* With Italian names the prepositions *de* and *à* are contracted before the article *le*: *Le Tasse, du Tasse, au Tasse*; not so with French names when the article *le* is part of them: *Le Maître, de Le Maître, à Le Maître* and better, *Lemaître, de Lemaître, à Lemaître*.—A. H.

‡ We often use the possessive *nos*, speaking of great men of our country: *nos Molière, nos Boileau, ne seront jamais oubliés*—in that case the name itself, as in Rule (b), does not take the sign of the plural.

‡ The following proper names, *heaven, earth, paradise, hell*, which are often used without any article in English, require the definite article in French.

‡ Proper names in *al*, when used as common substantives, take *s* for their plural (p. 18).

Of the Article continued.

416. (a) The article indefinite, *a* or *an*, which is used in English before nouns of measure, weight, and number, is translated into French by the definite article.

Il vend son thé quatre shillings *la* livre.
 Cette dentelle coûte vingt francs *l'*aune.

[“Shilling” or “shillings,” is spelt as in English, but is pronounced *chèlin*.]

417. (b) The preposition *par* (per) is used instead of the article indefinite, before substantives that denote *time*, or in mentioning what is paid for salary, wages, attendance, and admittance to public places.

1. Trois francs *par* billet.
2. Un louis *par* semaine.

418 (c) When the price of a thing sold, hired, &c., is not mentioned, the preposition *by* must be rendered by the definite article in the dative case.

1. Travailler *à l'*heure, *à la* journée, *à la* pièce.
2. Vendre *à la* livre, *au* boisseau, *à l'*aune.

EXERCISE VI.

This lace cost me a guinea a yard—We give our servant twenty
dentelle *guinées(a)verges* *
 guineas a year—My master comes twice a week—This
 (b) *an* *doux fois (b) semaines* Cet

lodging is too dear at three guineas a week, but I will take it at
appartement *d* (b) *d*
 ten pounds a month—As soon as he could mount his horse he
livre (b) *dès* *P. pouvoir monter d un cheval*
 resumed his wonted labours, always rising before the sun, tiring
P. reprendre ordinaire fatigue *lasser*
 three horses a day, and exercising his soldiers—Corn
 (b) *faire faire l'exercice d* *grain*
 usually sells by the bushel, cloth by the yard, and sugar by
se vendre (c) *drap* (c) *sucres* (c)
 the pound—Wine which sold last year for two shillings a bottle,
se vendre *—* (a)
 sells now for half a crown—Five hundred men are constantly
d présent un petit écu
 employed in that manufactory; those who work by the day
manufacture *travailler* (c)
 receive each [of them] one guinea a week for their salary; but
chacun un (b) *salaire*
 those who work by the piece, receive no less than six pounds a
 (c) *de* (b)
 month—She gives her music master one guinea a lesson—A taste
 * (b) † *goût*
 for magnificence and a love for virtue are seldom found united
du faste † *de* *se trouver ensemble*
 —Minds debased by a multitude of frivolous cares cannot rise
esprit dégradé *futile* *s'élever*
 to what is truly great—In several counties those plants are
comté *plante f.*
 advertised for half a crown a thousand, whilst in the
annoncé d une demi-couronne (a) *mille* *tandis que*
 nurseries about London they sell for ten, and some-
pépinière aux environs de *se vendre un*
 times fifteen shillings a hundred—Veal and mutton cost ten pence
 — (a) *cent veau mouton un franc*
 a pound—He writes four or five times a year—What a beautiful
 (a) *fois* (b) †
 morning! come, let us walk in the fields.
matinée allons se promener champ.

References.

- (a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }

* The French language does not admit the suppression of the preposition *d* before a noun in the dative, in the same manner as *to* is left out in English, when that noun is followed by the object of the verb.

† In general prepositions the article indefinite is often used in English: the French may have it also, but they prefer the definite; this, therefore, cannot be considered as an absolute rule.

‡ The indefinite article used in English between a pronoun that expresses admiration and a substantive is never used in French.

Of the Article continued.

419. No article is used in French before common substantives taken in an indeterminate sense; that is, which designate neither a genus, a species, nor a particular individual.

Une table de *marbre*; une maison en *bois*.
Un homme sans *mérite*; se conduire avec *sagesse*.

[In these phrases, *une table du plus beau marbre, sans la vertu l'homme ne saurait être heureux; se conduire avec la sagesse d'un philosophe, &c.*, the article is used, as the sense is definite.]

420. (a) When the substantive is used to qualify a preceding noun, the article is supplied by the preposition *de*.

Un jour *de* bonheur.

[In English the qualifying substantive is often placed before the qualified, and the word *of* omitted, as *silk stockings*; in French the order must be altered: *des bas de soie*. When upon the order of the substantive being inverted the sentence requires one of the prepositions *with* or *for*, they are rendered by *à*. *The powder mills*, that is, the mills for powder, *des moulins à poudre*.]

421. (b) A substantive used in the vocative case takes no article.

Fleurs charmantes! par vous la nature est plus belle.

422. (c) The article is not used before the title of a book or an address.

Histoire d'Angleterre—Livre premier, chapitre quatre.
Essai sur le Goût—Préface—Introduction.
Il demeure *rue Richelieu, rue Vivienne*.

EXERCISE VII.

Nations with whom kings do now what they please,
(b) *peuples chez qui* ordonner aujourd'hui vouloir
read your history—Citizens, how long will you support the most
(b) *citoyen jusqu'à quand* soutenir
dangerous enemy of your constitution?—A Roman history from
(c) depuis
the foundation of Rome to the destruction of the empire—When
they are at work, or when they bring their goods to market,
elles à travailler *denrées*

their hair is confined with a silk net—Jealousy is a confused
*elles enveloppent leurs cheveux de * filet*
 mixture of love, hatred, fear, and despair—You will find that
mélange (a) désespoir
 passage page 48, book the second, chapter the seventh, section
 (c) (c) (c) (c)
 the fourth.

References.

(a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }

* See observation on Rule (a).

Of the Article continued.

423. (a) When the noun is governed by an active verb used negatively, the article is not used before that noun.

Elle n'a pas d'argent. Vous n'avez pas d'amis.

[Though the expression employed is negative, yet the sense is sometimes affirmative and positive, in that case the article must be used: as, *Je n'ai pas de l'argent pour le dépenser follement*, which signifies, *J'ai de l'argent, mais ce n'est pas pour le dépenser follement.*]

424. (b) But the article should be used if the noun is followed and modified by an adjective, or by an incidental sentence.

N'affectez point ici des soins si généreux. Ne donnez jamais des conseils qu'il soit dangereux de suivre.

[425. (c) When the verb is both negative and interrogative, the article is used if we wish to express a positive sense, but omitted if the sense is negative.]

N'avez-vous pas *du* pain ?
 N'avez-vous pas *des* enfants ?
 N'y a-t-il *des* voitures ?

N'avez-vous pas *de* pain ?
 N'avez-vous pas *d'*enfants ?
 N'y a-t-il pas *de* voitures ?

426. (d) When substantives are governed by the prepositions *en*, *sans*, *avec*, *entre*, the article is omitted.

Raisonner en homme sensé.
Il est sans amis ; agir avec prudence.
Des querelles entre parents.

427. (e) When the noun following a verb forms with it but one idea, the article is not used before that noun.

Prendre soin. Faire attention.

LIST OF THOSE VERBS MOST IN USE.

With AVOIR. Avoir affaire, attention, besoin, chand, compassion, confiance, connaissance, coutume, dessein, droit, égard, envie, faim, froid, honte, occasion, part, patience, permission, peur, pitié, raison, soif, tort.

CHERCHER fortune, querelle.—COURIR risque.—CRIER vengeance.

DEMANDER avis, compte, conseil, grâce, justice, pardon, raison, satisfaction.—DIRE vrai.—DONNER avis, caution, envie, exemple, leçon, lieu, occasion, ordre, parole, permission, pouvoir, quittance.

ENTENDRE raison.

FAIRE affront, amitié, attention, cas de, grâce, honneur, honte, horreur, injure, justice, marché, naufrage, pitié, plaisir, réflexion, serment, tort, usage, voile.—FILER doux.

LÂCHER prise.

METTRE fin.

PARLER anglais, français, latin, &c.—PERDRE courage, patience.—PLIER bagage.—PORTER honneur, respect.—PRENDRE congé, feu, fin, garde, goût, jour, part, parti, patience, plaisir, possession, séance, soin.—PRÊTER serment.

RENDRE compte, grâce, hommage, justice, raison, service, témoignage, visite.

SAVOIR gré, bon gré, mauvais gré.

TENIR bon, parole, tête.—TIMER avantage or parti de, &c.

428. (f) When the substantive is repeated with a preposition, no article is used.

Promesses *sur* promesses ; de siècle *en* siècle.

Pied *contre* pied ; de nation *d* nation.

429. (g) When the substantive is governed by *sorte*, *genre*, *espèce*, the article is omitted.

Le méchant se laisse entraîner dans *toutes sortes* d'excès.

430. (h) A substantive used adjectively is not preceded by any article.

Son père est *médecin*. Le mensonge est *basseesse*.

[If however the subject used adjectively were attended by an adjective, or preceded by the impersonal *c'est*, the article indefinite should be used : *Son père est un habile médecin. C'est un officier.*]

EXERCISE VIII.

The gods who pitied her fate changed her into a laurel—Have
plaindre *sort* P. *en* (d) (e) *avoir*
 pity on my weakness ; you are all my comfort, and if my life is
pitie de *faiblesse* *consolation*

dear to you, do not refuse me your assistance—Gerbert, a [learned
savant
 man] of the tenth century, passed for a magician, because an Arab
siècle passer pour†† Arabe
 had taught him arithmetic and the first elements of geometry—
enseigner
 Your reflections are just; and I am glad to find that you not
réflexion voir avec plaisir (d) non-
 only read, but that you reflect upon what you read: a common
seulement ordinaire
 reader is satisfied with heaping facts upon facts, and loads his
se contenter de entasser fait (f) charger
 memory without exercising his judgment—He was a shepherd,
exercer (h) berger
 now he is a king—Cicero was no less a philosopher than an orator—
(h) roi (h) (h)
 He is a Frenchman—He is an unhappy Frenchman, who seeks
*(h) C'est (h) * chercher*
 an asylum where he may end his days in peace—Never was an
pouvoir (d) P. ||
 historian more fascinating than Tacitus—Who are you? I tell you
attachant Tacite
 I am a physician. You a physician?—There are different kinds
(h) médecin §
 of memory; his is only a memory of facts—Have you no
(g) la sienne fait (c)
 prejudice [with regard] to this question?—If you promise, keep
préjugé pl. sur & — f. promettre (e) tenir
 your word—It is a kind of life that is not agreeable to me—That
& parole genre (g) plaire
 man is a kind of misanthrope whose oddities are sometimes
espèce (g) — brusquerie
 comical—Never was a king more beloved by his people than
très-plaisant P. || aimé peuple
 William IV.—What was your profession in the abominable country
*— f. ***
 which you inhabited? I was a friar. A friar! and what is that
habiter (h) moine §
 profession?—I assure you he has no such low sentiments—He had
— f. — si bas (b)
 spent ten or twelve years of his life in the preparatory studies
consommer préliminaire

of his art—The empire was now in more skilful hands—I made no
 ——— *avait passé* † *habile* P. (a)
 promise to that man.

References.

- (a) }
 (b) }
 (c) }
 (d) } See this Rule.
 (e) }
 (f) }
 (g) }
 (h) }

nominative, when preceded by *jamais*, never: *Jamais homme n'eut plus d'esprit que Voltaire*.

§ In sentences in which the verb *to be* is understood, and especially in exclamations, the article indefinite is omitted.

** This adjective to precede its substantive.

* Observe that the noun is attended by an adjective. See observation on (h).

† When the noun that follows *en* is partitive plural, *des* may be used.

‡ The article indefinite is elegantly suppressed before a substantive in the

†† The article definite is suppressed after some verbs followed by the preposition *pour*; as, *se donner pour, reconnaître pour*, and after the verbs *créer, nommer, faire, croire, devenir, naître, vivre*, and a few others.

Of the Article continued.

431. (a) When several substantives are enumerated, the article may be used, but the suppression is not less emphatic in French than in English; in that case the last substantive need not be preceded by the conjunction *et*.

Jeu, conversation, spectacle, rien ne la distrait.
Sujets, amis, parents, tout a trahi sa foi.

[In similar sentences, all the nominatives are summed up in one by the word *rien, tout, nul, personne, &c.*; in that sense the verb agrees with this last expression and is singular.]

432. (b) The same takes place after *ne que* in the sense of *nothing but*; but then the conjunction *et* is used before the last noun.

J'ai parcouru ces campagnes ruinées et je n'ai vu qu'abandon et solitude.

433. (c) In the enumeration of substantives, if the first in English is preceded by *neither*, they must all in French be preceded by *ni*, but do not take any article.

Il n'a ni or, ni argent, ni amis.

[Yet we read in Marmontel: *Je ne veux dans un cœur tout à moi ni de l'aigreur ni de l'amertume*, but he might have said, *ni aigreur ni amertume*.]

434 (*d*) The article is omitted before a substantive which serves to characterize or designate another substantive.

Le duc d'York, *prince* du sang.

[This manner of placing the substantive is called *apposition*. It must be observed that, with respect to proper names, the qualifying substantive is often placed first: Lactatius, a Roman, *un Romain nommé Lactatius*; Polybius, the historian, *l'historien Polybe*.]

435. (*e*) However, the article is expressed, if the characterising noun is by way of distinction.

L'histoire de Henri VIII., *le* fameux tyran de l'Angleterre, en est un exemple mémorable.

436. (*f*) The article likewise serves to give grace and elegance to the diction, when it comes before a substantive expressing a quality which the preceding noun possesses in a particular degree.

Athènes, autrefois *le* séjour des beaux-arts, n'est plus qu'un monceau de ruines.

437. (*g*) The article is omitted before a substantive beginning an incidental sentence, which is an observation upon what has been said.

Le traître fut pendu, *supplice* qu'il méritait.

EXERCISE IX.

The cardinal had already secured fifteen voices, a number
 — *s'être déjà* *assuré de* (*g*) *nombre*
 sufficient to exclude any other candidate—They have overturned
suffisant pour *tout* *renverser*
 religion, morality, government, sciences, fine arts, in a word, every
 (*a*) (*a*) *morale* (*a*) (*a*) *beaux-arts*
 thing which constitutes the glory and strength of a nation—These
faire *force f.* *état m.*
 lands produce neither gold, silver, nor precious stones—William,
 (*c*) (*c*) (*c*) *pierre f.*
 the jeweller is arrived; you may easily imagine that I have
 (*e*) *joaillier* *pouvoir bien* *s'imaginer*

asked him several questions concerning you; but though he
faire d votre sujet

seems to be much interested in you, he has owned to me fairly
paraître dans vos intérêts avouer

that your utterance is ungraceful— *Scipio*
avoir une manière de s'énoncer qui n'est point agréable Scipion

Æmilianus destroyed Carthage, a city that had rivalled *Rome*
Emilien P. — (d) rivaliser avec

for more than a hundred years—Pompey, after having been at
pendant plus de — Pompée

the head of the Republic, could not even find a grave in a foreign
P. tombeau

land, where he was murdered; a dreadful instance of the vicissi-
P. assassiné (g) exemple

tudes of fortune—A traveller who directs all his attention to what
voyageur porter sur

concerns the happiness of mankind in a state of society, enters
concerner des hommes l'état social entrer

the cities to study the manners of their inhabitants; he
dans et étudier mœurs habitant

wanders over the country, and examines the condition of the
s'écarter dans les campagnes

peasants; but when he sees nothing but robbery and devastation,
paysan (b) brigandage (b)

tyranny and wretchedness, his heart is oppressed with sorrow
(b) (b) misère oppressé de tristesse

and indignation—Hiero, king of Syracuse, intreated the aid of
— Hiéron (d) P. implorer secours

the Romans against the Mamertines, a little people of Sicily—
Mamertin (d) Sicile

Your friend Mendes, the good Samaritan, dined with me yesterday;
(f) Samaritain

I showed him all the civilities he deserves; I am glad of your
ai eu égards m. charme

connexion with him—This man has neither vices nor virtues;
liaison (c) (c)

neither talents, nor defects, nor passions of any kind—Augustus
(c) (c) défaut Auguste

retired to thorn, an ancient city of Prussia, situated on
P. se retirer (d) Prusse

the Vistula, which was then under the protection of the Poles—
Vistule f. Polonais

The next morning he attended at her door, where he was told
P. se présenter *mais on lui dit*
 the lady was not at home; an answer which surprised him
était déjà sortie * (g)
 the more, as he knew the contrary.
d'autant plus qu'il savait

References.

- (a) }
 (b) }
 (c) } See this Rule.
 (d) }
 (e) }
 (f) }
 (g) }

* The second part of an English sentence, which is an observation upon the first, cannot always be translated literally. Another turn must be given, as in the above sentence: *Cette réponse le surprit, &c.*

Of the Article continued.

438. (a) When two adjectives united by *et* express the qualities of one and the same substantive, the article is not repeated.

Le simple et sublime Fénelon.
Le naïf et spirituel La Fontaine.

[Here we have but one individual to whom these two qualities are ascribed.]

439. (b) This rule is observed whether the adjectives precede or follow the substantive.

L'élégant et fidèle traducteur } de Cornelius-Nepos, l'abbé Paul.*
Le traducteur élégant et fidèle }

440. (c) But when the two adjectives qualify each a substantive, one expressed and the other understood, the article must be repeated, whether the qualities are opposite or not.

Le vieux et le jeune soldat.
L'histoire ancienne et la moderne.
Le premier et le second étage.

[Here we have *two soldiers, two histories, two floors*, the one expressed and the other understood.—*Le vieux et brave soldat*, is only said of one soldier; *le vieux et le jeune soldat*, is said of two: such is now the practice of modern writers and grammarians.]

* There is a third construction which is even more elegant: *L'élégant, le fidèle traducteur de Cornelius-Nepos*.—A. H.

EXERCISE X.

The ancient and modern philosophers are not agreed upon that
 (c) * *s'accorder*
 point—The wise and pious Fénelon has well-grounded rights to our
 — m. (b) *bien acquis droits*
 gratitude—The young and beautiful Églé was at the last concert—
 (b) — m.
 I have read the first and second volumes—The seventeenth and
 (c) * m. (c)
 eighteenth centuries have exhibited the dreadful spectacle of two
 (c) * *terrible*
 powerful kings put to death by their subjects—Great and vigorous
à mort (a) *fort*
 thoughts have always been the offspring of genius—Humble and
pensés *fruit* (b)
 timid innocence should be protected—The English and French
 — f. (c)
 languages are much cultivated—We ought to frequent good and
*langue** *falloir* (c)
 shun bad company—It is very certain that the sixteenth and
très sûr
 seventeenth centuries were marked by great changes and
 (c) * P. *changement*
 discoveries—The prefect and mayors of Paris were introduced to
découverte *préfet* *maire* † P. *présenter*
 the king—If the Italian and Spanish languages are sisters, the
 (c) * *sœurs*
 latter is the prude and the former the coquette—I have seen the
celle-ci *l'autre*
 first and fourth classes—Lord Bolingbroke [was fond of] English,
 (c) *classe** *milord* *aimer* IMP.
 French, and Italian poetry ; but not indiscriminately so.
 (c) *il les aimait différemment.*

References.

(a) }
 (b) } See this Rule.
 (c) }

signifies the *first volume* and the *second volume*.

† The word *maires* is plural, as there are twelve in Paris.

* This noun ought to be singular in French: the sentence is elliptical; it ‡ The adjective must be repeated.

SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVES.

OF THE AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES WITH THEIR
SUBSTANTIVES.

441. (a) The adjective agrees in gender and number with the substantive which it qualifies.

Un homme *vertueux*, une femme *vertueuse*, des enfants *dociles*.

[This and the following rules apply to participles used as adjectives: *Un bienfait reçu, des bienfaits reçus*.]

442. (b) When the adjective relates to two or more substantives of the same gender, it must be plural, and agree with the nouns in gender.

Le riche et le pauvre sont *égaux* devant Dieu.
Ma mère et ma sœur sont *satisfaites*.

443. (c) When the substantives are of different genders, the adjective must be masculine plural.

Le père et la fille sont *bienfaisants*.

[(d) It must be observed that when two substantives of inanimate objects and of different genders are qualified by an adjective, the ear requires that the substantive masculine should come last, if that adjective has a termination peculiar to each gender, such as, *bon, bonne, &c.* Thus we say: *la bouche et les yeux ouverts*, and not *les yeux et la bouche ouverts*.]

444. (e) The adjective placed after two or several substantives not joined by the conjunction *et*, agrees with the last, when the substantives are nearly synonymous.

Il a montré une réserve, une retenue *digne d'éloges*.
Toute sa vie n'a été qu'un travail, qu'une occupation *continue*.
Aristide avait une modestie, une grandeur d'âme *peu commune*.

[In the first two sentences there is properly but one substantive to qualify, since but one idea is expressed; in the last sentence, though the substantives *modestie* and *grandeur d'âme* are far from being synonymous, yet the adjective agrees with the last substantive, which is more forcible and energetic than the word *modestie*.—For the same reason the conjunction *et* cannot be admitted here: a fault which inattention often commits, but which reason disapproves.]

445. (*f*) When the substantives are joined by the conjunction *ou*, the adjective agrees with the last noun.

Un courage *ou* une prudence *étonnante*.

[This conjunction excludes one of the substantives, and it is with the last that the agreement takes place, as striking the mind more forcibly.]

446. (*g*) The adjectives *nu*, *demî*, *excepté*, *supposé*, are not declined before a substantive.

Nu-tête; une *demî*-heure; *excepté* ces personnes; *supposé* ces faits.

447. (*h*) But the same adjectives agree when they are placed after the substantives.

Tête *nue*; une heure et *demie*; ces personnes *exceptées*; ces faits *supposés*.

[(*i*) The adjective *feu* is also irregular. We say *feu la reine*, in a country where there is a queen living, and *la feue reine*, in the contrary case.]

448. (*k*) An adjective used adverbially, that is, serving to modify a verb, always remains undeclined.

Ces dames parlent *bas*. Ces livres coutent *cher*. Ces fleurs sentent *bon*.

[449. (*l*) The adjective is often used substantively: in that case, when preceded by the article, it relates to a noun indeterminate and understood: *si l'on n'imprimait que l'utile, il y aurait cent fois moins de livres*. *Ouvrage* is understood. After the verb *être*, the adjectives used substantively are much more expressive than the substantives themselves. *C'est un méchant* is more energetic than *il a fait une méchanceté*. The reason is, that the adjective denotes habit, and the substantive only an act.]

EXERCISE XI.

Socrates has shown, at the hour of death, an extraordinary
.... *montrer* (e)

calmness and moderation—Cæsar possessed astonishing courage
calme *modération* César avoir (e) *étonnant* — m.

and intrepidity—The uncle and nephew, equally industrious, have
† *intrépidité* f. (b) *laborieux*

rendered many services to the state—The aunt and niece,
beaucoup de — *état*

equally charitable, have done much good to the poor—There are
(b) — *faire* *bien* *pauvre* pl.

many men well versed in authors, who cannot quote them
(a) *versé* *auteur* *citer*

correctly—An orator does not like to stop short—The light
 (k) *juste* *aimer d demeurer* (k) *court*
 of the sun comes to us in less than eight minutes and a half—The
arriver *de* — f. (h)
 mother and daughter are as thoughtless and negligent as the
 (b) (b)
 father and son are prudent and attentive—The duty of a good son
 (b) (b)
 is to make his father and mother happy—Courage and prudence
de rendre (c) — m. — f.
 united constitute a good general—Give me half a guinea and you
 (c) *réunis faire* *le* (g) *guinée* f.
 will then only owe me a guinea and a half—That actor played with
 (h) *acteur*
 charming taste and dignity—He honours literature with an
 (d) *goût* *noblesse* *lettres d'*
 attachment and a protection worthy of a great minister—The late
attachement m. † — f. (e) (i)
 queen was an accomplished woman—Twenty feet in height—That
accompli ||
 book is three inches thick—He goes barefoot—If the living
d'épaisseur (g) (l) *vivant*
 do not intimidate you, what have you to fear from the dead?
craindre (l) *mort*
 You will be stopped in your march by a river three hundred feet
 broad—The walls of Algiers are sixteen feet thick, and thirty
 * *largeur* *Alger* *
 feet high—This room is fifty feet long, twenty-four wide, and
 * *
 fifteen high.
 *

References.

- (a)
 (b)
 (c)
 (d)
 (e)
 (f) } See this Rule.
 (g)
 (h)
 (i)
 (k)
 (l)

* There are three different ways of translating the adjectives of dimension into French: *un mur de vingt pieds de haut*, or *un mur haut de vingt pieds*, or even *un mur de vingt pieds de hauteur*; but observe that the English construe

these adjectives with the verb *to be*, while the French generally prefer the verb *avoir*. If the verb *être* is used, it must be immediately followed by the preposition *de*. *Le fossé est long de quarante pieds et large de trois*: or, *Le fossé a quarante pieds de longueur sur trois de largeur*.—When there are two or three dimensions, the conjunction *and* is elegantly rendered by *sur*.

† The conjunction *and* must not be expressed in French.—See observation to Rule (e).

|| The preposition *in*, before a substantive of dimension, is more frequently rendered by *de* than *en*.

PLACE OF THE ADJECTIVES.

OBSERVATION.—It has been said (page 22), that the French adjectives generally follow their substantives. A list of exceptions has even been given, which was *then* sufficient; but as the pupil is now far advanced in his grammar, we shall subjoin a few observations and rules on this most intricate point of the language.

It may be established as a general principle, that the adjective precedes or follows its noun, according to the sense we wish to convey. When placed before the substantive, it is more intimately united with it, and has a more forcible meaning, yet it must be remembered that taste and a delicate ear will generally direct the choice.

450. Monosyllabic adjectives are usually placed before the substantive they qualify, unless they are united to another adjective with the conjunction *et*.

Un *bon* ami ; un *beau* jour.

Un ami *bon et complaisant* ; un jour *beau et agréable*.

451. The past participle used adjectively is always placed after its substantive.

Un homme *instruit* ; une action *dépendue*.

452. Adjectives expressing physical, that is, exterior or accidental qualities, are generally placed after their substantives.

Une table *ronde* ; un ruban *vert* ; une surface *unie*.

Un instrument *sonore* ; une odeur *délicieuse* ; un fruit *amer*.

[If we say: les *vertes* prairies; les *blonds* épis; la *blanche* aubépine; les *noirs* soucis; la *sombre* jalousie, &c.; it is because the adjective precedes its substantive whenever it expresses an habitual, inherent quality; it is then rather an epithet than an adjective. Thus we say: un *fidèle* ami, and not un *fidèle* homme; une *basse* intrigue, and not une *basse* action; un *adroit* fripon, and not un *adroit* voleur.]

453. When the adjective is governed by the verb *to be*, it always follows that verb.

Il est *aimable* ; elle est *douce et modeste*.

454. In exclamations, the adjective generally precedes its substantive.

Aimable enfant ! *charmante* femme ! quelle *étrange* démarche !

455. When an adjective is modified by an adverb, or when it governs a preposition, it always follows the substantive.

Homme extrêmement fier ; malheur commun à tous.

456. When, on the contrary, the substantive has a government, the adjective is placed before the substantive if custom allows it.

*L'élégant traducteur des Géorgiques.
L'immortel auteur de Télémaque.*

457. In the elevated or poetical style, the adjective may sometimes follow the verb, though far from its noun.

Les bergers, loin de secourir le troupeau, fuient, tremblants, pour se dérober à sa fureur.—Dans la langueur qui l'accable, ce héros hésite et balance incertain.

458. Some adjectives change their signification according to the place they occupy.

*Un honnête homme, an honest man.
Un homme honnête, a polite man.*

[459. The following are most commonly used : *Un brave homme*, an honest man ; *un homme brave*, a brave man—*Un bon homme*, a simple man ; *un homme bon*, a good-natured man—*Un grand homme*, a great man ; *Un homme grand*, a tall man—*Un pauvre homme*, a simpleton ; *un homme pauvre*, a poor man—*Un cruel enfant*, a teasing child ; *un enfant cruel*, a cruel child—*Un furieux animal*, a huge animal ; *un animal furieux*, a furious animal—*Une certaine nouvelle*, a certain piece of news ; *une nouvelle certaine*, authentic news—and a few others.]

460. Adjectives of several syllables are seldom elegantly used before monosyllabic substantives.

461. Adjectives, the terminations of which do not end with *e*, are still more intolerable before their nouns.

* Yet we say, *jolis airs*, but it is an exception, and if there are any others they are but few.

462. Plural adjectives unite well with substantives beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; the same may be said of those which in the singular end with an *x*.

Brillantes actions; courageux ami; heureux artifice, &c.

463. Masculine adjectives, qualifying a substantive of a feminine termination, that is, ending in *e* or *es*, are more harmonious after than before; *astres brillants*, and not *brillants astres*: but feminine adjectives or those ending in *e* are more elegantly placed before than after.

Brillante lumière; vaste champ.

OBSERVATION.—The preceding observations may not be deemed useless, yet, not to omit anything which may assist the pupil in his difficulties, we will here subjoin

464. 1° A LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL ADJECTIVES

That usually follow their nouns.

ABUSIF, actif, adroit, anglais, annuel, anonyme, asiatique, atroce, attentif, avéré, azuré.

BADIN, belliqueux, blanc, boiteux, bondissant, bouffon, brûlant, brun, bruyant.

CADUC, calme, capital, captif, chagrin, chancelant, circonspect, complaisant, concis, considérable, contraire, curieux, court.

DÉCISIF, délicat, désert, direct, dormant.

ÉLOQUENT, enchanteur, ennemi, entier, épique, épistolaire, étranger, exact, expressif.

FAMILIER, féminin, fidèle, figuré, fixe, florissant, fortuné, fou, français, and all national adjectives.

GAI, gémissant, guerrier.

HARMONIEUX, humide.

IMAGINAIRE, infidèle, inhumain, inique, instructif.

JAUNE.

LABOURABLE, lent, littéral.

MATERNEL, médiocre, meurtrier, mordant, mourant, must.

NATUREL, nécessaire, négociable, net.

OCULAIRE, oisif, onéreux, opiniâtre, ordinaire, original.

PATERNEL, périodique, perpétuel, personnel, pervers, piquant, plaintif, poétique, politique, précis, prématuré, prochain, public, puéril, pur.

RECONNAISSANT, réel, respectueux, romain, royal, rusé.

SAVANT, satirique, sauvage, scandaleux, sec, sentimental, serein, servile, simple, sincère, sociable, somptueux, soudain, spécieux, stérile, supérieur, superstitieux.

TARDIF, taciturne, triomphal.

UNANIME, uni, universel, usé.

VÉNÉRABLE, verbal, vicieux, vindicatif, viril, voisin.

465. 2° A LIST OF THOSE ADJECTIVES

Which generally precede their Nouns.

AMPLE, ancien.

BEAU, bon, brave.

CHER.

DERNIER, digne, divers, docte, doux.

FAUX, feint.

GRAND, gros.

HABILE.

JEUNE, joli.

PRINCIPAL.

RICHE.

SAGE, saint, sot.

TRISTE, tiers, triple.

VAIN, vaste, vieil, vieux, vilain.

466. 3° A LIST OF THOSE ADJECTIVES

That may precede or follow the Nouns they modify, but the place of which may finally be determined by taste.

ABSURDE, affreux, agréable, ardent, auguste, austère.

BAS, brillant, brusque.

CÉLESTE, charmant, chaste, chétif, commun, coupable, criminel, cruel.

DANGEREUX, détestable, divin, douloureux, douteux.

EFFRAYANT, égal, élégant, épais, épouvantable, étonnant.

FÂCHEUX, fatal, faux, flatteur, folâtre, fort, fou, fougueux, fréquent, futur.

GROTESQUE.

HORRIBLE.

IMPORTUN, inévitable, insigne.

LÉGER.

MALHEUREUX, misérable, modeste.

NAÏF, nouveau.

ODIEUX.

PAREIL, parfait, perfide, pompeux, précieux, profond, prompt.

RARE, riche, ridicule, rigide.

SACRÉ, sain, salutaire, sanglant, sévère, solitaire, superbe, suprême.
 TENDRE, terrible, timide.
 UTILE.
 VÉRITABLE, vil.

467. 4° A LIST OF THE ADJECTIVES

Which in simple style follow their Substantives, but precede them in poetry, or in the oratorical style.

ABONDANT, accablant, admirable, affligeant, altier, amer, antique, assidu, assoupissant, aveugle.

BIENFAISANT, blond, burlesque.

CAPRICIEUX, champêtre, clairvoyant, constant, courageux, crédule, creux.

DÉDAIGNEUX, difforme, docile, doux.

ÉCLATANT, effrayant, effroyable, emphatique, équitable, éternel, étonnant.

FANATIQUE, faible, farouche, fastueux, fatal, féroce, fertile, fier, formidable, fragile, frêle, frivole, froid, frugal, funèbre, futile.

HÉROÏQUE, heureux, humble.

ILLUSTRE, impitoyable, implacable, imprudent, inaltérable, incommode, inconcevable, inconstant, indigne, ineffable, inégal, infernal, ingénieux, injuste, innocent, innombrable, insipide, invincible, invisible.

LAMENTABLE, langoureux, languissant, lointain, lugubre.

MALIN, maudit, méprisable, monstrueux.

NAISSANT, nocturne, noir.

OBSCUR, orgueilleux.

PAISSIBLE, pénible, pernicieux, pieux, présomptueux, preux, pudique.

RAPIDE, redoutable, riant, robuste, rude, rustique.

SECRÉT, solide, sombre, sûr.

TÉNÉBREUX, tranquille, tumultueux, tutélaire.

VERT, vertueux, vulgaire.

GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

468. (a) The government of an adjective is either a substantive or a verb preceded by one of the prepositions *d, de, dans, en, sur, &c.*

Digne *de* votre amitié ; riche *en* vertu ; lent *d* servir ses amis.

469. (b) The following adjectives require the preposition *de* before a substantive or a verb.

Ami, avare, avide, capable, chagrin, complice, content, contrit, coupable, curieux, dénué, dépendant, dépourvu, désireux, différent, digne, doué, ennemi, envieux, exempt, fier, franc, furieux, glorieux, heureux, ignorant, impatient, incapable, inconsolable, indépendant, indigne, inquiet, jaloux, joyeux, las, libre, malheureux, mécontent, plein, prodigue, reconnaissant, sûr, susceptible, triste, vain, veuf, vide, *and a few others.*

Tout l'univers est *plein de sa magnificence.*
Nul n'est *exempt de servir sa patrie.*

470. (c) Adjectives expressing the *end*, the *tendency*, *habit*, *disposition*, *resemblance*, *fitness*, or *unfitness*, require the preposition *à* before a verb or a substantive.

Accessible, actif, adroit, agile, agréable, aisé, analogue, âpre, ardent, attentif, avantageux, cher, commode, conforme, contraire, convenable, désagréable, difficile, dispos, docile, dur, égal, enclin, étranger, exact, facile, favorable, fidèle, funeste, impénétrable, importun, incommode, inconnu, indifférent, indispensable, inférieur, inhabile, inutile, lent, malaisé, nécessaire, nuisible, obstiné, opposé, pareil, paresseux, pernicieux, porté, préférable, profitable, prêt, prompt, propice, propre, salutaire, semblable, sensible, sujet, supérieur, utile, *and perhaps a few others.*

Il est *accessible à tous ses sujets.*
L'ignorance est toujours *prête à s'admirer.*

471. (d) When the adjectives *doux*, *agréable*, *pénible*, *horrible*, *beaux*, *facile*, *utile*, &c., are followed by an infinitive as their regimen, that infinitive has a passive signification.

La bouillante jeunesse est *facile à séduire.*

472. (e) Some adjectives are followed by other prepositions; the principal are :

Abondant en —	inconciliable avec —
affaissé sous —	juste envers —
alarmant pour —	stérile en —
expert en —	tranquille sur —
fertile en —	zélé pour —
incompatible avec —	

Notre siècle est *fertile en sots admirateurs.*

473. (f) Some adjectives govern sometimes one preposition, sometimes another; thus we say :

Comparable à — (or) avec —	affable	} à — (or) envers —
étranger à — (or) dans —	comptable	
fidèle à — (or) en —	cruel	
ignorant en — (or) sur —	indulgent	
célèbre en — (or) par —	ingrat	

riche	} en — (or) de —	endurei dans — à — (or) con-
pauvre		tre —
aveugle sur — (or) dans —		sévère pour — envers — (or) à
inquiet sur — (or) de —		l'égard de —
insolent dans — (or) avec —		

Soyez *pauvres en or*, et *riches en vertus*.

Le style moderne est *riche de mots* et *pauvre d'idées*.

[447. (g) Many adjectives change the preposition they govern, according as they are followed by a noun of person or thing—by a substantive or a verb :

- 1° With a noun of person, we say :

{	assidu auprès —	}	à — (or) envers —
	reconnaissant envers —		
	comptable		
	responsable		
- 2° With the name of a thing :

{	assidu à —	}	de —
	reconnaissant		
	comptable		
	responsable		
- 3° With a substantive, we say :

{	curieux	}	de — (or) en —
	heureux		
	ingénieux pour —		
	habile dans — (or) en —		
	paresseux à —		
- 4° With a verb :

{	curieux	}	de —
	heureux		
	ingénieux		
	habile		
	paresseux à — (or) de —		

Il s'estimait *responsable* à Dieu, *aux* hommes et à lui-même, *de* la grâce qu'il avait reçue en quittant le parti de l'erreur.

Les hommes délicats sont *ingénieux pour les plaisirs* des autres.

Le vice est *ingénieux à se déguiser*.]

475. (h) Some adjectives do not govern anything, having of themselves a determinate signification.

Cet homme est *intrépide* ; les droits de l'amitié sont *inviolables*.

476. (i) There are adjectives which govern *de* with *il est* and *à* with *c'est*.

Il est doux *d'observer* les lois de l'amitié ; *c'est* or *cela est* doux *au* toucher.

EXERCISE XII.

It is an agreeable thing to live with one's friends—Self-love
il est (i) *vivre* *amour-propre*
 makes us fond of those who are useful to us—It is horrible to think
aimer (c) *il* (i)
 so—A young lady, mild, polite, and delicate, who sees in the
jeune personne (h) (h) (h)
 advantages of birth, riches, wit and beauty, nothing but incitements
encouragement
 to virtue, is very certain of being beloved and esteemed by every
(b) assuré
 body—Rousseau, endowed with a strong and fiery imagination,
doué (b) *bouillant*
 was all his life subject to frequent fits of misanthropy, and to all
sujet (c) *accès* (c)
 the variations attendant upon it—You are not able to construe
qui en sont la suite *capable* (b) *expliquer*
 that author—He is insensible to all the remonstrances of his friends
 — (c)
 —Voltaire was always greedy of praise and insatiable of glory—
avide (b) *louange* pl. — (b)
 The age of Louis XIV. is the most brilliant era of French literature
siècle || *époque* *littérature*
 —La Fontaine's fables are easy to learn—An honest man is always
 (d)
 inclined to think well of others—Devotion is not incompatible with
porté (c) (e)
 agreeable manners—There is no book comparable to the Bible—
aucun (f)
 Charles X. has left the Tuileries for Holyrood, and Louis-Philippe
 ||
 the First, the Palais-Royal for the Tuileries—Sully was the beloved
 || *chéri*
 minister of Henry the Fourth.

References.

- (a)
 (b)
 (c)
 (d)
 (e) } See this Rule.
 (f)
 (g)
 (h)
 (i)

|| The ordinal numbers used in English with names of sovereigns, are translated by the cardinal numbers, except *premier* and sometimes *second*; the article is omitted: *Léopold I.* (*Premier.*) *Charles II.* (*Second.*) *George III.* (*Trois.*) The French say, *l'empereur Charles Quint*,* and *le pape Sixte Quint*.

* And not *Charles Cinq*, which means Charles V. of France or of any other country. *Sixte Quint* is so called from the Latin, *Stixus Quintus*.—A. H.

SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUNS.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

477. (a) A personal pronoun used as nominative precedes the verb which it governs.

*J'inventai des couleurs, j'armai la calomnie.
J'intéressai sa gloire : il trembla pour sa vie.*

[The ellipsis of the pronoun nominative already expressed renders the sentence more rapid. *Il entre, sort, revient.* It is repeated if we wish to give more energy to the phrase. *Il s'écoute, il se plaint, il s'adonne, il s'aime.*]

478. (b) This rule has four exceptions. 1° In interrogative phrases the pronoun nominative is placed after the verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle.

Où suis-je ? qu'ai-je fait ? que dois-je faire encore ?

479. (c) 2° The nominative pronoun follows a verb in the subjunctive when no conjunction is expressed, or when the verb expresses a doubt.

Puissé-je de mes yeux y voir tomber la foudre !
Dussé-je après dix ans voir mon palais en cendre.†
En croirai-je mes yeux ?*

480. (d) 3° When the verb forms an incidental proposition, showing that we quote the words of some person, the pronoun nominative follows the verb.

"Je ne serai jamais heureux," me disait-il souvent.

[There are only seven verbs which, in this case, require the nominative after them, though the sentence is not interrogative. They are : *dire, répondre, répliquer, repartir, continuer, poursuivre, and s'écrier.*]

481. (e) 4° When the verb is preceded by some of these words, *aussi, peut-être, encore, en vain, à peine, du moins,*

* i.e. *Je désire que je puisse de mes yeux y voir tomber la foudre.*

† i.e. *Bien que je dusse voir mon palais en cendre.*—A. H.

au moins, inutilement, and rarement, the nominative pronoun may follow the verb.

*Peut-être avez-vous raison; aussi est-il votre ami.
Inutilement voudrais-je me persuader que*

[This rule is not of imperative necessity, for we may say, *peut être vous avez raison, aussi il est votre ami*; but then the expression seems to have neither the same elegance nor the same energy.]

482. (*f*) Personal pronouns, used as the objects of a verb, precede it.

Les ennemis des Juifs m'ont trahi, m'ont trompé.

[These phrases: *Je le veux voir, je veux le voir; il se peut faire, il peut se faire*, were formerly indifferently used; now the second construction is preferred.]

483. (*g*) The repetition of personal pronouns used as nominatives, is indispensable, 1° When the propositions are united by any conjunction, except *et, ou, ni, mais*.

Il est savant quoiqu'il soit bien jeune.

484. (*h*) 2° When we pass from a negative to an affirmative sentence.

Je ne plie pas et je romps.

[But we may say, *je plie et je ne romps pas*, or *je plie et ne romps pas*, as the first proposition is affirmative.—Except the two above rules, taste, the ear, or the necessity of clearness, must direct the choice.]

485. (*i*) 3° The pronoun nominative is also repeated when the verbs are of different tenses.

L'homme est toujours le même; il a été, il est, il sera ennemi du repos.

[Many instances may be found, however, of the pronoun nominative not repeated, though the verbs are in different tenses. Fénelon said: *Il pleurait de dépit et alla trouver Calypso*; or even when they pass from the affirmative to the negative: *J'ai trompé les mortels, et ne puis me tromper*.—Voltaire, in *Mahomet*.]

486. (*k*) The personal pronouns, used as the objects of verbs, are always repeated before each verb.

Elle *me* plaît et *m'*enchante.
 Son visage odieux *m'*afflige et *me* poursuit.
 Il l'a vu et *lui* a parlé.

[With compound tenses it is optional to repeat or not the pronoun accusative, as, Il *m'a* loué et *m'a* récompensé *généreusement*; or, Il *m'a* loué et récompensé *généreusement*. Taste must decide.]

EXERCISE XIII.

"You see," said he, "the frightful condition [to which] I am
 (d) P. affreux état où
 reduced."—"Why," answered I, "did you not tell it me sooner?"
 P. (d) dire

—"I could not inform you of it before," replied he.
 P. (d) répliquer

"Nevertheless," retorted I, bluntly, "you have often seen
cependant P. (d) repartir plusieurs fois
 me."—"Oh!" continued he, "I never dared to do it."—"You
 (d) P. oser

should," pursued I, with warmth, "be bolder with the
 P. (d) poursuivre
 best of your friends."—"Ah!" exclaimed he, with an emotion of
 (d) s'écrier P.

the liveliest gratitude, "you have rendered me too many services for
 me to presume to ask another."——I cannot describe all the
 oser en demander un nouveau pouvoir

great actions of Turenne, and yet I could wish not to omit any—
 — f. (h) vouloir omettre

My dear child, I love you, and I shall never cease to love you;
 (a) (i)

but it is that very love that I have for you, which obliges me to
 même amour (a) obliger à
 correct you for your faults, and to punish you when you deserve it
 reprendre de mériter

—You shall love the Lord your God, and observe his law—
 †

Grace spoils nothing; it adds to beauty, heightens modesty,
 bonne grace gâter * (g) ajouter (g) relever

and gives it lustre—It is taste that selects the expressions, that
 (g) choisir (k)

combines, arranges, and varies them, so as to
 (k) (k) de manière à ce qu'elles

produce the greatest effect—A new custom was a phenomenon in
 phénomène

Egypt, for which reason there never was a people that preserved
aussi (e) *y avoir* P. *conserver*
 so long its customs, its laws, and even its ceremonies—May you
ses ses même ses (c)
 live for ever happy in the bosom of your family! May you fulfil
vivre à jamais sein (c)
 the promise you have given me!—I must see my son, were he
faire vouloir (c) *devoir*
 to stay but three days with me—Have I not a thousand things to
 (b) *mille*
 say to him before his departure for America?—Your brother
départ
 sends me word that he is ill.
écrire (f)

References.

- (a) }
 (b) }
 (c) }
 (d) }
 (e) }
 (f) } See this Rule.
 (g) }
 (h) }
 (i) }
 (k) }

† When the first verb is followed by its accusative, the pronoun nominative is repeated, though the two propositions be united with *et*.

* Here we have several propositions united with *et*; the pronoun nominative may therefore be suppressed, which is often the case with pronouns of the third person, before verbs in the same tenses.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

487. (a) When the possessive pronoun in English is joined to a noun denoting a part of the possessor's body, such as the *head*, the *arm*, or anything which may be considered belonging to it, as the *life*, the *voice*, &c., that possessive pronoun is usually changed into a personal conjunctive pronoun and the definite article prefixed to it.

1. Ils *lui* coupèrent *le* bras (not *son bras*).
2. Elle s'est coupée *au* doigt, *she has cut her finger*.*

488. (b) The personal pronoun is supplied by the article definite when the possessor is nominative to a verb.

Le général eut *la* tête emportée.
 J'ai mal à *la* tête.
 Je me suis blessé à *la* main.

[When I say: *Je me suis blessé à la main*, it is evident that I speak of my own hand. The use of the pronoun possessive would be an error.

489. (c) It is sometimes optional to use the article or the pronoun possessive: *il s'écria en élevant sa tête*, or *la tête*, *au dessus de l'eau*.—But when the noun is governed by a preposition, the possessive pronoun must absolutely be used. *Il montra sur son visage une joie sensible de voir, &c.*]

* And not *Elle s'est coupé le doigt*, which means, *she has cut off her finger*.—A. H.

490. (d) The possessive pronoun is used when we speak of an habitual distemper known to the person we address.

*Ma goutte m'a repris.
Croyez-vous que mon pied guérisse?*

491. (e) The possessive pronouns *its* and *their* are expressed by *en*, placed before the verb, with the definite article prefixed to the noun, whenever the possessor being mentioned in the first proposition, the possessive and the thing possessed are in the second proposition.

J'habite la campagne; les agréments en sont sans nombre.

[In that case the word *en* may be rendered by *of it*, *of them*, &c.

There are examples of similar phrases where the pronoun possessive has been used: *La patience est amère, mais son fruit est doux*; but they are seldom employed, and for that reason, more energetic.—If the possessor is a person, the thing possessed must be preceded by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, instead of *en* and the article: *Cet homme est très savant: on recherche sa société.*]

492. (f) In other cases, these pronouns are literally translated into French by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leur*, *leurs*, after a preposition.

Paris est une ville remarquable, les étrangers admirent la beauté de ses édifices.

[The pronouns are also used when the thing possessed is the nominative to a verb expressing an action: *Ces arbres sont bien exposés; mais leurs fruits ne mûrissent pas.*]

EXERCISE XIV.

He has lost his sight—I have a pain in my side—I fear lest the
(b) (b)

bad examples which he has before his eyes should make him
exemple m. (b)

forsake the path of virtue—I cannot go out; the gout has
abandonner sentier m. sortir

swelled my feet—My cough does not allow me a moment's repose
(a) (d) *toux laisser un instant de repos*

—A long beard hangs down upon his breast—Twenty thousand men
descendre (c) poitrine

lost their lives in that battle—Lisbon is a large city ; its situation
 (b) *bataille* *Lisbonne* *ville* (e)
 is very convenient for trade—How do you like this country-seat?
commode *trouver* *château*
 Is not its situation pleasing?—This is a small house, which has its
 (e) *charmant* *Voici* (f)
 advantages—There is a very large orchard behind the house ; its
avantage *verger* m. (e)
 • trees are well planted, and its fruit excellent—London has its
 (e) *fruits* — (f)
 beauties : I admire the width of its streets ; its regular buildings
 (f) (f)
 please at first sight ; its ships bring to it the riches of all
au premier coup d'œil (f)
 countries ; its trade produces immense resources—The Golden age
pays (f) *âge d'or*
 has only appeared on the earth ; Crime soon took its place—She
n'a fait que paraître — m. * * — f.
 owes me her life—This is a very beautiful tree, but its fruits [are
 (a) (f)
 good for] nothing—This river is not very large, but its banks are
valoir (e)
 very steep.
escarpé.

References.

(a)
 (b)
 (c)
 (d)
 (e)
 (f)

See this Rule.

* When the possessor is a substantive personified, the pronoun possessive is used instead of *en*.

OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

493. (a) The demonstrative pronouns, *ce*, *cela*, are used as nominatives to the verb *être*.

C'est vrai, *cela* est vrai.
C'est bien fâcheux, *cela* est bien fâcheux.

[In the elevated style, *cela* is preferable to *ce*, which is principally used in familiar language.—*Cela* is more determinate, more precise, than *ce*; as nominative to another verb, *cela* is also proper: *Cela me plaît.*]

494. (b) When *ce* is immediately followed by *être* and a substantive or a pronoun, the verb takes the number of that substantive or pronoun.

Je lis et relis La Fontaine ; *c'est* mon auteur favori.
Lisez Bossuet et Fénelon, *ce sont* deux grands écrivains.

495. (c) When *ce* and the verb *être* come immediately before *nous* or *vous*, the verb remains in the singular.

C'est nous qui désirons votre bonheur.

496. (d) The verb *être* remains also in the singular when it precedes the genitive or dative of another verb.

C'est aux vertus que nous devons nos premiers hommages.
C'est des contraires que résulte l'harmonie du monde.

[The reason of this rule is, that in these two sentences there is an inversion, the preposition and the substantive plural after *c'est* belonging to the verb which follows. 1. *Nous devons nos premiers hommages à la vertu.* 2. *L'harmonie résulte des contraires.*]

497. (e) *What* in the sense of *that which* is thus declined.

Nom.	<i>Ce qui</i> —me plaît.
Gen.	<i>Ce dont</i> —je me plains.
Dat.	<i>Ce à quoi</i> —vous pensez.
Acc.	<i>Ce que</i> —vous faites.

498. (f) When *ce qui*, *ce dont*, &c., begin a sentence of two parts, *ce* is usually repeated before the verb *être*, provided it be followed by another verb, a pronoun, or a substantive.

Ce qui l'afflige, *c'est* de n'avoir pas réussi.
Ce que je ne puis souffrir, *c'est* l'insolence.

[The repetition of *ce* renders the expression more graceful and energetic. I find in Fénelon : *Ce qui les surprit davantage, fut le soin qu'il prit des funérailles d'Hippas.* We see that Fénelon did not think proper to insert the pronoun *ce*, which would certainly have given more force to the expression.—But it is now a fault.]

499. (g) *Ce* is suppressed when the second verb is followed by an adjective or a participle.

Ce dont vous me parliez est arrivé.

500. (h) The demonstrative *ce* serves also to recapitulate the different nominatives in a sentence.

Taire un secret, oublier une injure, bien user de son loisir, ce sont trois choses extrêmement difficiles.

[We might have said *sont trois choses, &c.*, but the sentence would have lost its elegance and force.]

501. (i) By a construction very frequent in the French language, *c'est*, or *ce fut*, &c., followed by a qualifying expression, is often placed at the head of a sentence, whilst the person or thing qualified is placed at the end with *que* before it, if it is a noun or a pronoun, and *de* or *que de*, if it is an infinitive.

C'est un poids bien pesant qu'un nom trop tôt fameux. (VOLTAIRE.)
C'est un méchant métier que celui de médire. (BOILEAU.)

[Instead of: *Un nom trop tôt fameux est un poids dangereux; le métier de médire est un méchant métier.*]

502. (k) In an interrogative sentence, when the verb *être* and the demonstrative *ce* are immediately followed by a pronoun or a substantive plural, the verb *être* must be in the singular, if in the present or future; plural, if in the imperfect or conditional.

Est-ce vos amis—sera-ce vos amis que je verrai demain?
Étaient-ce vos amis—seraient-ce vos amis que j'ai vus hier?

EXERCISE XV.

What gratifies the senses softens the heart—It is not money that

(a) *flatter* *sens* *ce*

makes men happy, it is virtue—Let us consider what the law of God

rendre (b) (c)

commands, and what society requires of us—Tragedy excites terror;
 (c)

that is what renders it tragical—The epic poem excites admiration ;
(e) *poème m.*

that is what renders it heroic—What I fear is treason—What you
(e) *héroïque* (e) (f) (e)

say is true—What they fear is, to be discovered—Always do
(g) (e) *craindre* (f) *faire*

what is right—What vexes me is, that he will not study—What he
(e) (e) *fâcher* (f) (e)

speaks of is not true—Read Demosthenes ; it is he who will give
(g) *lire Démosthène* (b)

you a true idea of eloquence—Read Demosthenes and Cicero ; it
véritable *Cicéron*

is they who have obtained the palm of eloquence—That Mahomet
(b) *remporter* —

was a bold and pompous quack—The affectation of a quality,
(i) *sublime charlatan d'affecter*

whether one has it or not, is always a vice—I like this
soit qu'on l'ait qu'on ne l'ait pas (i)

Chinese maxim : the soul has no secrets which conduct does not
chinoise âme

reveal. This is as true at Paris as at Pekin—Are these the same
révéler (a) *Pékin* (k)

men we formerly knew ?—To speak well of the absent, and to
connaître — pl.

satirize no one, are two things extremely rare—You speak of what
personne (h) *parler* *

will never happen—What you are speaking of will never happen—
arriver *

Are you sure of what you say ?—It is what you may be sure of—A
* *dire* (d) *

sure way of learning a language is to write it constantly—The
moyen *langue* †

love of glory, a desire of opportunities to pardon and do
le trouver des occasions de faire

good, are sentiments which animate the noble minded—It is
du bien (h) *les cœurs vraiment nobles* (b)

interest and vanity which are the secret sources of the praise
— f. *louange* pl.

we bestow on others—Will you trust to what he proposes ?—What
donner *se fier* * *proposer* *

you trust to is very uncertain—It was Cicero who saved the
incertain P. † *Cicéron* P.

republic.

References.

- (a) }
 (b) }
 (c) }
 (d) }
 (e) } See this Rule.
 (f) }
 (g) }
 (h) }
 (i) }
 (k) }

* Of what is *de ce qui*, or *de ce que*; what of is *ce dont*; to what is *à ce qui*, or *à ce que*; what to is *ce à quoi*.—It is therefore necessary to consider whether the preposition comes before or after what.

† In this sentence *est* or *c'est* is equally proper.

‡ *Ce fut*, and not *c'est*, because the next verb is in the perfect definite.

OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

503. *Chacun* being preceded by a plural noun, requires sometimes *son*, *sa*, *ses*, and sometimes *leur*, *leurs*.

504. (a) *Chacun* requires *son*, *sa*, *ses*, when it comes after an accusative or after a neuter verb.

Ils ont apporté leurs offrandes *chacun* selon *ses* moyens.
 Ils ont opiné *chacun* à *son* tour.

[We say: *Mettez ces livres chacun à leur place*; and *Rangez ces livres, chacun à sa place*, because the verb *mettez* requires the dative *à sa place* to complete the phrase, whilst the verb *rangez* is sufficient. Before *chacun* the sense is complete: *Rangez ces livres*.]

505. (b) But *chacun* takes *leur*, *leurs*, when it precedes its accusative.

Ils ont apporté *chacun* *leurs* offrandes.
 Ils ont donné *chacun* *leur* avis.

EXERCISE XVI.

They gave their opinion, each according to his views—They all
 P. avis (a) *vus*
 spoke, each in his turn—The languages have each their oddities—
 P. (a) *langues* (b) *bizarries*
 They all brought offerings to the temple, each according to his
 (a)
 means and devotion—Return those medals each to its proper
 moyen pl. remettre d (a) *en*
 place—He charged one of his officers to carry his orders to the
de aller porter
 mutineers, and to make them retire each under his colours—Go in to
 mutin (a) *drapeau*

my library, and put the books which have been sent back each
bibliothèque f. mettre *renvoyer*
 into its place—Men ought, for their own interest, to have an
 (a) *devoir chacun (b) propre*
 affection for each other—The two kings retired each into his tent.
de l'amour P. (a)

References.

(a) } See this Rule.
 (b) }

SYNTAX OF THE VERBS.

OF THE AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS
NOMINATIVE.

506. It has been said before that the verb must agree in person and number with its nominative.

Je plains l'homme, que ne sait s'occuper.
O soleil ! tu parais, tu souris, et tu consoles la terre.
Souvent les richesses attirent les amis, et la pauvreté les éloigne.

[We have seen that the substantive nominative to a verb generally precedes it, as, *La rose s'épanouit, Alexandre mourut jeune*; yet we must observe that there are constructions contrary to this rule, but which, being required only by the ear and taste, are not absolutely necessary: thus we say, *Ici s'épanouit la rose, Ainsi mourut Alexandre, Tel fut son sort, Quelle gloire ont acquise ses héros, &c.*

In some cases these transpositions are indispensable, as, *D'où vient votre douleur ? Puisse-nt vos desirs être satisfaits ! Soyons amis, dit Auguste à Cinna, &c.*]

507. (a) If the nominative is composed of several substantives or pronouns, the verb must be plural, and agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third.

Tôt ou tard la vertu, les grâces, les talents,
Sont vainqueurs des jaloux, et vengés des méchants.
Vous et moi pensons le contraire.

[In this last sentence, and others of the same kind, these pronouns are generally resolved into one of their plurals, *nous, vous*, and the others may be placed at the beginning or at the end of the sentence: *Vous et moi nous pensons différemment*, or, *Nous pensons différemment vous et moi*; but the pronoun *nous* or *vous* is generally left out when the different nominatives are joined by *ni*. *Ni vous ni moi n'avons vu ce lieu.*]

508. (b) The above rules have several exceptions, and the verb agrees with the last substantive or pronoun, 1° when these words are nearly synonymous.

Son courage, son intrépidité *étonne* les plus braves.

509. (c) 2° When the different nominatives are united by the conjunction *ou*.

La faiblesse *ou* l'inexpérience nous *fait* commettre bien des fautes.

[Yet when the words united by *ou* are of different persons, custom requires the verb to agree with the first rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third person : *vous ou moi parlerons ; vous ou votre frère viendrez.*]

510. (d) 3° When the words which compose the subject form a climax.

Ce sacrifice, votre intérêt, votre honneur, *Dieu l'exige*.*

511. (e) 4° When the last of several substantives nominative to a verb is preceded by one of these expressions, *tout, rien, personne, même, en un mot, mais, &c.*

Non-seulement ses richesses, *mais* sa vertu s'évanouit.

512. (f) 5° When two substantives or pronouns united by one of the conjunctions, *comme, de même que, ainsi que, aussi bien que*, are the nominatives of a verb, the first substantive or pronoun is the subject of a verb expressed, and the second substantive or pronoun is the nominative of a verb understood.

La vertu *ainsi que* le savoir, *a* son prix.

[That is : *La vertu a son prix ainsi que le savoir a son prix.*]

513. (g) 6° When a verb has for its nominative a collective general, it must be in the singular (No. 18, p. 3).

Le peuple désire la paix.

* *i. e.* Your own interest, your honour, nay, God demands that sacrifice.—A.H.

514. (h) 7° When a verb has for its subject a collective partitive, it agrees with the noun that follows the collective (No. 18, p. 3).

Une troupe de Barbares désolèrent le pays.

[When the partitive collective denotes a determinate quantity, being preceded by the article definite, the verb agrees with that collective: *La moitié des soldats a péri; Les deux tiers des moissons furent brûlées.* The noun that follows these collective partitives, *une infinité, un grand nombre, la plupart*, is often left out; in that case the verb must be plural: *La plupart sont sujets à l'erreur; that is, la plupart des hommes.*]

515. (i) 8° Infinitives, not having in themselves the property of number, cannot, when used as nominatives, communicate the plural form to another verb; in that case, the verb governed remains in the singular preceded by the pronoun *ce*.

Manger, boire, et dormir, c'est leur unique occupation.

[When there is but one infinitive as subject, the use of *ce* is not indispensable; taste must decide; but, generally speaking, it is better to use it if that infinitive has a government of some length after it: *Se plaire dans tous les lieux, c'est le secret du sage.*]

EXERCISE XVII.

You and your cousin shall accompany me to the play this
(a) au spectacle
evening—Her mildness and gentleness are known to every body—
douceur * aménité (b) de
Do not think, my child, that thy candour, thy ingenuousness,
croire fille franchise
or even thy taste, so delicate and nice, can shelter thee
(c) goût fin pouvoir mettre à l'abri
from censure—The army have lost all their baggage and ordnance
— f. (g) † baggage artillerie
—Burgundy, as well as Champagne, produces excellent wine—
ainsi que (f)
The elephant, like the beaver, likes the society of his fellow-
comme (f) castor sem-
creatures—You and I are good friends—He or I will go and see
blables (a) (c)
you—Princes want neither effort nor study to gain the heart;
— falloir se concilier

one single word, a smile, a look suffices—*Either* persuasion or
seul *sourire, regard* (d) f.
 terror has drawn him into the party of the rebels—Your mien,
 (c) *entraîner* *partim.* *cet air*
 your deportment, your voice, your language, everything betrays
cette démarche *cette voix, ce langage* (e) *trahir*
 you—The people wish for peace, but the parliament, who know
parlement
 better the interests of the nation, have voted for the continuation
 (g) — f.
 of the war—An infinite number of ladies think more of dress
 (h) *s'occuper* *de leur*
 than of house-keeping, and a greater number of husbands
toilette *leur ménage* (h)
 think more of pleasure than of business—You, your friends,
leurs plaisirs *leurs affaires*
 his cousin, and I, were reading together the new novel—In every
 — ‡ (a) *roman m.*
 season of life, the love of occupation and a taste for study are
les âges *travail* * *le goût de* (b)
 real blessings—The courage of your brother, his intrepidity in
bien sing.
 action, makes him admired by his general—A battalion, a regiment,
 (b) *effrayer* *bataillon*
 an army, could not frighten him—A company of young Phœnicians
 (d) *effrayer* *troupe* *Phénicien*
 of uncommon beauty danced a long while the dances of their
 (d)
 country—An infinite number of birds made the groves resound
 (A) *résonner*
 with their tuneful notes.
doux chants.

References.

- (a) }
 (b) }
 (c) }
 (d) }
 (e) } See this Rule.
 (f) }
 (g) }
 (h) }
 (i) }

* See observations on 444, page 298.

† When a collective is in the singular, the pronoun referring to that collective must also be singular.

‡ *Moi* must come last through politeness, unless the other persons are very inferior: *vous et moi, un tel et moi*; but we say, *moi et mon fils, moi et mon laquais*. Napoleon has said, *moi et l'empereur d'Autriche mon beau père, &c.*

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

516. A verb cannot govern two accusatives.

Ne vous informez pas *ce que* je deviendrai (should be *de ce que*, &c.)

517. A verb cannot govern two genitive or two dative cases.

C'est *de vous* qu'il s'agit—not, *dont* il s'agit.
C'est *à vous* qu'il s'agit—not, *à qui* il s'agit.

[For the same reason, we could not say, C'est *ici où* je demeure; C'est *là où* je vais; we say: 1. C'est *ici que* je demeure. 2. C'est *là que* je vais.]

518. A verb should not be used with any other case than that it governs; therefore, as *parler*, *nuire*, *pardonner*, govern the dative case, we must say and write,

Je *lui* parle; nuire *à* quelqu'un; pardonner *à* ses ennemis.

519. When two verbs do not govern the same case, each must have its distinct regimen.

Il *attaqua* la ville et *s'en* empara.

[Il *attaqua* et *s'empara* de la ville would be incorrect, as *de la ville*, the genitive case governed by *s'emparer*, cannot belong to *attaquer*, which governs the accusative. This rule applies to adjectives and prepositions; thus we could not say, Je suis sensible et content des preuves d'amitié que vous m'avez données; il a parlé en même temps contre et en faveur de son ami; for *sensible* governs *à*, but *content*, *de*. *Contre* governs the accusative, and *en faveur* the genitive.]

520. (a) When a verb has two regimens of equal length, the accusative comes first.

L'avare sacrifie l'honneur à l'intérêt.

[Unless we are forced to use another turn, as, Le physicien arrache à la nature, tous ses secrets, for we mean the secrets of nature: perspicuity requires this construction, contrary to the rule here given.]

521. (b) When a verb governs two different cases, the shorter comes first.

L'avare sacrifie à l'intérêt son honneur et sa vie.

[This rule of harmony applies to every kind of government of verbs.]

522. (c) When the government of a verb contains several parts joined by one of the conjunctions *et*, *ni*, *ou*, these different parts must be expressed by words of the same nature.

Il aime le jeu et l'étude.

Ils se plaisent au spectacle, ou à la promenade.

Il n'apprend ni à tirer de l'arc ni à manier le javelot.

EXERCISE XVIII.

Ambition sacrifices the present to the future, but pleasure sacrifices the future to the present—Illustrious examples teach us that God has hurled from their thrones princes who contemned his laws: he reduced to the condition of beasts the haughty prince who wanted to usurp divine honours—Wretched is the man who feeds his mind with chimeras—Our interests should prompt us to prefer virtue to vice, wisdom to pleasure, and modesty to vanity—We must oppose an unmoved countenance to the speeches and invectives of the wicked—Nothing is permanent in this world, neither the most flourishing fortune, nor the most lively friendship, nor the most brilliant reputation, nor the most envied favour.

(a) (a) (a) (b) (b) (b) (c) (c) (c)

sacrifier (a) *avenir* *fameux* *apprendre* *renverser* (b) *mépriser* *superbe* *vouloir* *repaitre* (b) *chimère* *devoir* *porter* *stoïque* *maintien m.* (b) *propos* *constant* *vive*

References.

(a) }
(b) } See this Rule.
(c) }

Government of Verbs continued.

523. An infinitive may be governed by another verb, either without a preposition or by means of *d* and *de*.

524. 1° THE FOLLOWING VERBS

Govern the next Infinitive without any Preposition.

Aimer mieux, compter, croire, daigner, devoir, entendre, faire, falloir, s'imaginer, oser, pouvoir, prétendre, savoir, valoir mieux, venir, and vouloir.

*Je voudrais vous inspirer l'amour du travail et de l'étude.
Daignez m'écouter—je compte vous remercier moi-même.*

525. 2° A LIST OF THOSE VERBS

Which govern the following Infinitive with à.

ABOUTIR, aider, aimer, animer, apprendre, aspirer, autoriser, avoir.

BALANCER.

CHERCHER, concourir, condamner, consentir, consister, conspirer, contribuer, couter.

DÉSAPPRENDRE, dévouer, disposer, donner, dresser.

EMPLOYER, encourager, engager, enseigner, étudier, exceller, exciter, exhorter.

FORMER.

HASARDER, hésiter.

INOITER, instruire, intéresser, inviter.

MONTREER, mettre.

NÉCESSITER.

OFFRIR.

PARVENIR, penser, persévérer, persister, porter, prendre, prétendre, provoquer.

RENONCER, répugner.

SERVIR, songer.

TENDRE, travailler.

Je consens à me perdre afin de la sauver.

Elle aimait à prévenir les injures par sa bonté.

526. 3° A LIST OF THE PRINCIPAL VERBS

Which govern de before an Infinitive.

ACHEVER, affecter, ambitionner, avertir, appréhender.

BLÂMER.

CESSEER, commander, conseiller, convenir, corriger, craindre.

DÉDAIGNER, défier, délibérer, désespérer, désirer, détester, différer, dire, disconvenir.

ÉLUDER, empêcher, enjoindre, entreprendre, espérer, éviter.

FRINDRE, frémir.

GAGNER, gémir.

HÉSITER.

INSPIRER, interdire.

JURER.

LANGUIR.

MANDER, méditer, menacer, mériter.

NÉGLIGER, nier.

OBTENIR, offrir, ordonner.

PERMETTRE, persuader, avoir peur, préférer, prendre garde, préserver, prier, projeter, promettre, protester.

RECOMMANDER, refuser, regretter, reprocher, retarder, risquer, rougir.

SÉCHER, sommer, souhaiter, soupçonner, suggérer, supplier.

TENTER, trembler.

Je crains d'obtenir ce que j'ai demandé.

Je vous prie de croire à ma reconnaissance.

[*Espérer* governs the next infinitive without a preposition : *J'espère le voir*; *J'espère gagner mon procès*; but when *espérer* is in the present of the infinitive, the next infinitive must be preceded by *de* : *Peut-on espérer de vous revoir ?*]

GOVERNMENT OF REFLECTED VERBS.

527. The reflected verbs govern the genitive case in French; as, *réjouir d'une chose*, to rejoice in a thing. The following govern the dative case :

s'abaisser à	se décider à	s'habituer à
s'accoutumer à	se déterminer à	s'intéresser à
s'adonner à	se disposer à	s'opposer à
s'adresser à	s'engager à	se plaire à
s'appliquer à	s'exposer à	se préparer à
s'attendre à	se fier à	se soumettre à

To which may be added : *s'abandonner à*, *s'acharner à*, *s'apprêter à*, *s'assujettir à*, *s'attacher à*, *se dévouer à*, *s'endurcir à*, *s'obstiner à*, *s'opiniâtrer à*, *se prier à*.

[Some govern *à* or *de*, as *s'occuper à* or *de*, but with a different meaning; others are not followed by any noun or preposition; such as, *se rappeler*, *s'imaginer*, &c.]

528. THE FOLLOWING VERBS

Govern de or à before an Infinitive, according to the sense.

Commencer à, commencer de
continuer à, continuer de
consentir à, consentir de
contraindre à, contraindre de
demander à, demander de
déterminer à, déterminer de
échapper à, échapper de
s'efforcer à, s'efforcer de
s'empresseur à, s'empresseur de
engager à, engager de
essayer à, essayer de
forcer à, forcer de
se hasarder à, se hasarder de
manquer à, manquer de

obliger à, obliger de
occuper à, occuper de
oublier à, oublier de
prier à, prier de
participer à, participer de
il y a plaisir à, il y a plaisir de
se résoudre à, se résoudre de
se ranger à, se ranger de
suffire à, suffire de
tâcher à, tâcher de
tarder à, tarder de
se tuer à, se tuer de
(and a few others).

[We have said that the preceding verbs govern à or de, according to the sense of the sentence; this does not agree with the rules found in some grammars printed in England. A few examples will explain this difference: *Commencer à* points out an action which will be progressive, and which will continue. *Commencer de* presents an action quite completed, but which will last some time. We say of a child, *Il commence à parler, à marcher, &c.*, and of an orator, *Il commença de parler à quatre heures et ne finit qu'à six.*—*Continuer à, continuer de*: *On continue à faire une chose*, when there is no interruption; *On continue de faire une chose*, when interruption has obliged us to lay it aside for a time.—*Oublier à, oublier de*: *On oublie à danser, à écrire*, when we have lost the habit; *On oublie d'écrire, de répondre à son ami*, when it has been neglected or forgotten.

To these observations we will add a general principle, which may guide the learner in the choice of either preposition.

The preposition à indicates an end in view, a tendency to an end; the preposition de indicates a point of departure, an idea of cause. Thus in *il s'est empressé à le servir*, the verb which follows à indicates the action which we have in view, we aim at performing—and *il s'est empressé de courir*, indicates an action which has its cause and its effect in the person himself.

The same difference exists in

Cette étoffe est à mon goût, elle est de mon goût; il se plaît à être loué, il se plaît d'être loué; s'ennuyer à lire, s'ennuyer de lire; s'amuser à quelque chose, s'amuser de quelque chose, &c.]

529. The following active verbs, which imply generally separation, absence, abundance, want, &c., govern in French the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing, whatever case they may govern in English.

Absoudre
accabler
accuser
avertir

bannir
blâmer
chasser
combler

corriger
débusquer
dégouter
délivrer

dépouiller	expulser	priver
détourner	informer	remplir
dissuader	louer	soupçonner
exciter	menacer	(and a few others.)
exclure		

Dieu a comblé les hommes de bienfaits.

La lecture de l'histoire grecque nous remplit d'admiration.

530. The following active verbs, implying generally, *tendency, resemblance, conformity, aptitude, &c.*, govern in French the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, whatever case they may govern in English.

Accorder	devoir	présenter
adresser	dire	prêter
annoncer	donner	procurer
apporter	écrire	promettre
attribuer	enseigner	raconter
avouer	envoyer	rapporter
communiquer	épargner	refuser
confesser	expliquer	rendre
confier	ôter	renvoyer
conseiller	pardonner	répéter
déclarer	prédire	reprocher
dédier	préférer	révéler
demander	prendre	vendre

Il donne tout son bien aux pauvres.

Nous lui avons communiqué cette nouvelle.

531. The genius of the French language will admit of two infinitives following each other; in this case the second is always governed by the first.

Je veux le lui faire savoir ; je n'ose leur promettre d'écrire.

532. But three or four infinitives used successively render the style diffuse, and disagreeable to the ear.

Je crois pouvoir aller voir vos parents.

N'allez pas croire savoir faire jouer tous les ressorts de l'éloquence.

533. These phrases are inelegant; the number of infinitives should be lessened by using another mood: thus,

Je crois que je pourrai aller voir vos parents.
N'allez pas croire que vous sachiez faire jouer tous les ressorts
de l'éloquence.

OBSERVATION.—No exercises have been given here on the Government of Verbs, as the "*Exercises on French Conversation*" are especially intended to remove that difficulty.

OF THE CONJUNCTION QUE.

534. The chief use of the conjunction *que*, is to unite two propositions, the *principal* with the *subordinate*. *Je crois qu'il est savant*; *je crois* is the principal, and *il est savant* is the subordinate, proposition; *que* is the conjunction which unites them.

535. The conjunction *que* governs no mood. It is the *positive* or *doubtful* sense of the preceding verb which requires the indicative or subjunctive after *que*.

536. (a) When the idea expressed in the principal proposition implies certainty, the verb of the subordinate proposition must be in the indicative; if it implies uncertainty, the subjunctive must be used.

Je crois qu'il viendra.
Je doute qu'il vienne.

[The uncertainty implied proceeds, either from the principal verb expressing it itself, or from that verb being used negatively or interrogatively.]

537. (b) If a verb be used either negatively or interrogatively, the subjunctive will follow the conjunction *que*.

Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne.
Pensez-vous qu'il vienne ?

[The above rule is generally given by Grammarians, but the sense we wish to express must naturally direct us in the use of the indicative or subjunctive: for example, we say, both after negative and interrogative verbs: *Je ne dis pas qu'il est votre ami*, and *je ne dis pas qu'il soit votre ami*—*Pensez-vous que sa protection m'est nécessaire?* and *Pensez-vous que sa protection me soit nécessaire?*—In the first and third examples the indicative must be used, because the speaker wishes to express a certain and positive idea, of which he himself entertains no doubt: in the second and last examples, on the contrary, the speaker doubts, and wishes to be informed, therefore the subjunctive is necessarily used.]

538. (c) If, however, the interrogation expresses neither doubt nor uncertainty, and is used only to give strength and energy, the indicative must be used.

Oubliez-vous qui je *suis*?*

539. When a relative pronoun or the word *où* is followed by a verb expressing a certain and positive action or situation, the indicative must be used.

J'habiterai un pays qui me *platt*, où je *serai* tranquille, que je *pourrai* parcourir sans crainte, et dont la température *soit* douce.

540. If the actions expressed in the preceding sentences are doubtful or uncertain, the subjunctive is used.

J'habiterai un pays qui me *plaise*, où je *sois* tranquille, que je *puisse* parcourir sans crainte, et dont la température *soit* douce.

541. (d) The subjunctive is used after verbs implying *wish* and *desire*, *will*, *command*, *permission*, *consent*, *denial*, *prohibition*, *doubt*, *fear*, *surprise*, *joy*, *sorrow*, *regret*, *despair*, and, more generally speaking, after verbs which express some passion or sentiment of the mind (the verb *to hope* excepted).

Je suis bien aise qu'il *soit* venu.

Je m'étonne que vous *osiez* le faire.

542. (e) The subjunctive is used after those impersonal verbs which denote *necessity*, *fitness*, *possibility*, or, more generally, after those which are formed with the verb *to be* and a substantive or an adjective: as,

Il faut que, it must

il est nécessaire, it is necessary

il importe que, it concerns

il est important, it is of moment

il convient que, it becomes

il semble, it seems

il est indécent, it is unbecoming

il est—heureux, fâcheux, mal-

heureux, étonnant, impossible,

honteux, &c.

* As interrogation implies doubt on the part of the inquirer, interrogative verbs are followed by the subjunctive. However, when the speaker has no doubt of the fact mentioned in the question, or when the interrogation is an oratorical turn which, far from expressing doubt, only helps to affirm more strongly, the indicative is used:—

1. Vous ai-je dit que Léopold *est* malade?

2. Oubliez-vous que Thésée *est* mon père et qu'il *est* votre époux?

1. Est-il vrai qu'il *sort* malade?

2. Est-il possible que ce chiffonnier *sort* le père de cette grande dame?—A. H.

[543. When *il semble* governs the dative of a person, it requires the indicative: He seems to me to be in the right, *Il me semble qu'il a raison*. The verbs *il y a*, *il paraît*, *il est certain*, *il résulte*, *il est vrai*, and a few impersonals which express certainty, also require the indicative.]

544. (f) The verbs *empêcher*, to hinder, *craindre*, apprehend, *avoir peur*, to fear, to be afraid; being followed by the conjunction *que*, require the subjunctive and *ne* before it, if the verb is affirmative; but if the verb is used negatively or interrogatively, *ne* is suppressed.

Je crains qu'il ne vienne.
Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.
Craignez-vous qu'il vienne?

[*Je crains qu'il ne vienne*.*—In this sentence the object of fear is his coming, and as a positive idea is expressed, we are naturally inclined to suppress *ne*.—This word is not however a negative, nor even an expletive; but a dubitative expression borrowed from the Latin language (*timeo ne veniat*).]

[545. (g) It must be observed, that if we wish for the thing expressed in the second verb, *ne pas* must be used, but if we do not wish for it, *ne* is sufficient. This observation applies equally to affirmative, negative, or interrogative sentences. *Craindre* used negatively and interrogatively is followed by *ne*: as, Are you not afraid he will punish you? *Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il ne vous punisse?*]

546. (h) The verbs *douter*, to doubt; *désespérer*, to despair; *nier* or *disconvenir*, to deny; being used negatively, require *ne* and the subjunctive after the conjunction *que*.

Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne.

[Why do we use the subjunctive after *ne pas douter*, which signifies *croire certainement*, as in the example given? It appears that this subjunctive is a Latinism, *non dubito quin veniat*, in which the *ne* dubitative is comprehended in *quin*.

Ne pas douter, says *d'Ambly*, is not quite the equivalent of *être sûr*, and this is the reason why the verb of the subordinate proposition is preceded by *ne*, and is in the subjunctive. Sometimes, however, *ne pas douter* and *être sûr* are considered as synonymous, then *ne* is suppressed and the verb is in the indicative.

Il ne faut point douter qu'il fera ce qu'il peut;
Et, s'il a de l'argent, qu'il pourra ce qu'il veut.—MOLIÈRE.

It is as if Molière had said, *vous pouvez être sûr qu'il fera, &c.*]

* i. e. I fear lest he should come. . .

EXERCISE XIX.

I fear he will die of his wounds—I fear he will not answer
 (f) mourir (g) répondre à
 my expectations—I know he is surprised to see her against him
 espérance savoir (a) surpris de
 —It is just he should be punished—I maintain that he cannot
 (a) soutenir (a)
 fail to triumph over his enemies—It is certain that he has
 manquer de de — (a)
 lost his bet—Is it certain that he is banished?—They do not say
 perdre pari m. (b) on
 that it is so—She will wonder that you undertake it—I do
 (b) cela ainsi être surpris (d) entreprendre
 not doubt but he is your friend—Do you think that we shall have
 (h) (b)
 a severe winter?—I have not the least doubt that your method
 rigoureux ne douter nullement (h) méthode f.
 will succeed, provided it be well known—Do you think that he will
 réussir (i) (b)
 soon set off?—It is likely that you will receive it before long
 il y a apparence (k)
 —Is it likely that she ever committed herself so imprudently?—
 (b) se compromettre
 That you may be sure of it, and not think that any one cheats you;
 * † tromper
 I will show you his letter—She was afraid he would not have
 montrer (g)
 married her—I would have you go to Verona and stay there till
 épouser souhaiter (d) Vérone ‡ (i)
 the great heats are over before you return to Venice—I insist
 chaleur passer (i) Venise prétendre
 upon your submitting to it immediately—Whether God sends us
 (d) soit que (i)
 afflictions, or overloads us with prosperity, we must equally bless
 † combler de pl. devoir
 his providence—I did not know that the king was ill—The king
 — f. ignorer
 knows that the minister is guilty—I am sure nobody will pity him
 § ignorer coupable (a)
 —If I perceive that you keep bad company, you will lose
 mauvais compagnie

my friendship—The Egyptians did not doubt that certain plants
(h)
were divinities—He does not deny that he is your friend.
(h)

References.

- (a) }
(b) }
(c) }
(d) } See this Rule.
(e) }
(f) }
(g) }
(h) }

(i) See 374.

(k) See 543.

* When the conjunction *que* begins the sentence, and the verb by which it is governed comes after it, the subjunctive must be used.

† The conjunction understood in English must be expressed in French.

‡ See reference †, page 269.

§ The verb *ignorer*, not to know, having a negative meaning, governs the subjunctive when used without a negation; when employed negatively, the sense becomes affirmative, and therefore the indicative is used.

|| The conjunction *que* governs the subjunctive when it comes after *if* or *whether*.

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER THE RELATIVE *QUI*, &c.

547. (a) When the relative pronoun and its antecedent come both between two verbs, the second should be used in the subjunctive.

Il cherche un *précepteur qui puisse* enseigner le français.

548. (b) When the relative has for its antecedent a pronoun indeterminate, such as, *personne, aucun, rien, qui que ce soit*, the subjunctive must be used, as in the preceding rule.

Je n'ai *rien* vu qu'on *puisse* blâmer dans sa conduite.

549. (c) When the pronouns, *qui, que*, have for their antecedent a noun in the superlative relative, the next verb must be in the subjunctive.

C'est *l'homme le plus savant que je connaisse*.

[But if we wanted to express a positive idea, we should use the indicative, and say, for instance: De ces *trois hommes, c'est le plus jeune que je connais*.]

inspired genius—Lucullus brought from the kingdom of Pontus
d *apporter* *Pont*
 the first cherry-trees which were seen in Europe—The king ordered
cerisier *(d)* *en*
 that they should be set at liberty—The governor ordered that we
on *(f)* *mettre en*
 should go as far as Thebes to be presented to the king—There
(f) *aller* *Thèbes pour*
 is nothing good of which God is not the author—The dog is the
(b) *de* *dont*
 only animal whose fidelity can stand the test*—There are few men
seul *(d)* *à l'épreuve* *peu*
 who know how to bear adversity—I know no nation that
(d) *savoir* *† supporter* *point de* *(b)*
 has a better government—He has conducted himself so as to obtain
 *
 the esteem of his superiors—I could not help laughing when
† *s'empêcher de*
 I received your letter; you desire me to purchase you a Greek
P. *prier*
 slave who possesses a thousand good qualities; where could I
(a) *avoir* *excellent*
 find such a one?—Of whomsoever you speak, avoid slander—
un pareil *(b)* *calomnie*
 What man, that has any learning, does not know these privileges
quel est l'homme un peu instruit qui *(e)*
 have been surreptitiously obtained!—This author is the first that
par surprise *(c)*
 mentions it—He is the most conceited man I ever met with—
faire mention de *(c)* *suffisant* *rencontrer*
 May you live happy!
 *† *vivre*

References.

- (a) }
 (b) }
 (c) } See this Rule.
 (d) }
 (e) }

* The conjunctive locutions, *de sorte que*, *de façon que*, *de manière que*, *si ce n'est que*, *sinon que*, govern sometimes the subjunctive and sometimes the indicative: the subjunctive, when the idea expresses doubt or futurity; the indica-

tive, when the idea is positive and refers to the present or past.

† After the verbs *cesser*, *oser*, and *pouvoir*, the second negation *pas* or *point* is often elegantly suppressed.

‡ *Savoir* governs the next infinitive without a preposition.

*† The subjunctive begins the sentence—the ellipsis of the word, *I wish*, &c., is the cause of this rule, which is not an exception.

* Le chien est le seul animal dont la fidélité sort à l'épreuve.—BUFFON.

OF THE FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

553. In languages, the manner of arranging the words of a sentence, is called *construction*.

554. There are two sorts of construction, the *grammatical*, and the *figurative*.

555. The grammatical construction of a language is that which has been determined by the particular grammar of that language.

[In this construction, each word necessary to the enunciation of the thought is expressed without ellipsis or redundancy, and an entire agreement exists between each component part of the sentence. This construction is also called *natural*, because it does not differ from the order indicated by nature.]

556. The *figurative construction*, on the contrary, is nearly the same in all languages. It is called figurative because indeed it takes a form, a *figure*, which differs from the grammatical construction.

557. The deviation from the simplicity of the grammatical arrangement renders the sentence *indirect* or *irregular*.

558. The indirect or irregular construction may become so in four different manners: by *ellipsis*, *pleonasm*, *syllipsis*, and *inversion*.

559. These four different irregular constructions are called *figures of syntax*.

OF ELLIPSIS.*

560. An *ellipsis* is the suppression of one or more words necessary to the full grammatical construction of the sentence, but which suppression may be easily and instantly supplied by the mind.

Le présent est pour les riches, et l'avenir pour les vertueux.
Trop ami des plaisirs et trop des nouveautés.

[In the first sentence there is an ellipsis of the verb *est* after *avenir*; in the second the word *ami* is likewise omitted after *trop*; but as both words are easily supplied, at least mentally, the ellipsis is regular and allowable.]

* From a Greek word which means that something is *missing*, *cut off*, or *understood*.

561. When the suppression produces embarrassment, the ellipsis is vicious.

.... Les rois dans le ceil ont un juge sévère,
L'innocence, un vengeur, et l'orphelin, un père.—RACINE.

[The mind does not readily apprehend the words that are missing, for the verb used in the plural in the first line, must be supplied in the singular in the second line.]

562. Whenever the suppression renders the sense obscure or equivocal, the ellipsis is neither exact nor allowable.

*J'eusse été près du Gange esclave des faux dieux,
Chrétienne dans Paris, musulmane en ces lieux.*—VOLTAIRE.

[We have here both defects at once. It appears that Zaïre says that *elle eût été musulmane en ces lieux*; though she means on the contrary, *je suis musulmane en ces lieux*.]

OF PLEONASM.*

563. *Pleonasm* is the contrary of *ellipsis*. The latter suppresses words necessary to the construction, but unnecessary to the intelligence of the sentence; the former adds words to the construction, but which might be omitted without injury to the sense.

564. The superabundance of words is either required by custom, or used to give grace and energy to the phrase; otherwise it only serves to weaken the thought. Hence pleonasm is either *necessary*, *useful*, or *vicious*.

565. A pleonasm is *necessary* when the superabundant words cannot be suppressed.

*Et moi, qui l'amenai triomphante adorée,
Je m'en retournerai seule et désespérée.*—RACINE.

[The pronoun *je* could not be suppressed.]

*Les éclairs sont moins prompts ; je l'ai vu de mes yeux,
Je l'ai vu qui frappait ce monstre audacieux.*—VOLTAIRE.

[*Mes yeux* is superfluous with respect to the sense of the verb *j'ai vu*, but these words increase the energy of the sentence, for they imply that we do not speak on the doubtful report of another person.]

* From a Greek word which signifies *superabundance*.

566. A pleonasm is useful when it adds grace, strength, and elegance to the sentence.

Et que m'a fait à moi, cette Troie où je cours?—RACINE.

[Racine might have said simply : *et que m'a fait cette Troie où je cours ?*]

567. A pleonasm is *vicious* when it does not render the thought more clear, graceful, or energetic.

1. *Entr'aidons-nous mutuellement.*
2. *Il y eut une tempête orageuse.*
3. *Vous n'avez seulement qu'à le vouloir.*

[These pleonasms are evidently vicious ; * 1^o Because the word *entre* implies precisely the same idea as *mutuellement*. 2^o Because the adjective *orageuse* adds nothing whatever to the substantive *tempête*. 3^o Because *ne que* and *seulement* are synonymous.]

OF SYLLEPSIS. †

568. *Syllepsis* is a figure of syntax by which the words agree more with the thought than with the grammatical construction.

Entre le *pauvre* et vous, vous prendrez Dieu pour juge :
Vous souvenant, mon fils, que, caché sous ce lin,
Comme *eux* vous fîtes *pauvre*, et comme *eux* orphelin.—RACINE.

[It should be *comme lui*, since that pronoun relates to the word *pauvre*, which is singular : but the poet forgets that he has been using that word, he sees nothing but *pauvres* and *orphelins* in general ; and it is with that plural noun that he makes the pronoun agree.]

569. A syllepsis is irregular, if the governing word does not principally fix the attention of the writer.

Le *commun* des hommes *agissent* presque toujours sans réflexion.

[Here the governing word is *le commun*, and not *hommes*. We should say : *le commun des hommes agit, &c.*]

* A *vicious* pleonasm becomes either a *battology* or a *perissology*, with this difference, that *battology* consists in an unmeaning superfluity of words, and *perissology* is the useless repetition of the same thing in different words, as the example quoted, *tempête orageuse*.

† From a Greek word which signifies to join by the thought.

OF INVERSION.*

570. *Inversion* is a figure which consists in departing from the order which grammar has assigned to the words of a sentence.

571. In French, an inversion takes place whenever we do not begin the phrase with the subject or nominative, then the verb and its accusative, or the case it governs, &c.

On voyait une rivière où se formaient *des îles bordées de tilleuls fleuris et de hauts peupliers*.—FÉNELON.

[Here the subject or nominative is placed after the verb.]

Déjà *prenait* l'essor, pour se sauver vers les montagnes, *cet aigle* dont le vol hardi avait d'abord effrayé nos provinces.
FLÉCHIER.

[Here again, the nominative, *cet aigle*, which grammatically should have preceded the verb *prenait*, follows it, and this inversion serves to give rapidity and energy to the style.]

572. An inversion to be regular must be conformable to the genius of the language; it must besides render the sentence more clear or more flowing, more elegant or more energetic, as in the preceding examples. Should it render the phrase slow, weak, or equivocal, the inversion must be avoided.

Un véritable ami ne gronde pas un ami qui a fait une faute, *avec colère*.

[This inversion render the sense equivocal, and therefore faulty. We must say : *Un véritable ami ne gronde pas, avec colère, un ami qui a fait une faute.*]

573. This figure is more used in poetry than in prose. The former, being the language of the passions, requires more rapidity and boldness of expression: but, whether in prose or in verse, every inversion which confuses the phrase and renders the sense ambiguous must be carefully avoided.

* From a Latin word which signifies *displacing*.

APPENDIX.

574. A List of the principal Adjectives and Participles which require a different Preposition after them in English and in French.

ABOUT—	Concerned about uneasy about easy about		<i>inquiet de</i> <i>tranquille sur</i>
AFTER—	Greedy after thirsty after		<i>avide de</i> <i>altéré de</i>
AT—	Angry at offended at vexed at angry at offended at vexed at astonished at	a person a thing	<i>fâché contre</i> <i>fâché de</i> <i>étonné de</i>
BY—	Followed by preceded by		<i>suiwi de</i> <i>précédé de</i>
FOR—	Fit for good for obliged for		<i>propre à</i> <i>bon à</i> <i>obligé de</i>
IN—	Dexterous in		<i>adroit à</i>
OF—	Capable of sensible of		<i>capable de</i> <i>sensible à</i>
TO—	Afflicted to glad to content to curious to pleasant to sorry to happy to impossible to at liberty to just to necessary to sure to		<i>affligé de</i> <i>aise de</i> <i>content de</i> <i>curieux de</i> <i>doux de</i> <i>fâché de</i> <i>heureux de</i> <i>impossible de</i> <i>libre de</i> <i>juste de</i> <i>nécessaire de</i> <i>sûr de</i>

WITH—Acquainted with	<i>connu de</i>
angry with	<i>fâché contre</i>
amused with	<i>amusé de</i>
animated with	<i>animé de</i>
armed with	<i>armé de</i>
charmed with	<i>charmé de</i>
contented with	<i>content de</i>
delighted with	<i>charmé de</i>
	<i>ravi de</i>
disgusted with	<i>dégoûté de</i>
displeased with	<i>mécontent de</i>
in love with	<i>amoureux de</i>
moved with	<i>touché de</i>
overjoyed with	<i>ravi de</i>
pleased with	<i>content de</i>
provided with	<i>pourvu de</i>
puffed up with	<i>enflé de</i>
satiated with	<i>rassasié de</i>
satisfied to or with	<i>satisfait de</i>
struck with	<i>frappé de</i>
surrounded with	<i>entouré de</i>
taken up with	<i>occupé de</i>
tormented with	<i>tourmenté de</i>
transported with	<i>transporté de</i>

575. The following Adjectives govern *de* with *il est*, and *d* with *c'est*, before an infinitive (476).

<i>Il est admirable de</i> (voir)	<i>C'est admirable d</i> (voir)
— affreux <i>de</i>	— affreux <i>d</i>
— beau <i>de</i>	— beau <i>d</i>
— bon <i>de</i>	— bon <i>d</i>
— désagréable <i>de</i>	— désagréable <i>d</i>
— difficile <i>de</i>	— difficile <i>d</i>
— effroyable <i>de</i>	— effroyable <i>d</i>
— facile <i>de</i>	— facile <i>d</i>
— terrible <i>de</i>	— terrible <i>d</i> , &c. &c.

576. A List of the principal Verbs which require a different Preposition after them in both languages, or which are not followed by any Preposition in French.

ABOUT—To agree about	<i>convenir de</i>
to carry about	<i>porter sur</i>
to discourse about	<i>discourir de</i>
to inquire about	<i>s'informer de</i>
to talk about	<i>parler de</i>

AFTER—	To inquire after	<i>s'informer de</i>
AT—	To blush at	<i>rougir de</i>
	to grieve at	<i>s'affliger de</i>
	to laugh at	<i>rire de</i>
	to look at	<i>regarder</i>
	to play at	<i>jouer à</i>
	to rejoice at	<i>se réjouir de</i>
	to smile at	<i>sourire de</i>
AWAY—	To drive away	<i>chasser</i>
	to go away	<i>s'en aller</i>
	to run away	<i>s'enfuir</i>
	to take away	<i>emporter</i>
BY—	To gain } by	<i>gagner à</i>
	to get }	<i>profiter de</i>
	to profit by	
FOR—	To ask for	<i>demander</i>
	to answer for	<i>répondre de</i>
	to blame for	<i>blâmer de</i>
	to bless for	<i>bénir de</i>
	to buy for	<i>acheter</i>
	to care for	<i>se soucier de</i>
	to chastise for	<i>châtier de</i>
	to console for	<i>consoler de</i>
	to design for	<i>destiner à</i>
	to go for	<i>aller chercher</i>
	to grieve for	<i>s'affliger de</i>
	to look for	<i>chercher</i>
	to pity for	<i>plaindre de</i>
	to praise for	<i>louer de</i>
	to provide for	<i>pourvoir à</i>
	to punish for	<i>punir de</i>
	to sell for	<i>vendre</i>
	to stay for	<i>attendre</i>
	to be sufficient for	<i>suffire à</i>
	to thank for	<i>remercier de</i>
	to wait for	<i>attendre</i>
	to wish for	<i>souhaiter</i>
FROM—	To abstain from	<i>s'abstenir de</i>
	to borrow from	<i>{ emprunter de</i>
	to conceal from	<i>{ emprunter à</i>
	to escape from	<i>{ cacher à</i>
		<i>{ échapper de</i>
		<i>{ échapper à</i>
	to hear from	<i>{ entendre dire à</i>
		<i>{ apprendre des nouvelles de</i>
		<i>{ avoir des nouvelles de</i>
		<i>{ ôter à</i>
	to take from	<i>{ ôter de</i>
		<i>{ prendre à</i>

IN—	To acquiesce in to be interested in to delight in to take pride in to glory in	<i>acquiescer à s'intéresser à se plaire à s'enorgueillir de se glorifier de</i>
OF—	To ask of to be ignorant of to beg of to think of to make use of	<i>demander à ignorer prier de { penser à* penser de* songer à se servir de</i>
OFF—	To put off to set off	<i>remettre partir</i>
ON—	To play on to have pity on	<i>jouer de avoir pitié de</i>
OVER—	To triumph over to tyrannize over	<i>triompher de tyranniser de</i>
TO—	To listen to to pretend to	<i>écouter { prétendre à se piquer de</i>
UP—	To give up	<i>{ se démettre de céder</i>
UPON—	To agree upon to call upon to depend upon to feed upon to look upon to impose upon to live upon to prevail upon to resolve upon to seize upon to smile upon to take upon	<i>convenir de passer chez { dépendre de compter sur se nourrir de regarder en imposer à vivre de persuader à engager résoudre se saisir de sourire à se charger de</i>
WITH—	To abound with to adorn with to amuse with to bathe with to bear with	<i>abonder en orner de amuser de baigner de endurer</i>

* *Penser à* means, "to give one's thoughts to:" *Je pense à vous, j'espère que vous penserez à moi.* *Penser de*, signifies, "to have an opinion of:" *Que pensez vous de mon commis?* What is your opinion of my clerk?—A. H.

With—	to charge with	<i>accuser de</i>
	to compare with	<i>comparer à</i>
	to comply with	<i>condescendre à</i>
	to cover with	<i>couvrir de</i>
	to die with	<i>mourir de</i>
	to dispense with	<i>dispenser de</i>
	to do with	<i>faire de</i>
	to embellish with	<i>embellir de</i>
	to endue with	<i>douer de</i>
	to enflame with	<i>enflammer de</i>
	to feed with	<i>nourrir de</i>
	to fill with	<i>emplir de</i>
	to glut with	<i>assouvir de</i>
	to load with	<i>charger de</i>
	to meddle with	<i>se mêler de</i>
	to meet with	<i>rencontrer</i>
	to overwhelm with	<i>accabler de</i>
	to part with	<i>se défaire de</i>
	to perish with	<i>périr de</i>
	to prevail with	<i>persuader à</i>
	to provide with	<i>fournir à</i>
	to put up with	<i>souffrir</i>
	to refresh with	<i>se rafraîchir de</i>
	to set with	<i>garnir de</i>
	to sport with	<i>se jouer de</i>
	to store with	<i>munir de</i>
	to swarm with	<i>fourniller de</i>
	to tax with	<i>tâter de</i>
	to threaten with	<i>menacer de</i>
	to tire with	<i>ennuyer de</i>


WITHOUT—To do without *se passer de*

577. A List of the principal Verbs which have no Preposition in English, but which require one in French.

To abuse,	<i>abuser de</i>	to disobey,	<i>désobéir à</i>
to agree,	<i>convenir de</i>	to disown,	<i>disconvenir de</i>
to answer,	<i>répondre à</i>	to displease,	<i>déplaire à</i>
to attempt,	<i>attenter à</i>	to distrust,	<i>se méfier de</i>
to avoid,	<i>prendre garde de</i>	to doubt,	<i>douter de</i>
to break,	<i>manquer à</i>	to enjoy,	<i>jouir de</i>
to change,	<i>changer de</i>	to forbid a	<i>défendre à quel-</i>
to command,	<i>commander de</i>	person to,	<i>qu'un de</i>
to concern,	<i>commander à</i>	to hurt,	<i>nuire à</i>
	<i>importer à</i>	to inherit,	<i>hériter de</i>

to lament,	<i>gémir de</i>	to perceive,	<i>s'apercevoir de</i>
to mind,	{ <i>s'embarrasser de</i>	to permit,	<i>permettre à</i>
to slander,	<i>prendre garde à</i>	to persuade,	<i>persuader à</i>
to spare,	<i>médire de</i>	to pity,	{ <i>compatir à</i>
to succeed,	<i>se passer de</i>		<i>avoir pitié de</i>
to suit,	<i>succéder à</i>	to please,	<i>plaire à</i>
	<i>convenir à</i>	to promise a	<i>promettre à quel-</i>
to supply,	{ <i>subvenir à</i>	person to,	<i>qu'un de</i>
	<i>suppléer à</i>	to remember,	<i>se souvenir de</i>
to touch,	<i>toucher à</i>	to renounce,	<i>renoncer à</i>
to mistake,	<i>se méprendre à</i>	to resist,	<i>résister à</i>
to mistrust,	{ <i>se défier de</i>	to resemble,	<i>ressembler à</i>
	<i>se méfier de</i>	to revenge,	<i>se venger de</i>
to mock,	<i>se moquer de</i>	to trust,	<i>se fier à</i>
to obey,	<i>obéir à</i>	to use,	{ <i>se servir de</i>
to obviate,	<i>obvier à</i>		<i>user de</i>
to oppose,	<i>s'opposer à</i>		<i>avoir besoin de</i>
to order,	<i>ordonner à</i>	to want,	{ <i>manquer à</i>
to outlive,	<i>survivre à</i>		<i>manquer de</i>
to pardon,	<i>pardonner à</i>		

ALPHABETICAL AND ANALYTICAL INDEX.

 The numbers refer to the paragraphs of the text;—*ref.* p., reference to the exercises, page....;—*app.*, appendix.

A.

A, first letter of the French alphabet, 2.
The first of the vowels, 5. Proper names ending in *a*, how translated into French, p. 14. *A*, verb, has no accent.

À (preposition); the sign of the dative in nouns, 53. In pronouns, p. 32. Precedes subst., adj., and verbs, signifying *fitness, readiness, &c.*, *ref.* p. 181. Changed into *y*, when relating to an antecedent, *ref.* p. 196. *A*, corresponds with *de*, *ref.* p. 239. Repeated before the words it governs, *ref. ibid.* Before an infin., *à* has an active meaning, though used to translate a passive expression in English, *ref.* p. 249. *A*, preceding an infin., in a comparative sentence, must be repeated after *que* (*qu'à*), *ref.* p. 264. Contracted with the art. before the names of some Italian painters and poets, *ref.* p. 287. Not contracted with French proper nouns when the art. defin. is part of them, *ibid.* The suppression of *à* before a noun in the dative, does not take place in French when that noun is followed by an acc., *ref.* p. 288.

A and *de*; their difference of signification with respect to the verb they govern, 528.

A or *on*; English art. indef., 28. How translated, 59 and 60. Before a superlative *a* is translated by the art.

defin., *ref.* p. 264. Translated by *le* in general propositions, *ref.* p. 277. Yet *un* or *une* may be used, *ref.* p. 288. Translated by *le* before nouns of measure, weight, and number, 416. Translated by *par* before nouns denoting time, attendance, admission to public places, 417. Never used in French between a pronoun and a noun to express admiration, *ref.* p. 288. Elegantly suppressed in French before a subst. nom., when preceded by *jamais*, *ref.* p. 293.

A and *de*, generally governed by neuter verbs, 183.

s'Abaisser à, 527.

s'Abandonner à, 527.

Abattre; conjugated p. 137.

Ablative (from the Latin *ab*, out, and *latus*, carried—carried or drawn out of a thing, from a thing); its definition, 38.

Able; subst. and adj. in *able* are the same in both languages, p. 14 & 21.

Able (to be); when it signifies *may* or *might*, is translated by *pouvoir*.

About; after an English part. or adj., *app.* 574. After an English verb, how rendered into French, *app.* 576.

Aboutir governs *à* and an infin., 525.

Aboudre; irregular and defective verb, p. 137. Exercise on, p. 169. This verb governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.

- s'Abstenir*; irregular verb, conjugated p. 137.
- Abstraction* (faire) *de*; supplies *abstraire*, p. 137.
- Abstraire*, defective; conjug. p. 137. Observ. on, *ibid.* Supplied by *faire abstraction*, *ibid.*
- Accabler* governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.
- Accidents*, what is meant by, 19.
- Accorder* governs the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, 530.
- Accourir*; irregular verb, conjug. p. 137. With *avoir* when it expresses an action; with *être*, if it expresses the result of that action, 186. Followed by a disjunctive personal pronoun, 212.
- Accoutumé* is followed by a disjunctive personal pronoun, *ref.* p. 185.
- Accoutumer* quelqu'un à une chose; or à faire une chose.
- s'Accoutumer* à, 527.
- Accroître*, irr. verb; conjug. p. 137. Observ. on, *ibid.*
- Accroître* (faire)
- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------|
| _____ <i>que</i> | } Observ. on, p. |
| _____ (<i>s'en faire</i>) | |
| _____ (<i>en faire</i>) | |
- 137.
- Accrotte*, irr. verb; conjug. p. 137. Observ. on *ibid.* Conjug. with *avoir* or *être*, according to its meaning, 186.
- Accueillir*, irr. verb; conjug. p. 137. Observ. on that verb, *ibid.*
- Accusative* (from the Latin *accusare*, in the sense of *to declare, to announce*); its definition, 34. Its place, 35. How to distinguish it, 36. May either precede or follow an active verb, 302. When after the verb, the part. remains undeclined, 303. When preceding a verb, the acc. must be a personal pronoun, or a subst. with *que*, or even *que de, combien de*, and a noun, 305.
- Accuser* governs the acc. of the person and the genitive of the thing, 529.
- Acé*; subst. of that termination are alike in both languages, p. 14.
- s'Acharner* à, 527.
- Achever* governs *de* bef. an infin., 526.
- Acé*; subst. of that termination are alike in both languages, p. 14.
- Acquérir*, irr. verb; conjug. p. 138. Exercise on, p. 169.
- Acteur*; its fem. is *actrice*, 99.
- Actives verb.* (transitive), its definition, page 39. How distinguished, *ibid.* May become passive; except *avoir*, 175. Governs an acc. case, 301. Cannot govern two acc., 516.
- Acé*; subst. of that termination are made French by changing *acé* into *acie*, p. 14.
- Acé*; nouns in *acé* are the same in both languages, p. 14.
- Adjective* (from the Latin *adjectivus*, which is added); one of the parts of speech, 10. Definition, 81. Declinable in French, but invariable in English, *ibid.* How to Frenchify many English adj., 82. Some have a small alteration in their final syllables, 83. The plural of adj. is formed like that of subst., 87. Some adj. and those of number precede their subst., 88. Adj. of number, 100. Cardinal numbers, *ib.* Ordinal numbers, *ibid.* Some adj. are followed by a disjunctive personal pronoun, *ref.* p. 185. Adj. ending in *ant* derived from verbs, seldom have any adverb; an equivalent must be found, *note* p. 251. Adj. used adverbially, *ref.* p. 252. Some adj. have neither comparative nor superlative, 362. When two adj. are united by *et*, the art. is not repeated before the second, 438. When they express the opposite qualities of the same subst., the art. is not repeated, 439. When two adj. qualify each a subst., one expressed and the other understood, the art. is repeated before each adj., 440. Adj. used adverbially are invariable, 448. Adj. are often used substantively, 449. After the verb *être*, the adj. used substantively are more forcible than the subst. itself, 449. Adj. of dimen-

sion, how rendered in French, *ref.* p. 300. When two or three dimensions are used, the conjunction *and* is better rendered by *sur*, *ibid.*

Adjective; formation of its feminine—

An *e* mute is generally added to the masc., 84. Adj. ending in *e* mute are of both genders, 85. Those ending in *f*, change that letter into *ve*, 86. Those in *eil* or *el*, double the *l*, and take an *e* mute, 89. Those ending in *as*, *ais*, *és*, *os*, double their final consonant, and take an *e* mute for their fem., 90. A few exceptions, 91. Those ending in *ot* and *et*, double the *t*, and take an *e* mute, 92. A few exceptions, 93. Adj. ending in *ien* and *on*, add *ne* for their fem., 94. Those ending in *eur* and *eux*, change that termination into *euse* for their fem., 95. A few exceptions, 96. Adj. ending in *c* vary in the formation of their fem., 97. Some adjectives have two masculines in use, 98. Other adjectives are too irregular to be classed, 99.

*Adjectives; plural of—*Adj. form their plural like subst., 69, 87. Adj. ending in *al*, which have no plural in use, *ref.* p. 29. Those in *al* which take *s* for their pl., *ibid.* Those in *al* which take *s* or *aux* for their pl., *ibid.* Adj. must remain sing. when qualifying *vous* used instead of *tu*, 157.

*Adjectives; place of—*The adjective generally follows its subst., 88. A few always precede their nouns, *ib.* When several adj. qualify a subst., they are placed after it, *ref.* p. 29, and p. 262. When one adj. belongs to those which usually precede the noun, and another to those that follow, they retain their natural order, *ref.* p. 29. Adjectives of number usually precede their substantives, *ref.* p. 39. Observation on the place of the adjective, p. 301. Monosyllabic adj. are placed before their nouns, unless joined to another adj. by *et*, 450. Verbal adj. always follow

their subst., 451. Adj. expressing physical qualities usually follow their nouns, 452. Essential observ. on that rule, *ib.* Why can we say, *un fidèle ami*, and never *un fidèle homme*? *ib.* Adj. governed by *to be* (*être*) always follow that verb, 453. In exclamative sentences the adj. generally precedes its noun, 454. Always follows the subst. when modified by an adv. or when it governs a prep., 455. When the subst. has a government, the adj. precedes its noun, 456. In the elevated style, the adj. may sometimes be separated from its noun, 457. Some adj. change their signification, according as they are placed before or after their subst., 458. A list of those adj., 459. Adj. of several syllables are seldom placed before their subst., 460. Adj. not ending in *e* are intolerable before their nouns, 461. Adj. plural unite well with a subst. beginning with a vowel, 462. Adjectives ending in *x*, unite well with a noun beginning with a vowel, *ibid.* Adj. qualifying a subst. ending in *e*, *es*, are more harmonious after than before their nouns; but feminine adj. and those ending in *e*, are more elegantly placed before than after, 463. A list of adj. that usually follow their nouns, 464. A list of those adj. that precede their nouns, 465. A list of adj. that may either precede or follow their nouns as taste may dictate, 466. A list of adj. which in simple style follow the subst., but precede it in the elevated or poetical style, 467.

*Adjectives; agreement of—*The adj. agrees in gender and number with the subst. it qualifies, 81 and 441. When joined to the verb *être*, it agrees with the nom. to the verb, 163. When an adj. qualifies several subst. of the same gender, it must be plural, and agree with them in gender, 442. If the nouns are of different genders the adj. must be masc. pl., 443. But should the subst. express in-

animate objects of different genders, the ear requires that the masc. noun should come last, and the adj. should agree with it, if that adj. has a different termination for each gender, *ibid.* An adj. placed after two or more subst. not joined by *et*, agrees with the last if the nouns are nearly synonymous, 444. When two subst. are joined with the conjunction *ou*, the adj. agrees in gender with the last, but remains sing., 445. Some adj. are not declined before their subst., 446; but declined after them, 447. Used adverbially, the adj. is invariable, 448. Adj. used substantively have less force than subst. Why, 449.

Adjectives; government of—The government of an adj. is either a noun or a verb preceded by a prep., 468. Adj. followed by *de* before a noun or a verb, 469. Those followed by *à* before a noun or a verb, 470. Adj. followed by *à* and an infinitive, 471. Some adjectives are followed by other prepositions, 472. There are adj. that govern sometimes one prep., sometimes another, 473. Many adj. change the prep. they govern, according as they are followed by a noun of person or thing; by a subst. or a verb, 474. Some adj. are used absolutely, 475. Adj. which govern *de* with *il est*, and *à* with *c'est*, 476 and p. 341. When two adj. do not govern the same case, each must have a distinct regimen, 519. A list of adj. governing a different prep. in English and in French, *app.* p. 340.

Adjoindre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 138.

Admettre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 138.

s'Adonner à, 527.

Adresser governs the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, 530.

s'Adresser à, 527.

Adverb (from the Latin *ad*, near, and *verbum*, verb—added to the verb); one of the parts of speech, 10. When used after the impersonal *c'est*, 195.

Definition of, 324. Differs from the prep., *ibid.* Simple or compound, 325. Adverbial locution, *ibid.* Division of adv., 326. For the time present, 327. For the time past, 328. For the time to come, 329. Of time in general, 330. Adv. of place and order, 335. Adv. of quantity, 337. Adv. of quantity that require *de* before a subst., *ibid.* Adv. of quality and manner, 340. Formed from adj., 341. By adding *ment* to an adj. masc. ending with a vowel, 342. And from other adj., how formed, 343. From adj. in *ant* and *ent*, 344. Adv. of affirmation, negation, doubt, comparison, and interrogation, 345. Government of adv., 347. Adv. in *ment*; some may be followed by a prep., as the adj. from which they are formed, *ibid.* Adv. of comparison must be repeated before every adj. or adv. compared, *ref.* p. 259. But before a subst., the prep. *de* is generally sufficient, *ibid.*

Adverb, place of the adverb with respect to the verb it modifies, 331. With a compound tense, 332. Place of some adv. of time, 333. Place of some adv. of manner, 334. Of some adv. of order, 336. The clearness of a sentence often depends on the place of the adv., p. 248. Place of an adv. modifying another adv., *ref.* p. 252. Place of the adv. of affirmation, negation, &c., 346.

Affaire (avoir); an indivisible expression, therefore no article before the noun, 127.

Affecter governs *de* before an infin. 526.

After; the verb that follows is generally in the perfect infinitive, *ref.* p. 270.

After; after an English participle or adj., how rendered, *app.* p. 340.

After an English verb, *app.* p. 342.

Again, when expressing a repetition of the action, is translated by *re* before the verb, *ref.* p. 76.

Agreable; when followed by *à* and an

- infin., that infin. has a passive sense, 471.
- Agreement or concord*; what is it, 81.
- Agréer*, irr. in its orthography, conjug. p. 128. Observe on, *ibid.*
- Ah!* This interj. differs from *ha!* 381.
- Aider* governs *à* before an infin., 525.
- Aïeul*; its pl. *aïeux* in the sense of ancestors, 78; and *aïeuls*, as the paternal and maternal grandfathers, *ib.*
- Aïl*; nouns in *aïl*, 76, 77.
- Aïl*, a subst.; its pl. is *aïuls*, 78.
- Aimer*; model of the first conjug. ending in *er*, p. 59.
- Aimer* governs *à* before an infin., *ref.* p. 201, and 525.
- Aimer mieux* governs the next infin. without any preposition, 524.
- Ainsi que*; between two subst. nominative to a verb, the first governs the verb expressed, and the second a verb understood, 512.
- Ais*; adj. ending in *ais* form their fem. by adding *se*, 90. *Exc.* 91.
- Al*; nouns ending in *al* change *al* into *aux* for their plural, 74. *Exc.* 75. Proper names in *al* are the same in both languages, p. 14; take *s* for their plural used as a common subst., 75.
- Al*; nouns in *al* are the same in both languages, whether subst., p. 14, or adj., p. 31.
- Al*; adj. in *al* which have no plural in use, p. 29. Those which add an *s*, *ib.* Those which take *s* or *aux*, *ib.*
- A la*; article def. fem., dat. case, 55. *à* is contracted into *au*, 54. Not contracted with proper names when the article is part of them. *ref.* p. 287.
- A les*, contracted into *aux*, 57.
- Aller*; conjug. p. 138. Forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185. Sometimes with *avoir*, p. 138. Obs. on its auxiliaries, p. 139. The imper. *va* sometimes takes an *s* before *y*, sometimes not, *ibid.* Used before *guérir*, p. 160. *Exer.* on *aller*, p. 169. Followed by a personal diaj. pron., 213. *Aller* must be followed by the name of a place, otherwise, *s'en aller* is used.
- Aller bien* replaces *seoir*, p. 164.
- s'en Aller* irr. v.; conjug. p. 139. Cannot be followed by the name of a place. *Exercise* on, p. 170.
- To allow*, for *let*, how translated, *ref.* p. 182.
- Alphabet*; the French alphabet has twenty-five letters, 2. Has neither *w* nor (except in words borrowed from other languages) *k*, 3.
- Am* (I) followed by an English gerund in *ing* must be conjugated by the corresponding tense in French, p. 67.
- Ambitionner* governs *de* before an infinitive, 526.
- À moins que* requires the subj. and *ne* before it; if the verb is negative in English, *ne pas* must be used, *ref.* p. 269.
- s'Amuser à, s'amuser de*, 528.
- An*; a nasal sound or vowel, 6.
- Ance*; subst. of that termination are the same in both languages, p. 15.
- Ancy*; an English termination, changed into *ance*, p. 14.
- Ander*; proper names in *ander* change that termination into *andre*, p. 15.
- Animer* governs *à* before an infin., 525.
- Annoncer* governs the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, 530.
- Annuler* supplies the defective, *dis-soudre*, p. 148.
- Ant*; subst. and adj. ending in *ant* are the same in both languages, p. 14, and 21.
- Ant*; subst. and adj. ending in *ant* or *ent* now retain the *t* in their plural, *note **, p. 16.
- Antecedent* (the) of a pronoun governs that pronoun in gender and number, p. 33. With a relative pronoun, p. 199.
- Any*; art. partitive in English, used in interrog. or neg. for *some*, 62; *ref.* p. 95.
- Any*, for *some*, how expressed in interrogative and negative sentences, *note* p. 11.
- Apparître*, irr. verb; conjug. p. 189. Obs. on that verb, *ibid.* Conjug.

- with *avoir* or *être*, according as they express an action or the result of an action, 186.
- Appartenir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 139.
- Appeler*, irr. in its orthography; conjug. p. 139.
- Appeler* (en); followed by a disj. personal pronoun, 213.
- Applaudir* à, 188.
- s'Appitquer* à, 527.
- Apporter* governs the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, 530.
- Apposition*, what is meant by, p. 294.
- Appréhender*; when this verb requires the subj. and *ne* before it, 544. Governs *de* before the next infin., 526.
- Apprendre*; irr. v.; conjug. p. 139. Governs *à* before an infin., 525.
- s'Apprêter* à, 527.
- Ar* or *ary*; English subst. and adj. in *ar* or *ary* change that termination into *aire*, p. 14, and 21.
- Are* (we, you, they,) followed by a gerund, is translated by the corresponding tense, p. 67.
- Arriver* forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185.
- Art* (thou) followed by a gerund in English, must be translated by the corresponding tense, p. 67.
- Article*; one of the parts of speech, 10. Definition, 39. How many are there, 40.
- Article definite*; its functions, 41 and 393. How translated into French, 43. Its nom. and acc. cases sing. and pl., 44—47. Expressed in French before nouns used in a general sense, *ref.* p. 7. Its gen. and abl. cases, 48. Its dat. case, 53. Precedes an adj. followed by a proper name, *ref.* p. 29. Follows the adj. *tout*, *ref.* p. 277. Preferred to *un* in general propositions, *ref.* p. 275. When used to translate *that which*, or *those who*, *ref.* p. 279. The dat. *au*, *à la*, used before nouns of things sold or hired when no price is mentioned, 418. Replaced by *de* before nouns used to qualify another noun, 419. Repeated before every substantive, 397. When not repeated, *ibid.* Used after the verb *avoir*, before subst. naming some part of the body and followed by an adj. *ref.* p. 277. Likewise if the adj. expresses a quality of the body as well as of the mind, *ref.* p. 277. Used before nouns of dignities, titles, liberal professions, &c., 401. Used before nouns of countries, provinces, mountains, winds, but not used if a comparison is implied, 404. Not used if the country takes its name from its capital city, 405. Used before nouns of countries out of Europe, where we are going to or coming from, 406. Not used before a noun of country, after a noun of dignity, 409. Emphatically used in the plural, before some celebrated proper names, 411. When used in French instead of the article indef., 416. Not used before nouns expressing an indeterminate sense, 419. Omitted when the noun qualifies a preceding subst., but replaced by *de*, 420. Not used before a noun in the vocative case, nor before the title of a book, or an address, 421 and 422. Not used before a noun which is acc. to an active verb used negatively, 423. But used if the sentence has a positive and affirm. sense, though in the neg. form, *ibid.* Also if the acc. is followed by an adj. or an incidental sentence, 424. Also if we wish to express a positive sense; otherwise omitted, 425. Omitted before a subst. governed by *avec*, *sans*, *entre*, *en*, 426. Not used before a noun forming with a verb a single idea, 427. No article is used when a subst. is repeated with a prep., 428. Not used before a noun taken adjectively, except when followed by an adj. or preceded by *c'est*, 430. In exclamative sentences, the art. is omitted before a subst., when the verb *to be* is understood, *ref.* p. 293. Suppressed after some

- verbs followed by the prep. *pour*, *ref. ibid.* In the enumeration of subst. the art. may be used, but is generally omitted, 431. The same with *ne que*, 432. Omitted before an enumeration of subst. when the infin. is preceded by *neither*, 433. Omitted before a subst. which serves to characterize another subst. spoken of before, 434. But expressed if that noun is used by way of distinction, 435. Used before a noun that expresses the quality of a preceding noun in the highest degree, 436. Not used before a noun beginning an incidental sentence, being an obs. on what has been said, 437. The art. is not repeated before the second adj. which modifies the same subst., 438. The same rule whether the adj. precede or follow the subst., 439. Repeated before two adj. qualifying each a subst., one expressed and the other understood, 440.
- Article indefinite*; definition, 58. How declined, 59. The art. *a* or *an* translated by the art. def. in French, in general propositions, *ref. p.* 277. Sometimes used before a proper name in both languages, 411. Elegantly suppressed after *jamaïs* and a noun, *ref. p.* 293.
- Article partitive*; definition, 61. Declined, 63—65. Used before nouns common, 398. Replaced by *de*, *ref. p.* 24, and rule 399. When the art. def. must be preferred, *ibid.* Used before a noun and an adj. forming a compound word, 400. The pl. *des* may be used between *en* and a subst. partitive plural, *ref. p.* 293.
- As*; in subst. and adj. that termination is changed into *aire*, *p.* 14, and 21.
- As*; adj. in *as* add *se* for their fem., 90. Exc. 91. Proper names in *as*, how translated, *p.* 15.
- As*; always translated by *que*, when it joins two members of a comparison, 354.
- Aspirer* governs *à* before an infin., 525.
- Assaillir*, irr. v.; conjug. *p.* 140. Obs. on, *ibid.*
- s'Asseoir*; conjug. *p.* 140. Remarks on that irr. verb, *ibid.*
- Asseoir*, irr. v.; *p.* 140.
- Assez, c'est assez*; conjug. 200. The place of that adverb, *ref. p.* 249.
- Assortir* is not conjug. Like *sortir*, but like *punir*, *p.* 140.
- s'Assujettir à*, 527.
- Astreindre*, irr. v.; conjug. *p.* 140.
- At*; after an English participle or adj. how transl., *app. p.* 340. After a verb, *app. p.* 342. Signifying, *at my house, at your house, &c.*, *ref. p.* 237.
- Ats*: final of an English verb, terminated in French by *er*, *p.* 68.
- Attaché*; followed by a disjunctive pers. pron., *ref. p.* 185.
- s'Attacher à*, 527.
- Atteindre*, irr. v.; conjug. *p.* 140.
- s'Attendre à*, 527.
- Attention* (faire), when followed by a pronoun, it must be a disjunctive, *p.* 184.
- Attirer*; a reg. v., which supplies the tenses wanting in *attirer*, *p.* 140.
- Attribuer* governs the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, 530.
- Au*; contrac. of *à le*; when used, 54.
- Au*; nouns ending in *au* take *x* for their pl., 71.
- Aucun*; an indeter. pron., 274. When synonym of *nul*, *ibid.* Not used in the pl. except in one instance, *ibid.*
- Aujourd'hui*; its place after the participle as in English, 333.
- Au moins*; when preceding a verb, that verb may take the interrogative form, 481.
- Auprès, près*; their difference, *ref. p.* 239.
- Aussi* and an adj. or an adv. form a comparative of equality, 353. When preceding a verb, that verb may elegantly take the interrogative form, though there is no question asked—this rule is not obligatory, 481.

Aussi bien que; when that conjunction unites two subst. nominative to a verb, the first governs a verb expressed, and the second a verb understood, 512.

Autant, before a participle, expresses a comparison of equality, *ref.* p. 256.

Autant que forms a comparative of equality, *ref.* p. 256.

Autant de and a subst. form a comparative expression, 353. The equivalent of *aussi* and an adj., *ref.* p. 256. Serves to form a comparison of inferiority with a negation, 359.

Auteur has no fem., 99.

Autoriser governs *à* with an infin., 525.

Autre—les uns, les autres, d'autres; how used when they mark a division of several persons or things, 275.

Autru; used when speaking of persons in the gen. and dat. cases only, 261.

Aux; a contraction of *à les*; when used, 57.

Aux; pl. of nouns in *ai* or *ail*, 74—76.

Auxiliary, what is meant by *auxiliary verbs*, 131.

Avancer; irr. in its orthography only; conjugated p. 140. Observation on, *ibid.*

Avant, devant; prep.—their difference, *ref.* p. 237. *Avant* opposed to *après*, *ibid.*

Avec and a subst. form an adverbial locution, *ref.* p. 244. Governs a subst. without an art., 426.

Avenir, an impers. verb; seldom used, p. 141.

Avertir governs *de* before an infin., 526. It likewise governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.

Aveugle forms its adverb irregularly, 342.

Aveuglement, adv. formed from *aveugle*, 342.

Avoir; its conj., p. 45. What verbs it serves to conjugate, p. 50. Cannot become passive, 175. Governs *à* before an infin., 525.

Avoir affaire; no art. before nouns

forming, with a verb, one single idea, 427.

Avoir égard; when followed by a pron., that pron. must be disjunctive, p. 184.

Avoir peur; this verb governs the subj. with *ne* before it, 544; governs *de* before an infin., 526.

Avoir recours; the next pron. must be a personal disjunctive, p. 184.

Avouer governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.

Ayer; verbs in *ayer* irr. in their orthography, p. 135. Model conjugated, p. 157.

B.

Baïsser; a regular verb which supplies the tenses wanting in *déchoir*, p. 146.

Balancer governs *à* before an infin., 525.

Bannir governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.

Battologie differs from *perissology*, *note* p. 338.

Battre, irr. v.; conjugated p. 141.

Be (to) être—conj. p. 53. When impers., 193. When changed into *faire*, 194. When preceded by *there*, 196. When followed by another verb in the infin., how rendered, *ref.* p. 83.

Be (to) able, in the sense of *may* or *might*, transl. by *pouvoir*. *Be (to) better*, transl. by *valoir mieux*, 199.

Be (to) so good, so kind, transl. by *veuille*, p. 168. *Be (to) necessary, needful, requisite*, transl. by *falloir*, 198.

Be (to) sufficient or enough, transl. by *suffire*, or *être assez*, 200.

Beau precedes its noun, 88. Its fem., 98. Replaced by *bel*, *note* p. 26. Formation of its adv., 342.

Beaucoup; when preferred to *bien*; *ref.* p. 249. *Beaucoup* and *bien*; their difference. The former takes the prep. *de*, 338.

Bel; adj. used for *beau* before a vowel.
Its pl. is *beaux*, not *bels*, *note* p. 26.

Its fem. is *belle*, *ibid.*

Bénin; its fem., 99. Generally used ironically, *note* p. 28.

Bénir; obs. on that verb, p. 141.

Bestiaux; plural of *détail*, 78.

Best; a superl. relat. translated by *le meilleur* when relating to an adj., and by *le mieux*, when modifying a verb, 366.

Détail; its plural, 78.

Better, as compar. of *good*, *meilleur*: as compar. of *well*, *mieux*, 360.

Bien; adv. that precedes the present of the infin., 334. Serves to form the superl. absol., when before an adj. or an adv., 362.

Bien used for *beaucoup*: the former takes the art. defin., 338. When preferred to *beaucoup*, *ref.* p. 249.

Bien; its compar. is *mieux*, 360.

Bienfaiteur; its fem., 99.

Blâmer governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.

Blanc; its fem., 97.

Bleu; the only word in *es* that takes *s* for its plural, 71.

Boire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 141. The pron. that follows this verb must be a personal disjunctive, p. 184.

Bon precedes the subst.—Its compar. is *meilleur*, never *plus bon*, 360.

Bon de differs from *bon à*, 476.

Bon homme differs from *homme bon*, 459.

Both (*l'un et l'autre*); how declined, 276. Transl. by *tous deux* or *tous les deux*, but with a different signif., *ref.* p. 215. With ref. to a subst. of things, how transl., *ibid.* When immediately before a noun not used adjectively, transl. by *les deux*, *ref.* *ibid.* Before two nouns or pronouns united by *and*, not expressed, *ibid.*

Bouillir, irr. verb; conjug. p. 141. *faire bouillir* governs the acc., p. 142.

Braire, defec. and irr. v.; conjug. p. 142.

Brave; adj. that precedes its subst., 88.

Brave homme differs from *homme brave*, 459.

Bruire, defec. and irr. v.; p. 142.

Bruyant, gerund of *bruire*; seldom used but as a verbal adj., p. 142.

By; after adjectives, how rendered in French, 574. After verbs, how rendered, 576.

By; government of an English passive verb—how rendered in French, *ref.* p. 106.

By, after an English participle, p. 340. After a verb, p. 342.

By; expressed by *de*, in comparisons, *ref.* p. 264. Before the noun of a thing sold or hired, with no price mentioned, transl. by the dat. of the art. defin., 418.

C.

C; adj. ending in *c*, how to form their fem., 97.

ça, a familiar contraction of *cela*, 255.

Cacophony; what is meant by it, *note* p. 222.

Caduc; formation of the fem. of that adj., 97.

Case; one of the accidents of nouns; definition, 26. There are six cases, 27. How formed in French and in English, 28.

à cause que, generally replaced by *parce que*, p. 266.

Ce, cet, cette, ces, demonstr. conjunc. pron., when used, 120—123. When followed by *ci* or *là*, p. 36; declined, p. 37.

Ce; sometimes used before an adj. When, 195. When used as nom. to a verb, 493. Followed by *être* and a noun or a pron., the verb takes the number of that noun or pron., 494. Before *nous* or *vous*, of what number must the verb be? 495. *Être*, preceded by *ce*, must remain in the singular when the regimen of another verb follows, 496; *ce* serves to recapitulate the different nom. of a sentence, 500; *ce*, repeated before

- être*, after *ce qui*, 498; but suppressed when the second verb is followed by an adj., 499; *ce*, preceding the verb *être*, interrog. used—What number does that verb take? 502.
- Ce, cela*, as nominative, their difference, 493.
- Ceci, cela*; when used, 254. When opp. to each other, 255.
- Cela*; when used, 254. Sometimes familiarly contracted into *ça*, 255. When nom. to a verb, 498.
- Celui-ci, celui-là*; when used, 252, and *ref.* p. 207; for *celui*, *ref. ibid.*
- Celui, celle, ceux, celles*, often used to avoid the repetition of a noun antecedent, 256. May be followed by the relative *qui*, 257. Used in proverbial sentences, *ibid.*
- Celui qui, celle qui, ceux qui, ceux que, &c.* used to answer the question, expressed by *lequel, which*, *ref.* p. 206.
- Ce qui, ce dont, ce à qui, ce que*, at the beginning of a sentence of two parts, require the repetition of *ce* before *être*, 498. But suppressed when the second verb is followed by an adj. or a participle, 499.
- Cent* takes the mark of the pl. before a noun, *ref.* p. 244.
- Cer*; verbs of this termination change *c* into *ç* before *a* or *o*, *ref.* p. 67; see *avancer*, *conjug.* p. 140.
- Certain* is either a pron. indeter., or an adj., according to its place in the sentence, *ref.* p. 312.
- Certaine nouvelle, nouvelle certaine*; their difference, 459.
- Casser*; after this verb, the second negation may be omitted, *ref.* p. 335. Governs the next infinitive with *de*, 526.
- Ces*, demonstr. pron. pl., 123; declined, p. 37.
- C'est* with a noun requires *de* before an infin., *ref.* p. 131.
- C'est, ce fut*, followed by a qualifying expression, often begin a sentence, and the word qualified is placed at the head with *que* before it, if a noun or pronoun, and *de* or *que de*, if an infinitive, 501.
- Ce sont, ce furent*, and a noun; when preferred to *c'est, c'était, ce fut*, as nominative to a verb, *ref.* p. 131.
- C'est assez*, *impers. v.*; *conjug.* 200.
- Ceux-ci, ceux-là*, 252.
- Cesoir*; verbs in *cesoir* change the *c* into *ç* before *a, o, u*, *ref.* p. 76.
- Chacun*, used collectively or distributively, 262. When followed by *de*, *ibid.* Declined with *de*, and *à*, 269. Used with *son, sa, ses*, 504. With *leur, leurs*, 505.
- Chaque* has no plural, 270.
- Chasser* governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.
- Chasseur* has two fem., 99.
- Châtain*; this adj. has no fem., 99.
- Chercher*, with a noun, used without an article, forms an inseparable idea, 427. Governs the next infinitive with *à*, 525.
- Chez lui, chez elle, chez moi, &c.—de chez moi, de chez lui, &c.*—Obs. on these expressions, *ref.* p. 237.
- Ci*; when used after a noun, p. 36. After a pronoun demonstr. *disjunc.*, 252. When opposed to *là*, 252.
- Ciel*; its pl. irregularly formed, 78.
- Ciels*; when used instead of *cieux*, p. 19.
- Cieux*; plural of *ciel*, 78.
- Cinq*; when replaced by *quint*, *ref.* p. 308.
- Circoncire*, *irr. v.*; *conjug.* p. 142.
- Circonscrire*, *irr. v.*; *conjug.* p. 142.
- Circonscrire*, *irr. v.*; *conjug.* p. 142.
- Clore*, defective and *irr. v.*; *conjug.* p. 142. Obs. on, *ibid.*
- Collective*, defined, 17.
- Collective general*, defined, 18. Governs the verb in the sing., 513.
- Collective partitive*, defined, 18. When followed by a noun, the verb agrees with that noun, 514. When denoting a determinate quantity, the verb agrees with the collective if preceded by the article definite, *ibid.* If the

- noun is understood, the collective requires the verb in the plural, *ibid.*
- Combattre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 142.
- Combien*; adv. of quantity that requires *de* before its noun, 337. When at the head of an interrogative and affirmative sentence, place of the nom., *ref.* p. 254.
- Combien y a-t-il—combien de temps*, when used, *ref.* p. 254.
- Comblér*, governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.
- Commander*; in what case the ind. or the subj. should be used after this verb, 552. Governs the next infin. with *de*, 526.
- Comme*; differs from *comment*, *ref.* p. 254. When *comme* unites two subst. nom. to a v., the first noun governs a verb expressed, the second, a verb understood, 512.
- Commencer à, commencer de*; their difference, 528.
- Comment*; when at the head of an interrogative and affirmative sentence, place of the nom., *ref.* p. 254. When the transp. of the nom. cannot take place, *ib.* Differs from *comme*, *ib.*
- Commettre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 142.
- Commode*; formation of its adv., 342.
- Commun*; formation of its adv., 343.
- Communiquer* governs the dat. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 530.
- Comparative*; defined, 351. Three sorts of, 352. Of equality, how formed in adj., 353. Comparative expressions of equality with subst., how formed, *ib.* With adv., *ib.* Comparative of superiority, 355. Of inferiority, 358. Comparative locutions of superiority, 358. Locutions of inferiority, 358. In neg. sentences, 359. Adj. and adv. that form their comparative irregularly, 360.
- Comparative*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 142. Observ. on, *ibid.*
- Compatir*, neuter verb; governing *à* before a noun, 188.
- Complaire*, defec. v.; conjug. p. 143.
- se Complaire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 143.
- A neuter verb, accidentally reflected, has its participle indeclinable, 307.
- Complément*, a better expression than *regimen*, 389.
- Compound words*; those in English, formed of two subst., must be transposed in French, *ref.* p. 16. How made plural, 80.
- Comprendre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 143.
- Compromettre*, irr. v.; conjug. *ibid.*
- Compter*, governs the next verb without any prep., 524.
- Conclure*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 143.
- Concord*, a part of syntax; what is meant by it, 388.
- Concourir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 143. Governs the next infin. with *à*, 525.
- Condamner* governs the next infinitive with *à*, 525.
- Conditional mood*; its functions, 139. Has two tenses, 148. Conditional present; what it denotes, p. 48; how formed, p. 62. Conditional past; what is meant by it, p. 48. Conditional anterior and future idiomatical conditional tenses, p. 49.
- Conduire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 143. Exercise on, p. 171.
- Confesser* governs the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, 530.
- Confier* governs the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, 530.
- Confire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 143. Exercise on, p. 172.
- Conforme*, formation of its adv., 342.
- Confus*, formation of its adv., 343.
- Conjoindre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 143.
- Conjugation*; what is it, 132. Four conjugations in French, 133. How distinguished, 134. Different ways of conjugating the same verb, 135. Conjugation of *avoir*, p. 45. Of *être*, p. 53. Of *aimer*, model for verbs ending in *er*, p. 59. Important obs. on the conjugation of verbs in *er*, p. 64. Conjugation of *punir*, as model for verbs of the second conjugation, p. 68. Conjugation of *devoir*, model of the third conjugation, p. 73. Of

- rendre*, model of fourth conjugation, p. 76. Conjugation of a negative verb, p. 84. Of an interr. verb, p. 91. Of a neg. and interr. verb, p. 96. Of a passive verb, p. 100. Of a reflected verb affirmatively used, p. 106. Negatively used, p. 114. Interrogatively used, p. 118. Interr. and neg., p. 121. Of an impersonal verb, p. 129. Conjugation of all the irr. verbs alphabetically, p. 137.
- Conjunction*, one of the parts of speech, 10. Definition of, 370. Either simple or compound, 371. Some words essentially conjunctions, others accidentally so, *ibid.* and 377. Conjunctions governing the indic. mood, 373. The subjunc. mood, 374. The infin. mood, 375. Of the conjunction *que*, p. 329.
- Connaitre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 144. Obs. on, *ibid.* Differs from *savoir*, *ibid.* Exercise on, p. 171.
- Conquérir*, defec. and irr. v.; conjug. p. 144. Obs. on, *ibid.*
- Consider* requires *à* before an infin., 525.
- Conspirer* governs *à* before the next infinitive, 525.
- Conseiller* governs the acc. of the thing and the dative of the person, 530. Requires *de* before an infin., 526.
- Consentir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 144. Governs the dat. case, 188. Governs the infin. with *à*, 525; *consentir à*, *consentir de*, their difference, 528.
- Consonant*; definition, 5. Its office, 7. In an auxiliary verb, the final consonant is always joined to the next participle, p. 44.
- Construction*, defined, 553. How many sorts of, 554. Figurative, 556. Irregular, 557. Four sorts of, 559.
- Construire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 144.
- Contender*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 144.
- Continuer*, takes the nom. pron. after it, when we repeat the words of some person, 480; *continuer à*, *continuer de*, their difference, 528.
- Contraction*, what is meant by it, 49.
- Contraindre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 144; *contraindre de*, *contraindre à*, their difference, 528.
- Contredire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 144. Obs. on that verb, *ibid.*
- Contrevenir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 144. Obs. on, *ibid.*
- Contrevenir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 144. Governs the dat. case of a noun, 188.
- Contribuer* governs the dat. case, 188. Governs *à* before an infin., 525.
- Consentir*, irr. v.; p. 144. Takes *avoir*, or *être*, 187; *consentir à* takes *avoir*, *consentir de* takes *être*, *ibid.* That neuter verb may become passive, 175. Replaces the defec. verb, *seoir*, p. 164. Governs *de* before an infin., 526. As an impersonal, governs *de* before an infin., *ref.* p. 131.
- Correspondence of the tenses*. The present or future of the principal proposition requires the present or perfect of the subj. in the subordinate proposition, *ref.* p. 266. The past tenses of the indic. or the condit. require the imperf., perf., or the pluperf. of the subj. after them, *ib.*
- Corriger*, governs *de* before an infin., 526. Governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.
- Corrompre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 144.
- Coudre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 144. Exercise on, p. 172.
- Courir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 145. Obs. on, *ibid.* Exercise on, p. 171. Followed by a disjunctive personal pronoun, 213. With a subst. forms an inseparable idea, 427.
- Courir*, irr.; when used instead of *courir*, p. 145.
- Cours-je*, the harshness of that sound renders it necessary to change it into *Est-ce que je cours*, note p. 91.
- Côter* governs *à* before the next infinitive, 525.
- Coverir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 145.
- Craindre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 145. Requires the subj. and *se* before it, 544. Governs the next infin. with *de*, 526.
- de crainte que*, requires *se* before the

subj., or *ne pas* when the verb is negative in English, *ref.* p. 269.
Créer, when it requires the next subst. to have no art., *ref.* p. 293.
Crier, and a noun, without the art., form an inseparable idea, 427.
Croire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 145. When the following noun takes no art., *ref.* p. 293. Governs the next verb without any preposition, 524.
Croître, irr. v.; conjug. p. 145. Takes *avoir* or *être* for its compound tenses, 186. Exercise on, p. 172.
Cruel enfant, enfant cruel, their difference, 469.
Cueillir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 146. Obs. on, *ibid.* Exercise on, p. 172.
Cuire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 146. As an active verb we say *faire cuire*, *ib.*

D.

Daigner governs the next infin. without a prep., 524.
Dans, a prep.; differs from *en*, *ref.* p. 237. When translated by *in*, *ibid.*
Dative case (from the Latin *dare*, to give); definition, 33. Dat. of the art. def., 53.
Davantage differs from *plus de*, *ref.* p. 249. Though an adv. of quantity, *davantage* admits no regimen, 347.
De, a preposition; the sign of the gen. and abl. cases, 48. Loses the *s* before a vowel, *ref.* p. 10. Preceding a noun partitive, 63—65. Used instead of *du, de la, des*, before an adj. preceding a noun partitive, *ref.* p. 24, and 399. Serves to form the gen. and abl. of proper nouns, 67; of possessive conjunctive pron., p. 32. Generally the regimen of a passive verb, p. 105. Used before the indef. acc. of a negative verb, *ref.* p. 89. When governed by a passive verb instead of *par*, *ref.* p. 105. Generally the government of a reflected verb, 181. After a verb the sign of the gen., *ref.* p. 128. Precedes a participle following *il y a*, or a noun of num-

ber, *ref.* p. 131. Precedes an infin. after an impera. verb, *ibid.* When used before an infin. that verb in English may generally be changed into the gerund, *ref.* p. 182. When rendered by *en*, *ref.* p. 190. *De* is repeated in the sentence, *ref.* p. 239. When replaced by the art. defn., 400. Some authors have used the art., *ibid.* *De* used before the country we come from, 406. *De* precedes name of country we leave, *ib.* *De* renders the sense of the noun more vague and indeterminate, hence the difference between *histoire de France* and *de la France*, 409. Used before a name of country used adjectively, 409. With the art. contracted, *de* is used before the name of some Italian poets and painters, *ref.* p. 287. Placed before a noun qualifying another noun, 419. Precedes a noun in the acc. governed by an active v. used negatively, 423. Likewise when the verb is both interrogative and negative, 425. *De* is used without the art. after the words *sorte, genre, espèce*, 429. *De* and *à*—different significations of the v. which they govern, 528.
Débattre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 146.
Débusquer, governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.
Décéder, irr. v.; conjug. with *être*, 185.
Déchoir forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185. Conjugated p. 146. *Baisser* and *décliner* supply the tenses wanting, *ibid.*
de Décider, governs the prep. *à*, 527.
Déclarer, governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.
Declension; of the art. defn., 43—57; of the art. indef., 59; of the part. art., 63; of a proper name, 67; of a pron. possessive conjunctive, p. 32; of the pron. possessive relative, p. 34; of the pron. demonstrative conjunctive, p. 37; of personal conjunc. pron., 207; of personal disjunctive

- pron., 211; of relative pron., 240—243; of interrogative pron., 246—248; of indeterminate pron., 275—278.
- Décliner* supplies the tenses of the defective verb *déchoir*, p. 146; and of *défaillir*, *ibid.*
- Déclore*, defec. v.; conjug. p. 146; its tenses wanting replaced by *ouverir*, *ibid.*
- Déconjure*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 146.
- Découdre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 146.
- Découvrir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 146.
- Décrire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 146.
- Décroître*, irr. v.; conjug. with *avoir* to express an action, or with *être* to express the result of an action; its conjugation, p. 146.
- Dédaigner*; this verb requires *de* before the next infin., 526.
- Dedans*, adverb; when is it used as a prep., *ref.* p. 237.
- Dédier*; governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.
- se Dédire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 146. Obs. on that verb, *ibid.*
- Déduire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 146.
- De façon que*; when is the subj. or the ind. required after that conjunc., *ref.* p. 335.
- Défaillir*, defec. verb; conjug. p. 146. Supplied by *decliner* and *tomber en défaillance*, *ibid.*
- Défaire*, irr. v.; conjug. of, and obs. on, p. 146.
- Défer*; this verb governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- Dégouter*; this verb governs the acc. of the person and gen. of the thing, 529.
- Dehors*; when is it used as a prep., *ref.* p. 237.
- Déjoindre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 147.
- De la*; art. defin. fem. gen. case sing., 50. Art. part. nom. and acc. case sing., 62. When used, 64. Changed into *de* before an adj. preceding a part. noun, *ref.* p. 24. *De le*, contracted into *du*, 49. *De les*, contracted into *des*, 52.
- Délibérer*; this verb governs the next infin., with *de* before it, 526.
- Délikerer* governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.
- Demain* follows the participle as in English, 333.
- Demander*, with a following noun, without art., forms an inseparable idea, 427. Governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.
- Demander à* or *demander de*; their difference, 528.
- De manière que*; when does this conjunction govern the subj. and when the ind., *ref.* p. 335.
- De même que*; when uniting two subst. nom. to a verb, the first governs a verb expressed, and the second a verb understood, 513.
- Démentir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 147.
- se Démettre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 147.
- Demeurer*; conj. with *être* or *avoir*, according as they express an action or the result of that action, 186.
- Demi*; that adj. is invariable before its nouns but not after, 446.
- Demonstrative pronouns*; why so called, 117. Considered as adj., *note* p. 36. How divided, 118. Demonstrative conjunctive always precede a noun, 119. What are they, *ibid.* How translated, 120—123. How declined, p. 37.
- Demonstrative disjunctive pronouns*; what is meant by, 252. Are declined with *à* and *de*, 258.
- se Départir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 147.
- Dépendre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 147.
- De peur que*; a conjunction that requires *se* and the subj.; but if the verb is negative in English *ne pas* is used, *ref.* p. 269.
- Déplaire*, irr. v.; governs the dat. case, 188. Conjug. p. 147.
- se Déplaire*, a neuter verb accidentally reflected, has its participle indeclinable, 307.
- Dépouiller*, replaces the tenses wanting in *extraire*, p. 151—*dépouiller* go-

- verns the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.
- Dépourvoir*, irr. and defec. verb.; conjugated, p. 147. Obs. on, *ibid.*
- Depuis* corresponds to *jusque*, *ref.* p. 239. As an adv., *depuis* follows the participle as in English, 333.
- Dernier*; when followed by a relative pronoun the subj. is required, 550.
- Derrière*, prep.; opposed to *devant*, *ref.* p. 237.
- Des* (for *de les*), a contraction; gen. and abl. pl. of the art. defin., 52. Art. part. pl. nom. and acc. cases, 62. When used, 63—65. Changed into *de* before an adj. preceding a part. noun, *ref.* p. 24. May be used before *en* and a subst. part. pl., *ref.* p. 293.
- Désagréable*, governs *à* with *c'est*, and *de* with *il est*, 575.
- Désapprendre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 147. Requires *à* before the next infin., 525.
- Désespérer*; when used negatively the following verb must be in the subj. mood and *ne* before it, 546. This verb governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- se Déshabiller* is generally preferred to its synonym *se dévêtir*, p. 147.
- Désirer* governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- Désobéir* governs the dat. case, 527.
- Desservir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 147.
- Dessous*; when used as a prep., *ref.* p. 237.
- Dessus*; when used as a prep., *ref.* p. 237.
- Détourner*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 147.
- Détenir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 147.
- se Déterminer à*, 527. We say *déterminer à* or *déterminer de*, in what sense, 528.
- Détester*; this verb governs *de* before an infinitive, 526.
- Détourner* governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.
- Devant*, a prep. which differs from *avant*, *ref.* p. 237. *Devant* opposed to *derrière*, *ibid.*
- Devenir*, irr. v.; forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185. Conjug. p. 147. *Devenir* takes the following noun without article, *ref.* p. 293.
- se Dévêtir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 147; *se déshabiller* is generally preferred, *ibid.*
- Devoir*; model for verbs of the third conjugation in *avoir*; conjug. p. 73. Governs the next infin. without a prep., 524. Governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.
- Dévouer* governs *à* before the next infinitive, 525.
- se Dévouer* requires the dat. case after it, 527.
- Did*; as an English auxiliary, not expressed in French with neg. verbs, 165; nor with interrog. verbs, 170.
- Différer*, irr. in its orthography only; conjug. p. 147. Obs. on, *ibid.* May supply the verb *sursavoir*, p. 165. Governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- Difficile* requires *de* with *il est*, and *à* with *c'est*, 575.
- Diffus* forms its adv. irregularly, 343.
- Dire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 147. Obs. on, p. 148. Exercise on, p. 172. This verb takes its nom. pron. after it, when we repeat the words of some person, 480—*dire* and a noun without article sometimes forms an inseparable idea, 427—*dire* requires the next infin. with *de* before it, 526. This verb requires the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.
- Discontinuer* governs *de* before an infin.
- Disconvenir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 148. With a negation this verb requires the subj. and *ne* before it, 546. Governs the prep. *de* before the next infin., 526.
- Discourir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 148.
- Disjoindre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 148. Obs. on, *ibid.*
- Disparatre*; conjug. with *avoir* to express an action, or with *être* to

- express the result of an action, 186.
 Conjugated, p. 148.
- Dispos*; this adj. has no fem., 99.
- Disposer*; this verb requires *à* before the next infin., 525.
se Disposer à, 527.
- Dissiper*; used to supply the tenses wanting in *distraindre*, p. 148.
- Dissoudre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 148.
 The tenses wanting are supplied by *fondre* and *annuler*, *ibid.*
- Dissuader* governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.
- Dissyllable*; what is meant by it, 9.
- Distraindre*, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 148. Obs. on, *ibid.* When used in the sense of *to doubt* it is supplied by *dissiper* and *donner des distractions*; but in the sense of *to take from*, *enlever* is generally preferred, *ibid.*
- se Divertir* supplies the tenses wanting in *s'ébattre*, p. 148.
- Divin*; this adj. has neither compar. nor superl., p. 260.
- Do*; as an English auxiliary not expressed in French with negative verbs, 165; nor with interrogative verbs, 170.
- Donner*; this verb and the following noun without art. sometimes forms an inseparable idea. Requires *à* before the next infin., 525. Governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.
- Donner des distractions*, used instead of tenses wanting in *distraindre*, p. 148.
- se Donner pour*; the next noun takes no art. before it, *ref.* p. 293.
- Dont*; gen. of the pron. rel. *qui*, relates to persons and things, 242. Its place, *ibid.*
- Dormir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 148. Exercise on, p. 176.
- Douter*; when used negatively, requires the subj. and *ne* before it, 546.
Ne pas douter; obs. on that expression, *ibid.*
- Double*; this adj. forms its fem. irregularly, 99. When followed by *à* and an infin. that verb has a passive sense, 471.
- Dresser*; this verb requires the prep. *à* before the next infin., 525.
- Du* (*for de le*) a contraction, 49. When used as a defn. art., *ibid.* Art. part., 62. When used, 63. Replaced by *de*, before an adj. preceding a noun part., *ref.* p. 24—*du, de la, des*, when used before the adj. preceding a noun part. 399. Used before subst. formed of an adj. and a noun, 400.
- Dû*, participle of *devoir*, the only verb that has a circumflex in the participle, to distinguish it from *du*, art., p. 73. That participle not declined, 315. Declinable as part of the verb *devoir*, to owe, *ibid.*
- Durant*, a prep.; differs from *pendant*, *ref.* p. 237.
- Du moins*; the verbs that follow may elegantly take the interrogative form, 481.

E.

- E*; the second of the vowels, 5. Adj. ending in *e* are both masc. and fem., 85. Receives the acute accent (*é*) before *je*, in interrogation, *note* p. 91.
- Each other*, a pronoun indetermin.; p. 213. See *one another*.
- Earth*; this proper subst. takes the art. defn. in French, *ref.* p. 287.
- s'Ébattre*, irr. and defec. verb; the tenses wanting are supplied by *se divertir* and *se réjouir*, p. 148.
- Ébouillir*, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 148. Obs. on that verb, *ibid.*
- Échapper* is conjug. with *avoir* or *être*, but to express different meanings, 187.
- Échapper* governs the next infinitive with *de* or *à* before it, according to the sense, 528.
- Échoir*, irr. and defec. v.; conjugated p. 148. Forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185.
- Éclorre*, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 149. Forms its comp. tenses with *être*, 185. *Faire éclorre* is sometimes

- preferred, p. 149. *Souvenir* and *paraître* may supply the tenses wanting, *ibid.*
- Éconduire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 149.
- s'Écrire*; this verb takes the pronoun nom. after it when we repeat the words of some person, 480.
- Écrire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 149. Exercises on p. 173. Governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.
- Êre*; verbs of that termination have an irregularity in their orthography, p. 138.
- s'Efforcer* governs the next infin. with *de* or *à*, according to the sense, 528.
- Effroyable* takes *de* with *il est*, and *à* with *c'est*, 575.
- Égal*; this adj. is sometimes followed by a disj. pers. pron., *ref.* p. 185.
- Égard* (avoir), an indivisible expression; no article is used, 427.
- Eh!* interj.; differs from *he!* 385.
- Elle*; adj. in *elle* form their feminine by doubling the *l* and adding an *e* mute, 89.
- Êther*, p. 213. How translated, 277.
- El*; how made feminine, 89.
- Eler*; verbs ending in *eler* are irr. in their orthography; they double the *l* before *e* mute, *ref.* p. 89, and p. 139.
- Appeler* conjugated p. 139.
- Êler*; verbs in *eler* are irr. in their orthography. *Révéler* conjug. p. 162.
- Êlire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 149.
- Élision*; defined, *note* p. 6. Elision of *a* or *e* of the art. *le, la*, 46. When it does not take place, *note* p. 6.
- Elle*, personal conjunctive pronoun; nom. fem., p. 179; *d'elle*, when replaced by *en*, 222; *à elle*, when supplied by *y*, *ibid.*
- Elles*, a personal conjunctive pronoun; nom. fem. plural, p. 179. A pers. disj. pronoun, when used after *ce sont*, &c., *ref.* p. 131; *d'elles*, when replaced by *en*, 222; *à elles*, when replaced by *y*, *ibid.*
- Ellipsis*, figure of syntax; definition, 560. When vicious, 561, 562.
- Eluder*, governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- Embellir*, conjug. with *être* or *avoir*, as it marks the progressive action or the state resulting from that action, 186.
- Emer*; verbs of that termination are irr. in their orthography, p. 135.
- Semer* conjug. p. 164.
- Émettre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 149.
- Êmoudre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 149.
- Êmouvoir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 149. Obs. on, *ibid.*
- Empereur*; its fem. is *impératrice*, 99.
- Empêcher* requires the subj. and *ne* before it, 544. Governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- Employer*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 149. Governs the next infin. with the prep. *à*, 525.
- Empreindre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 149.
- s'Empresser* governs the next infin. with *de* or *à*, according to the sense, 528.
- En*, a supplying pronoun, 222. Replaces *de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles*, *ibid.* With reference to persons, *en* has a vague indeterminate sense, *ibid.* Comes after *ne*, *ref.* p. 189. Often supplies a whole sentence, *ref.* p. 206. Used to translate the possessive, *its* and *their*, 491.
- En* (preposition); differs from *dans*, *ref.* p. 237. Repeated in the sentence, *ref.* p. 239. Used before the country we are going to, or live in, 407. Governs the next substantive without any art., 426. *En* may be followed by *des* and a subst. part. plural, *ref.* p. 293.
- Ence*; English subst. ending in *ence* are the same in French, p. 14.
- Enceindre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 149.
- Enchantour*; its fem. is *enchanteresse*, 99.
- Enclore*, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 150. Replaced by *entourer* and *renfermer*, *ibid.*
- Encore*; when it precedes a verb, that verb may elegantly take the interro-

- gative form: this rule is not obligatory, 481.
- Encourager* governs the next infinitive with *à* before it, 525.
- Encourir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 150.
- Ency*; English subst. of that termination change it into *ence*, p. 14.
- Endormir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 150.
- s'Endormir*; conjug. p. 150.
- Enduire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 150.
- s'Endurcir* governs the dat. case, 527.
- Enfer*; verbs of that termination are irr. in their orthography. *Mener* conjugated, p. 154.
- Enfreindre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 150.
- s'Enfuir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 150. Obs. on, *ibid.*
- s'Engager* governs the dat. case, 527. Governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.
- Engager* governs *à* or *de* before the next infin., according to the sense, 528.
- Enjoindre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 150. Governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- Enlever*; when used to supply *distrainre*, p. 148.
- Ennuyer*, irr. in its orthography only; conjug. p. 150. Obs. on, *ibid.* *Sen- nuyer à* or *de*, 528.
- Enorme*; this adj. forms its adv. irregularly, 342.
- Enough* (to be); how translated, 200.
- s'Enquérir*, irr. and defect. v.; conjug. p. 150. Supplied by *s'informer*, 46.
- Enseigner* governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525. Governs the acc. of the thing and the dative of the person, 530.
- Ensuite*; this adv. follows the participle as in English, 233.
- s'Ensuiure*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 150. Obs. on, *ibid.*
- Ent*; subst. of that termination are both French and English, p. 14. Adjectives in *ent* are the same in both languages, p. 21.
- Ent*; languages of that termination retain the *t* in their plural.
- Entendre* supplies the tenses wanting in *ouir*, p. 156. With a noun, it forms an indivisible expression, 427. Governs the next infin. without a prep., 524.
- Entourer*; this verb may replace the tenses wanting in *enclore*, p. 150.
- Entre*, prefixed to a verb, may render it reciprocal, p. 124. *Entre* differs from *parmi*, *ref.* p. 237. Governs the next subst. without any art., 426.
- s'Entremettre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 150.
- Entreprendre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 150. Governs the next infin. with *de*, 526.
- Entrer* forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185.
- Entrettenir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 150.
- Entrevoir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 150.
- Entr'ouvrir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 150.
- En vain*; the verb that follows may elegantly take the interr. form, 481.
- Envers*; that prep. differs from *vers*, *ref.* p. 237.
- Envie* (*avoir*) forms an indivisible expression; no art. should precede the noun, 427.
- Envoyer*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 151. Governs the acc. of the thing and the dative of the person, 530.
- Épargner* governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.
- Éprendre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 151.
- s'Éprendre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 151. Obs. on, *ibid.*
- Équivoir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 151.
- Er*; verbs of that termination are of the first conjugation, 184. Model of that conjugation, p. 59. *Er*, added to an English adj. or adv., stands for the word *more*, transl. by *plus*, 356.
- Érer*; verbs in *érer* are irr. in their orthography. *Diférer*, model conjugated, p. 147.
- Es*; proper names in *es* change that termination into *e* mute, p. 15. Adj. in *es* add *se* to form their fern., 98.
- Espace* governs the next subst. with *de* before it, 429.
- Espérer* governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526. But that prep. may be suppressed, and when, *ibid.*

Essayer governs the next infin. with *de* or *à*, according to the sense, 528.

Est, added to an English adj. or adv. forms a superl. relative; how translated, 363.

Est-ce que; often used to ask questions, *note* p. 91. But differs in signification from the usual manner, *ibid.* Used with the first person sing. of certain verbs, to avoid a disagreeable or harsh sound, *ibid.*

Et; adj. of that termination form their fem. by adding *te*, 92. A few excepted, 93.

Et, a conjunction which must precede the last of several adj. qualifying a subst., p. 29. Joins like cases in nouns and pronouns, *ref.* p. 89. With nouns of number when replaced by a hyphen (-), *ref.* p. 244. Suppressed in the enumeration of subst., 431. If the enumeration is preceded by *ne que*, *et* is used, 432. Cannot be admitted before the last of several synonymous subst., 444. The different parts of the government of a verb, being joined by *et*, must be expressed by words of the same nature, 522.

Eter; verbs ending in *eter* double the *t* before *e* mute, *ref.* p. 89. *Jeter*, model, p. 153.

Éter; verbs in *éter* are irr. in their orthography. *Répéter*, model, p. 161.

Êtreindre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 151.

Éternel; this adj. does not take the degrees of comparison, and why, p. 260.

Étranger; this adj. is sometimes followed by a personal disj. pron., *ref.* p. 185.

Être; conjug. p. 53. Serves to conjugate all passive verbs, p. 57. All reflected verbs, *ib.* And some neuter verbs, *ibid.* When used impersonally, 193. When the nominative *il* must be changed into *ce*, 195. When changed into *faire*, 194. In the sense of *to belong*, p. 184.

Êtreindre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 151.

Étudier, governs the next verb with the prep. *à*, 525.

Eu, nouns ending in, how made pl., 71. One exception, *ibid.*

Eu; a compound vowel, 6.

Euphony prevents the *hiatus* and *cacophony*, *note* p. 222.

Eur; adj. in *eur* change that termination into *euse* for the fem., 95. A few exceptions, 96.

Euse; fem. adj. in *euse* either come from *eur* or *eux*, 95.

Eux; adj. in *eux* change it into *euse* for their fem., 95. *Eux*, a pronoun personal disj., 211. Used after *ce sont*, &c., *ref.* p. 131. *Deux*; when replaced by *en*, 222. A *eux*; when replaced by *y*, 222.

Ever; verbs in *ever* are irr. in their orthography. *Lever*, model, p. 114.

Éviter; when it is better than *éviter*, p. 152. Governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.

Evoir; verbs of that termination have an irregularity in the third person pl. present indicative and in the formation of the future, p. 73.

Excellent; this adj. has neither comparative nor superlative, p. 260.

Exceller governs the next verb with the prep. *à*, 525.

Excepté; invariable before a subst., 446; but agrees with the noun it follows, 447.

Exciter governs the next verb in the infin. with *à* before it, 525. Governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.

Exclure, irr. v.; conjug. p. 151. Governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.

Exhorter governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.

Expliquer governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.

s'Exposer governs the dat. case, 527.

Exprès; this adj. forms its adv. irregularly, 343.

Espulser governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.

Extension; in subst., what is meant by, 14. One of the accidents of a noun, 19.

Extraire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 151. *Faire un extrait*, or *dépouiller*, supplies it, *ibid.*

Extrêmement, before an adj., serves to form the superl. absolute, 362.

F.

F; adj. ending in *f* change that letter into *us* for their fem., 86.

Facile; when followed by *à* and an infin., that infin. has a passive signification, 471. Governs *de* with *il est*, and *à* with *c'est*, 576.

Faillir, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 151. Obs. on, *ibid.*

Faism (avoir), an indivisible expression, therefore no art. is used before the noun, 427.

Faire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 151. Obs. on, *ibid.* Exercise on, 173. Supplies the place of *être* with adj. denoting the disposition of the weather, 194. With a noun it forms an indivisible expression, 427. Takes the following subst. without any art., *ref.* p. 393. Governs the next verb in the infin. without any prep., 524.

Faire abstraction de supplies *abstraire*, p. 137.

Faire accroître; obs. on, p. 137.

en Faire accroître, p. 127.

s'en Faire accroître, p. 137.

Faire attention; when followed by a pron., it must be a disjunctive pron., p. 184.

Faire un extrait supplies *extraire*, p. 151.

Faire éclore; sometimes preferred to the verb *éclore*, p. 149.

Falloir, irr. and impera. v.; conjug. p. 132. Governs the subj., 201. When with an infin., 202. When *falloir* expresses *want*, *ibid.* Followed by what tense of the subj., 203. Governs the next infin. without a prep., p. 134, and again, 524.

Falls; this participle is never declined—why, 315.

Fait; this adj. has no fem., 99.

Faux; its fem. is *fausse*, 99.

Favori; its fem. is *favorite*, 99.

Faindre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 152. Governs the next infin. with the prep. *de* before it, 526.

Feminine; formation of the fem. of adj., 86—99. Of the participle, 177.

Férir, irr. and defec. v.; p. 152. Obs. on, *ibid.*

Feu; obs. on the declinability of, 447.

se Fier governs the prep. *à*, 537.

Figures of Syntax; definition, p. 336.

Filer, with some words after it, sometimes forms an indivisible expression, 427.

Fleurir, reg. v.; conjug. like *pouvoir*. When used figuratively, it is irr. in the gerund and imperf. indic., p. 152.

Fol; has another masc. in use. Formation of its pl., *note* p. 26.

Fondre supplies the defective verb *dis-soudre*, p. 148.

Fonds-je? cannot be used interrogatively; *est-ce que je fonde* must be used, *note* p. 91.

For; when transl. by *depuis*, *pendant*, or *pour*, *ref.* p. 237. Generally requires the verb in the perf. infin., *ref.* p. 270. After an English adj. how rendered in French, 574. After an English verb how transl., 576.

Forcer à differs from *forcer de*, 528.

Forclore, irr. and defec. v.; p. 152.

Forfaire, irr. and defec. v.; p. 152. *Former* governs the next verb with the prep. *à*, 525.

se Former le goût differs from *former son goût*, *ref.* p. 366.

Former (the); used instead of *that* or *those*—how transl., 252.

Fert, serves to form the superl. absolute, 362.

Fou; for its fem., 96. Its use, *note* p. 26. Formation of its adv., 342.

Frais; its fem., 91.

Franc; formation of its fem., 97.

Frémir governs the next infin., with *de* before it, 526.

Frenchify; how to Frenchify English subst., 68. And English Adj., p. 21. And English verbs, p. 68.

Frère, irr. v.; conjug. p. 182. Obs. on, *ibid.*

Froid (*avoir*); an indivisible expression. No art. must precede *froid*, 427.

From, a prep.; the sign of the abl. case, 48. Government of an English passive verb—how transl., *ref.* p. 105. Used after some English verbs, 576.

From the; how transl., 48.

Furious animal differs from animal *furieux*, 459.

Fuir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 182. When used actively the perfect is better rendered by *éviter*. When neuter, *je pris la fuite* is preferable to *je fuis*, *ibid.*

Future; of the indicative. What is denoted by, p. 47. How formed, p. 61. Formed irregularly in verbs in *avoir*, p. 73. A tense of the infin., 146. Of the indic., 147. Of the imper. (implied), 149.

Future anterior; what it denotes, p. 47.

Future indefinite positive, p. 46.

Future instant, p. 48.

Future imperfect, p. 48.

Future conditional, p. 49.

Fy; termination of an English verb. How made French, p. 68.

G.

Gagner governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.

Ge; subst. ending in *ge* are the same in both languages, p. 14.

Gémir governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.

Gender; one of the accidents of nouns, 19. What is meant by it, 20. Only two in French, 21. The conventional gender of an inanimate object is known by its termination, 22.

Generic substantives, what is meant by, 14.

Genitive case (from the Latin *gigno*, *genitum*, to produce); its general designation, 32. When formed in English by *'s*, how transl., *ref.* p. 13; by contraction, p. 8.

Genre; that word governs the following subst. with *de* before it, 499.

Gentil; its fem. is *gentille*, 99. Its adv. is irregularly formed: it makes *gentiment*, 343.

Gens is the pl. of *gent*, note p. 16.

Genus; a property expressed by the subst., 14. What is meant by it, 394.

Ger; verbs ending in *ger* always have an *e* after *g*, *ref.* p. 67. *Juger*, model, conjug. p. 183.

Gerund, a part of the infin., 146. One of the five primitive tenses, p. 59. Serves to form the pl. of the present indic., p. 59. Also the imperfect, p. 60. The English gerund with a tense of the verb *to be*, never translated literally in French, p. 59. Indeclinable when it expresses an action, 295. Declinable when it expresses a quality, 296. A few gerunds differ in their orthography from their corresponding adj., *ibid.* When preceded by the prep. *by*, how translated, 297. Indeclinable when at the head of an incidental sentence, 299. When translated into French by a tense of the indic. with the pron. *qui* before it, 300. When transl. by the present of the infin., *ref.* p. 226.

Gésir, irr. and defec. v.; nearly obsolete, p. 152.

To go, on foot, on horseback, &c., how translated, p. 170. To go and meet, *ibid.*

Government (regimen, or rather, complement). A part of Syntax, 387. Government of passive verbs *de* or *par*, *ref.* p. 105. Government of verbs, obs. on, *ref.* p. 189. What is meant by government, 389. The government of an adj. is either a subst. or a verb, preceded by *à*, *de*,

- en, sur, &c.*, 468. Government of verbs, p. 323. An infinitive may be governed by another verb without any preposition, or with *à* or *de*, 523. Government of verbs, 576 and 577. Of some adj., 574 and 575.
- Gouverneur*; the fem. of that subst. is *gouvernante*, 99.
- Grand*, an adj. that precedes its subst., 88.
- Grammar*; definition, 1.
- Grand homme* differs from *homme grand*, 459.
- Grandir*, conjug. with *avoir* when expressing an action, and with *être* when it expresses the result of an action, 186.
- Grandissime*, a superl. expression used in familiar language only, 362.
- Grec*, forms its fem. irregularly, 97.
- Gros*; an adjective that precedes its subst., 88.
- Grosse femme* differs from *femme grosse*, 459.
- Gue*; subst. ending in *gue* are the same in both languages, p. 14.

H.

- Ha!* an interj. which differs from *ah!* 381.
- s'Habituer* governs the prep. *à*, 527.
- Hair*; irr. in the present indic. Obs. on this verb, p. 152.
- se Hasarder*, governs *à* or *de* according to the sense, 528.
- He*, an English personal pron. of the third person masc. sing.; nom. case, *il*, p. 179.
- He!* an interj.; when used, 384.
- Heaven—Hell*; these proper subst. must have the art in French, p. 287.
- Her*, an English poss. pron. conjunctive; agrees in French with the next noun in gender and number, 105. A pron. pers. fem. third person sing. acc., *la*, p. 179. *To her, lui*, a dative case, sing., *ibid.*
- Hers*, a pron. poss. relative; in French it agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, 111.
- Herself*, immediately after a verb, is trans. by a reflected verb in French, p. 111.
- Hésiter*, governs the next infin. with *à* before it. (That verb does not govern the prep. *de* before an infin., as said in list, 525.)
- Hiatus*; what is meant by it, *note* p. 222.
- Hier*; that adv. follows the participle as in English, 333.
- Him*, a pers. pron.; acc. sing. *le*. *To him, lui*, for the dat. case, p. 179.
- Himself*; immediately after an English verb, is trans. by a reflected verb in French, p. 111.
- His*, a pron. poss. conjunctive; agrees in number and gender with the following noun, 105. A poss. relative, 112.
- Hol* an interj. which differs from *oh!* 382.
- Homme honnête* differs from *honnête homme*, *ref.* p. 83.
- Honir*, an obsolete verb, p. 152.
- Horrible*; when followed by *à* and an infin., that infin. has a passive signification, 471.
- How long?* different ways of translating it, *ref.* p. 254.
- Hyphen*; with a noun of number the hyphen (-) is a sign of addition, and replaces the conjunction *et*, *ref.* p. 244.

I.

- I*, the third of the vowels, 5.
- I*, English pers. pron. conjunctive of the first person sing., p. 179. When trans. by *je*, *ibid.* When a personal disjunctive it is trans. by *moi*, 211.
- Ian*, English terminations of proper names of persons and nations change it into *ien*, p. 14.
- ible*; subst. ending in *ible* are the same in both languages, p. 14. Adj. of that termination are also the same, p. 21.
- Ice*; subst. of this termination become French by changing *ice* into *éque*, p.

14. Adj. follow the same rule, p. 21.
- Ical*; adj. in *ical* become French by changing that termination into *ique*, p. 21.
- Ice*; nouns ending in *ice* are the same in both languages, p. 14.
- Idiomatical tenses*, p. 47, 48, 49.
- Ien*; adj. in *ien* form their fem. by adding *ne* to their termination, 94.
- Ier*; verbs in *ier* are irregular in their orthography. *Prier*, model, p. 169.
- Ignorer* has a neg. sense and means *ne pas savoir*, *ref.* p. 333.
- Il*; pron. personal conjunctive, third person masc. sing., p. 179. It is always nom. to an impers. verb, 190. In interrogation, follows the verb, 169. Even when a subst. is used as nom. to the verb, 171.
- Ile*; subst. and adj. ending in *ile* are the same in both languages, p. 14 and 21.
- Its*; pron. personal conjunctive third person masc. pl., p. 179. The final *s* sounds like *z* before a verb beginning with a vowel, p. 44. As nom. follows a verb interrogatively used, 169. Even when a subst. is used as nom. to that verb, 171.
- Il y a*, impers. v.; conjug. p. 130. Governs *de* before the next participle, *ref.* p. 131.
- s'Imaginer*; this refl. v. governs the acc. pron. *le*, p. 196. Governs the next infin. without a prep., 524.
- Imperative mood*; its office, 140. Has one tense only, 149. Why present or future, 56. No first person sing., p. 49. How formed from the present ind., p. 63. When used affirmatively it must be followed by the personal pron., 209. When negatively used the pron. personal precedes it, 210.
- Imperfect*; tense of the ind., 147. A tense of the subj., 150. What it denotes and when used, p. 45. Formed from the gerund, p. 60. Two exceptions, 434. Imperf. subj.; how formed, p. 63.
- Impersonal verb*; definition, p. 40.
- Distinguished from personal verbs, *ibid.* Used in the third person only, 190. Their nom. pron. *il* cannot be replaced by a subst., *ibid.* List of the impers. verbs, 191. Some pers. verbs may become impersonal, 192. Conjug. of *pleuvoir*, p. 129; of *y avoir*, 196; of *falloir*, 198; of *valoir mieux*, 199; of *suffire*, 200. *Être* becomes impers. when followed by an adj. used indefinitely, 192; or when denoting the time of day, 56; or the disposition of the weather, in that case *faire* is used for *être*, 194. The impers. *il y a*, requires *de* bef. the next participle, *ref.* p. 131. The impers. *il convient*, *il appartient*, &c.; *il est*, *il était*, and an adj.; *c'est* and a noun, require *de* before an infin., *ibid.*
- Il importe* requires *de* before an infin., *ref.* p. 131.
- Importun* forms its adv. from the fem., accenting the final *e*, 348.
- Impuni*; its adv. irregularly formed is *impunément*, 342.
- In*; a compound vowel, 6.
- In* (prep.); before a gerund transl. by *à* and an infin., *ref.* p. 181. When transl. by *dans*, or simply by *en*, *ref.* p. 237. Transl. by *de*, *de la*, *des*, after a superl., *ref.* p. 262. How transl. before a verb, *ref.* p. 270. Before a subst. of dimension *en* is oftener rendered by *de* than *en*, *ref.* p. 266. *In*, after an adj., how translated, 574. After a verb, 576.
- Incidental sentence* (an); being an obs. on what has been said, cannot always be translated literally, *ref.* p. 296.
- Inditer*, governs the following infin. with *à* before it, 525.
- Incommode*, forms its adverb by accenting the *e* before *ment*, 342.
- Indeterminate pronouns*, why so called, 259. How divided, 260. Take *de* and *à* to form their gen. and dative cases, 269. When nominative to *must*, *ref.* p. 134.

Indicative mood; its functions, 138.

Has eight tenses, 147. When used after *que*, and why, 536. That mood expresses neither doubt nor uncertainty, 538, and *note* p. 330.

Individual, in subst.; one of a species, 14 and 396.

Induire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 152.

Ine; English adj. in *ine* change that termination into *in*, p. 21.

Infini; this adj. has neither comparative nor superl., p. 260.

Infinitment, serves to form the superl. absolute, 362.

Infinité; that collective partitive has often the noun that should follow it understood; in which case the verb must be plural, 514.

Infinitive mood; its office, 137. The root of the verb, 146. Has six tenses, *ibid.* An infin. must be preceded by *de* after an impers. verb, *ref.* p. 131. When used instead of the subj., 378. Several infin. govern another verb in the sing., generally with *ce* before it, 515. One infin. as nom. does not always govern *ce* before the next verb, 515. An infin. may be governed by another verb without a prep., 524. But is generally preceded by *de*, *à*, &c., 523. A list of verbs which require no prep. before the next infin., 524. A list of verbs which govern an infin. with *à* before it, 525. A list of verbs which govern an infin. with *de* before it, 526. A list of those which require *de* or *à* before an infin. according to the sense, 528. Two infin. may follow each other, but the second is governed by the first, 531. But three or four infin. used successively are to be avoided, 532. The number of infin. must be lessened, 533.

Inform governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.

s'Inform; used instead of *s'enquérir*, p. 150.

In order to; when must it be transl. by *pour*, *ref.* p. 181.

Inscrire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 152.

Inspirer governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.

Instruire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 152. Governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.

Insulter, sometimes governs an acc., but most commonly a dat., 189.

Interdire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 152. Obs. on, *ibid.* Governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.

Intéresser governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.

s'Intéresser governs the dative case, 527.

Interjection; one of the parts of speech, 10. Definition, 379. Essentially or accidentally so, *ibid.* Their place in the sentence, 380.

Interrogation; how formed in French and English, 169. And with a negation, 174. Conjugation of a verb used interrogatively, p. 91. How to form the interrogation with a negation, p. 95. Conjugation of a verb used interr. and neg., p. 96.

Interrogative pronouns, p. 201. How declined, p. 202.

Interrompre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 153.

Intervenir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 153.

Introduire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 153.

Inversion; which inversions must be avoided in French, *ref.* p. 207. But sometimes gives additional energy, *ibid.* A figure of syntax, 570. When used, 571. Regular inversions, 572. More used in poetry than in prose, 573.

Inviter governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.

Ion; subst. in *ion* are both English and French, p. 14.

Ir; termination of the second conjug., 134. See *punir*, model, p. 68.

Irregular verbs, what is meant by, 123.

Is; proper names ending in *is* are the same in both languages, p. 14.

Is (verb); when followed by an English gerund in *ing*, it must be translated by the corresponding tense in French, p. 67.

Ise; English verbs of that termination become French by adding *r*, p. 68.

Issir; irr. and defec. verb, p. 153.
Obs. on, *ibid.*

Ish; English verbs in *ish* are made French by changing that termination into *ir*, p. 68.

Ist; English subst. in *ist* change that termination into *iste*, p. 14.

It; pron. personal conjunctive, third pers. singular. As nom. to the verb *must*, it is omitted in French, p. 134.

It is, and a subst. plural as nominative to another verb, how translated, *ref.* p. 131.

Its, a pron. poss. conjunctive, which in French agrees in gender and number with the following noun, 105. A possessive relative pronoun, 112. When rendered by *en*, 491. When translated by the pronoun possessive conjunctive, 492.

Itself; when rendered by *soi*, *ref.* p. 187.

Ius; proper names ending in *ius* change that termination into *e* mute if they are of two or more syllables, p. 15.

Ive; adjectives ending in *ive* are made French by changing that termination into *if*, p. 21.

J.

Jaloux, irregular adj.; its feminine is *jalouse*, 99.

Jamais; when used as a negative, p. 83. This adverb generally precedes the present of the infin., 334. After *jamais* the article indef. is elegantly suppressed before a noun, *ref.* p. 293.

Je, pron. pers. conjunctive, first pers. sing. of both genders. Nom. case, p. 179. After the first person sing. of a verb ending in *e* mute, in interrogation, that *e* becomes accented, p. 91. In interrogation, the *e* is never cut off before a participle, *note* p. 92.

Jeter; model of verbs ending in *eter*. Irr. in its orthography. Conjug. p. 153.

Jeune; adj. that precedes its noun, 88.

Joindre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 153.

Jon precedes its noun, 88.

Jouer à, *jouer de*; their difference, *ref.* p. 128. Model of verbs ending in *ouer*. Irregular in its orthography. Conjug. p. 153.

Juger; model for the conjugation of verbs in *ger*, irr. in their orthography only, p. 153.

Jumeau; its fem. is *jumelle*, 99.

Jurer; this verb governs *de* before the next infinitive, 526.

Jusque; a prep. governing the dative case, 323. Follows *depuis* in the same sentence, *ref.* p. 239.

K.

K; this letter is only used in words derived or borrowed from other languages, 3.

To know; when expressed by *savoir* or *connaître*, p. 163.

L.

L; this letter should be sounded in *il* or *ils*, and why, p. 44.

L' (for *le*, *la*, article, 46, or pronoun personal, p. 181); when used as the acc. pron. of a following participle, that participle is invariable, 318.

La, art. def. feminine, nom. and acc. cases, 45. Loses the *a* before a vowel, 47. Before a comparative of superiority or inferiority, serves to form a superlative relative, 364.

La, pron. pers. fem., acc. case sing., p. 179. Loses the *a* before a vowel, *ref.* p. 181. May precede or follow a second imperative, *ref.* p. 182. After an imperative, does not lose the *a* before another vowel, *ibid.*

Là, used after a noun, p. 36; or a pronoun demonstrative disjunctive, 252.

Lâcher, with a subst. forms an indivisible idea, 427.

Languir; this verb governs *de* before an infin., 526.

- Latter* (the); used for *this* or *these*, how rendered, 252.
- Latin words*; those which do not take the mark of the plural, p. 19. Those which take it, *ibid.*
- Le*; art. def. masc. sing., nom. and acc. cases, 44. Loses the *e* before a vowel, 46. A few exceptions, *note* p. 6. Before a compar. of superiority or inferiority, serves to form a superlative rel., 364. Used before nouns of measure, weight, and number, instead of *un*, 416.
- Le*, pron. pers. conjunctive sing. acc. case, p. 179. Loses the vowel before another vowel or *h* mute, *ref.* p. 181. May precede or follow a second imperative, *ref.* p. 182. After an imperative, does not lose the *e* before another vowel, *ibid.* Used as a supplying pron., 226. Its use, *ibid.* When does it take the gender and number, 227. When suppressed, *ref.* p. 191.
- Least* (the), a superl. relative; how translated, 366.
- Lent*; this French adj. forms its adv. from the fem. by adding *ment*, *note* p. 251.
- Lequel*, a rel. pron., 243. Sometimes replaces *qui*, 244. How declined, 243. Relates to persons and things, 244. Removes ambiguities, *ibid.* In some of its cases replaced by *où* when the verb denotes place, *ref.* p. 201.
- Les*, art. def. plural, of both genders, nom. and acc. cases, 47. Before a compar. of superiority or inferiority serves to form a superl. rel., 364.
- Les*, pers. conjunctive pron. acc. pl. for both genders (*them*), p. 179.
- Less*, with an adj. or adv. serves to form compar. of inferiority, 358.
- Less* (the); either repeated or in opposition, how transl., *ref.* p. 264. Its construction, *ibid.* May be translated different ways, *ibid.*
- Let*, in the sense of *to allow*, how translated, *ref.* p. 182.
- Letters*; the letters of the alphabet, 2. Are either vowels or consonants, 4.
- Leur*, a poss. conjunc. pron. (*their*), agrees in number with the following subst., 109. Its pl. *leurs*, 110. When used after *chacun*, 505.
- Le leur*, *la leur*, rel. poss. pronoun (*theirs*), agrees in gender and number with the word it relates to, 112.
- Les leurs*, of both genders, 115, 116. How declined, p. 34.
- Leur*, a pers. conj. pronoun, dat. case, plural, both genders (*them, to them*), p. 179.
- se Lever*; conjug. as a refl. verb, p. 114.
- Irr. in its orthography only, p. 154.
- Lire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 154. Exercise on, p. 174.
- Lois* requires *de* before an infin., 347.
- Long*; its fem. is *longue*, 99.
- Long* (how); how transl., *ref.* p. 254. In the sense of what length of time, *ibid.*
- Louer*; this verb governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.
- Lui*, a pers. conj. pronoun, dat. case, sing. for both genders (*him, to him; it, to it; her, to her*), p. 179. *De lui, à lui*, cannot refer to inanimate objects, 222.
- Luire*, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 154.
- L'un*, opposed to *l'autre*, marks a distinction, 275.
- L'un l'autre*, an indetermin. pron.; how declined, 275. Must be used with reciprocal verbs, p. 124. When used separately they denote difference, 275. When they relate to two objects, *l'un* refers to the first and *l'autre* to the last, *ibid.*
- L'un et l'autre*, expresses union, 276. How declined, *ibid.* When nom. its verb must be plural, *ibid.*
- L'un ou l'autre*, an indetermin. pronoun, p. 213. Sometimes joined to a subst., *ibid.* How declined, 277. The verb agrees with its nominative, *ibid.*
- ni L'un ni l'autre*, an indetermin. pron., p. 213; how declined, 278. The verb which follows may either be singular or plural, according to the sense. Obs. on this rule, *ibid.*

Les uns, les autres, d'autres, mark division of several persons or things, 275.

M.

Ma, a conjunctive poss. pronoun, fem. (*my*); when used, 107. Replaced by *mon* before a noun fem. beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, 108.

Madame; when used before nouns of abuse, 403. Now used before names of actresses, dancers, and singers, instead of the article *la*, 414.

Mademoiselle; used when addressing an English young lady, but not when speaking of her, *ref.* p. 53. Used before nouns of abuse, 403. Used also before names of actresses, singers, and dancers, instead of *la*, 414. (*Mamsel* is vulgar.)

Maintenir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 154.

Mais, preceding the last of several subst. nominative to a verb, that verb agrees with the last noun, 511.

Mal; this adverb generally precedes the present of the infin., 334. Its compar. is *pis* or *plus mal*, 360.

Mal (*le plus mal* or *le pis*), adverb superlative relative, 366.

Malin; its fem. is *maligne*, 99.

Mander governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.

Manger; this regular verb supplies the irregular verb *paître*, p. 157.

de Manière que; when it governs the subj. and when the indic., *ref.* p. 235.

Manquer à differs from *manquer de*, 528.

Marcher; sometimes followed by a pron. personal disjunctive, p. 184.

Mai; this adjective forms its feminine irregularly, 99.

Matin; this adv. follows the participle as in English, 333.

Maudire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 154.

Mauvais; adjective which precedes its subst., 88. Its comparative is *pire* or *plus mauvais*, 360.

Mauvais (*le plus mauvais* or *le pire*); a superl. relative adjective, 366.

May; sometimes considered as the sign

of the subj., and sometimes as a verb denoting power.

Me, a pron. personal conjunctive, first pers. singular, of both numbers, dat. (*to me*) and acc. (*me*), p. 179. *Losses* the *e* before a vowel or *h* mute, *ref.* p. 181. Changed into *moi* after a verb in the imperative affirmative, 209 and 237. Never changed into *moi* before *en*, *ibid.*

Me, English pron. pers.; transl. by *me* between an imper. and an infin. if the imper. is a neuter v.; by *moi*, if the imper. is active, *ref.* p. 182.

Mesure (nouns of); are preceded in French by the article definite, 416.

Méchant precedes its noun, 88.

Méconnaître, irr. v.; conjug. p. 154.

Médire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 154. Obs. on, *ibid.*

Méditer governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.

Méfaire, irr. and defec. v.; p. 154.

Meilleur, adj.; compar. of *bon*, 360.

Meilleur (*le*), adj.; superl. rel., 366.

de Même que; when uniting two subst. nom. to a verb, the first governs a verb expressed, and the second a verb understood, 512.

Même, pron.; serves to form a compound pron., 217. More energetic than the simple pron., *ibid.* Used before a noun as an indetermin. pron., is declinable, *ref.* p. 217. Sometimes refers to a preceding noun with which it agrees in gender and number, *ib.* As an adv. *même* is indeclinable. Preceding the last of several subst. nom. to a verb, that verb agrees with the last noun, 511.

Menacer governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526. Governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.

Mener, irr. in its orthography only; model for the conjugation of verbs in *ener*, p. 154.

Mens-je; the harshness of the sound requires another turn; *est-ce que je mens* is preferred, note p. 91.

T

- Mentir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 154. Exercise on, p. 176.
- se Méprendre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 154.
- Mériter* governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- Mes*, poss. conj. pronoun, masc. and fem. plural (*my*); when used, 110. How declined, p. 32.
- Méconvenir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 155.
- Méconvenir*, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 155.
- Mettre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 155. Exercise on, p. 174. Replaces *se revêtir de*, p. 163. Used with a subst., without an art., forms an indivisible expression, 427. Governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.
- Mourir*, better expressed by *est-ce que je meurs*, and why, note p. 91.
- Mien* (*le*), poss. relative pron., masc. sing. (*mine*); when used, 113. Its pl. is *les miens*, 115. Declined, p. 34.
- Mienne* (*la*), poss. relative pron., fem. sing. (*mine*); when used, 114. Its pl. is *les miennes*, 116. Declined, p. 34.
- Mieux*; this adj. generally precedes the present of the infin., 334. Comparative of *bien*, 360.
- Mieux* (*le*), adverb; often used to express a superl. absolute, 363; superl. relative, 366. Invariable when it refers to a verb or an adverb, 367.
- Might* is either the sign of the subj. or a verb denoting power.
- Mil*; when so spelled, p. 244.
- Mille*; when spelled *mil*, ref. p. 244.
- Mine*, poss. rel. pron., how translated, 112.
- Minime*, a superl. expression used in familiar language only, 362.
- Mis*; when transl. by *mademoiselle*, ref. p. 52. When it should not be translated, *ibid.*
- Moi*, a pers. disjunctive pronoun, first person sing., nom. or acc. case, 311. Used for *me* after an imperative affirmative, 209. Preceded by *y*, 238.
- Moindre*, adj.; compar. of *petit*, 360.
- Moindre* (*le*) or *le plus petit*, adj.; superl. relative, 366. Sometimes adverbially used as a superl. rel., *ib.*
- Moins*, with an adj. or an adv. forms a comparison of inferiority, 358.
- Moins* (*du*), *au moins*, preceding a verb, that verb may elegantly take the interrogative form, 481.
- Moins de*, and a subst., form a comparison of inferiority, 358.
- Moins* (*le*); often used to express a superlative absolute, 363. Invariable when it refers to a verb, or an adv., 367. Must be repeated before every adjective to form the superlative, ref. p. 262.
- à Moins que* requires *ne* and the subj.; should the English verb be negative, *ne pas* is used in French, ref. p. 269.
- Moi*; this adj. has another masc. in use; its fem. is *molle*, 98. Use of *moi*, note p. 26. For its pl., *ibid.*
- Mon*, poss. conjunctive pron., masc. singular, p. 31. When used, 106. When used before a noun feminine sing., 108.
- Monosyllable*, what it is, 9.
- Monsieur*; used before subst. expressing the titles of persons when used ceremoniously, 402. Also used before nouns of abuse, 403.
- Montrer* governs the following infin. with *à* before it, 525.
- Mood*; what is meant by it, 136. How many in French verbs, *ibid.* Of the infin., 137. The indic., 138. The condit., 139. The imper., 140. The subj., 141.
- More* and a subst.; how transl., ref. p. 249. Serves to form a comparative of superiority before an adj. or an adv., 355.
- More* (*the*); either repeated or in opposition, translated by *plus*, ref. p. 264. Its construction, *ibid.* May be translated different ways, *ibid.*
- Mou*; its fem. is *molle*, 98. There is another masc. in use, p. 26. Forms its adv. by adding *ment* to the fem. *molle*, 342.

Moudre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 155. Exercise on, p. 172.

Mourir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 155. Forms its comp. tenses with *être*, 185.

Mouvoir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 155.

to *Move*; when this English verb is rendered by *mouvoir* or by *remuer*, p. 156.

Must; not impers. in English, p. 133.

Transl. by *falloir*, and another verb in the subj., *ibid.* Its construction, 201. If the nom. to *must* is an indeterm. pronoun the next verb is in the infin., p. 134. *Falloir* with the subj. renders the obligation of acting personal, 201.

My, a pron. poss. conjunctive; how translated, 105.

Myself; when rendered by *moi-même*, 218. How translated after a reflected verb, 219.

N.

Naitre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 156. Forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185. Takes no article before the next noun, *ref.* p. 293.

Ne; used with *pas*, *point*, *jamais*, *plus*, *nul*, *personne*, &c., forms a negation, p. 83. Not expressed in comparatives of inferiority or superiority when there is an adv. or a conjunction between *que* and the next verb, *ref.* p. 257. When omitted in the second part of a comparison, *ibid.* When used before a verb in the subj., 543. Used before some verbs in the subj., *ibid.*

Ne pas, *ne point*; render a French verb negative, 164. Their places in simple tenses, *ibid.* In compound tenses, 166. With an infinitive, 167. With the perfect of the infinitive, 168.

Ne plus is followed by *de* when it precedes a noun taken indefinitely, *ref.* p. 89.

Nécessiter governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.

Negation; rules for the formation of

a negative verb, 164. Model of a negative conjug., p. 84; and interr., p. 96.

Négliger governs the next verb in the infin. with *de* before it, 526.

Neither, p. 213. How transl., 278.

N'est-ce pas que is used in interrogation when we call upon others to confirm what we say, p. 95.

Neuter verbs, or intransitive verbs; defined, p. 39. Different kinds, *ib.* (See *Verb.*)

Ni; this conjunction requires the next noun without any art., *ref.* p. 266. In an enumeration of nouns, *ni* without an art. must be repeated bef. every subst., 433.

Nier; when used negatively, this verb requires the subj. and *ne* before it, 546. Governs the next verb in the infin. with *de* before it, 526.

Nombre (un grand); the noun that should follow is often understood, 514.

Nominative case; definition of, 29. The nom. of a verb is also called the subject of that verb, *ibid.* Its place, 30. How to distinguish this case, 31. The nom. of a v. is always a noun, a pronoun, or the infin. of another verb, p. 39. Two or more nom. require the verb in the pl., 161. If the nom. is a subst. the verb is in the third person, and agrees with its nom. in number, 162. Placed after the verb in interr., 169. The nom. pron. of a verb may follow it when that verb is preceded by *aussi*, 481. The repetition of a pers. pron. as nom. when the prepositions are united by any conjunction except *et*, *ou*, *ni*, *mais*, 483. Repeated when we pass from a negative to an affirm. sentence, 484. Also if the verbs are of different tenses, 485. A few exceptions, *ibid.*

Nommer will have the following subst. without any art., *ref.* p. 293.

Nos, poss. conjunctive pron. pl., of both genders; when used, 110.

Not; how transl. into French, 164.

Notre, poss. conjunctive pron. sing., but of both genders; when used, 169. How declined, p. 33.

le Notre, poss. relative pron. sing.—its fem. is *la nôtre*; how declined, p. 34. *Les nôtres* is used with reference to nouns pl. of either gender, *ibid.*

Noun, for subst.; often used in this grammar, 11.

Nouns of number, 100. Require *de* bef. the next participle, *ref.* p. 131. Indeclinable except *quatre-vingt* and *cent*, *ref.* p. 244. When preceded by the article definite, 416.

Nouns of country take the art. def., 404. The art. is replaced by *de* to express the country we come from, 406; or by *en* with the name of the country we are going to or live in, 407. A few exceptions with respect to countries not in Europe, 408. Take no art. after nouns of dignities, 409; nor of commodities, *ibid.* A few exceptions, *ibid.*

Nouns of dignity take the art. def. before them, 401.

Nourrir supplies the deficiency of the verb *paître*, p. 157.

Nous, pers. conj. pron., first pers. pl. of both genders, dat. and acc. case, p. 190. A pers. disj. pron.; how declined, 211.

Nouveau or *nouvel*; they differ in their construction, 98. Fem. *nouvelle*, *ib.* Its pl., *ibid.* Forms its adv. from the fem. by adding *ment*, 242.

Nouvel or *nouveau*; difference of these two adj., 98. Fem. *nouvelle*, *ibid.* Its plural, p. 26.

Nouvelle (news) may be used in the singular with *was* before it, or in the partitive sense plural with *des*, note p. 95.

Nu; invariable before its subst., 446. Agrees with its noun when placed after it, 447.

Nuire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 156. Governs the dat. case, 188.

as *Nuire*; neuter verbs accidentally reflected, have their participle invariable, 307.

Nul, adj.; its fem. is *nulle*, 99. An indet. pronoun, takes *ne* with a negation, p. 88. When synonym of *aucun*, 274. Not used in the plural except in one instance, *ibid.* When used to sum up an enumeration of subst., the verb agrees with the last, 431.

Nulle part requires *ne* before the verb, *ref.* p. 247.

Number; one of the accidents of a subst., 19. What is meant by it, 23. How many, 24. In verbs, definition, 151. Two numbers in each tense, 152. Three persons in each number, *ibid.*

Numbers (cardinal), p. 29. Used with the names of sovereigns; two exceptions, *ref.* p. 308.

Numbers (ordinal), p. 30. Precedes the subst., 38. When used with the names of sovereigns, p. 308.

O.

O, the fourth of the vowels, 5. Termination of some proper names which become French by the addition of *s*, p. 14.

O! Interj., used for invocation or in apostrophe, always precedes its noun, 282.

Obedir; this neuter verb may become passive, 175.

Obliger à, *obliger de*; their difference, 528.

Obscure; formation of its adv., 242.

s'Obstiner governs the dat. case, 527.

Obtenir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 156. Governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.

Obvier governs the dat. case, 188.

Occuper à, or *occuper de*; their difference, 528.

s'Occuper à une chose, or *d'une chose*, p. 326.

Où; its pl. is *où*, 78. Sometimes *ouï*, *ibid.*

- Eu*; nouns of that termination, how made plural, 71.
- Of*; prep.; the sign of the gen. case, 48. Must be expressed before a subst., *note* p. 13. Often understood before a qualifying noun, 419. After an adj. how translated, 574. After a verb, how rendered into French, 576.
- Of the*; how translated, 48.
- Off*, after an English verb, 576.
- Offrir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 156. Governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526. Exercise on, p. 175.
- Oh*! interj.; differs from *ho*! 382.
- Oindre*, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 156.
- Oir*, termination of verbs of the third conjug. 134. See *devoir*, p. 73.
- Omettre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 156.
- On*; adj. in *on* form their feminine in *onne*, 94.
- On*, a compound vowel, 6.
- On*, pron. indet., expressing a vague nom. to a verb, 290. How transl., *ib.* Governs the verb in the sing., *ibid.* Serves to turn the English passive verb into the active voice, 291. Though masc. sing., may have a fem. adj. after it, or even a plural, though the verb remains in the sing., 292. Usually repeated before every verb, 293; except when it refers to different subst., *ibid.* *L'on* is sometimes used for *on*, 294, but cannot begin a sentence, *ibid.*
- On*, English prep.; not expressed in French before the date of the month or the day of the week, *ref.* p. 239. After a verb, how translated, 576.
- One*, an indet. pron. expressing a vague nom. to a verb, 290. When nom. to *must* it is omitted in French, p. 134.
- One another*, an indet. pron.; how rendered, 275.
- Onse*, *onsième*; no elision of the art. takes place before it, *note* †, p. 6.
- Opiniâtre*; formation of its adv., 342.
- s'Opposer* governs the dat. case, 527.
- Or*, English termin. of some subst.; Frenchified by changing *or* into *our*, p. 14. The same with adj., p. 21.
- Ordonner*; when is the subj. or the indic. required after it, 552. Governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- in Order to*; how expressed before an infinitive, *ref.* p. 181.
- Ory*; English subst. ending in *ory* change that termination into *oire*, p. 14. Adj. follow the same rule, p. 21.
- Os*; adj. ending in *os* double the *s* and take an *e* for their fem., 90.
- Oser*; after that verb the second negation, *pas* or *point*, may be omitted, p. 158. Governs the next infinitive without any prep., 524.
- Ot*; adj. in *ot* add *te* for their fem., 92. A few exceptions, 93.
- Oter* generally replaces the tenses of *se dévêtir*, p. 147. May supply the tenses wanting in *soustraire*, p. 165. Governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.
- Ou*; a compound vowel, 6.
- Ou*; subst. in *ou*, how now made pl., 72. Some exceptions, 73.
- Ou*, conjunction; between two subst. excludes one of them, therefore the adj. must be sing. and agree in gender with the last noun, 445.
- Où*; when at the head of an interr. and affirm. sentence, the nom. may be placed after it or after the verb, *ref.* p. 254. When that transposition cannot take place, *ib.* Replaces the rel. pron. in the gen., dat., and abl. cases, when the verb denotes place, *ref.* p. 201.
- Oublier à*, *oublier de*; their difference, 528.
- Ought*; when it expresses duty or necessity and can be turned into *should*, how translated, *ref.* p. 83.
- Oui*, an adv. of affirmation; sometimes used substantively, in which case the article suffers no elision, *note* p. 6.
- Ouir*, irr. and defec. v.; p. 156. Obs. on, *ib.* Supplied by *entendre*, *ib.*
- Our*; English subst. in *our* become

- French by changing that termination into *eur*, p. 14.
- Ouvr*, poss. conjunctive pron.; how translated, 105.
- Ourselves*, immediately following an English verb, is transl. by a reflected verb in French, 106.
- Ous*; English adj. of that termination change it into *eur*, 91.
- Ouvrir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 156. Supplies the tenses wanting in *déclore*, p. 146. Exercise on, p. 175.
- s'Ouvrir*, may supply the defective tenses of *déclore*, p. 149.
- Over*; this English prep., after a verb, sometimes forms a single idea; how translated into French, 576.
- Own, my own, thy own*, &c., are transl. as *mine, thine*, &c., *ref.* p. 35.
- Oyer*; verbs of this termination are irregular in their orthography (see *employer*), p. 149.

P.

- Paire*, an irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 157. Supplied by *manger, se nourrir*, and *pâturer*, *ibid.*
- Par*, prep. governing the acc.; governed by passive verbs, differs from *de*, *ref.* p. 105. Used instead of *un* before nouns denoting time, salary, &c., 417.
- Paradigm* of regular verbs, p. 80. Of regular and irr. verbs, p. 186. Directions to use the table, *ibid.*
- Parative*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 157. Supplies the deficient tenses in *déclore*, p. 149.
- Paradise*; the word *paradis* always takes the art. defn., *ref.* p. 287.
- Parce que* and *par ce que*; their difference, p. 266. *Parce que* better than *à cause que*, *ibid.*
- Parcourir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 157.
- Pardonner* governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.
- Parfaire*, irr. and defec. v.; p. 157.
- Parfait*; this adj. cannot be used in the comparative or superlative, p. 260.
- Parler*, and a subst. without article forms an indivisible idea, 427.
- se Parler*, verb accidentally reflected; its participle is invariable, 397.
- Parmi*; when preferred to *entre*, *ref.* p. 237.
- Parsing*; method of parsing an art. and a subst., p. 7. An adj., p. 23. A pron., p. 33. A verb, p. 52.
- Par-se*; not used, *note* p. 91.
- Partir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 187. Forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185. Exercise on, p. 176.
- Participer à, participer de*; their difference, 598.
- Participle*; a tense of the infim., 146. One of the primitive tenses, p. 59. Serves to form the compound tenses, p. 60. With passive verbs, takes the gender and number of their nom., 176. How declined, 177. Participle of a reflected verb, 180. Participle of neuter verbs declinable when conjugated with *être*, 810. Preceded by *de* after the imper. *il y a*, *ref.* p. 131. Participles of active v., p. 226. Undeclined when followed by its acc., 303. Declined when preceded by its acc., 304. Participle of refl. verbs, p. 228. Declined when preceded by an acc. pron., 306; or noun, 306. Undeclined after a pron. pers. in the dat., 307. Neuter verbs accidentally reflected, have their participle invariable, *ibid.* Participles of passive, neuter, and impersonal verbs, p. 229. Participle of passive verbs declined, 309. After *parative* and *sembler* the participle is declined, 311. Also whenever the verb *to be* is understood, 312. The participle of an impers. verb is invariable, 313. The agreement of the participle with its acc. is not affected by the transposition of its nom., *ref.* p. 231. The participle is not declined when followed by a verb which governs the preceding acc., 314. The participles *été, faits, pu, voulu*, invariable, and why, 315. *Fait* also invariable im-

- mediately before an infin., *ref.* p. 234. Declined when the next infin. does not govern the preceding acc., 216. A participle between two *que* is not declined, 217. *L'*, as the acc. of a participle, renders it invariable, 218. Not declined after *en* signifying *cela*, *ref.* p. 234. One exception, *ib.* Participles, used adjectively, agree with the noun, 441.
- Parvenir*, irr. verb; conjug. p. 157. Forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185. The pron. used with this verb is a pers. disj., 213. Governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.
- Pas*; used with *ne* to form negative sentences, 164. Differs from *point*, p. 64. Denies with modifications, and is used before adv. and nouns of number, *ibid.* *Pas*, or *point*, may be omitted after *cesser*, *oser*, *pouvoir*, *savoir*, p. 158.
- Pas de*, an indeterminate expression, the synonym of *nul*; takes *ne* before the verb, 274.
- Pas un*, an indeterminate expression, which takes *ne* before the verb, 274.
- Passer* forms its compound tenses with *avoir* to express an action, and with *être* to denote the result of that action, 186.
- Past tense* of the conditional, 148.
- Past idiomatical tenses*, p. 47.
- Pâturer* supplies deficiencies in the verb *pâître*, p. 157.
- Pauvre homme* differs from *homme pauvre*, 459.
- Payer*, irr. in its orthography only; model for the conjugation of verbs in *ayer*, p. 157. Obs. on, *ibid.*
- Pécheur*; its feminine, 99.
- Peindre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 157. Exercise on, p. 175.
- à Peine*; when preceding a verb, that verb may elegantly take the interrogative form; but this rule is not obligatory, 481.
- Pendant* differs from *durant*, *ref.* p. 287.
- Pénible*; when followed by *à* and an infin., this v. has a passive sense, 471.
- Penser*; this verb governs the dative case, 188. Followed by a disj. pers. pronoun, 213. Governs *à* before an infin., 525.
- People*; when nom. to *must*, omitted in French, p. 134.
- Perdre*, followed by a noun without an art., forms an indivisible expression with that noun, 427.
- Perfect*, a tense of the infin., 146. A tense of the subj., 150. How formed, *ibid.*
- Perfect definite*, a tense of the indic., 147. What it denotes, p. 46. One of the five primitive tenses, p. 59.
- Perfect indefinite*, a tense of the indic., 147. What it denotes, p. 46. How formed, p. 60.
- Perfect anterior*, a tense of the indic., 147. What it denotes, p. 46. How formed, p. 60. Remarkable difference between that tense and the *plus-perfect*, p. 46.
- Perissology*; in what it differs from *battology*, note p. 338.
- Permettre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 158. Governs the preposition *de* before an infin., 526.
- Persévérer* governs the prep. *à* before the next infin., 525.
- Persister* governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.
- Person*; there are three persons in verbs, 153; and in each number, *ib.* First person sing.; what is meant by it, 154. First person plural, *ibid.* When *vous* is employed for *tu*, the adj. remains sing., 157. Nouns in the vocative are always of the second person, *ibid.* Third person singular, 158; and plural, 159. Sometimes used for the second person, *ibid.*
- Personal pronouns*; divided into conj. and disj., 205. As nom. precede the verb, 477. The ellipsis of the pron. nomin. renders the sentence more rapid, *ibid.* In interr. the pronoun follows the verb, 478. Used after the subj. when no conj. is expressed; also after verbs expressing doubt,

479. When we quote the words of some person, the nom. pron. follows the verb, 480. Used after some verbs, *ibid.* Also when the verb is preceded by some conj., 481. When used as the object of a verb it precedes it, 482. When the repetition of the pron. as nom. is indispensable, 483. When the propositions are united by any conjunction except *et, ou, ni, mais*, *ibid.* When we pass from a negative to an affirmative, 484. Obs. on this rule, *ibid.* When the verbs are of different tenses, 485. Always repeated when used as the object of a verb, 486.

Personal conjunctive pronouns; defined, 205. Immediately united to a verb, 206. Used without article or prep., 207. How declined, *ibid.* Placed before the verb or its auxiliary, 208. Placed after an imper. affirmative, 209. But precede an imperative with a negation, 210. When two pers. conj. pron. come together, what is the construction, 228. When both of the third pers. the acc. precedes the dat., 229. Their places generally with respect to each other, 234, and p. 193. A personal and a supplying pron.; their place with an imperative, 235. A difference with respect to reflected verbs, 236.

Personal disjunctive pronouns generally follow the verb, and usually require a prep. before them, 211. How declined, *ibid.* Used as disj. after a refl. verb, 212; and after a few verbs and expressions requiring the dat. case, 213. Used in answer to questions, *ref.* p. 185; and in elliptical sentences when no verb is expressed, *ibid.* When used after another pronoun in the acc., 214. After another pron. in the dat., 215. Both pron. are disj. when they denote opposition, 216. Compounded with *self* in English and *même* in French, 217. Used when they denote order, *ref.* p. 187. Always used after a prep., *ib.*; and a conjunction, *ib.*

Personne, a pron. indet.; used as a negative with *ne*, *note* p. 83. In the sense of *nobody*, takes *ne* before the verb, 263. In interrogative and dubitative sentences *ne* is not necessary, 264. Requires *de* before an adj. or a participle, *ref.* p. 210. In negative sentences *personne* is preferred to *qui que ce soit*, 281. When used to sum up an enumeration of subst., the verb agrees with the last noun, 431;—*personne* preceding the last of several subst. nom. to a verb, that verb agrees with the last noun, *ibid.*

Persuader sometimes governs an acc. but most commonly a dat. case, 189. Governs the prep. *de* before the next infin., 526.

Petit precedes its noun, 88. Its compar. is *plus petit*, or *moindre*, 360.

Petit (*le plus petit*, or *le moindre*); superlative of *petit*, 366.

Peu; its comparative is *moins*, 360.

Peu requires *de* before the next noun, 337.

Peur (avoir), forms an indivisible expression, 427. Governs the next infinitive with *de* before it, 526.

Peut-être; the verb which follows may elegantly take the interr. form, 481.

ne Peut être, ne saurait être; obs. on these expressions, p. 163.

Poux (je); less used than *je puis*, p. 158. Not used interrogatively, *ib.*

Phrase differs from *proposition*, p. 275. How many parts when analysed grammatically, *ibid.*; when logically, *ibid.*

Pire, adj.; compar. of *mauvais*, 360.

le Pire or *le plus mauvais*; superlative relative (adj.), 366.

Pis, or *plus mal*; compar. adverb of *mal*, 360.

le Pis, or *le plus mal*; superl. relative (adverb), 366.

Plaindre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 158.

Plaire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 158. Governs the dat. case, 186.

se Plaire à une chose, or à faire une

- chose*, 527. A neuter v. accidentally reflected has its participle invariable, 387. *Se plaire à* differs from *se plaire de*, 528.
- Plaisir* (il y a) & *de*; their difference, 528.
- Pleonasm*; definition of, 563. How divided, 564. When necessary, 565. When only useful, 566. When vicious, 567. When considered as a *batology* or a *perissology*, note p. 368.
- Pleuvôir*, imper. v.; conjug. p. 129.
- Plier*, with a following subst., without art., forms an indivisible expression, 427.
- se Plier* governs the dat. case, 327.
- la Plupart*; the noun that should follow this collective partitive is often understood; in that case the verb must be plural, 514.
- Pluperfect*; tense of the indic., 147. What is meant by it, and when used, p. 46. Remarkable difference between that tense and the perf. anterior, *ibid.* How formed, p. 60. Pluperfect subjunctive, 150.
- Plural*; how formed in subst. and adj., 69. Generally by adding an *s*, *ibid.* Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, do not vary in the plural, 70. Nouns in *au*, *ou*, *ou*, how made plural, 71. Nouns ending in *ou*, now regular and take an *s*, 72. A few exc. for nouns in *ou*, 73. One exc. in *ou*, p. 17. Nouns in *ai*, how made plural, 74. A few exc., 75. Nouns in *ail*, how made plural, 76. A few subst. have no sing. or plural, p. 18. Plural of compound words, 80. Subst. that do not take the mark of the pl., p. 19. Latin subst. which do not and those that do take the mark of the pl., *ibid.* Pl. in verbs, 153. The names of French families do not take the sign of the plural, 410. Admitted with different Latin and other families, and why, 410. When used with proper names, 412.
- Plus*; with *ou* forms a negative, p. 83. *Ne plus* is followed by *de* before a noun, p. 89. That adverb generally precedes the present of the infin., 334. Before an adj. or an adverb, serves to form a comparison of superiority, 355. *D'autant plus*, *d'autant moins*, serve to form comparisons, *ref.* p. 264.
- le Plus*; often used to express a superl. absol., and when, 353. Invariable when it refers to a verb, or adv., 367. Must be repeated before every adj., to form the superlative, *ref.* p. 352.
- Plus de* differs from *d'avantage*, *ref.* p. 249;—*plus de* and a subst. form a comparison of equality, 355.
- Plusieurs*, an indet. pron.; no sing., 278. The following noun is often understood; the verb must be pl., 513.
- Plus tôt* differs from *plutôt*, *ref.* p. 344.
- Poète* has no fem., that is, serves for both genders, 99.
- Poindre*, defec. and obsol. v., p. 156.
- Point*, a stronger negative than *pas*, note p. 84. When preferred to *pas*, *ib.* Expresses something permanent or habitual, and in that differs from *pas*, *ibid.* May be omitted after *pouvoir*, *oser*, *souffrir*, *savoir*, p. 156.
- Point de*; when used for *nul*, 274.
- Polysyllable*, what it is, 9.
- Porter*, with a following subst. without article, forms an indivisible idea, 427. Governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.
- Positive degré*; in an adj., what is meant by it, 350.
- Possessive pronouns*; definition, 102. Divided into conjunctive and relative, 103.
- Possessive conjunctive pronouns*; always joined to a noun, with which they agree in gender and number, 104. How transl. into French, 105—110. Why classed among adj. by some grammarians, note p. 31. Do not agree with the possessor in French as in English, *ib.* Declined, p. 33. Replaces the art. to form the superl. relative, 369. English poss. pron., when joined to a noun deno-

- ting part of the body, are changed into a personal conjunctive with the art. def. before the noun, 487. Exception, *ibid.* Supplied by the art. def. when the possessor is nom. to a verb, 488. Sometimes optional to use the art. or the pron. poss., 489. Used when we speak of an habitual distemper, 490. When expressed by *en*, 491. When tranal. literally, 492.
- Possessive relative pronouns*; never joined to a noun, 111. Agree in gender and number with their antecedent, *ibid.* How translated, 112. Declined with the art. def., p. 34.
- Pour*; used before an infin., means (generally) *in order to*, *ref.* p. 181; —*pour*, immediately after a verb, requires no article before the next subst., *ref.* p. 293.
- Poursuivre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 158. Requires its nom. pron. after it when we repeat the words of persons, 480.
- Pouvoir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 158.
- Pouvoir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 158. After this verb, the second negation *pas* or *point* may be suppressed, *ibid.* Used to express the words *to be able*, or *may*, *might*, when considered as verbs. Governs the next infin. without any preposition, 524.
- Précis* forms its adv. from the fem. with the final *s* accented, 343.
- Prédire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 159. Obs. on, *ib.* Governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.
- Préférer* governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526. Governs the acc. of the thing and the dative of the person, 530.
- le Premier*: precedes its noun, 88. Followed by a rel. pronoun, requires the subj., 550.
- Prendre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 159. Obs. on, *ibid.* Exercise on, p. 176; — *prendre* and a subst. without any art. forms an indivisible idea, 427. Governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525. Governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the pers., 530.
- Prendre garde* governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- Prendre la fuite*; when used for the verb *fuir*, p. 152.
- Prendre intérêt*; when followed by a personal pronoun, it must be disjunctive, p. 184.
- se Préparer* governs the dat. case when followed by a verb or a subst., 527.
- Preposition*, one of the parts of speech. Definition of the, 319. Some are essentially, others accidentally so, p. 235. How divided, 320. List of prep. governing the acc., *ib.* Prep. governing the gen. case, 322. Prep. governing the dat. case, 323. The government of a preposition is sometimes understood, *ref.* p. 237. Prep. of one syllable when repeated in the sentence, *ref.* p. 239. When repeated after *que* in comparisons, *ref.* p. 264. Some prep. are accidentally conjunctions, 377. When two prep. do not govern the same case each must have a distinct regimen, 519. After the verb *être* used as imper., that verb must have *ce* for its nominative, 195. When followed by a pron. that pron. must be disjunctive, *ref.* p. 187.
- Prepositional phrase* is a preposition compounded of several words, p. 235.
- Près*, prep.; differs from *auprès*, *ref.* p. 239.
- Près*, adverb; requires *de* before a verb in the infin., 347.
- Prescrire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 159.
- Présent*; this adj. has for its adverb *présentement*, *note* p. 251.
- Present of the infinitive*; root of the verb, 146. One of the primitive tenses of a verb, p. 59. Present of the indicative; first tense, 147. What it indicates and when used, p. 45. Serves to form the imperative mood, p. 63. Present of the conditional, 148. What it denotes, p. 48. How formed, p. 62. Present of the subjunctive, 150; also the future, *ibid.* Formed from the imper. and the imperfect indic., p. 63.

Présenter governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.

Préserver governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.

Presque, though an adv. of quantity, admits of no regimen, 347.

Pressentir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 159.

Prêter, and a subst. without article, forms an indivisible idea, 427. Governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.

Prévaloir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 159. Obs. on, *ibid.*

se Prévaloir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 159.

Prévenir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 159.

Prévoir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 159.

Prier; irregular in its orthography. Conjug. p. 159. Obs. on verbs in *ier*, *ibid.*—*prier de*, when preferred to *requérir*, p. 169.

Prier à, prier de, their difference, 528.

Prier governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.

Procurer governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.

Produire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.

Profond, its adverb is *profondément*, 343.

Profus forms its adverb irr., 343.

Projeter governs *de* before the next infin., 526.

Promettre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160. Governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526. Governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.

Promouvoir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160. Obs. on, *ibid.*

Pronoun; one of the parts of speech, 10. Definition, 101. How divided, *ib.* Possessive pronouns, 102. Two sorts of possessive pronouns, 103. Possessive conjunctive, 104. Possessive relative, 111. Demonstrative conjunctive, 117. Personal conjunctive pron., 205. Personal disjunctive pron., 211. Supplying pron., 222. Relative pron., 239. Interrogative pron., 245. Demonstrative disjunctive pron., 252. Indeterminate pron., 259—294. A pronoun

following the verb *être* used impersonally, requires *ce* for the nom. to *être*, 195.

Proper names; definition, 66. How declined, 67. Proper names of persons and nations, how translated into French, p. 14. Christian proper names are not always translated in French, *ref.* p. 52. Proper names of countries, provinces, rivers, winds, mountains, are preceded by the art. def., 404. When the art. is not used, 405. When preceded by *de*, 406. Proper names of countries take no art. after a noun of dignity, 409; nor after the name of some commodities, *ibid.* Take the art. when the subst. is understood and the adj. remains alone, *ref.* p. 284. Used also when the name of country is qualified by an adj., *ibid.* Proper names of persons, though applied to several, do not take the sign of the pl. when they only serve to name persons, 410. Obs. on this rule, *ibid.* Those names celebrated in history take the art. pl. before them, but not the mark of the plural, 411. Why proper names do not take the sign of the pl., *ib.* Proper names used as common subst. take both the art. and the sign of the pl., 412. Take the art. def. to denote an individual distinction, 413. The art. *la* sometimes precedes the name of actresses and singers, 414. Some Italian proper names take the art., 415. Contracted when preceded by *à, de*, *ref.* p. 287. Not contracted with French proper names, *ibid.* *Nos* is often used before the names of some of our great men, *ref.* p. 287. Proper names in *al*, how made pl., *ibid.* A few proper subst. take the art. in French, *ibid.*

Proposition, or sentence; what it consists of, 390. Affirm. or neg., 391. Different sorts of, *ibid.* When considered grammatically, takes the name of phrase, 392. Several propositions united with *et* do not re-

quire the pronoun *nom.* before each verb, especially when of the third person, *ref.* p. 312.

Proserire, *irr.* v.; *conj.* p. 160.

Protecteur; its fem. is *protectrice*, 99.

Protestor governs the next *infin.* with *de* before it, 526.

Provenir, *irr.* v.; *conj.* p. 160.

Provoquer governs the next *infin.* with *à* before it, 525.

Pu; this part. is never declined, 315.

Public forms its fem. irregularly, 97.

Puis (*je*); more used than *je peux*, p. 158. Especially in *interr.* sentences, *ibid.*

Punir, *conj.* p. 68. Model for verbs of second *conj.* ending in *ir*, *ibid.*

Q.

Quand; when at the head of an *interrogative* and *affirmative* sentence, the *nom.* may sometimes be placed after the verb, *ref.* p. 254. Sometimes that *transposition* is not allowable, *ibid.*

Quatre-vingt takes the sign of the plural before a noun, *ref.* p. 244.

Que, a conjunction, which unites two propositions, 534. The two parts of a comparison; it is then called *que* comparative, *note* p. 267. When it unites two propositions, it is then called *que* between two verbs, *ibid.* Has no influence on the following verb, *ibid.* Governs no mood, 535. With *ne* used as a negation, *note* p. 83. Joins two members of a comparison, 534. Elegantly used instead of repeating some conjunctions, *ref.* p. 269. When *que* and a preceding verb express some sentiment or passion of the mind, it requires the subjunctive, 541. The same may be said when *que* follows an *impers.* verb, or the verb *to be*, and a subst. or an adj., 542. When beginning a sentence, and followed by the verb by which it is governed, the subjunctive is used, *ref.* p. 333. When used in-

stead of another conjunction, it governs the subjunctive, *ibid.*

Que, a relative pron., accusative, both genders and numbers; relates to persons and things, 241. Sometimes used absolutely, *ref.* p. 201.

Que, an *interr.* pron.; construction of the sentence with *que* and with *quelque que*, 251. With the verbs *servir* and *importer*, *ref.* p. 204. Used instead of *de quoi*, *en quoi*, *à quoi*, *ib.*

Que de; joins the first member of a comparison of superiority or inferiority to the next *infin.*, *ref.* p. 257.

Que ne; joins the first member of a comparison of superiority or inferiority to a verb in any tense of the *indic.*, *ref.* p. 257.

Quel, an interrogative pronoun, how declined, 248.

Quelconque, an *indeterm.* pron., 271. Of both genders, and follows the noun with which it agrees in number, *ibid.*

Quel que, *indeterm.* pronoun; *quel* is declined, 283.

Quelque, an *indeterm.* pron., p. 211. Agrees in number with its subst., 272.

Quelques differs from *des*, *ref.* p. 212.

Quelque....que, agrees with the next subst. in number, and governs the subj., 284. Invariable before an adj., a participle, or an adv., it governs the subj., 285. Declinable when the adj. is followed by a noun, *ibid.* Differs from *tout*, 288.

Quelque chose que requires the subj. It replaces *quoi que* or *quoi que ce soit que*, *note* p. 216.

Quelqu'un, how declined, 265. Takes the gender and number of the following subst., *ibid.*

Quelques-uns; often used with a subst. understood, in that case the verb must be plural, 265.

Qu'est-ce qui, an *interr.* pronoun; declined, 247. When used, *ib.* Cannot be parted from its verb by an intermediate sentence, *ref.* p. 204.

Qui, a rel. pron., *nom.* case, of both

- genders and numbers, 240. Declined, *ibid.* *Qui* relates to persons and things, 241. *De qui* and *à qui*, said of persons only, *ibid.* *De qui* is more properly used as an abl. case, *note* p. 198. Ought not to be separated from its antecedent, if so *lequel* should be used, p. 199. Often used absolutely for *quelle personne*, *ref.* p. 201; see likewise 257.
- Qui*, an interr. pron.; refers to persons only, 246. How declined, p. 202. *De qui*, *à qui*, when at the head of an interr. and affirm. sentence, the nom. may sometimes be placed after the verb, *ref.* p. 254. Sometimes the transposition cannot take place, *ibid.* In exclamative sentences, it requires the subjunctive, 551.
- Quiconque* refers to persons only, 266.
- Qui est-ce qui*, an interr. pron.; used for *qui*, 246. Declined, *ibid.* When it should be used, 247.
- Qui que*, relative pron., and its antecedent coming between two verbs, the second is in the subjunctive, 547. When it has for its antecedent a pron. indet., the subj. is used, 548; or a superlative, 549.
- Qui que*; an indet. pron.; said of persons only, 279. Requires the subj., *ibid.*
- Qui que ce soit*; only said of persons, 281. When used negatively *personne* is more frequently used, *ibid.* Nom. to a verb, 282. *Qui que ce soit que* is an acc., *ibid.* The other cases are used, *ibid.*
- Quint*; used for *cinq* in two cases only, *Charles Quint* (of Austria), and *Sixte Quint*, a pope, *ref.* p. 308.
- Quoi*; often used absolutely for *quelle chose*, *ref.* p. 201. *De quoi* often supplies the place of *duquel*; and *à quoi* that of *auquel*, *ib.* *Quoi* (what) is always used after a prep., *ref.* p. 204. Used interjectively, *ibid.*
- de Quoi*, *à quoi*; when at the head of an affirmative and interrogative sentence, the nom. may sometimes follow its verb, sometimes not, *ref.* p. 254.
- Quoique*, a conjunction which governs the subj., 374. Replaces *malgré que*, now obsolete, p. 268.
- Quoi que*, an indeterminate pronoun which requires the subj., 283.
- Quoi que ce soit*, an indeterm. pron.; said of things only, 282. In negative sentences *rien* is generally preferred, *ibid.* Nom. to a verb, *ibid.* *Quoi que ce soit que* is its acc.; the other cases are used, *ibid.* Requires the verb in the subj., *ibid.* Replaces *quoi que*, *note* 282.

R.

- Rabattre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Raconter* governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.
- Radical*; what is meant by the radical part of a verb, p. 64.
- Rajeunir*; when conjug. with *avoir* or *être*, 186.
- se Ranger à* differs from *se ranger de*, 528.
- se Rappeler* governs the acc., 181.
- Rapporter* governs the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, 530.
- Rapprendre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Rarement*; when preceding a verb, that verb may elegantly take the interrogative form, 481.
- Rarissime*, a superl. expression; used in familiar language only, 362.
- Rasseoir*; irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Ratteindre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Ravoir*, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Re*, termination of verbs of the fourth conjug., 134. Prefixed to verbs, it expresses a repetition of the action, *ref.* p. 76.
- Rebattre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Rebouillir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Reclure*, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 160. Obs. on, *ibid.*
- Recommander* governs *de* before the next infin., 526.
- Reconduire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Reconnaître*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.

- Reconnaître pour*; this expression requires no art. before the next noun, *ref.* p. 293.
- Reconquérir*, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Rédire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Récoudre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Récouvrir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Recueillir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Redevenir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Redire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Réduire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 160.
- Rédire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161.
- Régaler*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161.
- Reflected verbs*, see *Verbs*.
- Refleurir*, irr. v.; see obs. on *fleurir*, p. 152.
- Refuser* governs *de* before the next infin., 526. Governs the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, 530.
- Régimen* or *government*, a part of syntax, 389.—See that word.
- Regretter* governs *de* before the next infin., 526.
- Rejoindre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161.
- Réjoir* supplies the defective verb *s'ébattre*, p. 148.
- Relative pronoun*; what is meant by, 239. Should be placed near its antecedent, 242. Cannot be omitted in French as in English, *ref.* p. 201. When in the gen., dat., and abl. cases, may be replaced by *où*, or *lequel*, *ibid.* *Qui* is said of both genders and numbers, 240. *De qui* and *à qui* are said of persons only, 241. *De qui* is more properly an abl. case, *note* p. 198. When separated from its antecedent, *lequel* is preferred to *qui*, p. 199. When the rel. pronoun refers to an indeterm. pronoun, the subj. is used, 548.
- Relire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161.
- Reluire*, irr. and def. v.; conjug. p. 161.
- Remédier* governs the next subst. in the dative, 188.
- Remettre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161. May supply the verb *surséoir*, p. 165.
- Remoudre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161.
- Remplir* governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.
- Renaitre*, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 161. Obs. on, *ibid.*
- se Rendormir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161.
- Rendre*; model for conjug. of verbs in *re*, p. 76. When followed immediately by a noun, this verb, together with a subst., forms an indivisible idea, 427. Governs the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, 530.
- Rends-je*; the harshness of the sound renders *est-ce que je rends* absolutely necessary, *note* p. 91.
- Renfermer* replaces the tenses wanting in *enclire*, p. 150.
- Renoncer* governs the dat. case of a subst., 188. Governs also the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.
- Rentraire*, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 161.
- Rentrer*; this neuter verb forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185.
- Renvoyer*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161. Governs the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, 530.
- Repaire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161.
- se Repaire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161.
- Reparaire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161.
- Repartir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161. Obs. on, *ibid.* Takes the nom. pronoun after it when we repeat the words of some person, 480.
- se Repentir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161.
- Répéter*, irr. in its orthography only; conjug. p. 161. Model for verbs in *éter*, *ibid.* Governs the acc. of the thing and the dative of the person, 530.
- Répliquer*; this verb takes the nom. pronoun after it when we repeat the words of some person, 480.
- Répondre* governs the dative case of a subst., 188. This verb is followed by its nom. pronoun when we repeat the words of some person, 480.
- Réponds-je* must be replaced by *est-ce que je réponds*; the harshness of the sound renders this last expression absolutely necessary, *note* p. 91.

Reprendre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 161.
Reprocher governs *de* before the next infin., 526. Governs the acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person, 530.
Répugner governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.
Requérir, irr. and defec. verb, p. 161. When *prier de* must be preferred, p. 169.
Résoudre, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 162. Obs. on, *ibid.*
Résoudre à differs from *résoudre de*, 528.
Résister governs the dat. of a subst., 188.
Ressembler governs the next subst. in the dat., 188.
Ressentir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 162.
Ressortir irr. v.; conjug. p. 162. Obs. on that verb, *ibid.*
se Ressouvenir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 162.
Rester; this neuter verb is conjug. with *avoir* when it expresses an action, and with *être* when it means the result of that action, 186.
Restreindre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 162.
Retarder governs *de* before the next infin., 526.
Retenir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 162.
Retirer supplies the deficiency of the verb *retirer*, p. 162.
Retomber; this neuter verb is conjug. with *être*, 185.
Retourner forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185.
Revaloir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 162.
Rédoler, irr. in its orthography; model for verbs in *oler*, p. 162. Governs the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, 530.
Revenir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 162. Forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185.
Réver governs an accusative, but most commonly a dative case, 188.
Revêtir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 162.
se Revêtir de, irr. v.; conjug. p. 162. Replaced by *mettre*, *ibid.*
Revoir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 162.
Revoir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 162.
Rire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 163.

se Rire, a verb accidentally reflected, has its participle invariable, 307.
Rien, with *ne* used as a negation, *note* p. 83. In dubitative sentences, *ne* is suppressed, 268. Requires *de* before an adj. or participle, *ref.* p. 210. Replaces *qui que ce soit* in negative sentences, 282. Used to sum up an enumeration of subst.; then the verb agrees with the last subst. and is sing., 431. Preceding the last of several subst. nom. to a verb, 511.
Risquer governs *de* before the next infin., 526.
Rompre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 163.
Rougir governs *de* before the next infin., 526.
Rouvrir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 163.
Roux forms its fem. irregularly, 99.

S.

S; nouns ending in *s* do not vary in the plural, 70. When final in an auxiliary verb, it is sounded like *s* before a participle beginning with a vowel, p. 44. *S* is an euphonic letter added to the second person singular imper. in verbs of the first conjugation, p. 197.
Sa, pron. poss. conjunctive, third person fem. singular; when used, 107. After *chacun*, 504.
Sage femme differs from *femme sage* 459.
Saillir, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 163. Obs. on this verb, *ibid.*
Saint precedes its noun, 88.
Sans gov. a subst. without any art., 426.
Satisfaire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 163.
Saurais (*je ne*), may replace *je ne puis*, but never *je ne pourrais*, p. 163.
Savantissime, a superlative expression; used in familiar language only, 362.
Savoir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 163. Obs. on, *ibid.* The second negation, *pas*, *point*, may be omitted after this verb, p. 158. When followed immediately by a noun without any art., forms an indivisible idea, 427. Governs the next infin. without a prep., 524.

- Se*, an indetermin. personal pronoun; always used before a verb, 220.
- Sécher* governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- Secourir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 163.
- Séduire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 163.
- Self*; transl. by *même*, serves to form compound pron., 217. More energetic than the simple pron., *ibid.*
- Selon* differs from *suiuant*, *ref.* p. 237.
- Semblable*; when followed by a pron. personal it must be a disjunctive, *ref.* p. 185.
- il Semble*; when it governs the indic., 543.
- Semer*, irr. in its orthography, conjug. p. 164. Model for verbs in *emer*, *ib.*
- Sentence* or *proposition*; what it is, 390. Contains as many propositions as there are verbs in a pers. mood, 392. When a sentence is indirect or irregular, 557.
- Sentir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 164. Exercise on, p. 76.
- Sesoir*, defec. and irr. v.; conjug. p. 164. Supplied by *aller bien*, *convenir*; when it means to sit, *ibid.*
- Servir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 164. Exercise on, p. 176. Governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.
- Servir quelqu'un* differs from *servir à quelqu'un*, *ref.* p. 228.
- Serviteur*; its fem. is *servante*, 99.
- Ses*, pronoun poss. conjunctive, third person plural for both genders; when used, 110. After *chacun*, 504.
- Seul*; this adj. is usually preceded by a disj. personal pron., *ref.* p. 185. When followed by a relative pron. the subj. should be used, 550.
- Several*, transl. by *plusieurs*, p. 213.
- Should*, when expressing a duty or necessity, how transl., *ref.* p. 83.
- Si*; used in negative sentences; it then forms, with an adj. or an adv., a comparison of inferiority, 359. *Si* may be replaced by *aussi*, *ref.* p. 259. Before an adj. it denotes extension, and is often used as *so* is in English, *ibid.*
- Si ce n'est que*; when this conjunctive locution governs the subj. and when the indicative, *ref.* p. 335.
- le Sien*, pron. poss. rel., third person masc.; when used, 118. Its plural, 116.
- la Siennae*, poss. rel. pron., third person fem.; when used, 114. Its plural, 116.
- Sinon que*; when this conjunction governs the subj. and when the indic., *ref.* p. 335.
- So*, a supplying pron. rendered by *le*, 226. *So*, as a supplying pron., is often understood in English, but must be expressed in French, *ref.* p. 191. Used in neg. compar. phrases of inferiority, how translated, 359. When before an adj. it marks the extension, how translated, *ref.* p. 259.
- Soi*, an indetermin. personal pronoun; used after a prep., 220. Relates to a preceding subst. masc. used in a general sense, 221. When it means *of its nature*, *soi* may relate to a feminine subst., *ref.* p. 187.
- Some*, art. part.; how translated, 62. Sometimes understood in English, p. 11. Must be expressed in French, *ibid.* When replaced by *any*, how transl., *ibid.* When replaced by *de*, *ref.* p. 24, and p. 257. When supplied by the art. def., *ibid.*
- Sommer* governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- Son*, a poss. conjunctive pron., third person sing.; when used, 106. Required before a noun fem. sing. beginning with a vowel, 108. After *chacun*, 504.
- Songer* governs the dat. case, 188. Followed by a pers. disj. pron., 213. Governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.
- Sorte* governs the following subst. with *de* before it, 429.
- Sortir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 164. Forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185.
- Sot* precedes its noun, 88.
- Souffrir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 165.

Souhaiter; after this verb the prep. *de* may be suppressed, though sometimes used, 526.

Soumettre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 165.

se Soumettre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 165.
Governs the dat. case, 527.

Soupçonner governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526. Governs the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529.

Sourdre, defec. and irr. v.; conjug. p. 165. Supplied by *sortir*, *ibid.*

Sourire, irr. verb; conjug. p. 165.

se Sourire; this neuter verb, accidentally reflected, has its participle invariable, 307.

Souscrire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 165.

Soustraire, irr. and defec. v.; conjug. p. 165. Supplied by *ôter*, *ibid.*

Soudenir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 165.

se Souvenir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 165.

Species, a part of what is expressed in the genus, 14, also 395.

Speech (*parts of*); what they are, 10.
St, added to an English adj. or adv., forms a superl. rel.; how transl., 365.

Subjunctive mood; why so called, 141.

Its office, *ibid.* Has four tenses, 150. Used after *faillir*, 201. When required after *que*, and why, 535. Used after an interrogative or a negative sentence, 537. Obs. on this last rule, an exception, *ibid.* Used after some impers. v. and *que*, 542. After verbs denoting command, consent, doubt, the subj. is used, 541. When a rel. pron. and its antecedent come between two verbs the second is in the subj., 547. When the rel. refers to an indetermin. pron. the subj. is used, 548. When a verb in the subj. begins a sentence, there is another verb understood before that subj., *ref.* p. 335.

Substantive (*or noun*); one of the parts of speech, 10. Definition of, 11. How to distinguish it from another part of speech, 12. Its classification, 13. Subst. common, 14. What is

meant by extension in subst., *ibid.* Division of common substantives, 15. When it designates a genus, 394. When a species, 395. When an individual, 396. Subst. proper, 16. Subst. collective, 17. General and partitive, 18. Properties or accident of the subst., 19. Method of parsing a subst., p. 7. Takes the art. in French, *ref.* p. 6. How to Frenchify many English subst., 68. Formation of the plural of subst., 69, and following pages. Subst. that have no plural, p. 19. Some do not take the mark of the pl., *ibid.* Many nouns have a masc. and a fem. termination, 99. As nom. to a verb interrogative, how used in simple tenses, 171. With compound tenses, how used, 173. Subst. taken adjectively after a noun of dignity, 409. Require only the prep. *de* before a noun of country or of commodities, *ibid.* Subst. qualifying another are preceded by *de*, 420. Sometimes the qualifying subst. precedes the qualified, *ibid.* The prep. *of* or *with* is then understood, *ibid.* A subst. in the vocative case takes no art. in French, 421. Subst. governed in the acc. by another verb used negatively take *de* before them without art., 423; but take the art. besides when the sense is positive, *ibid.*; or when that acc. is followed by an adj., or by an incidental sentence, 424; likewise when the verb is both negative and interrogative but used in a partitive sense, 425. When the sense is negative, *de* only is used, *ibid.* A subst. governed by *en*, *entre*, *sans*, *avec*, takes no art., 426. A subst. following a verb, and forming but one idea with that verb, takes no art., 427. When the subst. is repeated with a prep. no art. is used, 428. When the subst. is governed by *sorte*, *genre*, *espèce*, no art. used, 429. A subst., used adjectively, takes no art. before it, 430; but the art. indef. should be used if

- that subst. is followed by an adj. or by the impersonal *c'est*, *ibid.* Subst. enumerated may be preceded by the art. defin., which is, however, generally suppressed, 431. A subst. which serves to characterize another spoken of before takes no art. before it, 434, except when used by way of distinction, 435. A subst. which serves to qualify a proper name often precedes that name in French, 434. A subst. beginning an incidental sentence, explanatory of what has been said, has no art. before it, 437.
- Subvenir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 165. Governs the dat. case, 188.
- Succéder* governs the dat. case, 188.
- as Succéder*, a neuter verb accidentally reflected, has its participle invariable, 307.
- Such as*, how translated, 257.
- Suffire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 165. Obs. on, *ibid.* When used impers., 200.
- Suffire à* differs from *suffire de*, 528.
- Suggérer* governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- je Suis*, with the participle of a passive verb, denotes a present, but with a neuter verb it denotes a perfect definite, *ref.* p. 128.
- Suivant* differs from *selon*, *ref.* p. 237.
- Suivre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 165.
- Supérieur*; when followed by a pers. pron. it must be a disj., *ref.* p. 185.
- Superlative*; definition, 361. How divided, *ibid.* Superlative absolute, how formed, 362. Why so called, *ibid.* Sometimes rendered in one word, *ibid.* Adj. that have neither compar. nor superl., *ib.* Also formed by *le mieux*, *le plus*, *le moins*, before an adjective when no comparison is implied, 363. Superlative rel., how formed, 364. Why so called, *ibid.* Some formed irr., 366. When it precedes its subst. the art. serves for both; if placed after it the art. is repeated, 368.
- Supplier* governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.
- Supplying pronouns*, what is meant by, 222. What words they generally replace, *ibid.* *En* and *y* have a vague indeterminate sense, *ibid.* *Le* also a supplying pron., 226. Its use, *ibid.*
- Supposé*, invariable before a subst., 446; but agrees with it when placed after it, 447.
- Surfaire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 165.
- Surgir*, defec. v.; conjug. p. 165; obs. on, *ibid.*
- Surprendre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 165.
- Surseoir*, irr. verb; conjug. p. 165.
- Suspendre, différer, remettre*, may supply it, *ibid.*
- Survenir*, irregular v.; conjug. p. 166. Forms its compound tenses with *être*, 185.
- Survivre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 166. Governs the dat. case, 188.
- Suspendre* may supply the verb *surseoir*, p. 166.
- Syllable*, what is meant by it, 8.
- Syllepsis*; definition of this figure of syntax, 568. Example of an irr. syllepsis, 569.
- Syntax*; definition, 336. Consists of two parts, 337. Figures of, p. 336.

T.

- T*; the euphonic letter *t* placed between two hyphens (-t-) is used in some particular cases to prevent the meeting of two vowels, *note* p. 91.
- Ta*; possessive conjunctive pronoun; used before a noun fem. sing., 107.
- Tâcher à* differs from *tâcher de*, 528.
- Taire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 166.
- as Taire*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 166.
- Tantôt*; this adv. follows the participle as in English, 333. When alternate, what is its place in the sentence, *ref.* p. 244.
- Tard* follows the participle as in English, 333.
- Tarder à* differs from *tarder de*, 528.
- Te*; a pers. conjunctive pron., second person sing., dat. or acc. case (*to thee* or *thee*), p. 179. Loses the *e* before another vowel or *à* mute, *ref.* p. 181.

- Changed into *toi* after a verb in the imper. affirm., 209. Changed into *toi*, except before *en*, 237.
- Teindre*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 166.
- Tendre* governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.
- Tenir*, irr. v.; conjug. p. 166. Exercise on, p. 177. With a noun without any article this verb forms an indivisible idea, 427.
- Tenses*; what is meant by tenses, 142. How divided, 143. What is a simple tense, 144, and a compound one, 145. What are the idiomatical tenses, 147. Formation of the tenses, p. 59. The primitive tenses are five, *ib.* Of the subjunctive, when used, *ref.* p. 268.
- Tenter* requires *de* before the next infin., 526.
- Terminations* of regular verbs, p. 80; and of irregular verbs, p. 136.
- Terrible* takes the prep. *de* with *il est* and *à* with *c'est*, 575.
- Tes*, a poss. conj. pron., used before a noun plural, 110.
- Teur*; subst. in *teur* have a feminine in *trice*, p. 27. A few exceptions, *note, ibid.*
- Than*; always transl. by *que* when it joins two members of a comparison, 354. After a compar. of superiority or inferiority, and joining two verbs together, *than* is translated by *que de* before an infin., or by *que ne* before a tense of the indic., *ref.* p. 257.
- That*, a demonst. conj. pronoun; how transl., 120—122. A rel. pron., how transl., 240. A demonst. disj. pron. when referring to a noun, how translated, 253. When opposed to *this*, how transl., 253. When pointing to a thing without naming it, how rendered, 254. When rendered by *voilà*, *voici*, 255. When followed by a subst. and a rel. pron., it is rendered by the art. def. in French, *ref.* p. 279.
- The*, English art. definite; how translated, 43. *Of* or *from the*, 48. *To the*, 53.
- These*, between an imperative and an infin., is transl. by *te*, if the imperative is a neuter verb; by *toi*, if the verb is active, *ref.* p. 182.
- Their*, a poss. conj. pron.; how rendered, 105. When expressed by *en*, 491. When rendered by the poss. conj. pronoun, 492.
- Theirs*, a poss. relative pronoun; how translated, p. 34.
- Them*, a poss. conj. pron., dat. or acc. case, plural (*leur, les*) for both genders, p. 179.
- Themselves*, immediately after a verb renders it reflected in English as well as in French, p. 111.
- These*, a demonst. conj. pronoun, 119; how transl., 123. A demonst. disj. pron., how transl., 252. When opposed to *those*, how transl., 255. To avoid a repetition, 256.
- They who*; how translated, 257, and *ref.* p. 207.
- Thine*, a poss. rel. pron.; how transl., 112.
- This*, a demonst. conj. pronoun, 119. how transl., 120—122. A demonst. disjunctive, 252.
- Those*, a demonst. conj. pronoun; how transl., 123. Used as a disj. demonstrative pron., how translated into French, 252. When opposed to *these*, how rendered, 255. Followed by a subst. and a rel. pron., is transl. by the art. def. in French, *ref.* p. 279.
- Thou*, a pers. conj. pronoun, second person singular (*tu*), p. 179.
- Thy*, a poss. conj. pron.; how transl., 105.
- Thyself*, after an English verb renders it refl. in both languages, p. 111.
- le Tien*, a poss. rel. pronoun; when used, 113. Its plural is *les tiens*, 115. Declined, p. 34. *La tienne* has for its plural *les tiennes*, 116. Declined, p. 34.
- Tiers*; its fem. is *tierce*, 99.
- Tirer*, with a subst. not preceded by an art., forms an indivisible idea, 427.
- Tisser*, irr. v.; p. 166.
- Tistre*, irr. v.; has only participle, *tissant*, p. 166.

To, prep.; sign of the dative case, 53.
To the, how transl., *ibid.* Coming before an infin. is expressed by *pour* when it means *in order to*, *ref.* p. 181. Expressed by *à* before an infinitive, a subst. or an adj. signifying inclination, fitness, readiness, &c., *ib.*
To, signifying *at*, *ref.* p. 237. The suppression of *to* (*à*) before a noun in the dative cannot take place in French as in English before an acc., *ref.* p. 288. *To*, after an adj., how translated, 574; after a verb, 576.

Tôi, a pers. disj. pron., second person sing. nom. or acc. case (*thou, thee*), used for *te* after an imper. affirm., 209. Preceded by *y*, 238.

Tomber; this neuter verb is conjug. with *être*, 185. Supplies the place of *choir*, p. 142.

Tomber en défaillance supplies the defective verb *défaillir*, p. 146.

Ton, a poss. conj. pron.; used before a noun masc. sing., 106; and before a noun feminine beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, 108.

Tous, pl. of *tout* as an adj., *note* p. 16.

Tous deux differs from *tous les deux*, *ref.* p. 215.

Tout; as an adj. its pl. is *tous*, p. 16.

Tout may be used before a subst. used adjectively, *ref.* p. 221. Used alone it means *all things, every thing*, *ibid.* *Tout* before an adj. is used in the sense of *quelque*; it is then invariable; the verb is in the indic., 288. Differs from *quelque*, *ibid.* When it modifies an adj. it is an adverb and invariable, except when it precedes an adj. fem. beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirated, 289. When *tout* means *all* or *the whole of*, it requires the art. def. before the next subst., *ref.* p. 277. When used to sum up an enumeration of subst., the verb agrees with the last noun, 431 and 511.

Traduire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 166.

Traire, irr. and def. v.; conjug. p. 166.

Traître; the feminine of this adj. is *traîtresse*, 99.

Transcrire, irr. v.; conjug. p. 166.

Transmettre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 166.

Travail; its plural is *travaux*, 76.

Travailler; when used instead of *travaux*, *note* p. 18.

Travailler may govern an acc. but the dat. is generally preferred, 189. Governs the next infin. with *à* before it, 525.

Trembler governs the next infin. with *de* before it, 526.

Très, before an adj. or an adv., serves to form the superl. absolute, 362.

Tressaillir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 166. Obs. on, *ibid.*

Trisyllable; what is meant by it, 9.

Trop; this adv. generally precedes the present of the infin., 334.

Tu, a pron. pers. conj. of the second person sing. (*thou*), p. 179. Often supplied by *vous* through politeness; in that case the adj. remains sing., p. 57.

Turc; as an adj. its fem. is *turque*, 97. *se Tuer de* differs from *se tuer à*, 528.

Ty; subst. ending in *ty* are made French by a change in their termination, p. 14.

U.

U; the fifth of the vowels, 5.

û; the participle of *devoir* takes the circumflex *û*, to distinguish it from *du*, article, p. 73.

Uble; adj. in *uble* are the same in both languages, p. 21.

Ude; subst. of this termination are the same in both languages, p. 14.

Uer; verbs of this termination have an irregularity in their orthography.—Model conjugated, *fouer*, p. 153.

Ule; subst. of that termination are the same in both languages, p. 14.

Un, a compound vowel, 6.

Un, art. indef. masc.; when used, 59. Elegantly suppressed before a subst. nom. when preceded by *jamais*, *ref.* p. 293.

Une, art. indef. fem.; when used, 60.

Uniforme forms its adv. irreg., 342.

Unique; when this adj. is followed by a rel. pron. the subj. is used, 550.

Universel; this adjective has neither compar. nor superl., p. 260.

Up, after a verb, how transl., 576.

Upon, used after a verb, how rendered, 576.

Us; proper names ending in *us* are sometimes the same in both languages, p. 15. Sometimes have a small alteration in the last syllable, *ibid.*

Use; an English verb of that termin. is made French by adding an *r*, p. 68.

Ute; an English verb of that termination becomes French by the addition of an *r*, p. 68.

Utile; when followed by *à* and an inf., that inf. has a passive sense, 471.

Uyer; verbs ending in *uyer*, have an irregularity in their orthography.—Model conjugated, *ennuyer*, p. 150.

V.

Vain (*en*), preceding a verb, that verb may elegantly take the interrogative form, 481.

Vaincre, irr. v.; conjug. p. 167. Some tenses are better expressed by *être victorieux*, *ibid.*

Valoir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 167.

Valoir mieux; impers. used, conjug. 199. Governs the next infin. without any prep., p. 134, and 524.

Variable letters, what is meant by, p. 64.

Vendre governs the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, 530.

Vends-je? the harshness of that expression has rendered *est-ce que je vends* preferable, *note* p. 91.

Vengeur; its fem. is *vengeresse*, 99.

Venir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 167. Exercise on, p. 177. Takes the verb *être* for its compound tenses, 185. Used before *querir*, p. 160. If followed by a pers. pron., it must be a disj., 213. Governs the next infin. without a preposition, 524. Except when it forms idiomatical past tenses (see *Conjugation*).

Verb; one of the parts of speech, 10. Expresses an affirmation, 124. Different sorts of verbs, 125. Divided into regular and irregular, perfect and defective, 126. Definition of a regular verb, 127; an irregular, 128; of a perfect verb, 129; and a defective verb, 130. Auxiliary verb, what is meant by it, 131. Agrees with its nom. in pers. and number, 160. How to Frenchify English verbs in *fy*, *ate*, *ish*, *ise*, *use*, *ute*, p. 68. Table of the terminations of regular verbs, p. 80; and of irregular verbs, p. 136. Verbs used negatively take *de* before the next acc. used indeterminately, *ref.* p. 89. Some personal verbs may become impersonal, 192. When a verb follows the verb *être* used impersonally, that verb *être* must have *ce* for its nom., 195. Alphabetical list of all the irr. verbs, p. 137. Verbs used both interrogatively and negatively take the art. defin. before their acc. if the sense is positive; when the sense is negative the art. is replaced by the prep. *de*, 425. A v. followed immediately by a noun without art., forms with that noun an inseparable idea, 427.

Verb; agreement of the verb with its nominative. The verb agrees in number and person with its nom., 160, 506. If the nom. is formed of several subst. or pron. the verb is made pl., 507. When the nom. are pronouns the verb agrees with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third, *ibid.* The verb agrees with the last noun or pron. when nearly synonymous, 508; or when the different nom. are joined by *ou*, 509. Obs. on that rule, *ibid.* When the words which compose the subject form a climax, the verb agrees with the last subst., 510. When the nom. are formed of words in gradation of sense, the verb agrees with the last, *ibid.* When the last of several subst. nom. are preceded by

tout, rien, personne, mais, &c., the verb agrees with the last subst., 511. A verb having for its nom. a collective general must be in the sing., 513. When the collective is partitive the verb agrees with the noun that follows that collective, 514.

Verbs, government of, p. 323. A verb cannot govern two genitive or dative cases, 517. A verb cannot be used with a different case from that which it governs, 518. When two verbs do not govern the same case, each must have a distinct regimen, 519. When a verb has two regimens of equal length the accusative comes first, 520. Exception to this rule, *ibid.* When a verb governs two cases the shortest comes first, 521. When the government of a verb contains several parts joined by *et, ou, ni*, these different parts must be expressed by words of the same nature, 522. Verbs governing an infin. without a prep., 524; governing an infin. with *à*, 525; governing an infin. with *de*, 526; and those which govern *de* or *à*, according to the sense we wish to express, 528. A list of verbs which require a different prep. after them in French and in English, or which take no prep. in French, 576. A list of verbs which have no prep. after them in English, but which require one in French, 577.

Verb, active, or transitive; what it is, p. 39. May all become passive except *avoir*, 175. How to distinguish an active verb, 125. Always forms its compound tenses with *avoir*, p. 50. A transitive verb cannot govern two acc., 516. Transitive verbs which govern the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, 529. Transitive verbs which govern the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, 530.

Verb, impersonal; see that word.

Verb, passive; its definition, p. 39. Formed from an active verb only, 175. Except *obéir* and *convenir*, *ib.*

Its participle is declined, and agrees in gender and number with its nom., 176. A passive verb conjug. p. 100. The government of a passive verb is *de* or *par*, *ref.* p. 105. Their difference, *ibid.*

Verb, neuter, or transitive; defined, p. 39. Different kinds of neuter verbs, *ibid.* Cannot become passive, except *obéir* and *convenir*, 175. Some are reflected in French, *ibid.* Cannot govern an acc., and why, 183. Are generally followed by *à* or *de*, p. 125. Some are neuter in one sense and active in another, *note, ibid.* Generally form their compound tenses with *avoir*, 184. Some with *être*, 185. Some with *avoir* when they express an action, and with *être* to express the result of an action, 186. Some take the auxiliary, but to express different meanings, 187. When conjug. with *être* the participle takes the gender and the number of the nom., 186. Some govern the dat. case, 188. Others sometimes the acc., but most commonly the dat., 189.

Verbs, reflected, reflexive, or pronominal; defined, p. 40. May be transitive, neuter, or have a passive sense, *ibid.* Differ in their conjug. from other verbs, 178. Always conjug. with two pron., *ibid.* Essentially or accidentally reflected, *ibid.* Some have the reflected form, though the sense does not indicate the action of a subject upon itself, *ibid.* When governed in the infin. by a preceding verb, 179. Compound tenses formed with *être*, 180. Conjug. affirmatively, p. 106. Negatively, p. 114. Interrogatively, p. 118. Interrogatively and negatively, p. 121. A list of verbs reflected in French, but not in English, p. 111. A reflected verb in French, sometimes passive in English, *ref.* p. 114. Sometimes neuter in English, *ibid.* Sometimes a neuter verb and an adj. are rendered by a reflected verb in French, *ibid.* Sometimes

even an English transitive verb and its acc. are transl. by a French reflected verb, *ibid.* Refl. verbs govern the gen. case, 181. Some a dat., 527.

Verbs, reciprocal; defined, page 40. Have no sing., *ibid.* How conjug., p. 124. Take *l'un l'autre*, or *les uns les autres*, according to the number of individuals acting on each side, *ibid.* Sometimes are preceded by the prep. *entre* instead of *l'un et l'autre*, *ibid.*

Vers differs from *envers*, *ref.* p. 237.

Vêtir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 168. Supplied by *habiller* and *s'habiller*, *ibid.*

Veux, from *vouloir*; it is used in the sense of *be so good, be so kind, as*, p. 168.

Viell has another masc. in use. Formation of its pl., p. 26. Of its fem., 98.

Viellir, when conjug. with *avoir* or *être*, 186.

Vieux; its fem. is *vieille*, p. 26. Precedes its noun, 88.

Vis-à-vis governs the acc. or the gen. case, *ref.* p. 239.

Viser, when followed by a pers. pron. it must be a disj., p. 184.

Viere, irr. v.; conjug. p. 168. Obs. on, *ibid.* Takes the following subst. without any art., *ref.* p. 293.

Vocative (from the Latin *vocare*, to call); definition of, 37. When used, *ibid.* Nouns in the vocative case are always of the second pers. when nom. to a verb, 157. No art. is used bef. a noun in the vocative case, 421.

Voici; often transl. by *this* and *these*, 255. Obs. on this word, p. 235.

Voilà; often rendered by *that* and *those*, 255. Obs. on *voilà* considered as a prep., p. 235.

Voir, irr. v.; conjug. p. 168.

Voler; when a pron. pers. follows that verb it must be a disj., 213.

Vos, a poss. conj. pron., pl. of *votre*; when used, 110.

Voire, a poss. conj. pron.; when used, 109.

le Vôtre, la Votre; their plural is *les vôtres*. When used, 113—116. (This poss. rel. pron. takes a circumflex accent over the o [*ô*]; the poss. conj. has no accent.)

Vouloir; irr. v.; conjug. p. 168. Obs. on its Imper., *ibid.*

Voulu; this part. is not declined, 315.

Vous, a pers. conj. pron. (*you*), second pers. pl., p. 179. Almost always used for *tu* through politeness. The adj. remains sing., p. 57; but the verb takes the pl. form, *ibid.* The participle remains sing., *note* p. 167.

Vowel; what is meant by it, 6. How many, 5.

W.

W; not a French letter, 3. Found in foreign words only, *ibid.*

Want (to) may be expressed by *falloir*, 202.

Was; when followed by an English gerund in *ing*, it must be translated by the corresponding tense, p. 67.

Weight; nouns of weight are preceded in French by the art. def., 416.

Were, and an English gerund, must be transl. in French by the corresponding tense, p. 67.

What; an interrogative pronoun, 245. When rendered by *qu'est ce qui*, 247. Rendered by *quel*, 248. Transl. by *que* after the verb *savoir*, *ref.* p. 204. After a prep. always *quoi*, *ib.* When used interjectively, transl. by *comment*, *quoi*, *hé quoi!* *ibid.* With ref. to something, rendered by *qu'est-ce que c'est*, *ibid.* In the sense of *that which*, how declined, 407.

What of and *of what*; their difference and how translated, *ref.* p. 318.

What to differs from *to what*; how rendered into French, *ref.* p. 318.

Whatever; in the sense of all which, must be expressed by *tout* and *que* bef. the verb, 286. In the sense of *all that which*, it must be rendered by *tout ce qui*, *tout ce que*, &c., 287.

Whatsoever, when it means *all*

- which*, is translated by *tout* and *que* bef. the verb, 286; but when it means *all that which* it must be rendered by *tout ce qui*, *tout ce que*, 287.
- Which*, a rel. pron.; how transl., 240. As a pron. interrogative, how transl., 245. Used relatively, transl. by *lequel* and implies comparison, 249. When a question is asked by the pron. *which*, what pron. must be used in the answer, *ref.* p. 206.
- Who*, a rel. pron.; how transl., 240. As an interrogative pronoun, 245. Refers to persons only, 246. How declined, *ibid.*
- Whoever*, an indeterminate pronoun, 260. How transl., 266. (See p. 216.)
- Whom*, a relative pron.; how translated, 240.
- Whose*; when rendered by *à qui*, *ref.* p. 204.
- Will*, not always an auxiliary—then translated by *vouloir*.
- With*; when governed by an English passive verb, how translated, *ref.* p. 105. Preceded by a participle, it is translated by *de*, *ref.* p. 231. *With* is often understood in English before a qualifying substantive, 419. After an adjective, how translated, 574. After a verb, how rendered, 576.
- Without*; after a verb, how rendered, 576.
- Worse*; this comparative adjective is transl. by *plus mauvais* or *pire*. As an adverb, the comparative of *ill*, it is translated by *plus mal* or *pis*, 360.
- Worst (the)*; as a superl. adj. it is rendered in French by *le plus mauvais*, or *le pire*; but as an adv. it must be rendered by *le pis* or *le plus mal*, 366.
- X.
- X*; subst. and adj. ending in *x* do not vary in the plural, 70.
- Y.
- Y*; the last of the vowels, 5. English subst. ending in *y* generally change it into *ie*, p. 14.
- Y*; used as a supplying pronoun, 222. Replaces *à lui*, *à eux*, *à elle*, *à elles*, *ibid.* Its place in the sentence, 224. Comes after other pronouns, but not before *en*, 230. Comes after *me*, *ref.* p. 189. Sometimes omitted, 232. Suppressed before the future and conditional of *aller*, 233.
- Y avoir*; conjugation of this impersonal verb, 196.
- Vous*, the plural of *cui*, 78. Also used figuratively, *ibid.*
- You*, a personal pron. of the second person plural nom. (*vous*), p. 179.
- Your*, possessive conjunctive pron.; how rendered, 105.
- Yours*, a pronoun poss. rel.; when used and how translated, 112.
- Yourself, yourselves*, immediately following an English verb, require the French verb to be also refl., p. 111.
- Z.
- Z*; substantives ending in *z* do not vary in the plural, 70.

SCHOOL BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

WILLIAM ALLAN,

13, PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON;

and sold by all respectable Booksellers.



Aristophanes' Knights,

Literally translated. 12mo. sd. 2s.

Alvary's Latin Prosody.

By the REV. E. J. GEOGHEGAN. New Edition, with remarks on Accent and Accentual Scanning, an abstract of Wagner's Canons of Virgil's Versification, and a Translation of Bentley's Schediasma. By the REV. G. B. WHEELER. 18mo. cloth. 1s. 6d.

Baillie's (Dr.) First Twelve Psalms of DAVID, in Hebrew, with Latin translation, &c. 8vo. cloth. 7s. 6d.

Baillie's (Dr.) Hebrew Grammar.

8vo. sewed. 3s. 6d.

Book of Common Prayer of the Church of
ENGLAND. Translated into German. 32mo. morocco.
 5s. 6d. Cloth. 3s.

Euripides' Hecuba,

With Notes, Critical and Explanatory. By the REV. G.
 B. WHEELER. 8vo. cloth. 5s.

French Testament.

24mo. bound. 1s 6d.

Gaskin's European Geography, and History

made Interesting, with Chapters on British India and the
 British Colonies, and a Coloured Engraving illustrating
 some Geographical terms, &c. 12th thousand. 18mo. cloth.
 1s. 6d. With Thirteen Maps. 2s.

Grassi's Italian and English pronouncing
DICTIONARY. 8vo. strongly bound. 6s.

Grote's Homeric Theory (Synopsis of),

Intended as an Appendix to Fausset's Homer. 12mo.
 sewed. 1s. 6d.

Grove's Compendium of Modern Geogra-

PHY, peculiarly adapted to the capacities of children. 4
 New Edition. 12mo. cloth. 4d.

Hand-Book of English Grammar,

For English and Classical Schools. 18mo. bound. 1s.

"This work comprises, in a simple and concise form, the substance of the most approved English Grammar extant; the Questions for Exercise and the Examples for Parsing are most copious, and the glossary at the end, pointing out the roots and meanings of the several words derived from the Hebrew, Greek, Latin and French languages, will contribute to render the pupil's introduction to the study of these languages comparatively easy."

Havet's complete French Class Book :

or, Grammatical and Idiomatical French Manual. By A. HAVET, Esq. editor of "Rouillon's Grammar and Tourist," etc. etc. 8vo. bound. Third Edition. 10th thousand. 7s.

"M. Havet's treatise is a complete exposition of the principles and peculiarities of the French Language."—*ATHENÆUM*.

Homer's Iliad,

according to the Text of Dr. Kennedy, with Original Notes, philological and exegetical, Examination Questions, &c. comprising also the various Readings and Comments of the most eminent Critics on Homer, by A. R. FAUSSET, A.M. (*New Edition in the Press.*)

James' German and English pronouncing

DICTIONARY. 8vo. strongly bound. 6s.

Juvenal (Satires read at Schools),

With English Notes. By W. C. BOYD, T.C.D. 12mo. bound. 4s. 6d.

Livy, Books 1 to 3,

With Life of Livy, Prolegomena, copious English Notes, Examination Questions, &c. by the REV. A. R. FAUSSET, 12mo. bound, 7s 6d.

Lucian—The Selections

Read in the Queen's Colleges and Dublin University, with copious English Notes, Analytical, Critical, Philological, and Explanatory, with an Improved Lexicon, &c. By J. E. SHEERIDAN, A.M. 12mo. bound. 7s. 6d.

Lucian—(Selections as above),

With Notes, Lexicon, &c. By H. EDWARDS, A.M. 12mo. bound. 7s. 6d.

"DEAR SIR,—The favourable impression produced on my mind by the first inspection of your edition of Lucian's Dialogues has been considerably enhanced by closer examination and more intimate acquaintance,

"I remain, dear Sir, yours truly,

"HENRY VANE HEMMINGES, LL.D."

Molé's Pronouncing French and English DICTIONARY. 8vo. strongly bound. 6s.

Ovid's Metamorphoses,

Literally translated. By the REV. G. B. WHEELER, 12mo. bds. 4s 6d.

Pontet — The Prince of Wales' First FRENCH BOOK; or, the "First French Teacher." By DESIRÉ PONTET. Being an interesting and connected Word and Phrase Book, with a selection of instructive and moral stories for children; to which is added an Elementary French Grammar. 18mo. cloth. 1s.

From H. M. BRICH, Esq., Tutor to the Prince of Wales.

"SIR,—I have duly received the "First French Teacher," and will take three copies of that little work, thinking it admirably adapted for the purpose for which it is intended."

Pontet—"Sequel to the First French TEACHER." Translating English into French made Easy, and showing, at sight, the difference of Idiom between the two languages; the whole forming a complete and easy method for the English to speak pure French in a very short time. By DESIRÉ PONTET. 12mo. bound, 3s 6d.

From DR. PHELPS, Shincy College, Cambridge.

"DEAR SIR,—I have been familiar with French from my earliest years, and I feel, therefore, that I have a right to pronounce an opinion on Desiré Pontet's publications; and I have no hesitation in saying that it must be a very stupid pupil who does not find in them very valuable assistance in acquiring accuracy of pronunciation, and readiness in the ordinary phraseology of polite conversation.

"I am, dear Sir, yours truly,

"ROBERT PHELPS."

Pontet—General Tables of the French VERBS. By DESIRÉ PONTET. By which the formation of any tense or person required may be immediately found. Neatly coloured. 12mo. cloth. 1s. 6d.

Rorke on the Use of the Globes.

18mo. bound, 2s

Course of French, Twenty-third Thousand.

Rouillon's Grammatical Institutes of THE FRENCH LANGUAGE; containing a series of theoretical, practical, and progressive Lessons, in which every difficulty is explained, either in Notes at the end of each Exercise or by reference to preceding Rules. 12th edition, edited by ALFRED HAVET, Esq., author of the "Complete French Class Book, etc." 12mo. hf. bd. 5s.

French Conversations, Thirty-third Thousand.

Rouillon's Tourist's French Companion. Consisting of Familiar Conversations on every topic which can be useful to the Continental Traveller; together with Models of Letters, Notes, and Cards. Exhibiting the True Pronunciation of the French Language, the Silent Letters being printed in *Italic*. The sixteenth edition, revised and corrected by ALFRED HAVET, Esq., French Master in the Glasgow Athenæum, the Glasgow Collegiate School, etc. 18mo. hf. bd. 4s. 6d.

The conversations upon Paris may be consulted as an accurate description of the capital of France in its present state. The Appendix will be found to convey more information about French railways and towns than any other work of this kind, so that besides acquiring a *general* knowledge of French Conversation, the pupil by becoming acquainted with actual localities and usages, has a *special* advantage, in learning what may be useful in after life.

Rouillon's Exercises on French Conversation (for advanced pupils), being a selection of English Sentences to be translated into French, and in which the difference of the *Idioms, Genius, and Phraseology* of the English and French Languages may be easily distinguished. 7th Edition. 18mo. hf. bd. 3s. 6d.

Terence, by Fausset.

With English Notes, a Life of Terence, a Treatise on the Metres, and Examination Questions, &c. By the REV. A. R. FAUSSET. 12mo. bound. 5s.

Thurgar's Concise and Easy Grammar and System for Learning the German Language. Crown 8vo. 4s 6d

A twofold object is before the learner : first, the *Grammar* of German, and afterwards, German *words*. Mr. Thurgar has prepared a system which long experience has shown him to be a most effective means of attaining both of these ends.

By a concise but complete Grammar, followed by a series of exercises, and illustrations of each rule in succession, the pupil learns the grammatical use of the language. The pupil also acquires foreign *words* by studying a series of graduated interlineary lessons, on a new plan, and obtains practice both in rendering English into German, and German into English ; while a carefully executed series of writing copies gives facility in writing, which at the same time is made to answer the purpose of impressing words on the memory. The whole forms a methodical and complete course of German *reading, conversation, and writing*.

Virgil—Galbraith's School and College VIRGIL. New Edition, with Supplementary Notes, Wag- ner's Questiones Virgilianæ, &c.

THE VOLUMES ARE SOLD SEPARATELY, AS FOLLOWS :—

Vol. 1. THE ECLOGUES, with copious Notes, Prolegomena, &c. 12mo. cloth. 2s 6d.

Vol. 2. THE GEORGICS. New Edition. 8vo. cloth, 6s. 6d.

Vol. 3. ÆNEID, BOOKS 1 to 6. 12mo. cloth. 6s. 6d.

Vol. 4. ÆNEID, Books 7 to 12, with Supplementary Notes. 12mo. cloth. 6s. 6d.

Virgil's Æneid, Complete, (Books 1 to 12),
with Additional Notes and Wagner's Questions. In One
thick Vol. 12mo. bound. 10s. 6d.

"Sir,—Would you let me have a line to say whether any more of Fanset's Homer than the first Eight Books has been as yet published? Also have the Georgics and Eclogues (New Edition) yet appeared, by Galbraith? I cannot learn at all, through my booksellers here, anything about your publications (*some of which are truly admirable*), though I have often asked them to make inquiries.

"Royal Collegiate Institution, Liverpool.

"I am, Sir, yours, &c.,

"DAWSON W. TURNER."

Xenophon's Memorabilia.

Literally translated, with Kühner's Prolegomena. By the
Rev. G. B. Wheeler. 12mo. bds. 4s.

Xenophon's Anabasis.

Literally translated. By the same. 12mo. bds. 4s 6d.

**Young's Pronouncing and Etymological
SPELLING BOOK, adapted for Junior and Senior Classes.**

1. The principles of pronunciation are gradually developed. 2. The Division of the Syllables corresponds with the Pronunciation. 3. The meanings are accurate without being burdensome, and simple without being ridiculous. 4. The Etymology is treated in a more systematic and attractive manner than has been hitherto done, *all its classical austerity and uncouthness having been removed, in deference to the English student.* 5. The Greek, Latin, and French roots of several thousand words are given, with Etymological Exercises subjoined. By TOWNSEND YOUNG, LL.D. New Edition, 12mo. bound. 1s 6d

Nearly 22,000 copies have been sold within one year.

JAMES'S
GERMAN AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY,

Crown 8vo. *roan*, 6s.

GRASSI'S ITALIAN AND ENGLISH
PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY,

Crown 8vo. *roan*, 6s.

MOLE'S SCHOOL FRENCH AND ENGLISH
PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY,

Crown 8vo. *roan*, 6s.

THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER,

Translated into German. 32mo. *morocco*, 5/6.

German Head = Line Copy Book,

Adapted to the use of the English Student from the System in use in the principal Continental Schools.

Second Edition, 24 pages, Post 4to., One Shilling.

The acquisition, in schools, of the *German written character* has been generally treated as of very secondary importance; and the pupil has frequently commenced the writing of Exercises with no other knowledge of the formation of the letters than can be derived from a printed page, sometimes (but not always) to be found inserted in his Book of Exercises. Part of the time and attention that should be employed upon the Exercises themselves, is consequently occupied in *learning to write German*; and it is to remedy this, by making the acquisition of German Handwriting a *separate and preliminary study*, that the GERMAN HEAD LINE COPY BOOK has been published. A large issue has already been sold, and a New Edition, with some slight improvements, has been prepared and is now on sale.

TESTIMONIALS.

From S. W. BRADNACK, Esq., The Cedars, Cobham, Surrey.

Dear Sir,

I have much pleasure in acknowledging the great advantages which I have derived from your GERMAN HEAD LINE COPY BOOKS. Pupils who have used them as soon as they began the Study of the language, have quickly acquired the art of writing German with a freedom and elegance that Germans have acknowledged could not be surpassed in their own country. I should find it difficult to dispense with such invaluable aids to a rapid acquisition of the German current hand.

I am, Dear Sir, Yours sincerely,

To Mr. Benham, Colchester.

S. W. BRADNACK.

From FRANCIS TRUSCOTT, Esq., B.A., St. Mary's Academy, Colchester.

I have great pleasure in giving my testimony to the usefulness of Mr. Benham's GERMAN HEAD LINE COPY BOOKS. I find that their use among my own pupils adds considerably to the general interest taken in the study of the German Language; while the facility acquired by this means in the execution and reading of German writing, greatly assists learners in the performance of their scholastic exercises, and thus accelerates their progress.

The essential importance of the acquirement referred to in the commercial applications of this important language is too obvious to need comment; and the clearness and correctness of the engraving in these copy books, adapt them to impart in the highest degree the benefit to be derived from their use.

FRANCIS TRUSCOTT, B.A.

St. Mary's Academy, Colchester,
25th June, 1857.

From Herr H. KLEIN, Professor of the German Language, Norwich.

Herr H. Klein has much pleasure in stating that during the last two years he has used Mr. E. Benham's GERMAN COPY BOOKS, and that his pupils make quick progress in German Handwriting.

Elm Hill, Norwich,
June 1857.

